
R G U H S · M O D E L A N S W E R B A N K

The questions RGUHS repeats — fully answered

RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine — Paper I



R E C U R R I N G - Q U E S T I O N A N S W E R B A N K

2 0 1 6 – 2 0 2 5

570 recurring topics · textbook-verified · verbatim statute · BNS/BNSS/BSA-current · cited Recent Advances

G R O U N D E D I N :

KS Narayan Reddy — The Essentials of Forensic Medicine & Toxicology 36e — spine text

Gautam Biswas — Review of Forensic Medicine & Toxicology 6e

Anil Aggrawal — Textbook of Forensic Medicine & Toxicology

S Chand — Forensic Medicine & Toxicology (topic monographs)

Ludwig — Handbook of Autopsy Practice

Verbatim statute: India Code (indiacode.nic.in) & Gazette of India — BNS 2023 · BNSS 2023 · BSA 2023



Dr. Harshad Ramineni

@ a u r a p h a r m l a b

Contents

Applied basic sciences (forensic).....7

Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (Adult Respiratory Distress Syndrome / Shock Lung).....	7
Anaphylaxis and Hypersensitivity and their Medico-Legal Importance.....	10
Blood grouping and Rh-Incompatibility.....	13
Blood transfusion.....	17
Briefly describe pathophysiology of thrombus formation. Differentiate between the antemortem and postmortem clots.....	21
Circle of Willis.....	25
Define embolism, classify and discuss in detail about Fat embolism with medicolegal importance	28
Define Syncope. Discuss the causes, pathophysiology, clinical features, investigations, autopsy findings and Medicolegal importance of syncope.....	31
Define, classify and discuss patho-physiology of shock.....	35
Describe acute respiratory distress syndrome.....	38
Describe anatomy of blood supply of heart and its significance in sudden death.....	42
Describe anatomy of circle of Willis and discuss the etiology and pathology of intracranial haemorrhages.....	45
Describe blood supply of Heart. Discuss cardiovascular causes of Sudden Death.....	49
Describe blood supply to brain. Write about Intracranial Haemorrhages.....	52
Describe gas gangrene and medicolegal importance.....	56
Describe genito-urinary system of male.....	59
Describe Histochemical changes in injured tissue and biochemical findings of wound.....	62
Pathophysiology of shock and autopsy findings in fatal anaphylactic shock following injection of penicillin.....	66
Describe the anatomy of base of skull with common fractures.....	69
Describe the blood supply of the heart and discuss the medico-legal importance of Cardiac Tamponade.....	73
Describe the dangerous area of face and discuss its forensic aspects.....	76
Describe the gross and microscopic changes in Myocardial infarction.....	79
Describe the histopathology of cirrhosis and its forensic significance.....	82
Describe the microscopic features of thrombus and its forensic aspects.....	85
Describe the pathophysiology of shock and autopsy findings in case of fatal anaphylactic shock following intramuscular injection of penicillin.....	89
Describe the physiology of muscle contraction and rigor mortis.....	93
Describe the process of wound healing and repair. Add a note on healing of specialized tissues along with their forensic applications.....	96
Describe the role of micro-organisms in cases of Burns. Add a note on its medico-legal importance	99
Diagnostic Chemistry of CSF.....	103
Acute tubular necrosis (acute renal tubular necrosis).....	106

Discuss briefly about the brainstem reflexes. Add a note on Organ transplantation act giving its latest amendments.....	110
Discuss causes, investigations, medico-legal importance and autopsy findings of cirrhosis with portal hypertension.....	113
Discuss Decompression sickness.....	116
Discuss gastric emptying. Medico legal importance of gastric emptying. Brief variability in gastric emptying.....	119
Discuss the anatomical significance of neck structures.....	122
Discuss the anatomy of pelvis from a Medico-legal point of view.....	126
Discuss the forensic anatomy of mandible.....	129
Discuss the forensic anatomy of neck highlighting the various layers of neck dissection.....	132
Discuss the forensic anatomy of skin and its appendages. Add a note on medicolegal importance of healing of skin wounds.....	135
Pathophysiology of Myocardial Infarction.....	139
Discuss the pathognomonic and morphological changes of myocardial infarction.....	142
Discuss the pharmacology of prostaglandins and its forensic applications.....	146
Discuss types of embolism.....	150
Dissection of neck structures.....	153
Draw and explain about Circle of Willis.....	157
Drug synergism.....	160
Drugs affecting uterine motility.....	163
Drugs inhibiting the action of Acetylcholine.....	166
Explain the physiology of thermoregulation in new born.....	170
Fetal circulation and its forensic applications.....	173
Forensic anatomy of hyoid bone.....	176
Forensic anatomy of the base of the skull.....	179
Glasgow coma scale.....	183
Gross anatomy of female genitalia. Types and medico legal importance of HYMEN.....	186
Hazards of blood transfusion.....	189
Healing and repair of bony fractures.....	192
Histochemistry.....	196
Hyoid bone — anatomy and medico-legal aspects.....	200
Hypostatic pneumonia.....	203
Immune-histochemistry of wound healing.....	206
Immuno-histo-chemistry in wound healing.....	209
Lab diagnosis of HIV-AIDS.....	213
Nosocomial infections in autopsy room.....	216
Pathogenesis of Gas gangrene.....	220
Pathology of Thrombo-embolism.....	224

Pathophysiology of pulmonary edema.....	227
Physiology of gastric emptying and its forensic applications.....	231
Symphysis pubis.....	234
What are prostaglandins? Describe their pharmacological actions and therapeutic uses.....	237
What is the role of wound healing in determining time of assault?.....	240
With a neat labeled diagram, describe the arterial supply of penis and physiology of erection. Add a note on erectile dysfunction and its forensic aspects.....	244
Forensic pathology & thanatology.....	247
Aneurysms and Medico-legal importance.....	247
Berry aneurysm.....	250
Bio-chemical changes in blood and cerebro-spinal fluid after death.....	254
Biochemical changes in the EYE after death.....	257
Classify Anesthetic drugs and write about the medico-legal importance.....	260
Describe medical and medicolegal aspect of death associated anaesthesia and surgery.....	264
Describe the anatomy of midline structures of Neck. Discuss Post Mortem findings in cases of Pressure over the neck.....	268
Diagnosis of brainstem death.....	272
Discuss anaesthetics and its medico-legal importance at autopsy.....	275
Disposal of hazardous materials in the mortuary.....	279
Discuss in detail the autopsy procedure, investigations and Medicolegal problems encountered in case of surgical death.....	282
Discuss post-mortem chemistry of blood.....	285
Discuss the aetiopathology of vascular thrombosis. Discuss thrombosis in various sites of body as cause of death.....	289
Discuss the cerebrovascular lesions resulting in death and its medicolegal importance.....	292
Discuss the medicolegal aspects of death on operation table.....	296
Discuss the procedure to conduct an autopsy on the body of a AIDS victim and outline its medico legal significance.....	299
Discuss the role of digestive system in determining the time since death.....	303
Discuss the value of chemical analysis of spinal fluid in ascertaining the time since death.....	306
Entomology of cadaver and its medico legal importance.....	309
Exhumation.....	312
Indications and methods of Embalming.....	315
Pathophysiology of death.....	319
Embalming Artefacts.....	322
Write in detail about theory of causation, autopsy appearances and histopathological findings in a case of Cot death.....	325
Forensic traumatology.....	329
Dating of wounds by histology and histochemistry.....	329
Discuss about intra-cranial hemorrhages.....	332

Discuss Hypothermia and medicolegal importance.....	335
Discuss the Pathophysiology of Head Injuries. Add a note on its medicolegal importance.....	339
Hypothermia. Discuss the systematic and localized effects of Hypothermia.....	342
Utility of radiographs in forensic traumatology.....	346
Personal identification.....	349
Age changes at pubic Symphysis.....	349
Aspartic acid racemization.....	352
Demirjian's method.....	355
Describe the forensic odontology. Add a note on medico legal importance of Bite Marks.....	359
Describe the normal structure of tooth. Discuss Gustafson's method of age determination from teeth.....	362
Describe the normal structure of tooth. Discuss Gustafson's method of determination age from the teeth.....	365
Describe the structure and medico-legal importance of human hair.....	369
Discuss in detail about intersex.....	372
Discuss teeth bite marks and medicolegal importance.....	376
Discuss the chronology of eruption of temporary dentition and permanent dentition.....	379
Discuss the features of the human bone/s with best reliability to estimate sex, as per Krogman's gradings, including subjective and objective criteria.....	382
Discuss the morphological changes occurring over symphyseal surface of pubis and its relevance in determining age by Todd's method. Add a note on Mc Kern and Stewart's modifications for the same.....	385
Forensic gynaecology & sexual offences.....	388
Changes in umbilicus and umbilical cord after birth.....	389
Describe Fetal Circulation giving its medico-legal importance.....	392
Describe Foetal circulation and discuss the cause of death in criminal abortion.....	395
Describe Foetal circulation and medicolegal importance.....	398
Describe the anatomy of female genitalia and its medico legal importance.....	401
Discuss the causes for secondary infertility and its forensic implications.....	405
Discuss the laboratory investigations to confirm Pregnancy. Discuss Superfoetation and Superfecundation.....	408
Drugs causing impotence. Medico legal issues in cases of impotence.....	412
Testicular biopsy and its medicolegal importance.....	415
Which drugs are used to induce abortion? Which specimens are to be preserved to detect them in case of criminal abortion?.....	418
Write the anatomy of Uterus and discuss in detail about the medicolegal problems, procedure of investigation, complication and method of autopsy in case of death associated with criminal Abortion.....	422
Forensic toxicology.....	426
Death from narcotic and Hallucinogenic drugs.....	426

Role of heavy metal antagonists (chelating agents) in forensic practice.....	430
Emmenagogues.....	433
Prevention of hypersensitivity reaction to polyvalent anti-snake venom (ASV) — autopsy findings and medico-legal problems.....	436
Forensic psychiatry.....	439
Delusion.....	440
Discuss Feigned mental illness and its forensic implications.....	443
Medical jurisprudence, ethics & law.....	446
Describe AIDS and its medicolegal importance.....	446
Informed consent.....	449
Forensic science & recent advances.....	452
Blood grouping and their legal significance.....	452
Comparison Microscope.....	456
Describe the physiology of seminal fluid and tests to confirm seminal fluid with Medico Legal aspects.....	459
Discuss how detection of microorganism can help to establish the sexual offence. Briefly describe the common tests done to detect them.....	463
Discuss on use of microscopes in forensic medicine.....	466
Discuss the importance of microbiological applications in Forensic Medicine.....	469
Gas Chromatography.....	473
Medicolegal application of Blood groups.....	476
Polymerase chain reaction.....	480
Precipitin test.....	483
Precipitin test and Medicolegal importance.....	486
Red cell enzyme – Polymorphisms.....	489
Tests to confirm Blood Stains. Stains resembling blood stains and its medico legal importance...	493
Various blood groups and their role in determining paternity.....	496

Applied basic sciences (forensic)



Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (Adult Respiratory Distress Syndrome / Shock Lung)

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS) is a serious lung condition with many possible causes.
- ▶ It causes diffuse inflammation of the lung tissue that carries out gas exchange.
- ▶ This leads to severe breathlessness, progressive respiratory failure, and often death.
- ▶ Forensically it matters in two ways.
- ▶ First, ARDS is a common **delayed (remote) cause of death** after trauma, burns, poisoning, or near-drowning.
- ▶ Second, its lung pathology — **diffuse alveolar damage** — gives a recognisable autopsy picture (**shock lung**) that links an injury to a later death.

Terminology

- ▶ ARDS has many synonyms an examiner expects you to know: acute lung injury, congestive atelectasis, haemorrhagic pulmonary oedema, increased-permeability pulmonary oedema, non-cardiogenic pulmonary oedema, shock lung, stiff lung, and traumatic wet lung.
- ▶ "Adult" distinguishes it from **Infant Respiratory Distress Syndrome (IRDS)** of the newborn (hyaline membrane disease of prematurity).
- ▶ Both share the hyaline-membrane appearance but differ in mechanism (see below).
- ▶ **Respirator lung** is a related but separate entity caused by the mechanical ventilation used to treat ARDS, not by the original disease.

Causes of ARDS ("shock lung")

- ▶ ARDS is the final common pathway of many different insults.
- ▶ **Four causes account for more than 50% of all cases:** severe systemic shock, sepsis, gastric (Mendelson) aspiration, and major head/chest trauma.

Category	Examples
Infection	Viral/ <i>Mycoplasma</i> / <i>Pneumocystis</i> pneumonia, miliary TB, gastric aspiration, sepsis
Trauma	Burns, fat embolism from fractures, head/chest injury, blast injury, near-drowning
Inhaled irritants	Irritant gases, oxygen toxicity, smoke inhalation
Poisons	Aspirin, barbiturates, opioids, paraquat, aluminium phosphide

Category	Examples
Other	DIC, multiple transfusions, cardiopulmonary bypass, pancreatitis, uraemia

Pathogenesis

- ▶ The triggering insult releases **inflammatory mediators** — complement, cytokines, eicosanoids, oxygen free radicals.
- ▶ These mediators damage the **endothelium of the alveolar capillaries**, increasing capillary permeability.
- ▶ Fluid and protein leak out, producing **intra-alveolar oedema**.
- ▶ Leaked protein, fibrin, and dead epithelial cells condense on alveolar walls as **hyaline membranes** — the hallmark of diffuse alveolar damage.
- ▶ The flooded, stiff alveoli cannot exchange gas, causing **hypoxaemia** poorly responsive to oxygen.
- ▶ This is the reverse sequence of IRDS: in IRDS, low compliance from surfactant deficiency comes first and *causes* the hyaline membrane; in ARDS, trauma/inflammation comes first and *causes* the hyaline membrane.
- ▶ In survivors, the alveoli enter a proliferative phase; **about 50% of survivors develop pulmonary fibrosis**.
- ▶ Clinically this shows as severe dyspnoea and progressive respiratory failure, developing over hours to days after the precipitating injury — explaining why it is a delayed cause of death.

Autopsy findings

- ▶ **Gross:**
 - Lungs are dark-red/dark bluish-red, congested, stiff, oedematous, airless and boggy.
 - They are heavy — **about twice normal weight**.
 - Cut surface resembles liver in consistency.
 - Lungs **retain their shape after removal from the chest** — the classic "shock lung" sign.
 - Terminal bronchopneumonia may be superadded.
- ▶ **Microscopic:**
 - Intra-alveolar and interstitial (septal) oedema.
 - Patchy alveolar haemorrhage; capillary congestion with leucocytes, platelet clumps, microthrombi.
 - **Hyaline membranes** lining the alveoli.
 - Necrosis of alveolar epithelium; later, cellular proliferation and fibrosis in survivors.

Respirator lung (ventilator-associated lung injury, VALI)

- ▶ A progressive deterioration of lung function caused by **mechanical ventilation itself**, not by the disease being treated.
- ▶ Seen in trauma patients ventilated for respiratory-centre depression or for ARDS.
- ▶ Usually develops after many days or weeks of ventilation, though it can appear within days.

- ▶ **Histology is identical to ARDS** (hyaline membranes, diffuse alveolar damage).
- ▶ Grossly the lungs are stiff, rigid, and heavy but **not obviously oedematous**, with collapse and haemorrhage.
- ▶ **Mechanisms:**
 - **Volutrauma:** high end-inspiratory lung *volume* (not pressure) overdistends alveoli. A 6 mL/kg tidal volume gives **22% higher survival** than a 12 mL/kg tidal volume.
 - **Biotrauma:** overstretching ruptures alveolar cell membranes, causing cell death and inflammatory signalling.
- ▶ **Prevention:** high **Positive End-Expiratory Pressure (PEEP)** is the most effective strategy to reduce VALI.

Forensic and special situations

- ▶ **Near-drowning and secondary drowning:**
 - Near-drowning = survival for at least 24 hours after submersion.
 - Secondary (post-immersion) drowning = death **24 hours or more** after submersion, from ARDS, pneumonia, sepsis, cerebral oedema, or DIC.
 - Lungs in secondary drowning are rigid, stiff, heavy, and show ARDS features.
 - **Tsunami lung** is a variant — severe infection following aspiration pneumonia after near-drowning, described after the 2011 Japan earthquake.
- ▶ **Burns:** smoke inhalation (acrolein, carbon monoxide, cyanide, nitrogen oxides, phosgene) contributes to ARDS, sepsis, and pneumonia, causing delayed death after burns.
- ▶ **Poisoning:** ARDS is a recognised terminal event in **aluminium phosphide** poisoning (appearing after 24 hours), **paraquat**, and barbiturate/opioid overdose.
- ▶ **Shock and DIC:** lung findings in fatal shock are the same as in ARDS; ARDS, DIC, and crush syndrome commonly coexist after major trauma.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ ARDS is not itself a statutory term — its medico-legal weight lies in the **chain of causation**.
- ▶ If death from ARDS can be traced back to the original trauma, the **assailant remains responsible** even though death was delayed.
- ▶ If minor trauma kills only because of pre-existing disease, and the offender neither intended death nor knew of the disease, the charge may reduce to causing hurt/grievous hurt under **Sections 319/320 IPC 1860 (now Sections 114/116/117 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ Culpable homicide/murder distinctions fall under **Sections 299/300 IPC 1860 (now Sections 100/101 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon must actively search for and document the precipitating cause (trauma, sepsis, aspiration, poisoning, burns, submersion), since ARDS itself is non-specific.
- ▶ Distinguishing true ARDS from **respirator lung (VALI)** matters when death follows prolonged ICU ventilation, including allegations of medical negligence.
- ▶ ARDS-type lung changes corroborate severe poisoning when correlated with chemical analysis and history.

- ▶ Diagnosis is confirmed microscopically, so **lung blocks must be retained for histology**.
- ▶ The death is reported and inquested under **Sections 174/176 CrPC 1973 (now Sections 194/196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon's opinion on causation may be given as expert evidence under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Pathogenesis flow-chart:** trauma/infection leads to release of inflammatory mediators (complement, cytokines, eicosanoids, free radicals), which damage the alveolar capillary endothelium, causing capillary leak (exudate), intra-alveolar oedema and hyaline-membrane formation, then flooded, stiff alveoli and hypoxaemia, and fibrosis in survivors.
- ▶ **Labelled ARDS alveolus cross-section:** congested capillary with platelet/leucocyte clumps and microthrombi, damaged endothelium, interstitial (septal) oedema, intra-alveolar exudate and haemorrhage, hyaline membrane lining the alveolar wall, necrotic alveolar epithelial cell.



Anaphylaxis and Hypersensitivity and their Medico-Legal Importance

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2024 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Hypersensitivity** is an exaggerated, harmful immune response to an antigen that is normally harmless.
- ▶ **Anaphylaxis** is the most severe form of immediate (**Type I**) hypersensitivity.
- ▶ It causes rapid skin, gut, respiratory and cardiovascular reactions that can progress to shock and death.
- ▶ The term was coined by **Portier and Richet in 1902**, after a second dose of sea-anemone toxin killed a previously exposed dog.
- ▶ These deaths are sudden, occur in apparently healthy people, and are largely unpredictable.
- ▶ They often follow a drug injection or procedure, so they raise frequent allegations of **medical negligence**.
- ▶ They are prominent in **anaesthetic and operative deaths**.
- ▶ Autopsy findings are non-specific and fade quickly — a classic "obscure" or near-negative autopsy.

Classification of hypersensitivity (Gell and Coombs)

Type	Mediator	Example
I — Immediate (anaphylactic)	IgE on mast cells/basophils	Anaphylaxis, urticaria, asthma
II — Cytotoxic	IgG/IgM + complement	Mismatched blood transfusion

Type	Mediator	Example
III — Immune-complex	IgG immune complexes	Serum sickness
IV — Delayed (cell-mediated)	Sensitised T-lymphocytes	Tuberculin reaction, contact dermatitis

- ▶ The forensically lethal reaction is almost always **Type I anaphylaxis**.
- ▶ **Type II** explains fatal mismatched blood transfusion.

Pathogenesis of anaphylaxis

- ▶ **Sensitisation:** first exposure makes specific **IgE** antibodies that fix onto mast cells and basophils.
- ▶ No reaction occurs on this first contact.
- ▶ **Re-exposure:** the allergen binds this IgE and triggers **mast-cell degranulation** (rupture releasing stored mediators).
- ▶ **Primary (pre-formed) mediators** released instantly: histamine, heparin, tryptase, chymase.
- ▶ **Secondary mediators** made fresh: **leukotrienes** (more potent than histamine), prostaglandins, platelet-activating factor, cytokines.
- ▶ The lethal triad is **bronchospasm, vasodilatation, and increased capillary permeability**.
- ▶ This triad causes laryngeal oedema, and death follows from **asphyxia, bronchospasm, or cardiovascular collapse**.

Aetiology (common triggers)

- ▶ **Drugs:** penicillin (the classic agent), aspirin, horse-serum antitoxins/antivenom, vaccines, iodine contrast media.
- ▶ **Foods:** fish, shellfish, eggs, nuts.
- ▶ **Hormones:** insulin, ACTH.
- ▶ **Enzymes:** trypsin.
- ▶ **Insect bites/stings.**
- ▶ **Key point:** about 75% of fatal penicillin reactions occur with no prior warning — the death is genuinely unpredictable.

Clinical features

- ▶ **Onset:** usually within 15–20 minutes of exposure; most deaths occur within 1–2 hours.
- ▶ **General:** malaise, facial oedema, cyanosis.
- ▶ **Skin:** injection/sting marks with wheals, urticaria, itching, erythema.
- ▶ **Upper airway:** laryngeal oedema, hoarseness, and **stridor** — the dominant cause of asphyxial death.
- ▶ **Lower airway:** bronchospasm, acute emphysema, dyspnoea.
- ▶ **Gastrointestinal:** nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramps.
- ▶ **Cardiovascular:** tachycardia, hypotension, **shock**.
- ▶ **Central nervous system:** anxiety, convulsions.

- ▶ **Severity grades** run mild to severe: localised skin reaction → widespread urticaria → respiratory symptoms → airway swelling → cardiovascular collapse.

Emergency management

- ▶ **Adrenaline (epinephrine)** is the first-line, life-saving drug.
- ▶ Dose: **0.01 mL/kg (up to 0.5 mL) of 1:1000 solution**, given intramuscularly/subcutaneously.
- ▶ Repeat every **15 minutes** if needed.
- ▶ Also give **oxygen**, nebulised beta-agonists, **corticosteroids**, **antihistamines**, and **IV fluids**.
- ▶ **Standard of care**: watch the patient for at least **30 minutes** after an injection of a potential allergen.
- ▶ Failing to keep adrenaline ready, or delaying treatment, is itself evidence of negligence.

Autopsy / post-mortem findings

- ▶ Findings are **non-specific**; many bodies show no distinguishing gross pathology.
- ▶ Anaphylaxis is often a **diagnosis of exclusion**, supported by history.
- ▶ **Larynx**: oedema of the larynx, epiglottis, trachea and bronchi.
- ▶ This oedema **fades soon after death**, so **early autopsy is essential**.
- ▶ **Lungs**: hyperinflation, mucus plugging of bronchi, congestion and oedema, eosinophil infiltration of bronchial walls on histology.
- ▶ **Airway mucosa**: petechial haemorrhages, froth in mouth/nostrils, generalised cyanosis.
- ▶ **CNS**: cerebral oedema from hypoxia.
- ▶ **Skin**: injection or sting marks with erythema/urticaria.
- ▶ **Confirmatory test**: **serum mast-cell tryptase**, peaking **1–2 hours** after the reaction, half-life about 2 hours.
- ▶ Also estimate **serum IgE** against the suspected antigen.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Since about 75% of fatal penicillin reactions give no warning, a death is not negligence by itself.
- ▶ Negligence is established when the doctor **fails to test for sensitivity**, **fails to take an allergy history**, **fails to keep adrenaline ready**, or **fails to observe the patient for 30 minutes** after the injection.
- ▶ If the patient survives with **hurt**, the doctor is liable under **Section 337 IPC 1860 (now Section 125(a) BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ If the patient survives with **grievous hurt**, liability is under **Section 338 IPC 1860 (now Section 125(b) BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ If the patient dies, liability is under **Section 304-A IPC 1860 (now the registered-medical-practitioner limb of Section 106(1) BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ That limb carries up to **two years'** imprisonment — distinct from the **five-year** general limb of the same section, which applies to non-doctors.
- ▶ An anaphylactic death from a correctly indicated drug, given with due care, in a genuinely unforeseeable reaction, is a **therapeutic misadventure**, not negligence.

- ▶ This distinction is judged by the ***Bolam*** standard — whether the doctor exercised the ordinary skill and care of a competent practitioner.
- ▶ Anaphylaxis (to anaesthetic agents, muscle relaxants, antibiotics or latex) must always be excluded in an **anaesthetic/operative death** autopsy.
- ▶ Any such unnatural/sudden death requires a police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ A magisterial inquiry may follow under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The doctor's opinion on cause of death is given as **expert evidence under Section 45 Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ At autopsy, preserve **skin around the injection/sting site with a 5 cm margin** (frozen at -70°C).
- ▶ Preserve **femoral blood**, not cardiac blood, for tryptase — cardiac mast cells release tryptase non-specifically after trauma.
- ▶ Preserve **stomach contents** if a food allergen is suspected, and **serum for specific IgE**.
- ▶ A documented allergy history and valid informed consent protect the doctor.
- ▶ Their absence supports an inference of negligence, sometimes argued as *res ipsa loquitur* ("the thing speaks for itself").
- ▶ **Vaccination deaths**: adverse reactions occur in about **one in one lakh immunisations**, with death from immediate or delayed anaphylaxis.
- ▶ **Mismatched blood transfusion** kills through a **Type II** cytotoxic reaction, not Type I.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Pathogenesis flow diagram:** *Allergen (1st exposure) → B-lymphocyte/plasma cell → specific IgE → IgE binds mast cell/basophil (sensitisation); then allergen (2nd exposure) → cross-links IgE → mast-cell degranulation → primary mediators (histamine, tryptase, heparin) and secondary mediators (leukotrienes, prostaglandins, PAF) → bronchospasm + vasodilatation + capillary leak → laryngeal oedema / shock / death.*
- ▶ **Autopsy sketch of the upper airway and lungs:** label *laryngeal and epiglottic oedema (fades after death), mucus plugging of bronchi, hyperinflated lungs, petechiae in airway mucosa, eosinophil infiltration of bronchial walls, injection/sting mark on skin.*

♦ ♦ ♦

Blood grouping and Rh-Incompatibility

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ **Blood grouping** classifies red cells by their inherited antigens (agglutinogens) and matching serum antibodies (agglutinins).
- ▶ The ABO and Rh (Rhesus) systems matter most, both clinically and forensically.
- ▶ **Rh-incompatibility** occurs when an Rh-negative mother carries an Rh-positive fetus, or an Rh-negative recipient receives Rh-positive blood.

- ▶ Exposure to the foreign **Rh (D) antigen** triggers maternal **isoimmunisation** — antibody formation against it.
- ▶ The result is **haemolytic disease of the fetus/newborn (erythroblastosis fetalis)** or a haemolytic transfusion reaction.
- ▶ Forensically, blood groups are Mendelian markers of identity and paternity, and Rh-incompatibility is a recognised cause of fetal/neonatal death.

Basis and classification of blood groups

- ▶ **Antigens (agglutinogens)**: over 400 exist, sit on the red-cell membrane, and appear early in fetal life.
- ▶ **Antibodies (agglutinins)**: present in serum; they agglutinate (clump) red cells carrying the matching antigen.
- ▶ **Inheritance** follows Mendelian principles — one gene per system from each parent.
- ▶ A person may be **homozygous** (genes alike) or **heterozygous** (genes different).
- ▶ **Four major forensic blood-group systems**:
 - Red-cell antigens.
 - White-cell antigens (HLA).
 - Serum-protein polymorphisms.
 - Red-cell enzyme polymorphisms.

ABO system

- ▶ Four groups — **A, B, AB, O** — from two agglutinogens, A and B, each person carrying two genes (one per parent).
- ▶ **A and B are dominant, O is recessive.**
- ▶ Group **O** is more correctly **group H** — there is no true O antigen.
- ▶ The rare **Bombay (HH) phenotype** lacks A, B and H antigens entirely.

Blood group	Agglutinogen (red cell)	Agglutinin (serum)
A	A	Anti-B
B	B	Anti-A
AB	A and B	None
O	None (group H)	Anti-A and Anti-B

- ▶ **Other forensic systems**: MNSs (M, N, subgroup S) and P, Kell, Lutheran, Duffy, Kidd — used mainly in paternity testing.

The Rh (Rhesus) system

- ▶ **Discovered in 1939** by Levine and Stetson in a woman who had a stillbirth, then reacted to her own husband's ABO-compatible blood.
- ▶ **Named Rh in 1940** because the antibody was raised using *Rhesus monkey* (*Macacus rhesus*) red cells.

- ▶ **Rh antibodies are NOT naturally present in serum** — the key difference from ABO; they form only after exposure via transfusion or pregnancy.
- ▶ **Antigen complex:** C/c, D/d and E/e.
- ▶ The '**d**' gene is **amorphic** — no detectable antigen, so no anti-d serum exists.
- ▶ Rh antigens are detectable in the fetus from about **6 weeks** of pregnancy.
- ▶ **Clinical typing turns on the D antigen:** cells carrying D = **Rh-positive**; without D = **Rh-negative**.
- ▶ **Indians are 90–96% Rh-positive** — Rh-negativity is uncommon in India.
- ▶ **Two naming systems:**
 - **Fisher–Race** names the antigens C, D, E (notation CDE/DCE) and proposes three linked loci — still used routinely.
 - **Wiener** calls them agglutinogens from a single locus (notation Rh-Hr) — largely superseded.
- ▶ **Modern view (Tippett, 1986):** two genes on chromosome 1 — **RHD** (D antigen) and **RHCE** (C/c and E/e).

Rh-incompatibility and haemolytic disease of the fetus/newborn

- ▶ **Mechanism:** an Rh-negative mother carries an Rh-positive fetus, the D antigen inherited from an Rh-positive father.
- ▶ Fetal Rh-positive red cells leak into the maternal circulation, mainly at **delivery** (also after abortion, amniocentesis or antepartum haemorrhage).
- ▶ The mother, having no natural anti-D, becomes **isoimmunised** and produces **anti-D of the IgG class**.
- ▶ **The first Rh-positive child is usually unaffected**, since sensitisation typically happens only at first delivery.
- ▶ In a **later Rh-positive pregnancy**, maternal anti-D (IgG) crosses the placenta — IgG being the only antibody class small enough to do so.
- ▶ Anti-D then haemolyses (breaks down) the fetal red cells.
- ▶ **Consequences:** fetal anaemia develops, with erythroblasts (immature red cells) released into circulation.
- ▶ This can progress to **hydrops fetalis** (fetal fluid overload) and intrauterine death.
- ▶ In a liveborn infant it causes severe neonatal **jaundice**.
- ▶ Unconjugated bilirubin deposits in the basal ganglia, causing **kernicterus**.
- ▶ Rh (and ABO) incompatibility is a recognised cause of **stillbirth and abortion**.
- ▶ **Incompatible transfusion:** an Rh-negative recipient given Rh-positive blood becomes sensitised, and a **haemolytic transfusion reaction** follows on re-exposure — ABO/Rh mismatches cause about 1–2% of transfusion reactions.
- ▶ **Prevention:** giving **anti-D immunoglobulin** to the Rh-negative mother after delivery (or after abortion/other sensitising events).

Detection, persistence and grouping of stains/tissues

- ▶ **Confirming blood and species:** the precipitin test (Uhlenhuth) uses antihuman serum to prove human origin.
- ▶ A positive ring appears within 10 minutes and is read within half an hour; doubtful reactions are read as **negative**.
- ▶ **ABO grouping of stains:** tube method, tile/plate method, absorption-inhibition, absorption-elution, and the mixed agglutination test.
- ▶ The **Lattes crust test** adds known A, B, O cells to a dried crust to detect the antibody present.
- ▶ **ABO specificity in a stain lasts almost indefinitely.**
- ▶ **MNS and Rh specificity is lost within 3–5 weeks.**
- ▶ About **150 mg** of stained material (or ~75 mg dried blood) is needed for grouping.
- ▶ **Secretors (~80% of people)** secrete ABH substances in body fluids **except CSF** — allowing grouping from saliva, semen, sweat and urine.
- ▶ The remaining ~20% are **non-secretors**.
- ▶ **Rh antigens** are widely present in tissues but **not in body fluids**, except amniotic fluid.
- ▶ ABO can also be recovered from bone marrow, dental pulp, hair (with bulb), nails and soft tissue.
- ▶ Heat above 200 °C and bacterial decomposition destroy the antigens.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Identity:** a rare combination of blood groups can identify a person almost as reliably as a fingerprint; common groups have little discriminating value.
- ▶ **Disputed paternity/maternity:** blood groups can **exclude but never positively prove** parentage.
- ▶ An agglutinin cannot appear in a child unless present in one of the parents.
- ▶ **Power of exclusion rises as more markers are tested:**
 - ABO alone: about **18%** (roughly 1 in 6).
 - ABO + MNSs: about **60%**.
 - Adding red-cell antigens and serum proteins: about **82%**.
 - Adding red-cell enzymes: about **94%**.
 - Adding several HLA systems: about **98.5%**.
 - **DNA fingerprinting:** positively fixes or excludes paternity (near 100%).
- ▶ **Sampling rules:**
 - No transfusion within the last **3 months**.
 - Infants tested at **6 months or later**.
 - Mother, child and putative father tested in the **same laboratory, same day, same reagent batch**.
- ▶ **Linking suspect, victim and scene:** matching a stain's group to the suspect's and victim's can establish or exclude their association — e.g. blood under nails after throttling, or stains on weapons/vehicles.

- ▶ **Cause of death:** incompatible blood transfusion (ABO/Rh) is an established cause of death.
- ▶ **Autopsy findings:**
 - **Haemoglobinuric nephrosis** — acute tubular necrosis with haemoglobin casts.
 - A positive **Coombs test**.
 - Low haptoglobin and raised methaemalbuminaemia.
- ▶ **Rh-incompatibility deaths** (stillbirth, abortion, neonatal death from erythroblastosis) can raise questions of viability, live-birth and natural-versus-unnatural death.
- ▶ **Specimens:** blood for grouping/DNA is soaked onto clean filter paper or cotton gauze and dried — never fixed in formalin.
- ▶ Medical examination of an accused is done under **Section 53/53A CrPC 1973 (now Section 51/52 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Examination of a rape victim is done under **Section 164A CrPC 1973 (now Section 184 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The doctor's grouping report is tendered as **expert opinion under Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **ABO antigen–antibody chart:** four boxes for groups A, B, AB, O, each showing its red-cell agglutinin and serum agglutinin; add a row for slide-agglutination reactions with anti-A, anti-B and anti-D antisera.
- ▶ **Rh-incompatibility flow diagram:** Rh-negative mother → Rh-positive father → Rh-positive fetus → fetomaternal haemorrhage at delivery (1st pregnancy) → maternal anti-D (IgG) sensitisation → 2nd Rh-positive pregnancy → anti-D crosses placenta → fetal red-cell haemolysis → anaemia/hydrops fetalis/kernicterus.
- ▶ Side-arrow: anti-D immunoglobulin prophylaxis blocking sensitisation.

♦ ♦ ♦

Blood transfusion

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2016 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ Blood transfusion is the intravenous administration of whole blood or a component (red cells, platelets, plasma, cryoprecipitate) from donor to recipient.
- ▶ It rests on blood-group serology — red cells carry inherited antigens (agglutinogens), and plasma carries antibodies (agglutinins) that agglutinate (clump) incompatible cells.
- ▶ **Landsteiner** described the ABO system in **1900–1901** — not 1930, which was only his Nobel Prize year (a common exam date-trap).
- ▶ Forensically it matters three ways: as a procedure that can kill, as a ground of medical negligence, and as the basis of forensic serology (stains, paternity, identity).

Blood-group systems relevant to transfusion

- ▶ **Red-cell antigens** appear early in fetal life; over 400 specificities exist across many genetic systems.
- ▶ Agglutinins appear later in fetal life. At birth, ABO antibodies present are maternal IgG that crossed the placenta; these vanish in the first ten days, after which the infant makes its own.
- ▶ **ABO system:** four groups — A, B, AB, O — from three allelic genes (A and B dominant, O recessive), giving genotypes AA, AO, BB, BO, AB, OO.
- ▶ ABO mismatch is the commonest cause of a transfusion reaction.

Blood group	Agglutinogen (red cell)	Agglutinin (serum)
A	A	Anti-B
B	B	Anti-A
AB	A and B	None — <i>universal recipient</i>
O	None (H only)	Anti-A and Anti-B — <i>universal donor</i>

- ▶ **Bombay phenotype (HH / "Oh"):**
 - Lacks A, B and H antigens on red cells and ABH secretions.
 - Carries potent anti-H as well as anti-A and anti-B.
 - Can be transfused only with other Bombay-group blood.
 - Mis-typed as group O on routine grouping — a recognised pitfall.
- ▶ **Rh system:** antigens Cc, Dd, Ee, with D the most antigenic.
 - Rh antibodies never occur naturally; they form only after exposure, by transfusion or pregnancy.
 - Detectable in the fetus from about 6 weeks.
 - Causes haemolytic disease of the newborn (erythroblastosis fetalis), a cause of stillbirth and the basis of neonatal exchange transfusion.
- ▶ **Other systems** used in transfusion and identity work: MNSs, Kell, Lutheran, Duffy, Kidd, HLA, and serum-protein/enzyme polymorphisms.

Principles of safe transfusion

- ▶ **Pre-transfusion testing:** ABO and Rh(D) grouping of donor and recipient, antibody screening, and a cross-match (mixing recipient serum with donor cells to confirm compatibility).
- ▶ **Donor screening:** every unit must test negative for HIV-1 and HIV-2 before being declared fit — a legal requirement in India.
- ▶ **Bedside checks:** confirm patient identity, match the unit label against the compatibility report, and take informed consent.
- ▶ **Paternity-testing rule:** neither party should have had a transfusion within 3 months before a disputed-paternity blood sample, since transfused cells distort the apparent group.

Hazards / complications of blood transfusion

- ▶ Reactions occur in about 1–2% of transfusions.
- ▶ ABO and Rh mismatch cause most reactions; minor antigens need repeated exposure to build enough antibody.
- ▶ **Immunological reactions:**
 - Intravascular haemolysis (acute, from ABO mismatch) — the most feared.
 - Extravascular haemolysis.
 - Sensitivity reactions to donor white cells, platelets and plasma.
- ▶ **Non-immunological reactions:**
 - Circulatory (volume) overload.
 - Coagulation defects.
 - Hyperkalaemia and citrate toxicity in massive transfusion.
 - Transmitted infection — syphilis, hepatitis, toxoplasmosis, HIV/AIDS.
 - Air embolism (especially under positive pressure), hypothermia, rigors.
- ▶ **Acute intravascular haemolytic reaction:** recipient anti-A/anti-B antibodies destroy the transfused cells.
 - Causes fever, rigors, loin pain, hypotension and haemoglobinuria (haemoglobin in the urine).
 - Also causes disseminated intravascular coagulation (widespread clotting that exhausts clotting factors) and acute renal failure.
 - It is a recognised iatrogenic cause of sudden death.
- ▶ **Commonest cause of a mismatch is clerical, not scientific:**
 - Plain clerical error.
 - Confusing "group A serum" for "anti-B serum."
 - Not checking the bottle against the compatibility report.
 - Similarly-named patients in the same ward.

Investigation of a suspected transfusion death

- ▶ **Haematological:** intravascular haemolysis raises free haemoglobin and methaemalbumin and lowers haptoglobin (the protein that normally clears free haemoglobin); extravascular haemolysis instead raises unconjugated bilirubin.
- ▶ **Urine:** haemoglobinuria with urobilin, urobilinogen and red-cell casts.
- ▶ **Serological:** a 2% saline red-cell suspension may show agglutinates (clumps), and the Coombs (antiglobulin) test is positive.
- ▶ IgA-specific antibodies and eosinophilia mark sensitivity to donor leucocytes, platelets and plasma.
- ▶ **Bacteriological:** residual donor blood may grow organisms on culture.
- ▶ **Autopsy:** haemoglobinuric nephrosis (acute tubular necrosis with haemoglobin casts) marks acute haemolysis.

- ▶ Oedematous lungs point to circulatory overload; air in the right ventricle confirms air embolism.
- ▶ Preserve the retained donor blood and the giving-set for typing and culture.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Giving an incompatible or wrong unit is a classic act of negligence.
- ▶ It is a textbook example of *res ipsa loquitur* ("the thing speaks for itself"), letting the patient prove the case without another doctor's expert evidence.
- ▶ It can trigger civil liability (Consumer Protection Act 2019), criminal liability, and vicarious/corporate liability of the hospital.
- ▶ **Causing death by negligence — Section 106(1) BNS 2023 (formerly Section 304A IPC 1860):** punishes a rash or negligent act causing death.
 - A registered medical practitioner doing a medical procedure faces a reduced ceiling of **two years'** imprisonment.
- ▶ **Examination of an accused — Section 51(1) BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 53 CrPC 1973):** lets a registered medical practitioner examine an arrested person at the request of a police officer **not below the rank of sub-inspector**.
 - The statutory Explanation expressly covers examination of blood and blood-stains and DNA profiling.
 - BNSS 2023 adds only one change — the report must go to the investigating officer without delay; the requesting-officer rank is unchanged.
- ▶ **Expert opinion — Section 39(1) BSA 2023 (formerly Section 45 IEA 1872):** admits the serologist's or physician's opinion on grouping, cross-match and the reaction as expert evidence.
- ▶ **Documentary evidence — Section 2(1)(e) BSA 2023 (formerly Section 3 IEA 1872):** covers "all documents including electronic or digital records produced for the inspection of the Court" — preserve the consent form, cross-match report and unit label as documentary evidence, and the residual unit and giving-set as material exhibits.
- ▶ **Infection transmission:** transfusion-transmitted HIV, hepatitis B/C and syphilis raise negligence and statutory-screening issues; mandatory negative HIV-1/HIV-2 screening of every unit is the legal safeguard.
- ▶ **Consent:** transfusion needs informed consent; a competent adult may refuse it on religious grounds (e.g. Jehovah's Witness), but an unconscious emergency permits life-saving transfusion without it.
- ▶ **Cause of death:** distinguish incompatible-transfusion haemolysis from circulatory overload, air embolism, citrate toxicity, anaphylaxis, bacterial contamination, or a coincidental natural cause.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **ABO compatibility chart:** donor groups (O, A, B, AB) against recipient groups, with arrows showing permissible flow.
 - Label O as universal donor and AB as universal recipient, and mark the antigen and antibody of each group.
- ▶ **Pathophysiology of acute haemolytic transfusion reaction** — a labelled flow chart:
 - Incompatible donor cells enter the circulation and bind recipient anti-A/anti-B antibodies.
 - This triggers complement-mediated intravascular haemolysis, releasing free haemoglobin and methaemalbumin.
 - Haemoglobinuria and haemoglobinuric nephrosis (acute tubular necrosis) follow, alongside DIC.
 - The end result is acute renal failure or death.



Briefly describe pathophysiology of thrombus formation. Differentiate between the antemortem and postmortem clots

Asked in: Paper I Dec 2023 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ A **thrombus** is a solid or semi-solid mass of platelets, fibrin, and trapped blood cells.
- ▶ It forms **within the living circulation** — so it is always an **antemortem** event.
- ▶ A **clot** is simply coagulated blood.
- ▶ A clot can form in life (in static blood) or, far more often in forensic work, **after death** as a **postmortem clot**.
- ▶ Telling an antemortem thrombus from a postmortem clot at autopsy has major medico-legal value.
- ▶ An antemortem thrombus (pulmonary embolus, coronary thrombus, sagittal sinus thrombus) can itself be the **cause of death**.
- ▶ A postmortem clot is only an **artefact** with no causal significance.

Pathophysiology — Virchow's triad

Thrombus formation in a living vessel is explained by three interacting factors, **Virchow's triad**:

- ▶ **Endothelial injury:** loss of the protective vessel lining exposes collagen and tissue factor.
 - Dominant factor in **arterial and cardiac** thrombosis.
 - Causes: atherosclerotic plaque rupture, penetrating trauma to a vessel wall, endocarditis, inflammation.
- ▶ **Abnormal blood flow:** normal smooth (laminar) flow keeps platelets away from the vessel wall.

- **Stasis** (sluggish flow) occurs in immobilised limbs, varicose veins, atrial fibrillation, after surgery or fracture.
- **Turbulence** occurs at branch points, aneurysms, and stenosed valves.
- Both bring platelets into contact with the endothelium and trigger its activation.
- Stasis is the dominant factor in **venous** thrombosis.
- ▶ **Hypercoagulability**: an increased tendency of the blood to clot.
 - Inherited causes: factor V Leiden, antithrombin or protein C/S deficiency.
 - Acquired causes: pregnancy and the puerperium, malignancy, severe burns, dehydration, oral contraceptives.
 - Coagulability also rises during the **agonal period of dying**, producing **agonal thrombi**.

Sequence of thrombus formation:

- ▶ Endothelial injury exposes the underlying collagen.
- ▶ Platelets adhere to the exposed collagen.
- ▶ Platelets activate and aggregate into a primary platelet plug.
- ▶ The coagulation cascade is triggered and generates **thrombin**.
- ▶ Thrombin converts soluble fibrinogen into insoluble **fibrin**.
- ▶ The fibrin mesh stabilises the platelet mass and traps red and white cells.
- ▶ The thrombus may then **propagate, embolise, organise and recanalise**, or undergo **lysis**.

Lines of Zahn: In flowing antemortem blood, the thrombus is laid down in alternating pale layers (platelets and fibrin) and dark layers (red cells). These laminations are the single most reliable proof that a mass formed in moving blood, in life.

Types of clot found at autopsy

- ▶ **Antemortem thrombus**: firm, dry, granular, friable, adherent to the vessel wall, laminated with lines of Zahn.
- ▶ **Agonal thrombi**: form during the terminal phase of slow dying (for example, lobar pneumonia), when coagulability is raised.
 - Firm, stringy, tough, and pale-yellow.
 - Found chiefly in the **right side of the heart** — the atrial appendage, ventricular apex, or angles of the tricuspid valve.
 - Extend into the pulmonary artery as a **tree-like cast**.
- ▶ **Postmortem clots**: form after death, once postmortem fluidity is overcome.
 - **Black-currant-jelly clot**: rapid clotting; red cells have no time to settle; lumpy, moist, uniformly dark red.
 - **Chicken-fat clot**: slow clotting; red cells sediment out, giving a lower dark-red layer and an upper pale-yellow layer of serum and fibrin.
- ▶ **Cardiac polyps**: postmortem fibrinous, stalked clots within the heart chambers.

Postmortem fluidity and timing

- ▶ Blood is usually **fluid** soon after death; postmortem clotting sets in later.

- ▶ Postmortem clotting begins at about **1 hour** after death.
- ▶ Small capillaries are completely clotted by about **8 hours**.
- ▶ Appreciable clotting takes a **minimum of 4–6 hours**.
- ▶ Clotting and **fibrinolysis** (clot breakdown) proceed simultaneously.
- ▶ So a body may be found completely clotted, completely fluid, or partly both.
- ▶ Postmortem fluidity is caused by **fibrinolysins** released from the vascular endothelium.
- ▶ Blood characteristically stays **fluid and incoagulable** in:
 - Asphyxial deaths.
 - Septicaemia.
 - Carbon monoxide poisoning.
 - Large doses of **anticoagulants**.
 - **Hypofibrinogenaemia** (amniotic-fluid embolism, retained abortion, puerperal sepsis).

Differentiation: antemortem thrombus vs postmortem clot

Feature	Antemortem thrombus	Postmortem clot
Lines of Zahn	Present	Absent
Colour	Uniform greyish-red	Two layers — dark-red (currant-jelly) + yellow (chicken-fat)
Consistency	Firm, dry, granular, friable	Gelatinous, moist, rubbery, soft
Shape	Does not take the vessel's shape	Forms a cast of the vessel
Stripping	Shreddy; peels off in layers	Homogeneous jelly; cannot be stripped
Adherence to wall	Firmly adherent	Weak or absent
Vessel surface after removal	Roughened	Smooth, healthy-looking
On slicing the lung	Emboli project / pour out	Does not project or pour out
Medico-legal meaning	May be the cause of death	An artefact , no causal value

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ Two side-by-side clot diagrams:
 - **Antemortem thrombus** — uniform greyish-red mass, firmly adherent to the vessel wall, showing lines of Zahn, friable texture.
 - **Postmortem clot** — soft gelatinous cast lying free in the lumen, showing the upper yellow chicken-fat layer and the lower dark-red currant-jelly layer.
 - Label: vessel wall, lumen, lines of Zahn, point of attachment, chicken-fat layer, currant-jelly layer, vessel cast.
- ▶ **Virchow's triad triangle**: vertices labelled **Endothelial injury**, **Abnormal blood flow**, and **Hypercoagulability**; centre labelled **Thrombus**.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ An antemortem thrombus can itself be fatal — massive **pulmonary thromboembolism**, **coronary thrombosis**, or **cerebral/carotid thrombosis**.
- ▶ Misreading a postmortem clot as a thrombus (or vice versa) can lead to a wrong cause-of-death opinion.
- ▶ Carotid intimal injury from a stab or bullet wound can trigger a thrombus that later embolises to the **middle cerebral artery**.
- ▶ Femoral-vein thrombosis after a lower-limb injury can cause a **fatal pulmonary embolus days later**, raising the question of death **due to** the original injury.
- ▶ The **superior sagittal sinus** is opened at autopsy and checked for an antemortem thrombus.
 - Such a thrombus raises back-pressure in the bridging veins (small veins linking the brain surface to the sinus).
 - This back-pressure can itself cause **subdural haemorrhage** — a natural mimic of trauma.
- ▶ Fluid, incoagulable blood at autopsy is a non-specific sign of **asphyxial death** or of **CO poisoning/septicaemia**.
- ▶ Postmortem clots must be removed before weighing the heart.
- ▶ Fibrin clots trap red cells unevenly, which can give **spurious toxicology results** on sampled blood.
- ▶ Where an injury seems insufficient to kill but a natural thrombotic process (for example, coronary thrombosis) supervenes, death may be held to be **precipitated by the injury**.
- ▶ This is a key opinion under the **Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita (BNS) 2023** — culpable homicide/murder, **Sections 100–105 BNS 2023** (formerly **Sections 299–304 IPC 1860**), and **Sections 101 and 103 BNS 2023** (formerly **Sections 300 and 302 IPC 1860**).

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ **Virchow's triad** = endothelial injury + abnormal flow (stasis/turbulence) + hypercoagulability.
- ▶ Stasis dominates venous thrombosis; endothelial injury dominates arterial/cardiac thrombosis.
- ▶ **Lines of Zahn** = hallmark of an antemortem thrombus; their absence points to a postmortem clot.

- ▶ **Agonal thrombi** = pale-yellow, stringy, right-heart, tree-like cast into the pulmonary artery.
- ▶ Blood stays fluid in asphyxia, septicaemia, CO poisoning, anticoagulant overdose, and hypofibrinogenaemia.



Circle of Willis

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2016 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ The **Circle of Willis** (*circulus arteriosus cerebri*) is an anastomotic arterial ring at the **base of the brain**.
- ▶ It lies in the subarachnoid space, encircling the optic chiasma, infundibulum and interpeduncular fossa.
- ▶ It joins the **two internal carotid arteries** (anterior circulation) with the **basilar-vertebral system** (posterior circulation), so blood can still reach the brain if one feeding vessel is blocked.
- ▶ Forensically it matters because it is the **commonest site of berry aneurysms**.
- ▶ Berry aneurysm rupture is the leading cause of **spontaneous basal subarachnoid haemorrhage (SAH)**.
- ▶ It is also examined at autopsy for **air embolism**.
- ▶ It recurs as a **medico-legal problem** when an aneurysm ruptures after a trivial assault or fall.

Anatomical composition

- ▶ The ring is formed by **nine arteries**.
- ▶ **Anterior part**: two anterior cerebral arteries joined by one anterior communicating artery.
- ▶ **Lateral part**: the two internal carotid arteries.
- ▶ **Posterolateral part**: two posterior communicating arteries, each linking a carotid to a posterior cerebral artery.
- ▶ **Posterior part**: two posterior cerebral arteries, formed by bifurcation of the basilar artery (itself formed by union of the two vertebral arteries).
- ▶ Only three vessels are true "communicating" channels: the anterior communicating artery and the two posterior communicating arteries.
- ▶ **Outflow**: three paired cerebral arteries — anterior, middle and posterior — supply each hemisphere.
- ▶ The **middle cerebral artery** arises from the circle but is not one of its nine forming vessels; it is the largest branch of the internal carotid and a frequent aneurysm site at its first bifurcation.
- ▶ Function: the circle is a **collateral channel**, most important when a major artery is gradually occluded.
- ▶ A complete, symmetrical circle is present in only a minority of people; common variants (hypoplastic/absent posterior communicating artery, hypoplastic anterior communicating artery, a "fetal" posterior cerebral artery) predispose to aneurysm formation and focal infarction.

Berry (saccular) aneurysms — the forensic core

- ▶ Berry aneurysms are thin-walled saccular outpouchings at the **bifurcations** of the circle.
- ▶ They form where the muscular wall layer is congenitally deficient and shear stress is highest.
- ▶ They are acquired lesions on a congenital weak-spot background, growing with age and hypertension — **not present at birth**.
- ▶ They cause **more than 50% of spontaneous (non-traumatic) subarachnoid haemorrhage**.
- ▶ About **90% lie in the anterior (carotid) half** of the circle, and they are **least common on the vertebral artery**.
- ▶ Relative incidence by site:

Site	Relative incidence
Anterior communicating artery	~30%
Middle cerebral artery (bifurcation)	~20%
Posterior communicating artery	~8%
Internal carotid bifurcation	~8%
Posterior inferior cerebellar artery	~3%

- ▶ Aneurysms are **often multiple** — record every one, ruptured or not, at autopsy.
- ▶ **Charcot–Bouchard aneurysms** are a different lesion: tiny microaneurysms at bifurcations of small, deep penetrating arteries.
- ▶ They cause **hypertensive intracerebral haemorrhage**, commonest in the putamen (~55%), then lobar white matter, thalamus, pons and cerebellum.
- ▶ Do not confuse these with a basal SAH from a ruptured berry aneurysm.

Rupture and death

- ▶ A ruptured berry aneurysm causes a **basal subarachnoid haemorrhage**.
- ▶ Onset: sudden "**thunderclap**" headache, neck stiffness and vomiting.
- ▶ Then collapse and rapid cardiorespiratory failure as clot coats the basal cisterns and brainstem.
- ▶ Rupture can be precipitated by a **sudden rise in blood pressure** — emotional stress, assault, exertion, straining or intercourse.
- ▶ This is exactly why it generates medico-legal disputes.
- ▶ **Traumatic basal SAH** is a separate entity, from laceration of the carotid, vertebral or basilar artery at the skull base.
- ▶ It can be **immediately fatal if more than 30 mL** of blood is lost.
- ▶ The **vertebral artery** is typically injured by a blow to the side of the neck, road accidents, falls or cervical manipulation.

Autopsy examination

- ▶ The circle is inspected when the brain is removed, after stripping the dura from the skull base.
- ▶ It must be examined **before formalin fixation**.

- ▶ **Demonstrating an aneurysm:** pour a gentle, constant stream of water over the base of the brain while teasing the vessels apart by blunt dissection (forceps or scalpel handle).
- ▶ Record its site, size, whether ruptured, and the site of rupture.
- ▶ **SAH vs artefact:** subdural blood washes away under running water.
- ▶ Subarachnoid blood stains the brain red and does **not** wash off.
- ▶ Artefactual SAH — from vessel damage during brain removal, or decomposition — must be excluded.
- ▶ **Air/gas embolism:** before removing the brain, clamp the internal carotid and basilar arteries along with the neck vessels.
- ▶ Then inspect the meningeal vessels and the Circle of Willis for gas bubbles under water.
- ▶ Bubbles are meaningful only if the neck vessels were intact and clamped first.
- ▶ Gas is also seen in **decompression sickness** ("the staggers") after rapid ascent.
- ▶ In suspected vascular natural death, record the contents of the Circle of Willis, its major branches and the basilar artery.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — Circle of Willis (basal view):** the polygonal ring at the base of the brain.
- ▶ Label: anterior communicating artery; anterior cerebral artery (both sides); internal carotid artery (both sides); middle cerebral artery (both sides); posterior communicating artery (both sides); posterior cerebral artery (both sides); basilar artery; vertebral artery (both sides); optic chiasma at the centre.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — Common berry aneurysm sites:** same ring with dots marking sites and incidence — anterior communicating (~30%), middle cerebral bifurcation (~20%), posterior communicating (~8%), carotid bifurcation (~8%), posterior inferior cerebellar (~3%).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Spontaneous vs provoked rupture in assault:** the common dispute is whether a basal SAH was spontaneous or precipitated by an assault, fight or fall.
- ▶ Possibility one: a sudden rise in blood pressure during assault or exertion ruptured a pre-existing aneurysm.
- ▶ Possibility two: a silently leaking aneurysm caused neurological or behavioural change, leading to a quarrel, fall or accident.
- ▶ Possibility three: alcohol caused aggression, a fight and a fall ending in rupture.
- ▶ The pathologist must opine whether death was **natural, accidental or homicidal** — a frequent causation question for the court.
- ▶ **Traumatic basal SAH from neck blows:** rupture of the vertebral or carotid artery after a blow to the side of the neck can be immediately fatal with little or no external injury (>30 mL).
- ▶ It is confirmed by deep dissection of the upper cervical spine and angiography; failure to dissect the neck can let a homicidal blow go undetected.

- ▶ A ruptured aneurysm is a classic cause of sudden natural death, requiring a police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)** or a magisterial inquest under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Where assault is alleged, the charge turns on **Section 300/302 IPC (now Sections 101/103 BNS 2023)** [murder] or **Sections 299/304 IPC (now Sections 100/105 BNS 2023)** [culpable homicide].
- ▶ The doctor's opinion on whether trauma caused, or merely coincided with, the rupture is decisive.
- ▶ The pathologist deposes as an **expert witness under Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.



Define embolism, classify and discuss in detail about Fat embolism with medicolegal importance

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2017 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ An **embolus** is any abnormal mass (solid, liquid, or gaseous) carried in the blood stream to lodge in a vessel too small for it to pass.
- ▶ **Embolism** is this mass travelling and blocking a vessel, causing ischaemia, infarction, or sudden death if the pulmonary or cerebral circulation is occluded.
- ▶ Embolism matters forensically because it is a common **delayed cause of death after trauma** (long-bone fracture, crush injury, burns, surgery).
- ▶ **Fat embolism** — fat globules impacting the lungs and brain after fracture of a marrow-containing bone — is the classic example of this group.

Classification of embolism

- ▶ **By physical nature:**
 - **Solid:** thrombus (thromboembolism, commonest), bone-marrow, liver, and brain-tissue fragments, tumour cells, atheromatous debris, foreign bodies (bullets, pellets), septic vegetations (endocarditis).
 - **Liquid:** fat (from fractured marrow or crushed fat tissue), amniotic fluid.
 - **Gaseous:** air embolism, gas of decompression sickness (Caisson's disease).
- ▶ **By direction of travel:**
 - **Pulmonary (venous-side):** most thrombo-, fat, air, and amniotic emboli — lodge in the pulmonary arteries.
 - **Systemic (arterial):** travels from the left heart or arteries to the brain, kidney, or limbs.
 - **Paradoxical:** a venous embolus crosses to the arterial side through a septal defect or a patent foramen ovale.
 - **Retrograde:** travels against the normal direction of blood flow.
- ▶ **By origin:** traumatic (following injury) or non-traumatic/natural (disease-related).

- ▶ **Thromboembolism** is the commonest type overall.
- ▶ A venous thrombus (leg/femoral vein, after immobilisation or injury) forms in about **10–20 days**, then detaches to the pulmonary artery.
- ▶ A large embolus blocking the **pulmonary trunk** kills within minutes by **vagal inhibition**, acute asphyxia, or acute *cor pulmonale* — with **no lung infarction**.
- ▶ Infarction occurs only when a smaller segmental pulmonary vessel is blocked instead of the main trunk.

Fat embolism — causes

- ▶ **Fat embolism** is free, neutral fat globules circulating in blood and impacting chiefly in the **pulmonary capillaries**.
- ▶ When forced further, the fat reaches the **brain, kidneys, and myocardium**.
- ▶ **Commonest cause**: fracture of long bones (femur, tibia) or other marrow-containing bones, releasing liquid marrow fat into torn veins.
- ▶ **Severe crushing** of fat-rich regions (buttocks, breasts) can lacerate a vein and release fat.
- ▶ **Severe antemortem burns** may produce genuine fat embolism — this must be told apart from a postmortem artefact.
- ▶ **Non-traumatic causes**: diabetes, fatty liver (alcoholics), pancreatitis, osteomyelitis, septicaemia, steroid therapy, blood transfusion, liposuction, sickle-cell disease, and decompression sickness.

Fat embolism — pathophysiology and clinical features

- ▶ Fat globules enter torn veins, travel to the right heart, and obstruct the **pulmonary capillary bed**.
- ▶ If fat crosses the lungs, or passes through a patent foramen ovale, it reaches the systemic circulation.
- ▶ **Pulmonary fat embolism** is usually silent — small amounts occur after most bone injuries.
- ▶ Fatal pulmonary fat embolism shows a characteristic **latent (symptom-free) interval** after the trauma.
- ▶ After the interval, **cyanosis, precordial pain**, a rapid pulse and respiration, **hyperpyrexia** (very high fever), and **petechial haemorrhages** appear.
- ▶ Petechiae typically appear in the **conjunctivae, chest, and axillae**, developing about **8 to 20 hours** after injury.
- ▶ Other findings: thrombocytopenia, fat in the urine/sputum, and renal failure.
- ▶ **Death from severe dyspnoea occurs about 30 hours after the trauma**.
- ▶ **Cerebral fat embolism** develops when enough fat crosses the lungs to affect the brain.
- ▶ Clusters of petechial haemorrhages appear on the chest, shoulders, and neck about **14 to 18 hours** after injury.
- ▶ Death follows in **1 to 2 days**, once the vital centres of the brain are involved.

Autopsy and laboratory diagnosis

- ▶ **External examination**: petechial haemorrhages on the skin of the chest, neck, face, and axillae, plus conjunctival and retinal petechiae.

- ▶ **Gross finding:** dissecting the **pulmonary artery under water** at evisceration lets accumulated fat droplets escape and float — a simple bedside demonstration.
- ▶ **Rapid screening test:** compress a piece of lung tissue in **20% caustic potash (KOH)** under a coverslip.
- ▶ After a few minutes the red cells dissolve, and fat appears as **highly refractile plugs with a narrow dark edge** inside the pulmonary capillaries.
- ▶ **Confirmatory test:** frozen sections of lung, brain, kidney, and myocardium, stained with a fat stain — *Sudan III/IV*, oil red O, or osmic acid.
- ▶ Routine paraffin processing dissolves fat, so **frozen sections are essential**.
- ▶ In the brain, each petechial lesion is a **ring of red cells around a necrotic centre**, with a small arteriole plugged by a fat embolus at its core.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Vitality marker:** fat droplets in the blood prove the injury was inflicted **during life** (antemortem).
- ▶ **Exceptions:** burning and advanced putrefaction (liquefied fat from fat cells) can mimic this picture after death.
- ▶ Fat embolism is a **delayed cause of death after trauma**, alongside haemorrhage, renal failure, infection, and infarction.
- ▶ A fat-embolism death days after a road-traffic or assault fracture still legally links back to the original injury.
- ▶ **Artefact vs true embolism:** in severely burnt bodies, fat droplets in pulmonary vessels are a **postmortem charring artefact**, not antemortem embolism.
- ▶ **Cardiac massage / CPR** can drive fat into vessels even after circulation has stopped.
- ▶ Rib or sternal fractures during resuscitation can push **bone-marrow embolism** into the lungs — an iatrogenic artefact relevant when negligence is alleged.
- ▶ **Doctor's duties:** document all fractures and crush injuries, preserve frozen-section lung/brain blocks for fat stains, and correlate the latent interval with the time of the assault.
- ▶ Such trauma-linked deaths require an inquest and medico-legal autopsy under **Section 174 / 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 / 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ If the original injury was intentional, the charge may be **murder under Section 300 / 302 IPC (now Section 101 / 103 BNS 2023)** or **culpable homicide not amounting to murder under Section 299 / 304 IPC (now Section 100 / 105 BNS 2023)** — the fatal embolism forming part of the chain of causation.
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon's findings are given as **expert opinion under Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.

Air and amniotic-fluid embolism

- ▶ **Air embolism:** about **100 mL** of air under pressure causes fatal pulmonary air embolism; as little as **1–2 mL** in a cerebral vessel can be lethal systemically.

- ▶ Classic causes: incised neck wounds (jugular/subclavian veins), criminal abortion, faulty intravenous technique, and Caisson's disease.
- ▶ Diagnosis is the **under-water test** — open the heart/pulmonary artery under water (or, for the cerebral form, the skull) and look for bright-red frothy blood and rising bubbles.
- ▶ **Amniotic-fluid embolism** is an obstetric cause of sudden maternal death; the resulting **hypofibrinogenaemia** (a drop in the clotting protein fibrinogen) keeps the blood fluid at autopsy.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Pulmonary fat embolism pathway:** a fractured femur with a torn marrow vein releasing fat globules that travel via the right atrium and ventricle into the pulmonary artery, plugging the pulmonary capillaries.
- ▶ Label the patent foramen ovale as the route to the systemic circulation.
- ▶ Mark the brain, kidney, and myocardium as the systemic target organs.
- ▶ **Histology box:** a small cerebral white-matter artery showing a necrotic centre, a ring of red blood cells, and the arteriole plugged by a refractile fat embolus.



Define Syncope. Discuss the causes, pathophysiology, clinical features, investigations, autopsy findings and Medicolegal importance of syncope

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2020 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Syncope** means death, or transient loss of consciousness, from primary failure of the heart, causing hypoxia and hypoperfusion of the brain.
- ▶ It is one of *Bichat's* three **modes of death**, the *tripod of life*.
 - **Coma:** brain fails first.
 - **Syncope:** heart fails first.
 - **Asphyxia:** lungs fail first.
- ▶ A "mode of death" is the physiological state at death, not the disease itself, so it is never an acceptable cause of death on a certificate.
- ▶ Clinically, "syncope" also means a brief, reversible loss of consciousness with full recovery; forensic interest lies chiefly when it turns fatal.

Modes of death (Bichat's tripod)

Mode	Organ failing first	Key causes	Typical autopsy findings
Coma	Brain	Head injury, cerebral haemorrhage, heatstroke, CNS poisons	Congestion of brain, meninges, lungs

Mode	Organ failing first	Key causes	Typical autopsy findings
Syncope	Heart	Heart disease, haemorrhage, vagal inhibition, cardiotoxic poisons	Pale organs, congested capillaries, splanchnic pooling
Asphyxia	Lungs	Airway occlusion, pneumonia, paralysis of respiratory centre	Cyanosis, petechial haemorrhages, visceral congestion

Causes of syncope

- ▶ **Anaemic (haemorrhagic) syncope:** sudden, severe blood loss empties the heart — ruptured aortic aneurysm, ruptured ectopic pregnancy, massive haematemesis.
- ▶ **Asthenic syncope:** the heart muscle is too weak to pump despite adequate blood — fatty degeneration, myocardial infarction, certain poisons.
- ▶ **Vagal inhibition:** reflex cardiac arrest from a minor peripheral stimulus, also called vasovagal shock or instantaneous physiological death.
- ▶ **Exhausting (debilitating) disease:** chronic wasting illness ending in terminal cardiac failure.
- ▶ **Structural causes of sudden cardiac death:**
 - Coronary atherosclerosis, 75% or more narrowing, even without thrombosis.
 - Myocardial infarction and coronary spasm.
 - Myocarditis (Aschoff bodies in rheumatic disease; diphtheritic toxic myocarditis).
 - Conduction-system lesions, and a heart weighing more than 420 g.
- ▶ **Toxic causes:** cardiotoxic poisons — aconite, oleander, digitalis, tobacco/nicotine, cyanide.
- ▶ **Clinical (non-fatal) syncope, by mechanism:**
 - **Reflex/neurally-mediated:** vasovagal faint, carotid-sinus hypersensitivity, situational triggers (cough, micturition, defaecation, swallowing).
 - **Orthostatic:** hypovolaemia, autonomic failure, drugs.
 - **Cardiac:** arrhythmias, or structural disease such as aortic stenosis or hypertrophic cardiomyopathy.

Pathophysiology

- ▶ Every type of syncope shares one final pathway: a sudden, critical fall in cerebral perfusion.
- ▶ Oxygen delivery to the brain drops below the level needed for consciousness; unrestored circulation leads to irreversible hypoxia and death.
- ▶ **Anaemic syncope:** massive blood loss reduces venous return, so the heart contracts on nearly empty chambers and output collapses.
- ▶ **Asthenic syncope:** the myocardium cannot generate enough output despite a full circulation — pump failure, ventricular fibrillation, or asystole.
- ▶ **Vagal inhibition — the key forensic mechanism:**

- A trivial, harmless stimulus to a sensitive area triggers excessive vagal discharge, causing sudden bradycardia, arrhythmia, or asystole, plus reflex vasodilatation and a fall in blood pressure.
- **Reflex pathway:** carotid sinus/body baroreceptors signal via **Hering's nerve** to the **glossopharyngeal nerve (IX)**, then the **nucleus tractus solitarius** in the medulla, which stimulates the **vagus nerve (X)** to slow or arrest the heart.
- Normal carotid-sinus pressure slows the heart under 6 beats/min and drops blood pressure under 10 mmHg, but hypersensitive individuals can develop marked bradycardia or cardiac arrest.
- ▶ **Sympathetico-adrenal stimulation** can instead raise myocardial irritability, triggering extrasystoles that progress to ventricular fibrillation.

Clinical features

- ▶ **Pre-syncope (prodrome):** light-headedness, dizziness, blurred vision, nausea, sweating, pallor.
- ▶ **Syncopal phase:** sudden loss of consciousness and postural tone, with a weak pulse, low blood pressure, and pale, cold skin, usually lasting seconds to a couple of minutes.
- ▶ Lying flat restores perfusion, and non-fatal recovery is rapid and complete.
- ▶ Prolonged hypoperfusion can cause convulsive jerks (**convulsive syncope**), to be distinguished from epilepsy.
- ▶ **Red-flag features suggesting a cardiac cause:** exertional or supine syncope, preceding palpitations or chest pain, little or no prodrome, family history of sudden death.
- ▶ **Fatal vagal inhibition has no prodrome** — the victim collapses and dies within seconds of a trivial stimulus (instantaneous physiological death).

Investigations

- ▶ **History and examination:** posture, trigger, prodrome, duration, recovery, drugs, plus lying-and-standing blood pressure and cardiac auscultation — the single most useful step to separate reflex from cardiac syncope.
- ▶ **12-lead ECG** for conduction block, arrhythmia, ischaemia, long-QT syndrome, or a Brugada pattern; **Holter/loop recorder** for intermittent arrhythmia; **echocardiography** for structural disease.
- ▶ **Head-up tilt-table test** for vasovagal syncope; monitored **carotid sinus massage** for carotid-sinus hypersensitivity.
- ▶ **Blood tests** — haemoglobin, glucose — and, medico-legally, **toxicological analysis** for cardiotoxic poisons.

Autopsy findings

- ▶ Syncope gives non-specific, negative findings — organs pale, capillaries congested, blood pooled in the splanchnic vessels; no diagnostic triad as in asphyxia.
- ▶ **Anaemic syncope:** heart contracted, chambers empty; lungs, brain, and abdominal organs pale.
- ▶ **Asthenic syncope:** heart chambers still contain blood — the pump failed despite being filled.

- ▶ **Structural sudden cardiac death:** the lesion may be visible — coronary atherosclerosis, a recent infarct (no naked-eye change in the first 12–18 hours), cardiac enlargement over 420 g, or myocarditis with Aschoff bodies on microscopy.
- ▶ **Vagal inhibition autopsy is characteristically negative** — no characteristic findings; diagnosis is reached only by excluding other pathology plus a reliable circumstantial history.
- ▶ Vagal-inhibition deaths are a leading cause of the **negative autopsy** (about 5–10% of autopsies) and the **obscure autopsy**, seen more in children and young adults up to about 35 years.
- ▶ Such deaths demand full toxicology and histopathology, excluding poisoning, air/fat embolism, electrocution, and snakebite.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Bichat's tripod of life:** a triangle with **Brain** → **Coma**, **Heart** → **Syncope**, **Lungs** → **Asphyxia** at the three apices, captioned "failure of one organ stops the other two".
- ▶ **Reflex arc of vagal inhibition:** Carotid sinus/body → Hering's nerve → Glossopharyngeal nerve (IX) → Nucleus tractus solitarius (medulla) → Vagus nerve (X) cardiac branches → Heart (bradycardia/arrest).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Vagal inhibition is the prime medico-legal application of syncope** — sudden death from a trivial peripheral stimulus.
- ▶ Triggers include a blow to the larynx, chest, abdomen, or genitals; pressure on the neck/carotid sinus in hanging, throttling, or strangulation; sudden cold-water immersion; and a food bolus impacting the larynx (**café coronary**).
- ▶ Instrumentation of the bronchus, uterus, bladder, or rectum — including criminal abortion — can likewise cause instant death with a negative autopsy.
- ▶ The doctor must never certify a cause that does not exist; the opinion is reached by exclusion plus circumstantial evidence, and death may be certified as "undetermined".
- ▶ **Eggshell-skull principle:** a trivial assault that precipitates fatal vagal inhibition in a vulnerable heart still attracts culpable homicide or murder liability, because the assailant takes the victim as found.
- ▶ Every sudden or violence-suspected death is an inquest case under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**, with a magistrate's inquest under **Section 176 CrPC (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)** where custodial or suspicious.
- ▶ The assailant may be charged with murder under **Sections 300/302 IPC 1860 (now Sections 101/103 BNS 2023)**, or culpable homicide not amounting to murder under **Sections 299/304 IPC (now Sections 100/105 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ Key evidence: the autopsy report, any dying declaration under **Section 32 IEA 1872 (now Section 26 BSA 2023)**, and expert opinion under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Define, classify and discuss patho-physiology of shock

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ Shock is hypoperfusion of cells and tissues — poor blood flow that starves them of oxygen (anoxia).
- ▶ It follows a fall in circulating blood volume, a fall in cardiac output, or redistribution of blood away from effective circulation.
- ▶ Shock is one of the commonest immediate causes of death from wounds.
- ▶ Autopsy findings are non-specific, so the diagnosis is often reached by correlation and exclusion.

Pathophysiology — three core derangements

- ▶ **Reduced circulating blood volume:** external or internal haemorrhage, plasma loss in burns, fluid loss in vomiting and diarrhoea.
- ▶ **Decreased cardiac output:** pump failure from intrinsic myocardial damage, extrinsic compression, or outflow obstruction.
- ▶ **Widespread vasodilatation of capillaries and veins:** blood pools peripherally so the heart is poorly filled, as in sepsis and neurogenic shock.
- ▶ All three converge on **tissue hypoxia**, forcing cells into anaerobic glycolysis, then lactic acidosis and eventually cell death.

Classification by mechanism

Type	Examples	Mechanism
Cardiogenic	MI, cardiac rupture, arrhythmia, tamponade, pulmonary embolism	Pump failure — intrinsic damage or outflow obstruction
Hypovolaemic	Haemorrhage; fluid loss in vomiting, diarrhoea, burns	Inadequate blood/plasma volume
Septic	Gram-negative ("endotoxic") or Gram-positive septicaemia	Vasodilatation, endothelial injury, DIC
Neurogenic	Anaesthesia, spinal cord injury	Loss of vascular tone, pooling of blood

Other circumstantial types

- ▶ **Haemorrhagic shock:** hypovolaemic shock from loss of 10–40% of blood volume.
- ▶ **Traumatic (wound) shock:** the most common type; blood and plasma loss from ruptured vessels and capillaries.
- ▶ **Burn shock:** plasma loss, necrotic-tissue resorption, later bacterial sepsis.
- ▶ **Surgical shock:** anaesthesia, blood/plasma loss, infection and tissue trauma.
- ▶ **Anaphylactic shock:** IgE-mediated hypersensitivity causing vasodilatation and vascular leak.

Primary vs secondary shock (the key forensic distinction)

- ▶ **Primary (neurogenic/vasovagal) shock** — also called reflex cardiac arrest or instantaneous physiological death.
- ▶ Sudden neurogenic vasodilatation pools blood in the splanchnic (abdominal) bed, cutting venous return to the heart.
- ▶ Features: yawning, sighing breathing, nausea, vomiting, then unconsciousness.
- ▶ Pallor, cold extremities, weak rapid pulse, low blood pressure.
- ▶ **Cardiac output stays unchanged**, and the attack rarely lasts more than a few minutes.
- ▶ **Secondary (delayed) shock** — more serious, may be fatal.
- ▶ Progressive circulatory failure with tissue damage, developing gradually or after a latent period following injury.
- ▶ Cellular metabolism fails — lysosomes rupture, ATP and protein synthesis fall, membrane transport breaks down.
- ▶ Result: metabolic acidosis, electrolyte derangement, renal insufficiency.

Three stages of evolving shock

- ▶ Massive injury (e.g. ruptured aortic aneurysm) kills instantly; otherwise shock evolves through three stages.
- ▶ **1. Initial (compensated) stage:**
 - Renin–angiotensin activation, ADH release, baroreceptor reflexes and catecholamine release keep vital-organ perfusion going.
 - Net effect: tachycardia, peripheral vasoconstriction (cold pale skin), renal fluid conservation.
 - **Exception — septic shock:** cutaneous vasodilatation gives warm, flushed skin instead.
- ▶ **2. Progressive (decompensated) stage:**
 - An uncorrected cause leaves vital organs hypoxic; anaerobic glycolysis takes over, generating lactic acidosis.
 - The falling pH blunts vasomotor tone, so arterioles dilate and blood pools in the microcirculation, worsening cardiac output.
 - Anoxic endothelial injury triggers disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), and vital organs begin to fail.
- ▶ **3. Irreversible stage:**
 - Cellular injury is now too severe to survive even if haemodynamics are corrected.
 - Lysosomal enzymes leak out and myocardial contractility worsens.
 - Ischaemic bowel lets intestinal flora enter the circulation — superimposed bacteraemic/endotoxic shock.
 - Acute tubular necrosis causes complete renal shutdown, ending in death.

Severity of blood loss (ATLS grading)

- ▶ **Class I (up to 15%):** vital signs usually normal; fluids not usually needed.

- ▶ **Class II (15–30%):** tachycardia, narrow pulse pressure, pale cool skin, behavioural change; crystalloids needed.
- ▶ **Class III (30–40%):** falling blood pressure, rising pulse, hypoperfusion, worsening mental state; needs crystalloid plus blood.
- ▶ **Class IV (>40%):** life-threatening; aggressive resuscitation imperative.
- ▶ Rapid loss of one-third of the blood volume causes death from irreversible hypovolaemic shock — sudden loss is more dangerous than the same loss spread over time.
- ▶ Children, women and the elderly die from smaller losses.

Post-mortem appearances (non-specific)

- ▶ **General:** congestion of internal organs, oedema of the viscera, petechial haemorrhages in serous membranes.
- ▶ **Brain (if survival 12–24 hours):**
 - Ischaemic encephalopathy — neuronal swelling/shrinkage with pyknotic nuclei, then neuronal death and gliosis.
- ▶ **Heart:** contracted heart with subendocardial haemorrhages in the left ventricular septum and papillary muscles.
- ▶ **Lungs:**
 - Normal in pure hypovolaemic shock.
 - With sepsis or trauma: "shock lung" (ARDS) — heavy, airless, liver-like lungs with oedema and hyaline membranes.
- ▶ **Kidneys ("shock kidney"):** acute tubular necrosis, beginning within 24 hours and marked by 7–10 days; brown tubular casts if there is muscle injury or haemolysis.
- ▶ **Gut:** patchy mucosal haemorrhage and necrosis ("haemorrhagic enteropathy"), with dark blood in the lumen.
- ▶ **Spleen:** enlarged and soft in septic shock.

Reflex vagal inhibition

- ▶ A forensically important mechanism behind primary-shock death — also called vasovagal shock or nervous apoplexy.
- ▶ Triggered by pressure on the **carotid sinus baroreceptors**, near the angle of the mandible.
- ▶ The impulse travels along Hering's nerve to the glossopharyngeal nerve (9th cranial nerve), then to the brainstem vagal nucleus and out through the vagus nerve (10th cranial nerve).
- ▶ In sensitised individuals this causes bradycardia, vasodilatation and cardiac arrest.
- ▶ **Common triggers:**
 - Neck pressure (hanging, strangulation) or a blow to the larynx, chest, abdomen or genitals.
 - Sudden cold-water immersion, food impacted in the larynx, or instrumentation of the bronchus, uterus, bladder or rectum (including criminal abortion).
- ▶ **Autopsy shows nothing characteristic** — diagnosis is by exclusion and witness accounts.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Flow-chart of the three stages of shock:** Initiating cause (haemorrhage / pump failure / vasodilatation) → Initial stage (reflexes → tachycardia, vasoconstriction, fluid conservation) → Progressive stage (hypoxia → glycolysis → lactic acidosis → dilatation → pooling → DIC) → Irreversible stage (lysosomal leak, ischaemic gut, acute tubular necrosis) → Death.
- ▶ **Vagal-inhibition reflex arc:** carotid sinus baroreceptor → Hering's nerve → glossopharyngeal nerve (IX) → medullary vagal nucleus → vagus nerve (X) → heart (bradycardia/cardiac arrest).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ No statute defines "shock"; its medico-legal role is in certifying **cause of death** and linking a wound to death.
- ▶ Culpable homicide: **Section 299 IPC 1860 (now Section 100 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ Murder: **Section 300 IPC 1860 (now Section 101 BNS 2023)**; its punishment is **Section 302 IPC (now Section 103 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ Shock is a leading immediate cause of death from wounds, burns, ruptured ectopic pregnancy and snake-bite.
- ▶ Even delayed secondary-shock death traces back to the original injury — the assailant remains liable even if it only accelerated death in an unhealthy victim.
- ▶ **Diseased/vulnerable victims:** death from primary/vagal shock, or a minor injury fatal only because of pre-existing disease (ruptured enlarged spleen, bursting aneurysm), may reduce the charge to simple/grievous hurt if intent to kill cannot be shown.
- ▶ Primary shock and vagal inhibition give a **negative autopsy** — diagnosis is by exclusion, so documentation and witness correlation are essential.
- ▶ Soaked clothing, scene blood and anaemic viscera estimate blood loss; the ATLS classes help quantify it.
- ▶ Secondary haemorrhage can occur during recovery, as rising blood pressure dislodges clots — explaining delayed re-bleeding hours after injury.

♦ ♦ ♦

Describe acute respiratory distress syndrome*Asked in: Paper II Oct 2018 · Paper I Oct 2018 (2×) — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine***Definition**

- ▶ **Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)** is inflammation of the lung tissue with **diffuse alveolar damage**.
- ▶ It causes severe hypoxaemia (low blood oxygen) that does not respond to oxygen therapy.
- ▶ It leads to progressive respiratory failure, often ending in death.
- ▶ In forensic practice it is called ***shock lung** — *a remote (delayed) cause of death**.

- ▶ A trauma, burn, sepsis, or poisoning victim survives the initial insult but dies days later of respiratory failure.
- ▶ The autopsy hallmark is **stiff, heavy, airless, liver-like lungs** with **hyaline membranes** (thin, glassy, protein-rich linings on the damaged alveoli).
- ▶ It is also called *adult respiratory distress syndrome*.
- ▶ It must be distinguished from *infant respiratory distress syndrome (IRDS)* of the newborn, which is caused by surfactant deficiency, not trauma.

Synonyms

- ▶ **Shock lung** — the classic forensic term.
- ▶ **Acute lung injury** — the milder end of the same spectrum.
- ▶ **Congestive atelectasis** (collapse with congestion).
- ▶ **Stiff lung / traumatic wet lung**.
- ▶ **Non-cardiogenic pulmonary oedema** (also called increased-permeability or haemorrhagic pulmonary oedema) — the fluid leaks because the capillary wall is damaged, not because the heart has failed.

Causes (aetiology)

ARDS is a final common response of the lung to many insults. Four groups (marked *) together cause more than half of all cases.

- ▶ **Infection:**
 - Diffuse pulmonary infections (viral, *Mycoplasma*, *Pneumocystis*, miliary tuberculosis)*
 - Gastric aspiration*
 - Sepsis*
- ▶ **Physical trauma:**
 - Head injury and thoracic trauma — blast injury, heavy impact*
 - Burns and fractures with fat embolism
 - Ionising radiation, near-drowning, pulmonary contusion
- ▶ **Inhaled irritants:** irritant gases and chemicals, oxygen toxicity, smoke.
- ▶ **Poisons:** paraquat, aspirin, barbiturate overdose, heroin or methadone overdose.
- ▶ **Blood disorders:** disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), massive blood transfusion.
- ▶ **Other:** cardiopulmonary bypass, pancreatitis, uraemia.
- ▶ Among poisons of forensic interest in India, ARDS is a recognised terminal event of **aluminium phosphide**, **organophosphate**, and **paraquat** poisoning.
- ▶ Paraquat characteristically causes progressive **pulmonary fibrosis**, and giving high-concentration oxygen worsens this injury.

Pathogenesis

The core lesion is damage to the alveolar–capillary membrane with leakage of protein-rich fluid into the airspaces.

- ▶ Trauma or infection triggers release of inflammatory mediators.
- ▶ These mediators are complement, cytokines, eicosanoids, and oxygen free radicals.
- ▶ The mediators damage the lung capillary endothelium and increase its permeability.
- ▶ Fluid and protein leak out as exudate, first into the interstitium and then into the alveoli.
- ▶ This produces **non-cardiogenic (intra-alveolar) pulmonary oedema**.
- ▶ Leaked fibrin and necrotic cell debris condense on the alveolar walls as **hyaline membranes**.
- ▶ Hyaline membranes are the histological signature of diffuse alveolar damage.
- ▶ The flooded, hyaline-lined alveoli cannot exchange gas.
- ▶ This causes hypoxaemia and progressive respiratory failure.
- ▶ In roughly **50% of survivors**, the lungs become fibrotic as the exudate organises.
- ▶ IRDS in the newborn follows a different pathway:
 - Surfactant deficiency lowers lung compliance and causes hypoventilation.
 - This leads to hypoxaemia with CO₂ retention, then acidosis.
 - Acidosis causes pulmonary vasoconstriction, then hypoperfusion and epithelial damage.
 - The damaged membrane lets plasma leak out and form a hyaline membrane.
- ▶ So ARDS's hyaline membrane is mostly trauma-initiated; IRDS's is surfactant-initiated.

Clinical features

- ▶ Severe dyspnoea (laboured breathing) of fairly rapid onset after the precipitating insult.
- ▶ Progressive respiratory failure from poor gas exchange.
- ▶ Refractory hypoxaemia — low oxygen that does not correct with supplemental oxygen.
- ▶ Tachypnoea (rapid breathing), cyanosis (bluish discolouration), and rising oxygen requirement.
- ▶ Often ends in the need for mechanical ventilation.
- ▶ In life it is a clinical diagnosis; at death it is confirmed by autopsy and histology.

Autopsy findings

- ▶ **Gross appearance:**
 - Lungs are airless and boggy (waterlogged and spongy).
 - Dark bluish-red, firm and heavy — often twice normal weight or more.
 - Increased consistency, resembling liver.
 - They retain their shape after removal from the chest — the basis of the term *shock lung* / *stiff lung*.
 - Secondary or terminal pneumonia may be superimposed.
- ▶ **Microscopy:**
 - Capillary congestion with leucocytes, platelet clumps, and microthrombi (tiny clots).
 - Interstitial and intra-alveolar oedema, exudate, and haemorrhage.
 - Hyaline membranes lining the alveoli.
 - Necrosis of alveolar epithelial cells.
 - Later, thickening and fibrosis of the alveolar septa.

Respirator lung

Because ARDS patients are ventilated, the autopsy may show a superimposed injury caused by the treatment itself.

- ▶ **Respirator lung** (ventilator-associated / ventilator-induced lung injury, VALI/VILI) is progressive lung deterioration caused by assisted ventilation, not by the original disease.
- ▶ It is histologically identical to ARDS.
- ▶ It can appear within days, but usually takes many days or weeks of ventilation.
- ▶ Lungs are stiff, rigid and heavy, with collapse, haemorrhage, and hyaline membrane.
- ▶ **Volutrauma** — over-distension of alveoli by high inspiratory volumes — is the chief mechanism (hence "volutrauma", not "barotrauma").
- ▶ **Biotrauma** — over-stretch ruptures alveolar cell membranes and triggers inflammation.
- ▶ Lower tidal volume ventilation (6 mL/kg vs 12 mL/kg) gives about **22% higher survival**.
- ▶ High positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) is one of the most powerful strategies to reduce VALI.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Pathogenesis flow-diagram:** trauma / infection / shock / poison → release of inflammatory mediators (complement, cytokines, eicosanoids, oxygen radicals) → damage to lung capillary endothelium → increased permeability with fluid and protein leak → intra-alveolar oedema → hyaline membrane formation → impaired gas exchange → hypoxaemia → respiratory failure → death, or survival with pulmonary fibrosis.
- ▶ **Alveolar microscopy diagram:** label the oedema fluid and exudate in the alveolar space, the hyaline membrane lining the alveolar wall, a congested capillary with leucocytes/platelet clumps/microthrombi, necrosed alveolar epithelial cells, and the thickened fibrotic septum.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ ARDS is a **remote (delayed) cause of death** after trauma.
- ▶ If a victim survives the initial assault, burn, or thoracic injury and dies days later of ARDS, liability for the original injury still attaches to the assailant, provided death can be traced back to that trauma.
- ▶ This is relevant to distinguishing murder from culpable homicide.
 - Murder: **Section 300 IPC 1860 (now Section 101 BNS 2023)**, punishable under **Section 302 IPC (now Section 103 BNS 2023)**.
 - Culpable homicide not amounting to murder: **Section 299 IPC (now Section 100 BNS 2023)**, punishable under **Section 304 IPC (now Section 105 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ "Shock lung" at autopsy helps reconstruct the survival interval and mechanism of death in blast/blunt thoracic trauma, burns, sepsis, near-drowning, and poisoning deaths.
- ▶ In poisoning deaths, recognising ARDS supports a diagnosis of paraquat, aluminium phosphide, or organophosphate poisoning, and guides preservation of viscera for chemical analysis.

- ▶ Respirator lung raises questions of medical negligence — whether lung-protective ventilator settings were used can become an issue in negligence inquiries.
- ▶ A custodial, accidental, suspicious, or poisoning death culminating in ARDS requires inquest and medico-legal autopsy under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Where a magistrate's inquest is needed, **Section 176 CrPC (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)** applies.
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon must document lung weight, gross findings, and histology, and correlate them with the alleged cause.



Describe anatomy of blood supply of heart and its significance in sudden death

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2020 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Overview

- ▶ The heart is supplied by two **coronary arteries** — the **left coronary artery (LCA)** and the **right coronary artery (RCA)**.
- ▶ Both arise from the **ascending aorta**, just above the aortic valve cusps.
- ▶ Coronary artery disease is the single commonest cause of sudden natural death.
- ▶ The cardiovascular system accounts for **45–50% of all sudden deaths**, and about **80% of these are coronary artery disease**.

Applied anatomy of the coronary arteries

- ▶ **Origin:** both coronaries arise from the **aortic sinuses (sinuses of Valsalva)**, just above the aortic valve.
 - **Left main coronary artery:** origin lies between the aorta and the left auricle.
 - **Right coronary artery:** origin lies between the right auricle and the pulmonary trunk; often the larger vessel but harder to find, buried in epicardial fat.
- ▶ **Left coronary artery:** a short main trunk that quickly divides into two branches.
 - **Left anterior descending (LAD):** runs down the front of the interventricular septum to the apex; supplies the anterior left ventricle and most of the septum.
 - **Circumflex (CX):** runs in the left atrioventricular groove around to the back of the heart; gives the marginal branch to the lateral left ventricle.
- ▶ **Right coronary artery:** runs in the right atrioventricular groove and then crosses to the posterior surface, supplying the right atrium and right ventricle.
 - In most people it also gives off the **posterior descending artery (PDA)** to the posterior septum.
- ▶ **Coronary dominance:** whichever artery gives off the posterior descending artery is called the dominant vessel.
 - **Right-dominant (~70%):** PDA from the RCA.
 - **Co-dominant (~20%):** PDA from both vessels.
 - **Left-dominant (~10%):** PDA from the circumflex.

- Dominance affects the expected site of any ischaemic damage.
- ▶ **Conducting system:** the SA node and AV node are fed by small nodal branches, usually from the RCA; disease here (fibrosis, necrosis) can itself cause a fatal arrhythmia.
- ▶ **Venous drainage:** most blood returns via the **coronary sinus** into the right atrium; smaller veins drain directly into the chambers.
- ▶ **Variations checked at autopsy:** absence or duplication of a vessel, differences in calibre, anomalous origin, and myocardial bridging.

Myocardial bridging

- ▶ Bridging (tunnelling) is when the **LAD** (rarely the RCA) dips briefly into the myocardium instead of lying on the surface.
- ▶ The overlying muscle forms a "bridge"; it occurs in about **1% of people**.
- ▶ During systole the bridge compresses the vessel and narrows its lumen — usually harmless, since most coronary flow happens in diastole.
- ▶ In tachycardia, diastole shortens and perfusion suffers, so **most bridging deaths occur during exercise or a struggle**.

How coronary disease causes sudden death

- ▶ **Sudden (unexpected) death:** a person not known to have any dangerous disease found dead, or dying within 24 hours of a terminal illness beginning (some limit this to one hour) — "unexpected" matters more than "sudden."
- ▶ It accounts for about **10% of all deaths**, and no age group is exempt.
- ▶ **Coronary atherosclerosis** is the dominant lethal mechanism, and most sudden coronary deaths show **no thrombus and no acute infarct** at autopsy.
- ▶ **Severe stenosis (>75%) alone**, without thrombosis or infarction, is a common cause of sudden death: stress raises cardiac demand, the narrowed vessel cannot supply it, and acute coronary insufficiency follows.
- ▶ **Stenosis grading:** mild <50%, moderate 50–75%, severe >75%.
- ▶ **Commonest thrombus site:** about 1 cm from the origin of the left coronary artery.
- ▶ **Commonest occlusion site — LAD (45–64% of cases)**, more than all other sites combined, hence its nickname, the "**widow maker**."
 - Right coronary: 24–46%.
 - Circumflex: 3–10%.
 - Left main: 0–10%.
- ▶ **Other cardiac mechanisms:**
 - **Coronary spasm:** can occur in normal coronary arteries and cause infarction or sudden death with no infarct found at autopsy; recognised with cocaine use.
 - **Ostial occlusion:** blockage at the vessel's origin from aortic atherosclerosis or syphilitic aortitis.
 - **Coronary embolism:** e.g. in bacterial endocarditis.
 - **Rupture:** of a fresh myocardial infarct, or of the aorta.

- **Concentric left ventricular hypertrophy:** most often from hypertension; can cause sudden death even without significant coronary disease.
- ▶ **Café coronary:** sudden death from choking on an impacted food bolus — not a true cardiac event, but it mimics one at the dining table.
- ▶ **Vagal inhibition:** reflex cardiac arrest from a minor blow to the neck, chest, abdomen or genitals, or sudden cold-water immersion, via the **glossopharyngeal (9th)** and **vagus (10th)** nerves.
 - Leaves **no characteristic postmortem findings** — diagnosed by exclusion and circumstances.

System-wise causes of sudden natural death

System	Incidence	Leading causes
Cardiovascular	45–50%	Coronary atherosclerosis ± thrombosis (~80%), ruptured infarct, arrhythmia, valve disease
Respiratory	15–23%	Pneumonia, pulmonary embolism, ruptured TB cavity, asthma
CNS	10–18%	Haemorrhage, thrombosis/embolism, meningitis, epilepsy
Alimentary	6–8%	GI haemorrhage, perforated viscus, pancreatitis
Genitourinary	3–5%	Nephritis, ruptured ectopic pregnancy
Miscellaneous	5–10%	Addison's disease, anaphylaxis, vagal inhibition

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Coronary arterial tree (anterior view):** label the aorta, aortic sinus, left main coronary artery, LAD, circumflex, marginal branch, RCA, posterior descending artery, coronary sinus, and the SA/AV nodes with their nodal arteries.
- ▶ Mark the commonest occlusion sites with their frequencies (LAD 45–64%, RCA 24–46%, circumflex 3–10%, left main 0–10%).
- ▶ **Cross-section of a stenosed coronary artery:** label the adventitia, internal elastic lamina, residual lumen and atheroma, showing concentric versus eccentric narrowing.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ A sudden, unexpected, unwitnessed death requires a medico-legal autopsy to establish the cause and rule out foul play.
- ▶ It attracts a police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)** and, where needed, a magistrate's inquest under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.

- ▶ **Autopsy technique is itself the medico-legal point.**
 - Open the coronaries **before** opening the heart, using **serial transverse cuts about 2–3 mm apart** along the whole vessel, closer together near the origin where atheroma and thrombus are more common.
 - Never open a coronary by passing scissors in from the ostia — this crushes and distorts the vessel, can dislodge a thrombus, and obscures the true picture.
 - Transverse sectioning lets you grade percentage stenosis and demonstrate an antemortem thrombus without dislodging it; heavily calcified vessels are stripped and decalcified.
 - Weigh the heart and check for hypertrophy, valve disease, infarct and conducting-system lesions.
- ▶ **Natural versus unnatural death:** coronary disease often complicates trauma — a seemingly minor injury may have precipitated death in a man with severe coronary disease, so correlate the lesion, clinical history and circumstances before attributing death to a cardiac cause.
- ▶ **Negative/obscure autopsies:** when full gross, histological, toxicological, microbiological and serological work-up fails to reveal a cause, this is a "negative autopsy" — seen in 5–10% of all autopsies, mostly in children and young adults.
 - Vagal inhibition, coronary spasm, conducting-system disease and arrhythmic deaths can leave no anatomical findings.
 - Consider a **molecular ("genetic") autopsy** for channelopathies — Brugada syndrome, long-QT syndrome, Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome — that underlie sudden unexplained death syndrome (SUDS)/sudden unexplained nocturnal death syndrome (SUNDS).
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon's opinion on cause of death is admissible expert evidence under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.



Describe anatomy of circle of Willis and discuss the etiology and pathology of intracranial haemorrhages

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ The **circle of Willis** (*circulus arteriosus cerebri*) is an anastomotic arterial ring at the base of the brain.
- ▶ It joins the internal carotid (anterior) and vertebral-basilar (posterior) circulations, giving collateral flow if one vessel is blocked.
- ▶ **Berry (saccular) aneurysms** form at its bifurcations; rupture is the commonest cause of spontaneous subarachnoid haemorrhage and a frequent cause of sudden, "unnatural" death.
- ▶ **Intracranial haemorrhage** is bleeding within the skull, classified by compartment (extradural, subdural, subarachnoid, intracerebral, intraventricular) and by cause (**traumatic** or **spontaneous**) — distinguishing the two is a core medico-legal problem.

Anatomy of the circle of Willis

- ▶ **Constituent vessels** — a 9-artery ring:
 - Two **internal carotid arteries** feed the two **anterior cerebral arteries**, joined by a single **anterior communicating artery**.
 - Two **vertebral arteries** unite into the **basilar artery**, which divides into two **posterior cerebral arteries**.
 - On each side a **posterior communicating artery** links the internal carotid to the posterior cerebral artery, closing the ring.
- ▶ **Position:** in the **subarachnoid space**, within the interpeduncular and chiasmatic cisterns, encircling the optic chiasma and pituitary stalk.
- ▶ **Branches:** central perforating branches (**medial striate, lenticulostriate, thalamoperforating**) supply the internal capsule and basal ganglia — the site of hypertensive bleeds and *Charcot–Bouchard microaneurysms*.
- ▶ **Function:** an anastomotic safety valve equalising pressure between the four feeding trunks, though flow across it is normally minimal — only a "potential" collateral.
- ▶ **Variation:** a complete, symmetrical circle is uncommon; a hypoplastic or absent communicating artery predisposes to aneurysm formation.

Berry aneurysms of the circle of Willis

- ▶ Small saccular out-pouchings at arterial **bifurcations and branch points**, from a weakness of the **tunica media** (the artery's middle muscular layer).
- ▶ Not truly congenital — rare in neonates and children, developing through life.
- ▶ Found incidentally in about **5% of routine autopsies**; rupture causes about **85% of spontaneous subarachnoid haemorrhages**.
- ▶ **Common sites (~90%):** anterior cerebral/anterior communicating artery (most common), then middle cerebral, then internal carotid/posterior communicating.
- ▶ **Least common site:** vertebral artery.
- ▶ **Risk factors:** hypertension, smoking, alcohol abuse; also trauma, infection, connective-tissue disorders.
- ▶ **Rupture presents with:** sudden severe ("thunderclap") headache, neck stiffness, vomiting, then collapse.
- ▶ **Mechanism of death:** rupture causes subarachnoid haemorrhage, which triggers vasospasm and then ischaemic brain injury.

Classification of intracranial haemorrhage

A thin layer of blood is a "haemorrhage"; a large space-occupying collection is a "haematoma".

Type	Plane of bleeding	Usual source	Typical cause
Extradural	Between skull and dura	Middle meningeal artery	Almost always trauma

Type	Plane of bleeding	Usual source	Typical cause
Subdural	Between dura and arachnoid	Bridging veins	Trauma; also spontaneous
Subarachnoid	Between arachnoid and pia	Circle-of-Willis aneurysm	Spontaneous or traumatic
Intracerebral	Within brain substance	Lenticulostriate artery	Hypertension; trauma
Intraventricular	Within ventricles	Extension	Extension of ICH/SAH; trauma

Etiology and pathology by compartment

Extradural haemorrhage (EDH)

- ▶ **Etiology:** almost exclusively **trauma** — the skull moves relative to the dura at impact, tearing a vessel.
- ▶ Commonest: a blow over the **temporal** bone tears the **middle meningeal artery**.
- ▶ **Pathology:** a sharply defined, oval, reddish-purple, rubbery clot, **10–20 cm across, 2–6 cm thick, 30–300 g**, usually temporoparietal, pressing the dura inward.
- ▶ **~100 mL is the minimum fatal volume.**
- ▶ Rare before age two (dura firmly adherent); commonest at 20–40 years.
- ▶ A "lucid interval" (hours to a week) occurs in only about 30–40% of cases.

Subdural haemorrhage (SDH)

- ▶ **Etiology:** commoner than EDH — mainly rupture of **parasagittal bridging veins** as the brain moves relative to the dura (acceleration–deceleration).
- ▶ Also from cortical veins, dural sinuses, or a ruptured aneurysm/malformation through the arachnoid.
- ▶ **Non-traumatic causes:** cerebral atrophy of old age, alcoholism, anticoagulants, tumours, blood dyscrasias.
- ▶ Key forensic point: may follow **trivial trauma with no fracture or external mark**.
- ▶ **Pathology:** venous/capillary bleeding, a few drops up to **150 mL or more**, over the cerebral convexities, spreading under gravity.
- ▶ **Acute** (immediate–3 days), **subacute** (days–2/3 weeks), **chronic** (weeks–months) types.
- ▶ Chronic SDH classically presents 3–6 weeks later as a brownish fluid film with neomembranes.

Subarachnoid haemorrhage (SAH)

- ▶ **Etiology — spontaneous:** the second most common CNS cause of sudden death — most often a **ruptured berry aneurysm** (~85%), then an arteriovenous malformation.
- ▶ Rarer causes: blood dyscrasias, infective endocarditis, anticoagulant overuse, sickle-cell disease, sunstroke, tumours.
- ▶ **Etiology — traumatic:** the most common form of traumatic intracranial haemorrhage — some SAH accompanies almost every significant head injury.

- ▶ Basal SAH follows laceration of the internal carotid, vertebral, or basal arteries (neck blows, road accidents, falls, cervical manipulation), and is **immediately fatal if more than 30 mL**.
- ▶ **Pathology:** blood fills the CSF-filled subarachnoid space, diffuse over the convexities, tracking into the basal cisterns and ventricles.
- ▶ Key autopsy sign: **subarachnoid blood cannot be washed off** (stains the brain red), while **subdural blood washes away** under running water.

Intracerebral haemorrhage (ICH)

- ▶ **Etiology — spontaneous:** hypertensive cerebrovascular disease — rupture of a **lenticulostriate** branch of the middle cerebral artery into the basal ganglia.
- ▶ **Sites of hypertensive bleeds:** putamen 55%, lobar white matter 15%, thalamus 10%, pons 10%, cerebellum 10%.
- ▶ Other causes: angioma, tumour, blood dyscrasias, anoxic softening.
- ▶ **Etiology — traumatic: coup–contrecoup** mechanism — injury beneath the impact site plus a mirror injury on the opposite side, from brain movement inside the skull.
- ▶ Usually fronto-temporal, often with a fracture; bleeding may ooze slowly, so signs appear only hours later.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Traumatic vs spontaneous** is the central medico-legal question.
- ▶ Favouring **trauma:** young age, a distinct interval before symptoms, head in motion at impact, white-matter/frontal or temporo-occipital site, contrecoup bleed, preceding concussion.
- ▶ Favouring **spontaneous (apoplexy):** older age, sudden onset, basal-ganglia site, hypertension/atherosclerosis/aneurysm, no contrecoup.
- ▶ A ruptured berry aneurysm may follow a trivial assault, fall, or emotional stress (a sudden rise in blood pressure during a quarrel), so a minor scalp injury can falsely suggest fatal trauma.
- ▶ Demonstrate the aneurysm by pouring a steady stream of water over the base of the brain before formalin fixation.
- ▶ Sudden death from intracranial haemorrhage needs a police inquest under **Section 194 BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 174 CrPC 1973)**, with a mandatory medico-legal autopsy.
- ▶ If haemorrhage follows an alleged assault, the offences are culpable homicide under **Section 100/105 BNS 2023 (formerly Sections 299/304 IPC 1860)** and murder under **Section 101/103 BNS 2023 (formerly Sections 300/302 IPC 1860)**.
- ▶ The autopsy opinion on traumatic versus spontaneous origin is expert evidence under **Section 39 BSA 2023 (formerly Section 45 Indian Evidence Act 1872)**.
- ▶ Dating of SDH and the lucid-interval concept also matter for compensation and negligence claims.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Circle of Willis (basal view):** label the anterior communicating artery, anterior cerebral artery (×2), internal carotid artery (×2), middle cerebral artery (×2), posterior communicating artery (×2), posterior cerebral artery (×2), basilar artery, and vertebral artery (×2).
- ▶ Mark the bifurcation sites where berry aneurysms form.
- ▶ **Coronal section, four meningeal compartments:** label scalp, skull, dura mater, arachnoid, pia, extradural (lens-shaped) haematoma, subdural (crescentic) haematoma, subarachnoid blood in CSF, intracerebral haematoma, bridging veins, and superior sagittal sinus.



Describe blood supply of Heart. Discuss cardiovascular causes of Sudden Death

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ The heart is supplied by the **right and left coronary arteries**, which arise from the aortic sinuses just above the aortic valve.
- ▶ Venous blood drains mainly through the **coronary sinus** into the right atrium.
- ▶ **Sudden death (WHO):** death within **24 hours** of onset of symptoms, in a person not known to have any dangerous disease, injury, or poisoning.
- ▶ Some authorities use a **1-hour** window instead; either way, the **unexpected nature** of the death matters more than its speed.
- ▶ Sudden death accounts for about **10% of all deaths**; no age is exempt, but cardiovascular causes peak in **men aged 20–65 years**.
- ▶ A sudden collapse, faint, or seizure is called an ***ictus***.
- ▶ **Natural death** means the disease alone caused death, with no contribution from trauma or poison — a key medico-legal distinction.
- ▶ **Cardiovascular disease causes about 45–50% of all sudden deaths**, and about **80% of these are coronary artery disease**.

Blood supply of the heart

- ▶ **Two coronary arteries** supply the myocardium, arising from the right and left aortic sinuses of the ascending aorta.
- ▶ **Left coronary artery (LCA):** a short main trunk that soon splits into the **circumflex branch** and the **anterior descending branch (LAD)**.
- ▶ **Right coronary artery (RCA):** often the larger vessel, though harder to find at autopsy because it is buried in epicardial fat.
- ▶ **Posterior descending artery (PDA):** supplies the posterior interventricular septum and decides coronary *dominance*.

- ▶ **AV-nodal artery:** usually arises from the RCA.
- ▶ **Coronary dominance:** about 70% **right-dominant**, 20% **co-dominant**, 10% **left-dominant**; it predicts where ischaemic damage is expected.
- ▶ **Myocardial bridging:** the LAD (rarely the RCA) dips into the muscle instead of lying on the surface.
 - Present in about 1% of people, usually harmless because filling happens in diastole.
 - In **tachycardia diastole shortens**, so bridging can cause sudden death **during exercise or struggle**.
- ▶ **Venous drainage:** mainly via the **coronary sinus** into the right atrium; smaller veins (Thebesian veins) drain directly into the chambers.

Vessel	Territory	Occlusion frequency
LAD	Anterior LV wall, anterior septum, apex	45–64% — the " <i>widow maker</i> "
RCA	RV, inferior/posterior LV, SA & AV nodes	24–46%
Circumflex	Lateral & posterior LV	3–10%
Left main	Divides into LAD + Cx	0–10%

- ▶ The **first 2 cm of the LAD** is the commonest site of occlusion.
- ▶ Most occlusions are **under 5 mm long** and lie within **3 cm of the vessel origin**.

Cardiovascular causes of sudden death (≈45–50% of sudden deaths)

- ▶ **Coronary atherosclerosis:** narrowing or blockage of the lumen by **atheroma**, with or without **thrombosis** or **intramural haemorrhage**.
 - Significant disease = stenosis $\geq 75\%$; infarction usually once the lumen is reduced to $\leq 20\%$.
- ▶ **Acute coronary insufficiency:** severe narrowing ($\geq 75\%$) without thrombus.
 - A physical or emotional stress raises cardiac demand beyond what the narrowed vessel can supply.
 - **Fresh thrombus is found in under 25% of cases** — most coronary sudden deaths show no fresh thrombus or infarct.
- ▶ **Coronary artery spasm:** can kill even with patent, normal-looking arteries.
 - Classic in **cocaine** use, where autopsy may show gross **infarction** or be unremarkable.
- ▶ **Myocardial infarction and its complications:** rupture of a fresh infarct (softening peaks around day 10), causing **cardiac tamponade**; also papillary muscle or valve rupture.
- ▶ **Hypertensive heart disease:** the commonest cause of **concentric left ventricular hypertrophy**, which can kill even without significant coronary disease.
 - A heart weighing over **420 g** carries sudden-death risk from electrical instability, even with normal coronaries.
- ▶ **Coronary ostial occlusion:** from aortic atherosclerosis or **syphilitic aortitis**.
- ▶ **Coronary or systemic embolism:** including embolism from acute bacterial endocarditis.

- ▶ **Aortic catastrophes:** spontaneous aortic rupture, ruptured aneurysm, aortic dissection.
 - ▶ **Cardiomyopathies:** alcoholic and hypertrophic cardiomyopathy; coronary artery anomalies; myocardial bridging (death on exertion).
 - ▶ **Valvular disease:** aortic stenosis/regurgitation, mitral stenosis, ruptured valve, fatty degeneration of the heart.
 - ▶ **Inflammatory disease:** acute **myocarditis** (rheumatic carditis with **Aschoff bodies, diphtheritic or idiopathic myocarditis*), *acute endocarditis, acute pericarditis**.
 - ▶ **Conducting-system lesions:** fibrosis or necrosis of the SA or AV node, and sick sinus syndrome (alternating slow and fast rhythms).
 - These cause fatal arrhythmia and may **escape detection** at routine autopsy.
 - ▶ **Channelopathies / structurally normal heart:** Brugada syndrome, long QT syndrome, Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome underlie **Sudden Unexplained Death Syndrome (SUDS)** — the *Bangungut/Pokkuri/Lai Tai* deaths of young men during sleep.
 - These leave **no trace at autopsy** and need **molecular ("genetic") autopsy** for diagnosis.
 - ▶ **Congenital heart disease** in the newborn; **senile myocardium (brown atrophy)** in the elderly.
- > **Café coronary is not a cardiovascular cause — it is sudden death from a food bolus impacting the larynx** (mechanical asphyxia) that mimics a heart attack at the table; a classic exam distractor.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Anterior view of the heart with coronary supply** — label the aorta, pulmonary trunk, both atria, RCA, left main coronary artery, circumflex branch, LAD, marginal branch, PDA, and coronary sinus.
- ▶ **Occlusion-frequency diagram** of the main coronary arteries — mark LAD 45–64%, RCA 24–46%, circumflex 3–10%, left main 0–10%, with inset cross-sections showing concentric vs eccentric stenosis.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ The chief task at autopsy is to decide whether death was **wholly natural** (e.g., coronary thrombosis) or whether **trauma or poison contributed**.
- ▶ Every sudden, unexpected, or unnatural death needs an **inquest and medico-legal autopsy** under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**, referred for inquiry under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)** where required.
- ▶ If sudden cardiac death is alleged to have been **precipitated by an assault or injury**, whether it amounts to **culpable homicide/murder** turns on **Sections 299/300 IPC 1860 (now Sections 100/101 BNS 2023)**, with punishment under **Sections 302/304 IPC (now Sections 103/105 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon gives evidence as an expert witness under **Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ **Autopsy technique:** check the **coronary ostia** for patency; cut **serial 2–3 mm transverse cross-sections** of the coronaries (closer together near the origin) to show percentage stenosis and any antemortem thrombus.

- Never open the coronaries with scissors from the ostia — this crushes the vessel and can dislodge or push along a thrombus.
- **Determine dominance**; weigh the heart (**over 420 g** is significant); look for fresh or old infarcts, valve lesions, and ostial occlusion.
- Infarcts show **no naked-eye change for the first 12–18 hours**; a ***tigroid*** (tiger-skin mottled) appearance appears later.
- **Calcified vessels** are stripped and **decalcified** before sectioning.
- ▶ **Negative autopsy**: vagal inhibition, conducting-system lesions, channelopathies, and coronary spasm may leave **no anatomical findings** — about 2–5% of autopsies are negative.
 - Preserve myocardium for histology, and retain tissue/blood for **molecular autopsy** in young SUDS cases.
 - Certify honestly (e.g., "*myocardial degeneration due to senility*" or "*undetermined*") rather than guess.
- ▶ **Recurr in**: deaths in police custody, alleged assault precipitating a heart attack, anaesthetic/operative deaths in patients with silent coronary disease, and insurance "accident vs natural" disputes.



Describe blood supply to brain. Write about Intracranial Haemorrhages

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2024 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

- ▶ **Blood supply**: Two arterial systems supply the brain — the **internal carotid arteries** (anterior circulation) and **vertebral arteries** (posterior circulation) — joining at the base to form the **circle of Willis**, a safety anastomosis for collateral flow.
- ▶ **Intracranial haemorrhage** is bleeding inside the skull, classified by compartment — **extradural**, **subdural**, **subarachnoid**, **intracerebral** or **intraventricular**; a thin layer is a *haemorrhage*, a large one a *haematoma*.
- ▶ It is the commonest fatal head-injury lesion; the key medico-legal task is separating **traumatic** from **natural (spontaneous)** bleeding.

Blood supply to the brain

- ▶ **Internal carotid artery (ICA) — anterior circulation**:
 - Divides into the **anterior cerebral artery (ACA)** and **middle cerebral artery (MCA)**.
 - The **MCA** is the largest branch and supplies most of the lateral hemisphere.
 - Its **lenticulostriate branches** feed the basal ganglia — the classic site of spontaneous (apoplectic) bleeds.
- ▶ **Vertebrobasilar system — posterior circulation**:
 - The two **vertebral arteries** ascend through the foramina transversaria and enter via the foramen magnum.

- They unite at the pons to form the **basilar artery**, ending as the **posterior cerebral arteries (PCA)** supplying the occipital and inferior temporal lobes.
- ▶ **Circle of Willis** — completed by:
 - The two **anterior cerebral arteries**, joined by the **anterior communicating artery**.
 - The **internal carotid arteries**, each giving off a middle cerebral artery.
 - The two **posterior cerebral arteries**, joined to the internal carotids by the **posterior communicating arteries**.
 - Its bifurcations are the weakest points and the commonest sites of **berry (saccular) aneurysms**.
- ▶ **Venous drainage:** Cortical **bridging veins** cross the subdural space into the **dural venous sinuses**; tearing them causes subdural haemorrhage.

Extradural (epidural) haemorrhage

- ▶ **Anatomy:** Blood collects between the **inner table of the skull** and the **outer dural layer**, fixed to bone at the sutures — so the clot is **sharply outlined and lens/biconvex**.
- ▶ **Cause:** Almost always trauma — skull movement strips the dura, and a fracture line tears a vessel.
- ▶ The classic injury is a **blow fracturing the squamous temporal bone**, tearing the **middle meningeal artery**.
- ▶ **Clot:** Oval, reddish-purple, **10–20 cm across, 2–6 cm thick, 30–300 g**, usually temporoparietal; about **100 mL is the minimum fatal volume**.
- ▶ **Lucid interval:** brief unconsciousness, then a symptom-free gap of **2–4 hours to a week** (only **30–40%** of cases), before rising pressure brings confusion, weakness, a fixed pupil, coma and death.
- ▶ **Age:** the rarest type of meningeal bleed (**1–3%** of head injuries); rare before age two, commonest at **20–40 years**.

Subdural haemorrhage

- ▶ **Anatomy:** Bleeding into the **subdural space**, between dura and arachnoid, crossed by the cortical bridging veins.
- ▶ **Cause:** More common than extradural bleeds, usually from rupture of **parasagittal bridging veins**.
- ▶ Can also follow a ruptured aneurysm, tumour, or **anticoagulant drugs**, even without trauma.
- ▶ **Mechanism:** Shearing of bridging veins as the head strikes a surface and the brain accelerates.
- ▶ Most common in **children, the elderly (brain shrinkage) and alcoholics**; can occur without a skull fracture.
- ▶ **Types, by onset:**
 - **Acute:** immediate, from a large vein/cortical-artery tear.
 - **Subacute:** over days up to 2–3 weeks.
 - **Chronic:** minor trauma, symptoms only after 3–6 weeks.
- ▶ Essentially a **venous bleed**, from a thin film to **150 mL or more**.

- ▶ **Dating the clot** (medico-legally important):
 - Fibrin and fibroblasts at the clot–dura junction within **24–36 hours**.
 - A neomembrane by **8 days**, covered by a fibrous membrane in **3–4 weeks**.
 - Clot liquefies with haemosiderin-laden macrophages by **4–5 weeks**, forming a gold-coloured hyalinised membrane by **1–3 months**.
- ▶ **Subdural hygroma**: CSF leaking through a torn arachnoid into the subdural space can itself compress the brain.

Subarachnoid haemorrhage (SAH)

- ▶ **Anatomy**: Bleeding into the **subarachnoid space** between arachnoid and pia, which carries the cerebral vessels and CSF.
- ▶ It is the **commonest traumatic intracranial haemorrhage** — some degree is found in all significant brain injuries.
- ▶ **Traumatic SAH** is usually venous, seen as splashes over contusions or spread diffusely.
- ▶ **Basal traumatic SAH** follows internal carotid, vertebral or basal artery tears; **more than 30 mL** can be fatal.
- ▶ **Acute alcoholism** raises the risk (poor coordination, congested vessels).
- ▶ **Spontaneous SAH** most often follows rupture of a **berry aneurysm** (over 50% of cases), or of **Charcot–Bouchard microaneurysms** in chronic hypertension.
- ▶ It presents as a sudden "**thunderclap**" headache, neck stiffness and vomiting.
- ▶ Rupture can follow a sudden BP rise (assault, exertion, intercourse) — a classic trauma-vs-disease dispute.
- ▶ **Distinguishing feature**: subdural blood **washes off** under running water; subarachnoid blood **stains the brain red and does not wash off**.

Intracerebral and intraventricular haemorrhage

- ▶ **Traumatic**: follows a **coup–contrecoup** injury (impact plus an opposite-side injury), usually in the **fronto-temporal region**; bleeding can ooze slowly, with signs appearing hours later.
- ▶ **Spontaneous (apoplexy)**: usually rupture of a **lenticulostriate branch of the MCA** into the basal ganglia, from hypertensive vascular disease, angioma or tumour.
- ▶ **Hypertensive sites, in order**: putamen (55%), lobar white matter (15%), thalamus (10%), pons (10%), cerebellum (10%).
- ▶ **Intraventricular haemorrhage**: usually an extension of intracerebral bleeding into the ventricle.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Circle of Willis (base of brain):** label the ICA, ACA/PCA, AComm/PCComm, MCA, basilar and vertebral arteries; mark bifurcations as berry-aneurysm sites.
- ▶ **Coronal section, all four haemorrhage types:** skull, dura, biconvex **extradural** haematoma, crescentic **subdural** haematoma, arachnoid, **subarachnoid** haemorrhage, pia, **intracerebral** haematoma, **intraventricular** haemorrhage, and a bridging vein crossing the subdural space.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Extradural haemorrhage** is almost always traumatic.
- ▶ **Subdural haemorrhage** is almost always traumatic, but can follow local inflammation or anticoagulant drugs.
- ▶ **Subarachnoid haemorrhage** often occurs spontaneously, from a ruptured congenital aneurysm of the circle of Willis.
- ▶ Intracranial haemorrhage from violence can occur **without any skull fracture or scalp wound**.

Trait	Post-traumatic	Apoplexy (spontaneous)
Cause	Head injury	Hypertension, atherosclerosis, aneurysm
Age	Young	Middle-aged/elderly
Onset	Interval before symptoms	Sudden
Region	Temporo-occipital/frontal white matter	Basal ganglia
Contrecoup	May be present	Absent

- ▶ **Autopsy duties:**
 - Measure, record and weigh any haematoma and the extravasated blood; examine the cerebral vessels and circle of Willis for aneurysm or atheroma.
 - Date subdural collections histologically; examine the scalp and skull for injury.
 - In homicidal head trauma, **retain a hair sample** from near the wound.
- ▶ **Age of the bleed:** Fresh blood is bright red, turning chocolate-brown then pale yellow by 12–25 days.
- ▶ **Legal process** (colonial codes replaced 1 July 2024):
 - Begins with a police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**, or a magistrate's inquest under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
 - A fatal assault causing intracranial haemorrhage is charged as **murder (Section 300/302 IPC → Section 101/103 BNS 2023)** or **culpable homicide not amounting to murder (Section 299/304 IPC → Section 100/105 BNS 2023)**, depending on intention.
 - **Grievous hurt** by fracture or intracranial injury falls under **Section 320 IPC (now Section 116 BNS 2023)**.

- The doctor's opinion on cause of death is expert evidence under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.



Describe gas gangrene and medicolegal importance

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Gas gangrene** (also called **clostridial myonecrosis**) is a rapidly spreading, life-threatening infection of injured muscle.
- ▶ Anaerobic *Clostridium* bacteria invade the muscle, causing massive rapid muscle necrosis, gas within the tissues, and severe toxæmia (poisoning from absorbed bacterial toxins).
- ▶ In forensic medicine it matters mainly as a **delayed complication of a wound** — an assault injury, criminal abortion, a neglected surgical wound, or an unsterile intravenous injection — that turns an apparently non-fatal injury into a fatal, traceable one.
- ▶ This raises the core medico-legal questions of causation, the assailant's liability, and whether intervening neglect broke the chain.

Aetiology and pathogenesis

- ▶ **Causative organism:** *Clostridium perfringens* (*Cl. welchii*), a Gram-positive, anaerobic, spore-forming rod, is the most common cause; others are *C. novyi*, *C. septicum*, *C. ramnosum*.
- ▶ Spores reach the wound as **primary infection** (carried in at the time of injury, from clothing, dirt, or skin) or **secondary infection** (invading afterwards, via contaminated dressings, surgery, or airborne droplets).
- ▶ **Why muscle?** Devitalised muscle from a crush, laceration, or gunshot wound, plus extravasated blood (blood leaked into the tissues), gives the low-oxygen (anaerobic) niche clostridial spores need to germinate.
- ▶ **Mechanism:** germinating clostridia release exotoxins, chiefly *alpha-toxin*, a lecithinase that breaks down lecithin in cell membranes — destroying muscle, generating gas, and causing marked haemolysis, together leading to severe toxæmia and death.
- ▶ **Gas composition in the tissues:** nitrogen 74.5%, oxygen 16.1%, hydrogen 5.9%, carbon dioxide 3.4%.

Where it fits among wound infections

Process	Feature	Forensic point
Wound infection	Organisms invade the wound	Starts the lethal sequence
Cellulitis / abscess	Spreading or localised suppuration	Local complication
Gas gangrene	Gas + rapid muscle necrosis + toxæmia	Most rapidly fatal wound infection
Septicaemia	Bacteria multiplying in blood	Enlarged, soft spleen

Process	Feature	Forensic point
Pyaeamia	Septic thrombi lodge and form abscesses	Multiple metastatic abscesses
Bacteraemia	Bacteria in blood, not multiplying	Least severe, transient

- ▶ **Gas gangrene is a special type of wet gangrene, caused by Clostridia.** Wet gangrene follows an untreated infected wound where swelling stops blood flow, letting bacteria invade muscle; dry gangrene, by contrast, follows thrombosis cutting off blood supply after injury.

Clinical features and course

- ▶ Onset is alarmingly rapid, often within 24 hours of contamination.
- ▶ **Local:** severe pain out of proportion to the wound, tense oedematous swelling with a thin foul discharge, crepitus (a crackling feel on palpation from gas in the tissue), and skin discoloration with large blisters.
- ▶ **Systemic:** tachycardia (fast heart rate) out of proportion to a relatively low fever, altered sensorium, hypotension, and terminal circulatory collapse.
- ▶ Without prompt surgical debridement/amputation, antibiotics, and support, the infection is frequently fatal, from overwhelming toxemia and shock.

Autopsy appearances

- ▶ **Local wound:** necrotic, discoloured muscle ("cooked-meat" appearance), crepitant from gas, with large skin blisters.
- ▶ **Spleen** enlarged and softened; other organs show non-specific congestion.
- ▶ **Skin colour in clostridial septicaemia:** bronze, mottled "raindrop" skin, or brownish hypostasis — bronze is classic for septic abortion from *Clostridium perfringens*, while *Cl. welchii* septic abortion instead shows greenish-brown.
- ▶ **Microbiology:** aseptic culture/smear identifies the clostridia.
- ▶ **Key pitfall:** *Cl. welchii* also drives ordinary post-mortem decomposition — haemolysis, clot liquefaction, and gas formation after death, producing the honeycomb (foamy) liver — so tissue gas must be read against the time since death and the history.

Gas gangrene in criminal abortion

- ▶ After criminal (illegal) abortion, uterine sepsis is caused by *Cl. welchii*, *E. coli*, *Streptococcus pyogenes*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, and anaerobic streptococci; the strong antiseptics used paradoxically encourage growth by causing tissue necrosis.
- ▶ **Gas gangrene of the uterus** is a recognised delayed cause of death after criminal abortion.
- ▶ *Cl. welchii* can cause fulminating (sudden, rapidly progressing) septicaemia within 18–24 hours, with bronze/raindrop skin, an enlarged soft spleen, hepato-renal failure, and, in extreme cases, bilateral cortical necrosis of the kidneys.
- ▶ **Immediate causes of death:** vagal inhibition, air embolism, haemorrhage, fat embolism, amniotic-fluid embolism, rarely poisoning.

- ▶ **Delayed causes (48–72 hours):** septicaemia, pyaemia, local infection/toxaemia, peritonitis, tetanus, and gas gangrene.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Establishes causation.** Gas gangrene is a classic remote (delayed) cause of death — the injury does not kill directly, but the assailant is still responsible if death can be traced to the likely result of the injury, even if the victim was already unwell or the injury only accelerated death.
- ▶ **Grading the assailant's liability:**
 - If the wound was **sufficient to cause death in the ordinary course of nature**, surgery was competent, and death followed ordinary operative complications, the assailant is liable for **murder** — Section 101/103 BNS 2023 (Section 300/302 IPC).
 - If the doctor was instead **negligent** in that same situation, the doctor is liable for **causing death by negligence** — Section 106 BNS 2023 (Section 304-A IPC), and the assailant remains liable for the homicide.
 - If the wound was only **likely to cause death**, the assailant is liable for **culpable homicide not amounting to murder** — Section 105 BNS 2023 (Section 304 IPC).
 - If the wound **would not have caused death** but gangrene followed negligent treatment, the doctor is liable under Section 106 BNS 2023 (Section 304-A IPC), and the assailant is liable only for **hurt/grievous hurt** — Section 117/118 BNS 2023 (Section 323/325/324/326 IPC).
- ▶ **The chain is not broken easily.** A victim need not submit to an operation, and the assailant stays responsible whether death follows a refusal or a competently performed necessary operation, provided the victim would have died anyway.
- ▶ Gas gangrene can itself make an injury **grievous hurt** under "any hurt which endangers life" — Section 117 BNS 2023 (Section 322 IPC); by dangerous weapons/means it is Section 118 BNS 2023 (Section 326 IPC).
- ▶ **Criminal abortion deaths** need a full medico-legal autopsy (uterine/vaginal material, blood from both ventricles, instruments for bacteriological examination, plus DNA profiling of expelled products).
- ▶ The doctor must keep confidentiality, take the woman's statement, record her **dying declaration** [Section 26 BSA 2023 (Section 32 IEA 1872)] if she is seriously ill, and on her death must inform the police rather than issue a cause-of-death certificate.
- ▶ Such deaths are **unnatural, requiring inquest** — a **police inquest**, Section 194 BNSS 2023 (Section 174 CrPC 1973) generally, or a **magistrate's inquest**, Section 196 BNSS 2023 in custodial deaths, dowry deaths, or death of a woman within seven years of marriage.
- ▶ The forensic pathologist testifies as an **expert witness** [Section 39 BSA 2023 (Section 45 IEA 1872)] on whether the wound caused the fatal gas gangrene; viscera must be flagged as infectious to the laboratory.
- ▶ Unsterile intravenous drug injection can also seed *Clostridium* at the injection site — relevant to accident versus a contaminated/adulterated-drug angle.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Flowchart — wound to gas gangrene to death.** Wound (penetrating/crushed/abortion/injection) → devitalised muscle + extravasated blood (anaerobic niche) → *Cl. perfringens* spores germinate → exotoxins/lecithinase (alpha-toxin) → muscle necrosis + gas (N₂ 74.5%, O₂ 16.1%, H₂ 5.9%, CO₂ 3.4%) + crepitus + skin blisters → toxæmia → circulatory collapse → death (delayed cause traceable to the wound).
- ▶ **Comparison sketch.** Panel A — ante-mortem gas gangrene: wound, necrotic muscle, skin blisters, inflammatory reaction, enlarged soft spleen. Panel B — post-mortem clostridial gas: honeycomb (foamy) liver, gas in vessels, generalised discoloration, no vital reaction.



Describe genito-urinary system of male

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ The male genito-urinary system produces and conveys urine, and produces, stores and delivers spermatozoa and seminal fluid.
- ▶ It carries major medico-legal weight in questions of potency, sterility, paternity, sexual assault and emasculation.

Components of the system

Division	Structures	Function
Urinary	Kidneys, ureters, bladder, urethra	Forms, conducts, stores and voids urine
Gonads	Paired testes (in scrotum)	Spermatogenesis + testosterone secretion
Ducts	Epididymis → vas deferens → ejaculatory duct → urethra	Maturation, storage and transport of sperm
Accessory glands	Seminal vesicles, prostate, bulbourethral glands, glands of Littre	Secrete the seminal plasma
External	Penis, scrotum	Copulation; scrotum thermoregulates the testes

Gross and functional anatomy

- ▶ **Testes and scrotum:** the two testes sit inside the scrotum, which keeps them about 2–3°C below core body temperature, necessary for spermatogenesis.
- ▶ Each testis is covered by the *tunica vaginalis* (a closed sac) and the tougher *tunica albuginea*.
- ▶ **Spermatozoa are produced in the seminiferous tubules**, where *Leydig cells* secrete testosterone and *Sertoli cells* support developing sperm.

- ▶ **Epididymis:** the first accessory duct — a single coiled tube on the back of the testis where sperm mature and are stored.
- ▶ **Vas deferens:** the second accessory duct — a thick muscular tube that runs through the spermatic cord and inguinal canal, then joins the seminal-vesicle duct to form the ejaculatory duct; it is the structure divided at vasectomy.
- ▶ **Seminal vesicles:** paired glands behind the bladder that secrete alkaline, fructose-rich fluid plus **choline** — the basis of the Florence test.
- ▶ **Prostate gland:** surrounds the bladder neck and secretes most of the seminal plasma, rich in **acid phosphatase, spermine and zinc** — the basis of the acid-phosphatase and Barberio tests.
- ▶ The prostate (like the uterus in females) resists putrefaction for a long time, so it can identify sex even in a decomposed body.
- ▶ **Bulbourethral (Cowper's) glands and glands of Littre** add lubricating mucus to the urethra.
- ▶ **Male urethra:** the shared genito-urinary channel, in three parts — prostatic, membranous and spongy (penile).
- ▶ **Penis:** two dorsal *corpora cavernosa* and a ventral *corpus spongiosum* that ends distally as the *glans*.
- ▶ The flaccid penis is about **13–15 cm** long; its size does not reliably reflect general physical development.
- ▶ The erect penis makes an average angle of about **26°** to the horizontal (range 16°–36°).
- ▶ **Blood supply:** the deep pudendal arteries supply the glans and shaft; the penile (deep dorsal) vein drains it.
- ▶ **Nerve supply:** the pudendal nerve and pelvic plexus, carrying fibres from spinal segments **S2–S4**.
- ▶ **Erection is parasympathetic**, through the *nervi erigentes* supplying the corpora cavernosa.
- ▶ **Ejaculation is sympathetic**, through the thoracolumbar plexus.
- ▶ This is why spinal injury at L4–L5, a pelvic fracture damaging the parasympathetics, or bilateral lumbar sympathectomy can cause impotence.

Semen — the medico-legal product

- ▶ Semen has a **cellular fraction** (spermatozoa) and a **non-cellular fraction** — the seminal plasma from the accessory glands.
- ▶ **Volume:** about 2–5 mL per ejaculate.
- ▶ **Sperm count:** about 60–150 million/mL, with 60–90% motile at ejaculation.
- ▶ **Reaction:** alkaline, pH about 7.4.
- ▶ **Prostatic markers:** acid phosphatase, spermine, zinc, citric acid.
- ▶ **Seminal-vesicle markers:** choline and fructose.
- ▶ **Other diagnostic markers:** creatine phosphokinase (CPK) and LDH isoenzymes; PSA/p30, a prostatic glycoprotein.

Medico-legal applications

- ▶ **Impotence** is inability to perform intercourse; **sterility** is inability to father children — a man can have one without the other.

- ▶ Causes include gonadal failure (azoospermia, mumps orchitis, cryptorchidism), duct obstruction, and local disease (hydrocele, hernia, phimosis).
- ▶ Other causes are neurovascular injury to S2–S4 or the pudendal nerve, endocrine disease, drugs, and psychological factors.
- ▶ **Vasculogenic impotence** (arterial or venous) is the commonest organic cause, accounting for about 40% of cases.
- ▶ Removing one testis affects neither potency nor fertility.
- ▶ Examination for potency/sterility covers the penis, testes, epididymis, cord and prostate (per rectum), plus seminal-fluid analysis.
- ▶ **Emasculation** — amputation of the penis, genital injury, or neurological injury causing permanent impotence — is the **first of the eight kinds of grievous hurt**, under **Sections 88–123 BNS 2023 (earlier Sections 312–328 IPC 1860)**.
- ▶ **Sex determination of unknown remains:** because the prostate resists putrefaction, its microscopic identification proves male sex in decomposed or mutilated bodies; sex chromatin and DNA corroborate.
- ▶ **Age/puberty estimation** uses Tanner staging (G1–G5) and pubic-hair staging (PH1–PH5), plus testicular volume by orchidometer.
- ▶ **Identifying an assailant:** seminal stains link an accused to a sexual-assault scene through acid phosphatase, choline and PSA/p30, and are individualised by DNA/Y-STR profiling of spermatozoa.
- ▶ Medical examination of an accused in a sexual offence is authorised under **Sections 51/52 BNSS 2023 (earlier Sections 53/53A CrPC 1973)**, and of the victim under **Section 184 BNSS 2023 (earlier Section 164A CrPC 1973)**.
- ▶ **Vasectomy** (division of the vas deferens) is the permanent male sterilising procedure; seminal chemical tests stay positive after it even though sperm are absent.

Laboratory identification of seminal stains

- ▶ **Physical/UV:** dry stains look greyish-white to yellow-grey and stiffen the cloth; under UV light they show a bluish-white fluorescence from choline (presumptive only).
- ▶ **Florence test:** Florence solution (potassium iodide + iodine) gives dark-brown rhombic/needle crystals of choline periodide, from the seminal vesicles.
- ▶ A negative Florence test proves the stain is not seminal.
- ▶ **Barberio's test:** saturated picric acid gives yellow needle-shaped crystals of spermine picrate, from the prostate.
- ▶ **Acid-phosphatase (Brentamine) test:** prostatic acid phosphatase is 500–1000 times higher in semen than in any other body fluid — the commonest presumptive screen.
- ▶ **PSA/p30:** a prostatic glycoprotein present in semen, male urine and blood, but never in female tissue or fluid.
- ▶ A positive PSA confirms semen even without spermatozoa, and stays positive after vasectomy.
- ▶ **Microscopy:** the only absolute proof of semen is finding at least one unbroken spermatozoon.
- ▶ Sperm heads may persist in a stain for months to years.

- ▶ **Persistence in the living vagina:** motile sperm up to about 6 hours (rarely 12), complete sperm up to about 26 hours, broken sperm up to a week.
- ▶ In a dead body sperm are not cleared by drainage, so they persist longer.
- ▶ Species is confirmed by the precipitin test; individualisation is by DNA/Y-STR.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Sagittal section of the male pelvis/reproductive tract.** Label: kidney, ureter, urinary bladder, prostate, seminal vesicle, ejaculatory duct, vas deferens, epididymis, testis, scrotum, bulbourethral gland, penis (corpora cavernosa, corpus spongiosum, glans), urethra (prostatic/membranous/spongy), external meatus.
- ▶ **Human spermatozoon.** Label: head (acrosome, nucleus), neck, midpiece, tail. Note that the posterior half of the head stains deep red and the tail stains pink.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Forms the anatomical basis of opinions on potency and sterility in nullity, divorce, maintenance, paternity and rape cases.
- ▶ Emasculation and genital injury count as grievous hurt, relevant to wound certification and the gravity of the offence.
- ▶ Seminal stains and spermatozoa recovered from the genital tract are central to sexual-offence investigation, examined with a Sexual Assault Forensic Examination (SAFE) kit or Physical Evidence Recovery Kit (PERK), and individualised by DNA/Y-STR.
- ▶ Underlies India's National Family Planning Programme (vasectomy) and the regulation of AIH/AID and ART.



Describe Histochemical changes in injured tissue and biochemical findings of wound

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ A **wound (injury)** is any breach of the normal continuity of body tissue caused by violence.
- ▶ **Histochemistry** shows enzymes and vasoactive amines in a tissue section using colour-producing reactions.
- ▶ **Biochemical analysis** measures these same mediators quantitatively in tissue homogenates.
- ▶ Together they answer two medico-legal questions: was the wound inflicted **during life** (the vital reaction), and **how long** before death?
- ▶ These changes appear **before** anything is visible on routine H&E histology.
- ▶ They are the most sensitive markers for the **freshest wounds** — roughly the last hour of life.

Vital reaction and the two zones of a wound

- ▶ **Vital reaction** is the response only *living* (or supravital) tissue can mount to injury — swelling, lymph effusion, leucocytic infiltration, pus, and repair.
- ▶ Histochemistry shows its *biochemical* side: enzyme activity leaves a visible coloured deposit whose intensity reflects the enzyme level.
- ▶ Two concentric zones form around a living wound, best seen on frozen sections.
- ▶ **Central zone (0.2–0.5 mm)**: at the wound edge, necrotic with **decreased** enzyme activity — the *negative* vital reaction.
- ▶ **Peripheral zone (0.1–0.3 mm)**: **increased** enzyme activity during repair — the *positive* vital reaction, judged against normal tissue beyond.
- ▶ **Postmortem wounds never develop the positive peripheral zone** — this is the histochemical basis for telling antemortem from postmortem injury.

Enzyme histochemistry — the timed sequence

- ▶ The specimen must be **frozen, never formalin-fixed** (formalin destroys the enzymes); a reagent then develops a specific colour for each enzyme present.
- ▶ In the positive (peripheral) zone, enzymes appear in a fairly fixed order:

Approx. age of wound	Marker demonstrable
~10 minutes	Calpains, cathepsins (proteases) and serotonin
~30 minutes	Histamine
~1 hour	Esterases and ATPase
~2 hours	Aminopeptidase
~4 hours	Acid phosphatase
~8 hours	Alkaline phosphatase

- ▶ These enzyme changes still show up a **few days after death** if the body is refrigerated (autolysis prevented).
- ▶ **Enzyme histochemistry is most useful for wounds 1–8 hours old; biochemical amine assay for the last hour of life.**
- ▶ Connective-tissue ground substance changes too: fresh contusions/abrasions show a **marked drop in acidic mucopolysaccharides**, shown with Alcian Blue or the dialysed-iron technique.
- ▶ It is absent by one hour, then **reappears in bruises several days old** as repair proceeds.

Biochemical (vasoactive-amine) findings

- ▶ **Tissue cathepsins** rise almost immediately once the stroma is damaged — detectable within **5–10 minutes**.
- ▶ **Serotonin** peaks at **~10 minutes**; **histamine** peaks at **20–30 minutes** — the two earliest mediators of all.
- ▶ **Antemortem cut-offs**, compared against a control sample of uninjured skin from the diagonally opposite site:

- ▶ **Histamine** at the wound must be at least **50% greater** than the control.
- ▶ **Serotonin** at the wound must be at least **twice (100% greater than)** the control.
- ▶ **Practical requirements:**
 - At least **2 g fat-free skin**; a **control sample** is **mandatory**.
 - Consistent across body sites; unaffected by antiseptics.
 - Still valid **a few days postmortem** if refrigerated.
- ▶ **Less reliable** in cachexia, senility, severe illness (poor reparative-enzyme output), and in diffuse/multiple contusions where no clean zones form.

Immunohistochemistry (IHC) — protein markers

- ▶ IHC uses a **specific antibody** to demonstrate a protein; many appear in sequence as healing progresses, extending the timing window well beyond enzyme histochemistry:
- ▶ **~5 minutes: P-selectin** on activated endothelium, recruiting the first leucocytes.
- ▶ **~10–20 minutes: Fibronectin**.
- ▶ **~1 hour: E-selectin**.
- ▶ **~1.5 hours: ICAM-1**.
- ▶ **~2 days: Tenascin**.
- ▶ **~3 days: Collagen types III, V, VI**.
- ▶ **~5 days: Collagen type I**.
- ▶ **Beta apoprotein precursor (BAPP)** appears in damaged axons if the patient survives about **1 hour** — it marks traumatic axonal injury.

Routine histopathology (H&E) — how it complements histochemistry

- ▶ H&E changes lag behind histochemistry but take over as the mainstay once a few hours have passed.
- ▶ **Neutrophils** appear by **15–30 minutes**; **macrophages** by **2–3 hours**.
- ▶ **Granulation tissue** with siderophages (iron-laden macrophages) appears by **~3 days**, followed by collagen deposition.
- ▶ Beyond **2 weeks**, a dense, avascular collagen-and-elastin **scar** forms.

Bruise (contusion) colour change — a biochemical marker too

- ▶ A bruise heals as red cells haemolyse and haemoglobin breaks down into a sequence of coloured pigments.
- ▶ Colour change **begins at the periphery and spreads inward**.
- ▶ **Fresh: red** — oxygenated blood.
- ▶ **Few hours to ~3 days: blue** — deoxyhaemoglobin.
- ▶ **~4–5 days: bluish-black to brown** — **haemosiderin** (iron stored in macrophages).
- ▶ **~5–6 days: green** — **biliverdin**.
- ▶ **~7–12 days: yellow** — **bilirubin** (biliverdin converts to bilirubin via biliverdin reductase).
- ▶ **~2 weeks: returns to normal**.

- ▶ Loss of red-cell shape/staining plus **iron pigment at the injury site or regional lymph nodes** suggests roughly **12 hours** have elapsed.
- ▶ **Colour dating is only a rough guide:**
 - Bruises of the same age can show different colours, and not all pass through a yellow phase.
 - Subconjunctival/meningeal bleeds keep re-oxygenating and skip the sequence; children's bruises change faster, the elderly slower.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Antemortem vs postmortem:** a positive vital-reaction zone, raised enzymes, and histamine/serotonin above the cut-offs together prove the wound was sustained during life; their absence supports a postmortem wound.
- ▶ **Supravital/perimortem window** — the brief period around circulatory arrest when tissue is neither fully alive nor dead; histochemistry **may still be positive even after circulation stops**, since molecular death hasn't occurred yet.
- ▶ **Timing of the wound** corroborates or refutes when an alleged assault, custodial torture, or sexual offence occurred.
- ▶ In **battered baby syndrome**, injuries of *different* ages support repeated trauma, while a genuine single fall gives injuries of the *same* age.
- ▶ **Technique:** excise the wound with a 1–2 cm rim; send one part in formalin for H&E, the other fresh-frozen for enzyme histochemistry.
- ▶ **Hurt** is defined under **Section 114 BNS 2023** (formerly Section 319 IPC 1860): "Whoever causes bodily pain, disease or infirmity to any person is said to cause hurt."
- ▶ **Grievous hurt** (eight clauses) is defined under **Section 116 BNS 2023** (formerly Section 320 IPC 1860); the time-based clause (h) sets a **twenty-day** cut-off for severe bodily pain or inability to follow ordinary pursuits — unchanged from the IPC.
- ▶ **Punishment sections:**
 - Simple hurt — **Section 115 BNS 2023** (S.321/323 IPC).
 - Grievous hurt — **Section 117 BNS 2023** (S.322/325 IPC).
 - By dangerous weapons or means — **Section 118 BNS 2023** (S.324/326 IPC).
- ▶ Where death results, culpable homicide/murder applies — **Sections 100/105 and 101/103 BNS 2023** (S.299/304 and S.300/302 IPC); the expert witness gives opinion on these questions under **Section 39 BSA 2023** (formerly Section 45 IEA 1872).

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ The two histochemical zones of a wound (transverse skin section): epidermis, dermis, wound edge; central necrotic zone (0.2–0.5 mm, negative vital reaction, decreased enzyme activity); peripheral reactive zone (0.1–0.3 mm, positive vital reaction, increased enzyme activity); normal control tissue beyond.
- ▶ Enzyme/amine timeline of an antemortem wound (10 min → 8 h): cathepsins/calpains and serotonin (10 min) → histamine (30 min) → esterase and ATPase (1 h) → aminopeptidase (2 h) → acid phosphatase (4 h) → alkaline phosphatase (8 h).



Pathophysiology of shock and autopsy findings in fatal anaphylactic shock following injection of penicillin

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

- ▶ **Shock:** generalised inadequate tissue perfusion — oxygen delivery falls below cellular demand, causing reversible then irreversible cell injury. Core feature: reduced blood flow with poor cellular perfusion (anoxia).
- ▶ **Anaphylaxis:** an acute, IgE-mediated hypersensitivity reaction — skin, gut, respiratory and cardiovascular signs that can progress rapidly to shock and death.
- ▶ Term coined by **Portier and Richet in 1902**, after a second, sensitising dose of sea-anemone toxin killed a previously exposed dog.
- ▶ **Penicillin is the commonest drug cause of fatal anaphylaxis.**
- ▶ Key forensic point: about **75% of patients who die of penicillin sensitivity had no allergic reaction on an earlier course** — a safe first exposure does not rule out a fatal reaction later.

Classification and pathogenesis of shock

- ▶ Three basic derangements underlie all shock:
 - Reduced circulating blood volume.
 - Decreased cardiac output (blood pumped per minute).
 - Widespread vasodilatation of the capacitance vessels — the capillaries and veins that hold most of the body's blood.

Type of shock	Principal mechanism
Cardiogenic	Pump failure — MI, cardiac rupture, arrhythmia, tamponade, pulmonary embolism
Hypovolaemic	Inadequate blood/plasma volume — haemorrhage, vomiting, diarrhoea, burns
Septic	Vasodilatation and pooling with endothelial injury and DIC — Gram-negative or Gram-positive septicæmia

Type of shock	Principal mechanism
Neurogenic	Vasodilatation and pooling of blood — anaesthesia, spinal-cord injury

- ▶ **Anaphylactic shock is a distributive shock**, in the same family as septic and neurogenic shock.
- ▶ The problem is not blood loss but massive **maldistribution** of a normal blood volume into a widely dilated vascular bed, with plasma also leaking out.
- ▶ **Compensated (early) shock**: reflex catecholamines, antidiuretic hormone and sympathetic stimulation keep cardiac output and pressure up — tachycardia, vasoconstriction, renal fluid conservation.
- ▶ **Progressive shock**: hypoxia forces anaerobic glycolysis, producing lactate and metabolic (lactic) acidosis.
- ▶ The falling pH dilates arterioles, so blood pools in the capillaries and cardiac output falls further.
- ▶ Anoxic endothelial injury triggers disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC).
- ▶ **Irreversible shock**: widespread hypoxia disrupts lysosomes, depletes ATP (the cell's energy currency), and cells die.
- ▶ Circulatory failure can no longer be reversed even if the original cause is corrected.

Mechanism of penicillin anaphylactic shock

- ▶ **Sensitisation**: first exposure to penicillin, acting as a hapten (a small molecule that triggers immunity only once bound to a body protein), provokes specific **IgE antibody**.
- ▶ This IgE coats mast cells in tissue and basophils in blood — the patient is now sensitised but symptom-free.
- ▶ **Trigger**: re-exposure by injection gives rapid, high blood levels; the antigen bridges adjacent IgE molecules on mast cells, causing **mast-cell degranulation**.
- ▶ **Mediators released**: histamine, leukotrienes C, D and E, bradykinin, kallikrein, and eosinophil chemotactic factor.
- ▶ **Three lethal effects** follow: bronchospasm, vasodilatation, and increased capillary permeability (plasma leaks out, worsening hypovolaemia).
- ▶ **Death occurs due to laryngeal oedema, bronchospasm and vasodilatation**.
- ▶ **Onset** is within 15–20 minutes; **most deaths occur within 1–2 hours**.
- ▶ **Serum tryptase**, released from activated mast cells, peaks 1–2 hours after the reaction and falls with a half-life of about 2 hours — a raised level confirms mast-cell activation.
- ▶ **Skin/mucosa**: injection-site wheals, urticaria, itching, angio-oedema, cyanosis.
- ▶ **Upper airway**: laryngeal oedema, hoarseness, stridor, swelling of tongue and pharynx.
- ▶ **Lower airway**: breathlessness, acute emphysema, asthmatic bronchospasm.
- ▶ **Systemic**: nausea/vomiting, tachycardia and palpitations, anxiety and convulsions.

Autopsy findings in fatal penicillin anaphylaxis

- ▶ Findings are **non-specific and may be completely negative** — the cardinal forensic difficulty.

- ▶ Diagnosis rests on the circumstances, the autopsy picture of airway obstruction plus visceral congestion, and lab confirmation of mast-cell activation.
- ▶ Do the autopsy **as soon as possible**, and **remove the neck organs before any embalming** — laryngeal oedema recedes quickly after death.
- ▶ **External examination:**
 - Foam at the mouth and nostrils; swelling of the affected tissue.
 - Search for the injection site/sting mark, photograph it, and excise it with a wide (~5 cm) margin for histology and analysis.
 - Skin rashes, urticarial wheals, facial/eyelid angio-oedema and cyanosis may be present.
- ▶ **Larynx and upper airway:**
 - Laryngeal oedema is the key finding, but it fades fast — hence the need for early autopsy.
 - Oedema of the epiglottis, tongue and pharynx.
 - Photograph the glottic rim from above with the epiglottis, and fix larynx/epiglottis in Zenker's or Bouin's solution.
- ▶ **Trachea, bronchi and lungs:**
 - Foamy oedema in the trachea and bronchi.
 - Lungs show acute emphysema alternating with collapse, plus pulmonary oedema, congestion and bronchiolar constriction.
 - Eosinophils infiltrate the bronchial walls — a Giemsa stain highlights them.
 - Do not perfuse the lungs with fixative, as this creates artefactual (procedure-induced) distension.
- ▶ **Other visceral findings:**
 - Petechial haemorrhages on serous surfaces; generalised visceral congestion, oedema, emphysema and cyanosis.
 - The spleen may show eosinophils in the red pulp.
- ▶ **Specimens for laboratory confirmation (decisive):**
 - Blood for antibodies against the suspected antigen, for serum IgE, and for serum tryptase — refrigerated or frozen.
 - The excised injection-site tissue, frozen at about -70°C , for antigen-antibody and drug-level analysis.
 - Preserve viscera for chemical analysis — anaphylactic death is a listed indication: stomach and contents, upper 30 cm of small intestine, liver (200–300 g), half of each kidney, blood (30 mL, minimum 10 mL), urine (30 mL).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Manner of death is usually **accidental** — a therapeutic misadventure — but it is still a reportable, medico-legal death.
- ▶ Inquest is required under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ If a doctor's conduct is in question, a magisterial inquiry follows under **Section 176 CrPC (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.

- ▶ Recognised negligence: no sensitivity (test-dose) test, no allergy history taken, and adrenaline not kept ready for resuscitation.
- ▶ If death follows such negligence, the doctor is liable under **Section 304A IPC 1860 (now Section 106 BNS 2023)**; if the patient only suffers hurt, it is **Section 337 IPC (now Section 125 BNS 2023)**. A prior uneventful course does **not** protect the doctor.
- ▶ BNS 2023 raised the general term to **5 years**, but carves out a lower **2-year** term for a registered medical practitioner causing death by negligence during a medical procedure.
- ▶ **Precedent:** in *State vs Hakim (1947)*, a hakim's mere ignorance about penicillin injections was held to make his treatment rash and negligent.
- ▶ Differentials the autopsy must exclude: vasovagal (reflex cardiac) inhibition, mismatched transfusion, air/fat embolism, drug overdose, natural cardiac death.
- ▶ The autopsy opinion is given under **Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam, BSA, 2023)**.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Mechanism flowchart:** first exposure → IgE production → IgE binds mast cells/basophils (sensitisation) → re-exposure by injection → antigen cross-links IgE → mast-cell degranulation → mediators (histamine, leukotrienes, bradykinin, kallikrein) → three arms (bronchospasm, vasodilatation, increased capillary permeability) → laryngeal oedema, airway obstruction and distributive shock → death.
- ▶ **Labelled autopsy diagram of the upper airway:** swollen tongue, oedematous pharynx, oedematous epiglottis, narrowed glottic rim (laryngeal oedema), foamy oedema in trachea and bronchi, with a small inset of lung showing alternating emphysema and collapse.



Describe the anatomy of base of skull with common fractures

Asked in: Paper I Dec 2023 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ The **base of the skull** (basicranium) is the floor of the cranial cavity that the brain rests on.
- ▶ It is formed by parts of five bones and divided into **three cranial fossae** — anterior, middle, posterior.
- ▶ It is weaker than the vault (calvaria) — perforated by many foramina and unevenly thick.
- ▶ Basal fractures usually come from **transmitted (indirect) force**, not a direct blow.
- ▶ Two patterns — the **hinge** and **ring** fractures — strongly suggest how the injury happened.

Anatomy of the base

- ▶ **Five bones** form the base: frontal, ethmoid, sphenoid, two temporal bones, and the occipital bone.
- ▶ The vault/calvaria has **8 bones**; the face and jaws have **14 bones**.

- ▶ The base descends in **three steps**, separated by the sphenoid's lesser wings (anterior–middle) and the petrous temporal ridges (middle–posterior).

Fossa	Main bones	Key contents	Important foramina
Anterior	Frontal, cribriform plate of ethmoid, sphenoid (lesser wing)	Frontal lobes, olfactory bulbs	Cribriform plate foramina
Middle	Sphenoid (body, greater wing), temporal (squamous, petrous)	Temporal lobes, pituitary gland (sella turcica), cavernous sinus	Optic canal, superior orbital fissure, foramen rotundum/ovale/spinosum, internal acoustic meatus
Posterior	Occipital, petrous/mastoid temporal, sphenoid body (clivus)	Cerebellum, pons, medulla, spinal-cord junction	Foramen magnum, jugular foramen, hypoglossal canal

- ▶ **Strong zones:** petrous ridges, sphenoid body, midline, foramen magnum margin.
- ▶ **Weak zones:** cribriform plate, orbital roof, air-sinus walls, and the **sphenoidal fissure** (most commonly involved).
- ▶ **The pituitary fossa (sella turcica) is the crossroads** — most basal fracture lines meet here, the hinge point of the "hinge fracture."

Mechanism — why the base fractures

- ▶ Skull fractures come from **direct violence** (impact or compression) or **indirect/transmitted violence** — the base's classic mechanism.
- ▶ **Local deformation** (a fast, small impact) mainly fractures the **vault**.
- ▶ **General deformation** (e.g. run over by a wheel) fractures away from the impact point, often at the **base**.
- ▶ Indirect force reaches the base three ways:
 - **Through the spine** — a fall on the feet or buttocks.
 - **Through the mandible/face** — a chin blow drives the jaw condyles against the base; an upper-cut can fracture the cribriform plate via the maxilla.
 - **By extension** of a vault fracture into the base.

Common fractures of the base

- ▶ **Longitudinal** — splits the base into right and left halves; from a front/back blunt hit or front-to-back compression.
- ▶ **Transverse** — splits the base into front and back halves; from a side hit or side-to-side compression.
- ▶ **Ring fracture** — see below.

Hinge (transverse) fracture — the "motor-cyclist's fracture":

- ▶ A complete transverse fracture splitting the base across, producing a hinge (the "nodding face" sign).
- ▶ **Type I:** runs from one petrous ridge, through the sella turcica, to the other.
 - The **commonest** and **classic motor-cyclist's fracture**, from a hit on the **side of the head** (or chin tip).
- ▶ **Type II:** front to opposite back, also through the sella turcica.
- ▶ **Type III:** side to side, but does **not** cross the sella turcica.
- ▶ Hinge fractures usually tear the brainstem (ponto-medullary junction) — often **rapidly fatal**.

Ring (foramen) fracture:

- ▶ A fissured fracture **3–5 cm outside the foramen magnum**, running all around the back and sides, through the middle ears and roof of the nose — separating the skull from the spine.
- ▶ Usual cause: a **fall from height onto the feet or buttocks**, driving body weight up the spine; also a heavy weight falling on the vertex.
- ▶ Usually **lethal**, from associated brainstem injury.

Fossa-specific signs

- ▶ **Anterior fossa** — from a frontal impact or a blow on the chin.
 - CSF **rhinorrhoea** and **raccoon eyes** (periorbital/panda haematoma).
- ▶ **Middle fossa** — typically from a direct blow behind the ear.
 - Fracture of the **petrous temporal bone**, with CSF **otorrhoea** and **haemotympanum**.
 - **Facial nerve (VII) and vestibulocochlear nerve (VIII) palsy**.
- ▶ **Posterior fossa** — from a direct impact on the back of the head.
 - Blood and CSF escape through the **mouth**; bruising at the **nape of the neck**.
 - Near the foramen magnum: risk of cerebellar contusion, oedema, and **tonsillar herniation** (coning).

Clinical / autopsy signs of a basal fracture

- ▶ CSF **rhinorrhoea / otorrhoea** — points to anterior / middle fossa respectively.
- ▶ **Halo (ring) sign** — CSF-blood mix on filter paper separates into a blood stain with a paler ring; the β -2-transferrin assay confirms CSF.
- ▶ **Raccoon eyes** — points to the anterior fossa.
- ▶ **Battle's sign** — mastoid bruising, appearing ~36 hours after injury, from leakage along the posterior auricular artery.
 - **Fossa attribution differs by text** — posterior fossa or middle-fossa/petrous; either is examiner-acceptable.
- ▶ **Water test** — demonstrates a Type I hinge fracture before dissection: turn the head to one side and pour water into one ear.
 - Dripping from the **opposite ear** confirms a Type I hinge fracture; dripping also from the **nostrils** adds a cribriform-plate fracture.
 - Useful when autopsy is refused and radiology is unavailable.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — base of skull, superior view, three fossae.** Label: anterior/middle/posterior fossae, crista galli, cribriform plate, lesser wing of sphenoid, sella turcica, greater wing of sphenoid, petrous ridge, foramen magnum, clivus, optic canal, superior orbital fissure, foramen ovale/spinosum, jugular foramen, internal acoustic meatus.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — hinge and ring fractures.** Panel A: Type I hinge line from one petrous ridge through the sella turcica to the other. Panel B: ring fracture 3–5 cm around the foramen magnum.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Manner of injury:**
 - Ring fractures point to a fall from height onto the feet or buttocks.
 - Hinge Type I fractures point to lateral impact, typical of two-wheeler road-traffic crashes.
 - Signature fractures of the vault can reveal the weapon used.
 - Multiple, localised, depressed fractures suggest **homicide**; suicidal head injury is rare.
- ▶ **Cause and rapidity of death:**
 - Hinge and ring fractures imply brainstem injury and near-instant death.
 - Blood inhaled into the lungs, via a basal fracture into the sphenoid sinus, shows death was **not instantaneous**.
- ▶ **Autopsy technique:**
 - Open the heart first to decompress intracranial vessels, before opening the calvaria.
 - Strip the dura from the base with forceps to find basal fractures.
 - Chisel/hammer use during skull-cap removal can create **artefactual (post-mortem) fractures** — distinguish from ante-mortem injury by vital reaction and edge haemorrhage.
- ▶ **Relevant law:**
 - An unnatural death needs a police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
 - Custodial or road-traffic deaths also invoke **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
 - Assault cases grade injury against "**grievous hurt**" — **Section 320 IPC 1860 (now Section 116 BNS 2023)**.
 - Voluntarily causing grievous hurt is defined in **Section 322 IPC 1860 (now Section 117(1) BNS 2023)**, punishable under **Section 325 IPC 1860 (now Section 117(2) BNS 2023)**.
 - Death is charged as culpable homicide/murder under **Sections 299/300 IPC 1860 (now Sections 100/101 BNS 2023)**.
 - Autopsy findings are tendered as **expert opinion under Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Describe the blood supply of the heart and discuss the medico-legal importance of Cardiac Tamponade

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ The **coronary circulation** supplies the heart through the **right and left coronary arteries**, the first two branches of the ascending aorta.
- ▶ Where they occlude determines where lethal myocardial damage occurs — central to certifying sudden cardiac death.
- ▶ **Cardiac tamponade** is acute, life-threatening compression of the heart by blood or fluid inside the closed **pericardial sac**, restricting ventricular filling and causing rapid cardiogenic collapse.
- ▶ Coronary disease with rupture is the commonest **natural** cause of haemopericardium; penetrating chest injury is the commonest **unnatural** cause.
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon must distinguish disease from injury, and opine on the offence when injury is present.

Blood supply of the heart

- ▶ Two coronary arteries arise from the **aortic sinuses (sinuses of Valsalva)**, just above the aortic valve; ostia are checked at autopsy for patency, narrowing and thrombus.
- ▶ **Left main coronary artery (LMCA)**: short trunk between the aorta and the left auricle. It bifurcates into:
 - the **left anterior descending (LAD)**, in the anterior interventricular groove, and
 - the **circumflex (CX)**, winding round the mitral groove to the back of the heart.
- ▶ **Right coronary artery (RCA)**: often the larger vessel, but harder to find — buried in epicardial fat between the right auricle and the pulmonary trunk.
 - It descends in the right atrioventricular groove.
 - It usually gives the **posterior descending artery (PDA)**.
- ▶ **Coronary dominance** = which artery supplies the PDA to the posterior interventricular septum.
 - **Right-dominant** — about 70% of people.
 - **Co-dominant** — about 20%.
 - **Left-dominant** — about 10% (PDA from circumflex).
- ▶ The **AV nodal artery** usually arises from the RCA — this is why inferior-wall infarcts often cause conduction blocks.
- ▶ **Myocardial bridging**: the LAD (rarely the RCA) dips into the myocardium instead of lying in epicardial fat.
 - Present in about 1% of people.
 - The overlying muscle compresses the vessel during systole.
 - Usually benign, since coronary filling happens in diastole.
 - In tachycardia, diastole shortens — so bridging-related sudden death typically occurs during exertion or struggle.

Coronary occlusion — site and significance

- ▶ Coronary atherosclerosis with thrombosis is the single commonest cause of sudden natural death.
- ▶ The cardiovascular system accounts for 45–50% of all sudden natural deaths.

Vessel	Occlusion frequency	Note
LAD	45–64%	Commonest — the "widow maker"
RCA	24–46%	Inferior wall + conduction system at risk
Circumflex	3–10%	Lateral/posterolateral wall
LMCA	0–10%	Often rapidly fatal

- ▶ The commonest site of a coronary thrombus is about 1 cm from the origin of the left coronary artery.
- ▶ **Sequelae of occlusion:**
 - Sudden death and myocardial infarction.
 - Rupture of the heart, myocardial fibrosis, pericarditis, cardiac aneurysm.
 - A ruptured infarct or aneurysm is a direct route to haemopericardium and tamponade.
- ▶ A significant stenosis is $\geq 75\%$ luminal narrowing.

Autopsy demonstration of coronary supply

- ▶ Examine the coronaries **before opening the heart**, in situ, using the **inflow–outflow method** with an enterotome (opens tubular structures without cutting into any clot inside).
- ▶ Cut coronaries in **serial transverse sections at 2–3 mm intervals** — shows percentage stenosis and preserves any antemortem thrombus.
- ▶ Do **not** open coronaries by scissors from the ostia — this distorts the lumen and can push a thrombus along, hiding it.
- ▶ Heavily calcified vessels are stripped off and decalcified first; note plaque rupture, plaque haemorrhage and thrombus.
- ▶ Assess coronary dominance to predict the territory of any ischaemic lesion.

Cardiac tamponade — mechanism and causes

- ▶ **Mechanism:** the pericardium is relatively inelastic, so blood entering it faster than it can stretch raises intrapericardial pressure.
- ▶ This compresses the thin-walled atria and ventricles, abolishing diastolic filling — cardiogenic shock by extrinsic compression, then arrest.
- ▶ **Lethal volume:** the effect depends on the **rate** of bleeding, not the absolute volume.
- ▶ In stab wounds of the heart, tamponade occurs at about **200–300 cc** of blood in the pericardial cavity.
- ▶ A slowly developing effusion can reach far larger volumes before tamponade occurs, since the pericardium has time to stretch.

► **Natural causes:**

- Rupture of a fresh myocardial infarct (commonest).
- Spontaneous rupture of the aorta or a dissecting aneurysm into the pericardium.
- Rupture of a cardiac aneurysm.

► **Penetrating causes — stab wounds of the heart:**

- Fatality is inversely proportional to the musculature at the stab site, since muscle contracts to seal the breach.
- Wounds of the right side and the thin-walled auricles are therefore more dangerous than wounds of the ventricles.
- The **right ventricle**, with a wide area exposed anteriorly, is the chamber most often injured.

► **Blunt causes:** steering-wheel/dashboard impacts, head-on collisions, blast injury, heavy chest blows.

- A **pincer lesion** results from impact between the liver and heart across the right pericardiophrenic angle — commonly a contusion of the right atrium where the inferior vena cava enters.

► Gunshot wounds of the heart usually kill by exsanguination; tamponade is the less common mechanism.

Medico-legal significance

► **Cause-of-death certification:** severe LAD atherosclerosis, a thrombus ~1 cm from the left coronary origin, or a ruptured infarct with haemopericardium points to natural cardiac death — but only after excluding injury and poisoning.

► **Natural vs homicidal/accidental tamponade:** check the pericardium in situ before removing the heart, measure the haemopericardium, and trace the bleeding source.

- A chamber/coronary stab tract points to injury; a ruptured infarct or aorta points to disease.
- Document the wound tract, depth, direction, and the chamber injured (right ventricle most often).

► **Combined disease + injury:** trauma to atheromatous coronaries can cause traumatic coronary thrombosis within hours; minor trauma may precipitate fatal coronary spasm — relevant to medical causation.

► **Offences under the criminal codes** (legacy + new citation for each):

- Stab with intent to kill = **murder, Section 300 IPC (now Section 101 BNS 2023)**, punishable under **Section 302 IPC (now Section 103 BNS 2023)**.
- Fatal injury without the intent/knowledge required for murder = **culpable homicide not amounting to murder, Section 304 IPC (now Section 105 BNS 2023)**; defined under **Section 299 IPC (now Section 100 BNS 2023)**.
- Chest wound by a dangerous weapon = **grievous hurt by dangerous weapons, Sections 324/326 IPC (now Section 118 BNS 2023)**; grievous hurt is defined under **Section 320 IPC (now Section 116 BNS 2023)**.

► **Death investigation:** an unnatural tamponade death requires inquest — **police inquest, Section 174 CrPC (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)** or **magistrate's inquest, Section 176 CrPC (now**

Section 196 BNSS 2023) — followed by medico-legal autopsy and preservation of viscera where indicated.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — Coronary arterial supply (anterior view).** Label aorta, pulmonary trunk, both atria, left auricle, LMCA, LAD, circumflex, RCA, marginal branch, posterior descending artery, venae cavae. Mark occlusion frequencies (LAD 45–64%, RCA 24–46%, CX 3–10%, LMCA 0–10%) and the thrombus site ~1 cm from the left coronary origin.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — Cardiac tamponade (cross-section).** Label fibrous pericardium, parietal and visceral layers, blood-filled pericardial cavity (200–300 cc), compressed right ventricle, stab tract entering it. Inset arrow: compression → impaired diastolic filling → low cardiac output.



Describe the dangerous area of face and discuss its forensic aspects

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ The "dangerous area of the face" is also called the **danger triangle**.
- ▶ It is a triangular zone with its base at the two angles of the mouth and its apex at the root (bridge) of the nose.
- ▶ It covers the upper lip, the external nose, and the medial part of the cheeks.
- ▶ It is "dangerous" because its veins drain, through **valveless channels**, directly into the **cavernous sinus** inside the skull.
- ▶ A trivial infection or a squeezed pimple here can spread backward into the cranial cavity and cause fatal **cavernous sinus thrombosis**.
- ▶ Forensically the area matters for three reasons: it bleeds profusely, it scars and causes disfigurement, and it gives infection a back-door route into the brain.

Applied anatomy

- ▶ **Boundaries:** an inverted triangle — base across the two angles of the mouth, apex at the root of the nose.
- ▶ **Superficial venous route:** the area drains into the **facial vein**, which continues upward as the **angular vein** at the inner corner of the eye.
- ▶ The angular vein connects with the **superior ophthalmic vein**, which empties directly into the **cavernous sinus**.
- ▶ **Deep venous route:** the deep facial vein drains into the **pterygoid venous plexus**, which also connects to the cavernous sinus through emissary veins.

- ▶ **Emissary veins** pass through skull foramina and link the scalp/face veins outside with the parasagittal, lateral, and cavernous sinuses inside — the anatomical bridge that lets superficial sepsis become intracranial disease.
- ▶ The scalp has a related danger zone of its own, sharing the same emissary-vein mechanism: the **loose areolar tissue layer**, the fourth of its five layers (mnemonic **SCALP** — Skin, Connective tissue, Aponeurosis, Loose areolar tissue, Pericranium).

Why the area is dangerous

- ▶ **Retrograde septic spread:** a furuncle, boil, pimple, infected wound, or insect bite in the triangle — especially if squeezed — can seed septic thrombus into the facial, angular, and ophthalmic veins.
- ▶ Because these veins are valveless, the thrombus travels backward into the cavernous sinus, causing **septic cavernous sinus thrombosis**.
- ▶ **Clinical picture of cavernous sinus thrombosis:** oedema of the forehead and eyelids, proptosis (bulging eye), and chemosis (conjunctival swelling).
- ▶ It can progress to **meningitis, cerebral abscess, or infarction/abscess of the pituitary gland**.
- ▶ Cranial nerves III, IV, VI, and the ophthalmic/maxillary divisions of nerve V, which lie beside the sinus, can also be affected.
- ▶ **Profuse bleeding:** the face is highly vascular, so even modest facial wounds bleed heavily and can look worse than they are.
- ▶ **Scarring and disfigurement:** facial wounds, especially lacerations, tend to heal with visible scars — a point with direct medico-legal weight.
- ▶ **Infection without fracture:** scalp and facial injuries can cause intracranial infection even without a skull fracture, purely through the emissary-vein route.

Regional facial injuries and their forensic significance

Each injury is tied to a clause of **Section 116, BNS 2023** — the current grievous-hurt provision, replacing **Section 320, IPC 1860's** "Firstly...Eightly" with clauses (a)–(h).

Structure	Typical injury	Forensic significance
Eyes	Blow causing corneal/lens/vitreous injury, retinal detachment, cataract, or gouging	Permanent loss of sight of either eye = grievous hurt, clause (b)
Black eye	Periorbital bruising from a direct blow, blood tracking from a forehead wound, or an anterior cranial fossa fracture	An ectopic bruise — may signal a base-of-skull fracture, not local violence
Nose	Bitten or cut off; blow causing epistaxis or CSF leak	Cut on the bridge of the nose is held to be permanent disfigurement, clause (f)

Structure	Typical injury	Forensic significance
Facial bones	Fracture of nasal, ethmoid, maxillary, or malar bones; "pulsing of the face" from a heavy blow	Fracture of a bone = grievous, clause (g)
Teeth	Fracture or dislocation from a fall or blow	Fracture/dislocation of a tooth = grievous, clause (g)
Ears	Ruptured eardrum or labyrinth injury from a blow	Permanent loss of hearing of either ear = grievous, clause (c)

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Cause of death:** death some days after an apparently trivial facial injury or facial sepsis may be due to cavernous sinus thrombosis, meningitis, or cerebral abscess spreading via the facial/emissary veins.
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon must open the dural venous sinuses and examine the cavernous sinuses, base of brain, and pituitary before excluding this causal link.
- ▶ **Injury classification:** facial lacerations heal with scarring, so they count as grievous hurt through permanent disfigurement.
- ▶ Facial abrasions heal without scarring, so they remain simple hurt.
- ▶ Permanent disfigurement of the head or face is **clause (f) of Section 116, BNS 2023** (the direct successor of "Sixthly" under **Section 320, IPC 1860**, superseded 1 July 2024).
- ▶ Branding the face and careless suturing that leaves a visible scar have both been held to be grievous disfigurement.
- ▶ **Punishment provisions:** voluntarily causing grievous hurt is **Section 117, BNS 2023** (= **Section 322, IPC 1860**).
- ▶ Its punishment is **Section 117(2), BNS 2023** (= **Section 325, IPC 1860**) — up to 7 years' imprisonment plus fine.
- ▶ Grievous hurt by dangerous weapons or means is **Section 118, BNS 2023** (= **Section 326, IPC 1860**) — imprisonment for life or up to 10 years, plus fine.
- ▶ **Acid attacks (vitriolage):** the paradigmatic cause of facial disfigurement, punishable under **Section 124(1), BNS 2023** (= **Section 326-A, IPC 1860**) — minimum 10 years, extendable to life, plus fine for medical expenses.
- ▶ Attempting to throw or administer acid is **Section 124(2), BNS 2023** (= **Section 326-B, IPC 1860**) — 5 to 7 years' imprisonment plus fine.
- ▶ A doctor examining a victim of a sexual offence or acid attack has a duty to treat and inform the police under **Section 397, BNSS 2023** (= **Section 357-C, CrPC 1973**).
- ▶ Refusing to treat such a victim is punishable under **Section 200, BNS 2023** — up to 1 year's imprisonment, or fine, or both.
- ▶ **Documentation:** photograph each facial wound before disturbance, and record its site, size, shape, and type.

- ▶ In suspected vitriolage, preserve the victim's clothes and plain-water swabs from the affected area for the forensic laboratory.
- ▶ Reflect facial skin at autopsy to reveal hidden bruises in suspected torture.
- ▶ **Opinion on weapon and force:** "pulping of the face" suggests a heavy blunt object.
- ▶ Profuse facial bleeding alone does not make an injury "dangerous to life" — the opinion must rest on the structures injured, not on the amount of bleeding.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — the danger triangle and its venous drainage:** draw the face with an inverted triangle, apex at the root of the nose, base across the two angles of the mouth.
- ▶ Label the upper lip, root of nose, facial vein, angular vein, superior and inferior ophthalmic veins, deep facial vein to pterygoid plexus, and the cavernous sinus.
- ▶ Add an arrow showing retrograde (valveless) flow toward the cavernous sinus.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — the five layers of the scalp and the "Danger Zone":** a vertical section labelled Skin, Connective tissue, Aponeurosis, Loose areolar tissue ("Danger Zone"), and Pericranium.
- ▶ Show an emissary vein passing through a skull foramen to a dural venous sinus.



Describe the gross and microscopic changes in Myocardial infarction

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Myocardial infarction (MI)** is coagulative necrosis (cell death that keeps the dead tissue's original outline) of an area of heart muscle.
- ▶ It follows a critical, sustained fall in that area's blood supply.
- ▶ The usual cause is atherosclerotic narrowing of a coronary artery with a superimposed thrombus.
- ▶ Less often it follows coronary spasm or embolism.
- ▶ MI is the single most common cause of sudden natural death in adults.
- ▶ The diagnosis is often challenged in insurance, compensation and alleged-assault cases.
- ▶ So the pathologist must recognise the lesion and estimate its age from its evolving gross and microscopic appearance.

Coronary substrate and types of infarct

- ▶ Infarction begins only once a coronary lumen narrows to about **20% or less** of its width.
- ▶ Atherosclerotic narrowing is graded **moderate** at >50% and **severe** at >75% stenosis.
- ▶ **Commonest site of occlusion:** the first 2 cm of the anterior descending branch of the left coronary artery (LAD).

- ▶ Next commonest: proximal right coronary artery, then the circumflex branch, then the left main trunk.
- ▶ **Commonest site of infarct:** the left ventricle's anterior wall.
- ▶ Posterior infarcts follow blockage of the right coronary or circumflex artery.
- ▶ The right ventricle and atria are involved in fewer than 10% of cases.
- ▶ The papillary muscles (which anchor the mitral and tricuspid valve leaflets) are usually involved too.
- ▶ **Two morphological types:**

Type	Pattern	Cause
Laminar (subendocardial)	Diffuse, less well-defined necrosis of the subendocardium; may extend through half the wall	Generalised narrowing of major coronary branches
Regional (transmural)	More common; a well-demarcated zone of necrosis, sparing a thin subendocardial rim	Localised occlusion or severe stenosis of one artery

Gross (naked-eye) changes — timeline

- ▶ **0–12 h:** no visible change; cut surface looks normal.
- ▶ **12–24 h:** first visible sign — oedema and **pallor**; cut surface dull, granular, mildly bulging.
- ▶ **1–3 days:** area becomes demarcated and turns **yellow**, with a **red hyperaemic border**.
- ▶ Alternating red and pale bands at this stage give the classic "**tigroid**" (**tiger-like**) look; softening also begins now.
- ▶ **4–7 days:** yellow-tan centre with a soft, red-brown border.
- ▶ The infarct is **softest** in this window, so **cardiac rupture risk is highest here**.
- ▶ **~10 days:** maximally yellow/yellow-green, soft and shrunken, with a purple hyperaemic rim.
- ▶ **3rd week onward:** the centre turns gelatinous and grey as granulation tissue replaces dead muscle.
- ▶ **4–6 weeks to ~3 months:** dead muscle is replaced by a thin, grey-white, hard, shrunken fibrous scar.
- ▶ The scar is well developed by about **3 months**.
- ▶ A soft, mottled or haemorrhagic area on cut section means an **acute** infarct.
- ▶ A grey, depressed scar means an **old (healed)** infarct — a key distinction to record at autopsy.

Microscopic (histological) changes — timeline

- ▶ **0–6 h:** no change visible under the light microscope yet.
- ▶ The earliest histological clue is **wavy, stretched myocytes** (heart muscle fibres).
- ▶ **4–12 h:** **coagulative necrosis** begins.
- ▶ Fibres develop intense **sarcoplasmic eosinophilia** — they stain abnormally deep pink.
- ▶ Nuclei show **pyknosis** — shrinkage and clumping.

- ▶ **Contraction-band necrosis** (dense, hypercontracted bands) appears, especially after blood flow is restored.
- ▶ **Neutrophils** begin infiltrating, with a little interstitial haemorrhage and oedema.
- ▶ **12–24 h:** necrosis continues; contraction bands appear at the periphery; neutrophils increase further.
- ▶ **1–3 days:** necrosis is now **complete** — fibres fragment and **lose their nuclei**.
- ▶ Neutrophil infiltration is dense and peaks around **day 2–4**.
- ▶ **4–7 days:** **macrophages** appear and start phagocytosing (clearing away) dead fibres.
- ▶ Early **granulation tissue** forms at the edge of the infarct, with dilated capillaries.
- ▶ **~10 days:** granulation tissue is now prominent at the periphery.
- ▶ Pigment-laden (lipofuscin-containing) macrophages, eosinophils, lymphocytes and plasma cells are all present.
- ▶ **2–4 weeks:** dead muscle is progressively replaced by vascular fibrous scar tissue growing in from the border.
- ▶ **4–6 weeks (about 6 weeks average):** the scar matures into **dense collagen** with focal elastin.
- ▶ By maturity only a few pigmented macrophages and scattered chronic inflammatory cells remain.

Demonstrating an early infarct — special techniques

- ▶ **TTC test:** heart slices are dipped in triphenyl tetrazolium chloride.
- ▶ Healthy, enzyme-rich muscle stains **red/red-brown**; enzyme-depleted infarcted muscle stays **pale/unstained**.
- ▶ **Nitro-BT (formazan) test:** same principle — normal muscle turns dark blue, infarcted muscle stays faint blue or yellow-brown.
- ▶ **Enzyme histochemistry** is the most reliable method to detect a *very early* infarct.
- ▶ **K⁺/Na⁺ ionic ratio** falls within minutes of oxygen loss (normal about 1.4, falling to ≤ 0.8 in infarcted tissue).
- ▶ **Fluorescence microscopy** can also detect a very early infarct.
- ▶ Practical rule: an infarct is easily identified on routine examination only once it is **more than ~12 hours old**.

Complications and autopsy findings

- ▶ **Cardiac rupture** of the soft infarct (risk peaks between the 3rd and 10th day) causes haemopericardium and cardiac tamponade.
- ▶ Rupture of a fresh infarct is itself a recognised cause of sudden cardiac death.
- ▶ **Papillary muscle rupture** causes sudden acute mitral regurgitation.
- ▶ **Mural thrombus** on the infarcted endocardium can break off and cause systemic embolism.
- ▶ An old scar can bulge outward into a **ventricular aneurysm**.
- ▶ Most sudden coronary deaths show **no** fresh thrombus or acute infarct at all — severe ($\geq 75\%$) narrowing alone can be enough, causing pump failure or fatal arrhythmia.

- ▶ A heart weighing **more than ~420 g** carries a risk of sudden arrhythmic death even with open coronary arteries.
- ▶ **Pitfall:** posterior postmortem hypostasis (livor mortis, blood settling after death) in the heart can mimic an infarct — do not over-call it.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Ageing the infarct** links its histological age to the alleged event (assault, accident, surgery, custody) and tests the claimed survival interval — a routinely contested point.
- ▶ MI/coronary artery disease is the commonest cause of sudden natural death; the coronary ostia, atheroma, thrombus and any $\geq 75\%$ narrowing must be specifically examined and documented.
- ▶ A sudden, unexpected or unwitnessed death is reportable to the police for inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ A magisterial inquiry is required in certain cases under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Even an apparently natural coronary death referred for medico-legal autopsy must exclude trauma or poisoning before the cause of death is signed.
- ▶ **Cause-of-death certificate (Form 4/4A):** record MI as the immediate/antecedent cause, with the underlying coronary atherosclerosis and the interval where known.
- ▶ Distinguish a true infarct (confined to one coronary artery's territory) from a **myocardial contusion** (a sharply bordered bruise, often anterior, after blunt chest impact) — a distinction examiners specifically test.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — Cut surface of the left ventricle, transmural anterior-wall infarct.** Label: left ventricle, anterior wall infarct, yellow soft necrotic centre, hyperaemic (red) border, tigroid alternating red/pale bands, occluded LAD, thin subendocardial-sparing rim.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — Timeline chart, gross row vs microscopic row, 0–6 h to 6 weeks.** Label: no change/wavy fibres, pallor, yellow + hyperaemia (tigroid), softening (rupture risk 3rd–10th day), granulation tissue + macrophages, grey gelatinous, grey-white fibrous scar (~6 weeks–3 months).



Describe the histopathology of cirrhosis and its forensic significance

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Cirrhosis** is the end-stage, irreversible disorganisation of liver architecture.
- ▶ Diffuse **fibrosis** (scar tissue) and **regenerative nodules** (regrowing islands of hepatocytes) replace the normal lobular pattern.

- ▶ In Indian autopsy practice it is usually **alcoholic cirrhosis**, found in roughly 10–20% of people who drink heavily for a decade or more.
- ▶ It matters forensically for cause of death, wound interpretation, sudden death, and proof of chronic alcoholism.

The morphological triad

- ▶ **Hepatocyte injury and death** is the first step — in alcoholic disease it is caused by ethanol and its toxic metabolite *acetaldehyde*.
- ▶ Liver biopsy at this stage shows hepatocyte necrosis, **Mallory bodies** (damaged, rope-like protein clumps), neutrophilic infiltration and perivenular inflammation.
- ▶ **Diffuse fibrosis** follows — dying hepatocytes trigger collagen (scar) deposition throughout the organ.
- ▶ Fibrosis is what makes the liver firm; normal adult liver weighs 1300–1500 g, and weight falls once cirrhosis sets in.
- ▶ Ludwig's "finger test" — slicing and tearing a fresh liver — is normally easy but becomes almost impossible once fibrosis is established.
- ▶ **Regenerative nodules** form as surviving hepatocytes multiply between the fibrous bands.
- ▶ These nodules give the cirrhotic liver its bumpy, studded surface.
- ▶ The triad is diffuse (whole-organ, not patchy) and irreversible — unlike simple fatty liver, cirrhosis is established end-stage disease.

Spectrum of alcoholic liver injury

Chronic alcoholism damages the liver in three graded stages, with cirrhosis as the final, irreversible one.

Stage	Reversibility	Key histopathology	Gross liver
Fatty liver (steatosis)	Reversible	Fat vacuoles inside hepatocytes	Enlarged, soft, greasy cut surface
Alcoholic hepatitis	Partly reversible	Hepatocyte necrosis, Mallory bodies, neutrophilic and perivenular inflammation	Enlarged, mottled
Cirrhosis	Irreversible	Diffuse fibrosis + regenerative nodules destroy lobular architecture	Small, hard, nodular, contracted

- ▶ **Mallory bodies** (Mallory–Denk hyaline) — eosinophilic, rope-like inclusions in damaged hepatocytes — are the histological hallmark of alcoholic liver injury.
- ▶ **Biochemical clue:** AST and ALT are both raised but stay under 300 IU/L, with an **AST:ALT ratio above 2.0** — a pattern rarely seen in other liver diseases.

Gross pathology at autopsy

- ▶ The cirrhotic liver is shrunken, with decreased weight compared to the normal 1300–1500 g.

- ▶ **Portal (alcoholic/"Laennec") cirrhosis:** liver studded with uniform small nodules, 1–3 mm — the *micronodular* pattern.
- ▶ **Post-hepatic (post-necrotic) cirrhosis:** nodules of varying size, 4–10 mm or more — the *macronodular* pattern.
- ▶ **Biliary cirrhosis:** liver is granular and olive-green.
- ▶ A fatty liver differs from true cirrhosis — its cut surface is merely greasy, not hard and nodular.

Microscopic features

- ▶ **Regenerative nodules** of hepatocytes that have lost their normal orientation to the central vein and portal tract.
- ▶ **Fibrous (collagen) septa** encircle the nodules, with bridging fibrosis linking portal tracts to central veins.
- ▶ **Mallory bodies** within ballooned, degenerating hepatocytes.
- ▶ **Hepatocyte necrosis**, with ballooning and fatty change in the surviving cells.
- ▶ **Neutrophilic infiltrate**, typically perivenular (centrilobular, zone 3) in distribution.
- ▶ **Bile-duct proliferation** and chronic inflammatory cells within the expanded septa.
- ▶ Because the pathology is diffuse, several tissue blocks should be taken at autopsy — a single subcapsular block suffices only when the liver looks grossly normal.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Cause and manner of death:** cirrhosis is a natural disease; liver failure is the commonest cause of death in chronic alcoholism and can explain an otherwise unexplained sudden death.
- ▶ **Corroborates chronic alcoholism:** together with oesophageal varices, fatty or cirrhotic liver, alcoholic cardiomyopathy, Wernicke–Korsakoff brain changes (cerebellar vermis and mammillary-body atrophy from thiamine deficiency), and gastritis, cirrhosis is strong physical proof of habitual drinking — relevant to insurance, employment fitness and inquest questions.
- ▶ **Easy bruising:** cirrhotic alcoholics bruise easily because impaired clotting-factor synthesis and thrombocytopenia (low platelets) reduce haemostasis.
- ▶ A bruise in a known cirrhotic may look larger, or need less force to produce, than expected — a caution before calling it severe assault.
- ▶ **Oesophageal varices:** portal hypertension from cirrhosis dilates fragile veins at the oesophago-gastric junction, and their rupture causes fatal haematemesis (vomiting of blood).
- ▶ If alcoholism or cirrhosis is suspected, the oesophagus must be left unopened and demonstrated in continuity with the stomach, or the varices collapse and are missed.
- ▶ **Battered alcoholic syndrome:** three or more fractures in different stages of healing in an alcoholic, from repeated falls and fights on top of direct toxic and nutritional damage.
- ▶ A healed or fresh thyrohyoid (laryngeal) fracture in such a person may mimic strangulation but can actually be from a fall — date the fracture histologically before opining homicidal strangulation.
- ▶ **Fitness and consent:** established cirrhosis affects fitness for surgery or anaesthesia and life expectancy, relevant wherever injury and natural disease coexist.

- ▶ **Toxic versus alcoholic injury:** poisons such as phosphorus, arsenic, paracetamol and *Amanita* also cause hepatic fatty change or necrosis, but diffuse fibrosis with regenerative nodules points to chronic disease, not acute poisoning.
- ▶ **Inquest:** an unexplained death from cirrhosis or ruptured varices found in suspicious circumstances is investigated under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)** (police inquest) or **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)** (magistrate's inquest).
- ▶ **Living examination:** a suspected drunken or alcoholic person is examined for a police case under **Section 53 CrPC 1973 (now Section 51 BNSS 2023)**; the certifying doctor's opinion is expert opinion under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ **Autopsy record:** note liver weight, colour, consistency and nodule size; take several histology blocks; sample brain (cerebellar vermis, mammillary bodies), heart and pancreas to complete the chronic-alcohol picture.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Low-power histology of cirrhosis:** label the regenerative nodule of hepatocytes, the encircling fibrous septum with bridging fibrosis, loss of lobular architecture, a Mallory body in a ballooned hepatocyte, the perivenular neutrophilic infiltrate, and bile-duct proliferation in the septum.
- ▶ **Gross cirrhotic liver:** label the shrunken, hard, nodular surface; the micronodular pattern (1–3 mm, portal/Laennec) versus the macronodular pattern (4–10 mm, post-necrotic); the firm cut surface (positive finger test); and an inset showing oesophageal varices demonstrated in continuity with the stomach.



Describe the microscopic features of thrombus and its forensic aspects

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ A **thrombus** is a solid mass of platelets, fibrin, red cells and leucocytes that forms inside a blood vessel or heart chamber **during life**, attached to the vessel wall.
- ▶ This makes it an *intravital* (antemortem) coagulum, distinct from a **postmortem clot**, which forms passively after death and is not attached to the wall.
- ▶ The diagnostic microscopic feature is the **line of Zahn** — alternating bands of platelets/fibrin and red cells.
- ▶ Forensic importance is twofold: it is microscopic proof an event happened **before death**, and a detached thrombus (embolus) is an important **delayed cause of death** after trauma.

Microscopic features

- ▶ **Lines of Zahn (the diagnostic feature):**
 - Alternating laminated bands are seen under low power.

- Pale layers are rich in **platelets and fibrin**; darker layers are rich in **red blood cells**.
- These layers record rhythmic deposition of clot in *flowing* blood, proving it formed during life.
- Grossly they appear as **coral-shaped platelet masses (coralline thrombi)**, the scaffold on which fibrin builds.
- ▶ **Platelet–fibrin meshwork**: eosinophilic fibrin strands form a network that traps platelets, red cells and leucocytes; the proportion of each decides the gross colour.
- ▶ **Attachment to the vessel wall**:
 - A thrombus is firmly adherent to the endothelium/intima.
 - The attachment point usually shows endothelial injury and platelet adhesion — the nidus where it began.
 - Stripping it away leaves a roughened vessel surface underneath.
- ▶ **Colour correlates with composition**:
 - A **white thrombus** is platelet/fibrin-rich, typically arterial and high-flow.
 - A **red thrombus** is red-cell-rich, typically venous with stasis.
 - A **mixed thrombus** shows the classic Zahn lamination.
 - Grossly, a true antemortem thrombus is firm, tough, dry, dull and granular, with a greyish-red colour.

How a thrombus ages — organisation and dating

- ▶ **Organisation** means fibroblasts, endothelium and smooth-muscle cells grow into the fibrin-rich thrombus.
- ▶ This gives a reproducible timeline useful for **dating an injury**.
 - **1–2 days**: early organisation begins.
 - **~1 week**: the clot is completely organised.
 - **~2 weeks**: the clot is replaced by fibrous tissue.
- ▶ Later the thrombus may develop new channels through it (**recanalisation**) or calcify into a **phlebolith** (a calcified venous thrombus).
- ▶ Finding organisation or recanalisation proves the thrombus is **old and antemortem** — a postmortem clot can never organise.

Antemortem thrombus vs postmortem clot

This is the most tested forensic distinction, because mistaking one for the other can change the opinion on cause of death.

Feature	Antemortem thrombus	Postmortem clot
Colour	Uniform greyish-red	"Chicken-fat" (two layers) or uniform "currant-jelly" red
Consistency	Firm, tough, dry, granular	Gelatinous, shiny, rubbery, soft
Lines of Zahn	Present	Absent

Feature	Antemortem thrombus	Postmortem clot
Stripping	Peels off in shreddy layers	Comes off like jelly, cannot be layered
Wall adherence	Firmly adherent; roughened surface beneath	Not adherent; smooth surface beneath
Shape	Has its own shape at the site of formation	Casts the shape of the vessel
On slicing lung	Projects/pours out above the cut surface	Does not project

- ▶ Postmortem clotting starts within about **1 hour of death**, and lysis begins at the same time.
- ▶ So blood may be fully clotted, fully fluid, or partly both, depending on site and body.
- ▶ Small vessels usually clot fully by about **8 hours**; large vessels may stay partly fluid.
- ▶ Blood stays unusually **fluid** in asphyxial and sudden deaths — itself a forensic clue.

Special thrombi seen at autopsy

- ▶ **Agonal thrombi:**
 - Firm, stringy, pale-yellow thrombi forming during the terminal phase of dying, usually on the **right side of the heart**.
 - Seen in slow circulatory failure or conditions that raise coagulability, such as lobar pneumonia.
 - Start in the atrial appendage or ventricular apex, then extend as a tree-like cast into the pulmonary artery.
 - Indicate a **slow, antemortem dying process**.
- ▶ **Coralline thrombi:** the coral-shaped platelet/fibrin masses underlying the lines of Zahn.
- ▶ **Cardiac polyps:** postmortem, pedunculated fibrinous clots — not to be mistaken for organised thrombi.
- ▶ **Coronary thrombus:** most atherosclerotic sudden cardiac deaths have **no** coronary thrombus; **traumatic coronary thrombosis** from blunt chest injury is a rare but recognised cause.

Forensic aspects — thrombosis, embolism and trauma

- ▶ **Thrombosis as a delayed cause of death:**
 - Trauma injures the venous intima, and a thrombus forms at that site.
 - It can detach and cause fatal **pulmonary thromboembolism** — a classic delayed cause of death from a wound.
- ▶ **Deep vein thrombosis (DVT):**
 - Commonest sites: deep femoral, popliteal and posterior tibial veins.
 - Typically forms **10–20 days after injury**, then embolises.
 - About 10–20% of fatal pulmonary emboli occur with no antecedent trauma.

- ▶ **Predisposing factors:** general debility, immobility/bed-rest (venous stasis), local venous injury; prolonged cramped travel plus dehydration gives the same picture — the "economy-class syndrome."
- ▶ **Cause of death in pulmonary embolism:**
 - Acute right-heart failure (**acute cor pulmonale**).
 - Acute asphyxia.
 - **Vagal inhibition** — reflex cardiac arrest from vagus overstimulation.
 - Autopsy shows a full pulmonary artery before it is opened.
- ▶ **Telling an embolus apart from a postmortem clot:**
 - Cylindrical with parallel contours, often branched and curled.
 - Its shape matches the vein it came from, not the vessel it is now stuck in.
 - A postmortem clot instead casts the vessel it occupies.
 - **Lung infarction** occurs only when a segmental (smaller) artery is blocked, not the main trunk.
- ▶ **Dural sinus thrombosis:** an antemortem thrombus in the superior sagittal sinus raises pressure in the bridging veins and can cause **subdural haemorrhage**.
- ▶ **Vital reaction:** thrombosis/fibrin at a wound supports an antemortem origin, but its absence does not rule out that the injury was antemortem.
- ▶ **Embalming** can dislodge, dissolve or wash away thrombi and emboli — examine the body before embalming wherever possible.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Longitudinal section of a thrombus showing lines of Zahn** — label the vessel wall/endothelium, the point of attachment, pale platelet–fibrin laminae, dark red-cell laminae, coralline platelet masses, and the propagating tail toward the heart.
- ▶ **Pulmonary thromboembolus** — label the thrombus origin in the leg vein, the detached embolus travelling toward the heart, its impaction at the pulmonary artery bifurcation, the right ventricle, and the cast mirroring the arterial branching.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ A demonstrable antemortem thrombus — lines of Zahn, firm adherence, organisation/recanalisation — is proof an event occurred **during life**, and is central to the cause-of-death opinion.
- ▶ Fatal pulmonary thromboembolism developing 10–20 days after an injury is a recognised **delayed cause of death due to wounds**, relevant when culpable homicide or grievous hurt is alleged.
 - Relevant provisions for hurt/grievous hurt: §§319–326 IPC 1860 (**now §§114–125 BNS 2023**).
 - Culpable homicide: §§299/304 IPC (**now §§100/105 BNS 2023**).
 - Murder: §§300/302 IPC (**now §§101/103 BNS 2023**).

- ▶ These findings go into the medico-legal autopsy report, done on requisition for a police inquest under §174 CrPC 1973 (now §194 BNSS 2023) or a magisterial inquiry under §176 CrPC 1973 (now §196 BNSS 2023).
- ▶ The doctor's opinion on antemortem-versus-postmortem clotting is **expert evidence under §45 Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now §39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ Dating an organising thrombus histologically helps **time the injury** relative to death and to the alleged assault.
- ▶ Examine the body before embalming wherever possible, since embalming washes away thrombi and emboli.



Describe the pathophysiology of shock and autopsy findings in case of fatal anaphylactic shock following intramuscular injection of penicillin

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Shock:** an acute, generalised circulatory disturbance with hypoperfusion of cells and tissues, from a fall in blood volume or cardiac output.
- ▶ **Anaphylaxis:** an acute, IgE-mediated hypersensitivity reaction that can progress to shock and death within minutes.
- ▶ **Anaphylactic shock** is a form of **distributive shock** — vasodilatation and peripheral pooling of blood, not volume loss or pump failure.
- ▶ Death is due to bronchospasm, vasodilatation and increased capillary permeability, causing laryngeal oedema, asphyxia and cardiovascular collapse.
- ▶ **Penicillin** is the classic offending drug; the term *anaphylaxis* was coined in 1902 by Portier and Richet.
- ▶ This is a medico-legally charged death — sudden, after a routine injection, often litigated for negligence, with non-specific and easily-missed autopsy findings.

Classification of shock

Type	Mechanism	Forensic example
Hypovolaemic	Loss of blood/plasma volume → ↓ venous return, ↓ cardiac output	Haemorrhage (commonest), severe burns
Cardiogenic	Myocardial pump failure → ↓ cardiac output	MI, cardiac tamponade, pulmonary embolism
Septic	Microbial toxins → vasodilatation, peripheral pooling	Gram-negative sepsis, toxic-shock syndrome
Anaphylactic	IgE-mediated vasodilatation + ↑ capillary permeability	Penicillin, insect stings, foods

Type	Mechanism	Forensic example
Neurogenic	Loss of vascular tone → peripheral pooling	Spinal cord injury, anaesthetic accident

Three stages of shock

- ▶ **Stage 1 — Compensated (non-progressive).** Reflex neurohumoral mechanisms preserve perfusion of vital organs.
 - Baroreceptor reflexes, catecholamine release, sympathetic stimulation, the renin–angiotensin axis and ADH all activate.
 - Net effect: tachycardia, peripheral vasoconstriction (cool pale skin), renal fluid conservation.
 - Septic shock is the exception — vasodilatation keeps the skin warm and flushed.
 - Heart and brain flow are relatively spared, so they stay perfused early.
- ▶ **Stage 2 — Progressive.** If the cause is not corrected, widespread tissue hypoxia forces cells into anaerobic glycolysis.
 - Excess lactic acid causes metabolic acidosis, which blunts the vasomotor response.
 - Arterioles dilate and blood pools in the microcirculation, further lowering cardiac output.
 - Anoxic endothelial injury triggers disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), and vital organs begin to fail.
- ▶ **Stage 3 — Irreversible.** Cellular injury is now too severe for survival, even if the haemodynamic defects are corrected.
 - Lysosomal enzyme leakage worsens the shock, and myocardial contractility falls.
 - Ischaemic bowel lets gut flora enter the circulation, causing superimposed bacteraemic shock.
 - Acute tubular necrosis causes complete renal shutdown, and death follows.

Pathophysiology of anaphylactic shock after IM penicillin

- ▶ **Sensitisation.** On first contact, penicillin acts as a hapten, binds a carrier protein, and triggers IgE antibody formation.
- ▶ The IgE fixes onto mast cells and basophils.
- ▶ **Re-exposure.** The next injection's allergen cross-links the cell-bound IgE, triggering mast-cell degranulation.
- ▶ **Mediators released:**
 - Preformed — histamine, tryptase, heparin.
 - Newly synthesised — leukotrienes (more potent than histamine), PAF, bradykinin.
- ▶ **The lethal triad:**
 - Bronchospasm (bronchiolar smooth-muscle contraction).
 - Vasodilatation.
 - Increased capillary permeability, with plasma leakage into tissues.
- ▶ The result is acute tissue hypoperfusion and hypoxia superimposed on airway obstruction.

- ▶ **Mode of death:** laryngeal oedema and asphyxia, severe bronchospasm, and/or cardiovascular collapse.
- ▶ Onset is rapid — symptoms begin within 15–20 minutes, and most fatal cases die within 1–2 hours.
- ▶ **Unpredictability (the medico-legal crux):** about 75% of penicillin-anaphylaxis deaths had shown no earlier allergic reaction — it can be fatal on an apparently uneventful first exposure.
- ▶ **Clinical features before death:**
 - General: malaise, weakness, facial oedema.
 - Skin and mucosa: injection-site wheal, urticaria, periorbital oedema, cyanosis.
 - Airway: laryngeal oedema, hoarseness, stridor, dyspnoea, bronchospasm.
 - Systemic: tachycardia and shock, anxiety and convulsions, nausea and vomiting.

Autopsy findings

Findings are non-specific, and many victims show no distinguishing gross features. A near-negative autopsy with a typical history is itself suggestive. A pre-autopsy chest X-ray may show pulmonary oedema.

- ▶ **External:** cyanosis, froth at the mouth and nostrils, facial oedema.
- ▶ The injection mark with a surrounding wheal/urticaria (~5%) is the critical localising lesion — seek, photograph and excise it.
- ▶ **Upper airway:** laryngeal/pharyngeal and tongue oedema (~41%).
- ▶ It recedes soon after death, so an early autopsy is desirable.
- ▶ **Lungs:** congestion, oedema, and froth in the airway.
- ▶ Hyperinflation with mucus plugging (~27%); petechiae in the airway mucosa (~18%) suggest an asphyxial element.
- ▶ **Brain:** cerebral oedema (~27%), reflecting cerebral hypoxia.
- ▶ **Viscera:** generalised congestion of internal organs.
- ▶ **Spleen:** eosinophil leucocytes in the red pulp.
- ▶ **Histopathology:** infiltration of the bronchial walls with eosinophils — the most useful microscopic pointer.

Specimens to preserve:

- ▶ Skin around the injection site, excised with a 5 cm margin; freeze at –70°C if not analysed at once.
- ▶ Femoral, not cardiac, blood — cardiac blood falsely raises tryptase.
- ▶ Freeze the serum; tryptase peaks at 1–2 hours and has a half-life of about 2 hours.
- ▶ Serum IgE against the suspected antigen (penicillin).
- ▶ Routine viscera for toxicology; stomach contents only if a food allergen is suspected.

Post-mortem diagnosis rests on a triad:

- ▶ A clear history of penicillin injection immediately followed by an anaphylactic reaction.
- ▶ An autopsy that excludes any other cause of death.

- ▶ Supportive lab evidence: raised serum mast-cell tryptase (anaphylaxis range $\approx 12\text{--}100$ ng/mL; normal $\approx 1\text{--}11.4$ ng/mL) and specific serum IgE.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ The manner of death is usually accidental (a therapeutic misadventure), but the doctor's conduct is scrutinised for negligence.
- ▶ Death under medical care is an unnatural death, needing police intimation and inquest under **Section 174/175 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194/195 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The drug vial, syringe, ampoule and residual solution must all be preserved and examined.
- ▶ **Duty of care:** before giving penicillin, elicit an allergy history and watch the patient for at least 30 minutes after the injection.
- ▶ Failure to take ordinary care can amount to a rash or negligent act causing death under **Section 304A IPC 1860 (now Section 106(1) BNS 2023)**, which has a special proviso for a registered medical practitioner acting during a medical procedure.
- ▶ Causing hurt by such an act is **Section 337 IPC $\rightarrow$ Section 125(a) BNS 2023**; grievous hurt is **Section 338 IPC $\rightarrow$ Section 125(b) BNS 2023**.
- ▶ **Case law:** in *State vs Hakim* (1947), a hakim who gave a fatal penicillin injection was held rash and negligent — his ignorance of penicillin made the act rash.
- ▶ *Jacob Mathew vs State of Punjab* (2005) and *Dr Suresh Gupta vs Delhi* (2004) held that prosecuting doctors needs gross negligence, and extreme care must precede such proceedings.
- ▶ **Differential diagnosis at autopsy:** vagal inhibition (sudden reflex cardiac arrest via the vagus), drug overdose, air embolism, mismatched transfusion — anaphylaxis is largely a diagnosis of exclusion.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Pathogenesis flow diagram:** penicillin (hapten) + carrier protein $\rightarrow$ IgE antibody $\rightarrow$ IgE fixes to mast cell/basophil (sensitisation) $\rightarrow$ re-exposure by IM penicillin $\rightarrow$ antigen cross-links IgE $\rightarrow$ mast-cell degranulation $\rightarrow$ primary mediators (histamine, tryptase, heparin) + secondary mediators (leukotrienes, PAF, bradykinin) $\rightarrow$ bronchospasm / vasodilatation / increased capillary permeability $\rightarrow$ laryngeal oedema + asphyxia + shock $\rightarrow$ death.
- ▶ **Autopsy body diagram:** injection mark with wheal on the deltoid (excise with 5 cm margin); facial/periorbital oedema, cyanosis, froth at mouth/nostrils; laryngeal oedema; hyperinflated, congested lungs with mucus plugging; cerebral oedema; femoral blood drawn for tryptase.

♦ ♦ ♦

Describe the physiology of muscle contraction and rigor mortis

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Muscle contraction:** the contractile proteins of a muscle fibre generate force and shorten the fibre, as thin **actin** filaments slide past thick **myosin** filaments, powered by ATP.
- ▶ **Rigor mortis** (Latin *rigor* = stiffness, *mortis* = of death), also called **cadaveric rigidity**, is postmortem stiffening of the body's muscles.
- ▶ It happens because the same actin-myosin machinery gets **locked irreversibly** once ATP is exhausted.
- ▶ Rigor is a key early sign for estimating **time since death** and reading body position.

How muscle contracts in life

- ▶ Each muscle fibre is packed with **myofibrils**, divided into repeating units called **sarcomeres**, each holding two overlapping filaments — thin **actin** and thick **myosin**.
- ▶ **Resting state:** ATP molecules sit adsorbed on the myosin heads, keeping myosin soft; actin and myosin overlap only slightly, so the sarcomere is at full length.
- ▶ **Sliding-filament mechanism:** a nerve impulse draws actin filaments deeper into the myosin array — "like pistons into cylinders."
- ▶ The filaments themselves do not shorten — only the Z-line-to-Z-line distance shortens, and that produces contraction.
- ▶ **Trigger:** a rise in free calcium (Ca^{2+}) in the sarcoplasm starts contraction; an ATP-driven pump then returns Ca^{2+} to the sarcoplasmic reticulum, allowing relaxation.
- ▶ **Role of ATP:** ATP on the myosin heads keeps actin-myosin cross-links **temporary and reversible**.
- ▶ This cross-bridge cycling is powered by **ATP hydrolysis to ADP and inorganic phosphate**, catalysed by **ATPase**.
- ▶ As long as glycogen lasts, ATP keeps being re-synthesised, keeping the muscle soft and extensible.

What happens after death

After **somatic death**, all muscle — voluntary, smooth, and cardiac — passes through three states:

State	Timing	Key feature
Primary relaxation	Immediate, lasts ~3 h	Eyelids, jaw, joints, sphincters all go slack
Rigor mortis	Develops as ATP falls	Actomyosin locks; muscle stiff and rigid
Secondary relaxation	Begins with putrefaction	Proteolysis breaks down actomyosin; muscle limp again

Mechanism of rigor mortis

- ▶ **Calcium pump fails:** after death the damaged membrane and ATP shortage stop the calcium pump, so rising sarcoplasmic Ca^{2+} keeps the muscle contracted.
- ▶ Anaerobic glycolysis continues briefly, but once **muscle glycogen is exhausted, no further ATP can be made.**
- ▶ As ATP disappears from the myosin surface, actin and myosin lock into a **permanent, irreversible actomyosin complex** — viscous and inextensible, which is what makes rigor hard.
- ▶ Unlike true contraction, rigor causes **no further shortening** of the sarcomere; the filaments are simply frozen where they were.
- ▶ **Biochemical thresholds:** rigor **begins at ATP ~85% of normal** and is **maximal at ATP ~15%.**
- ▶ At that point **lactic acid rises to about 0.3%** (a resting muscle has about 0.03%), and pH falls from about 7.3 to about 5.5–5.8.
- ▶ **Acid rigor:** a well-nourished, glycogen-rich muscle keeps glycolysing, so lactic/pyruvic acid forms and pH falls — the usual pattern.
- ▶ **Alkaline rigor:** a glycogen-depleted muscle (starvation, violent exertion before death) forms little acid, but rigor still develops and appears **early** — the biochemical basis of cadaveric spasm.
- ▶ **Resolution:** rigor lasts until putrefaction begins.
- ▶ At pH ~5.5, lysosomes release proteolytic enzymes — **cathepsins and calpains** — that digest the complex and let the muscle relax again.
- ▶ **Independent of the nervous system:** rigor develops in an amputated limb, in a paralysed muscle, and even in butchered meat, proving it is a purely physico-chemical change.

Order, duration, and what changes it

- ▶ Rigor appears first in the **heart** (within about 1 hour), then other smooth muscle, then voluntary muscle.
- ▶ In voluntary muscle it follows a descending head-to-foot pattern called **Nysten's law** (Pierre-Hubert Nysten, 1811).
- ▶ Sequence: eyelids (2–3 h) → face and jaw → neck → thorax → upper limbs (6 h) → trunk → lower limbs (9 h) → fingers and toes (11–12 h).
- ▶ It **disappears in the same order** it appeared.
- ▶ **Rule of 12 (rough guide):** about 12 hours to develop, 12 hours static, and 12 hours to pass off — body fully relaxed again by roughly 36 hours.
- ▶ **In India:** rigor typically lasts 24–48 hours in winter and 18–36 hours in summer (2–3 days in temperate climates); early onset means early disappearance, and vice versa.
- ▶ **Onset early / duration short:**
 - Wasting disease — cholera, typhoid, tuberculosis, cancer.
 - Convulsant poisoning — strychnine, organophosphate, tetanus, cyanide.
 - Violent deaths — cut-throat, firearm, electrocution, lightning.
 - Hot weather or heavy muscular activity before death.
- ▶ **Onset late / duration long:**

- Asphyxial deaths, hanging, carbon-monoxide poisoning.
- Severe haemorrhage or apoplexy.
- Pneumonia or neuromuscular/paralytic disease.
- Cold, dry weather, or a refrigerated body.

Conditions that mimic rigor mortis

- ▶ **Cadaveric spasm:** a rare **antemortem** phenomenon — actively working muscles stiffen **instantly** at the moment of death, skipping primary relaxation and freezing the last posture.
- ▶ Seen with intense emotion or exertion, such as fear, severe pain, a firearm wound of the head, or drowning.
- ▶ It **cannot be reproduced after death** by any method — this confirms it is a genuine antemortem sign, not an artefact.
- ▶ **Heat stiffening (pugilistic attitude):** temperatures above 65 °C coagulate and denature muscle protein.
- ▶ Flexors are affected more, giving a boxer-like posture that is firmer than ordinary rigor and **cannot be undone by extending the limb**.
- ▶ **Cold stiffening:** freezing of body fluids and fat stiffens the body; this mimics rigor but is caused by ice, not actomyosin.
- ▶ **Gas (putrefactive) stiffening:** about 2–3 days after death, putrefactive gas distends tissues and joints — limbs abduct and flex, hands open — typical of bodies recovered from water.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Sliding-filament panels (three):**
 - Relaxed muscle — Z-line, actin, myosin, ATP on the myosin surface, full sarcomere length.
 - Contracted muscle — actin pulled in, temporary cross-bridges, shortened sarcomere.
 - Rigor mortis — ATP gone, permanent actomyosin cross-links, no further shortening.
- ▶ **Nysten's-law body diagram:** an outline with arrows tracking eyelids (2–3 h) → jaw → neck → thorax → upper limb (6 h) → trunk → lower limb (9 h) → fingers/toes (11–12 h).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Rigor is a sign of **molecular (cellular) death** — proof that true, irreversible death has occurred in that muscle.
- ▶ **Estimating time since death:** no rigor suggests death within about 2 hours; rigor present throughout the whole body suggests death roughly 12 hours ago (timings roughly double in winter).
- ▶ This TSD opinion supports the **inquest** under **Section 174/176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194/196 BNSS 2023)**, and the autopsy report is tendered as **expert opinion under Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.

- ▶ **Body position at death:** rigor fixes the posture the body was in — an unsupported rigid limb (for example, an arm frozen in the air) means the body was **moved after rigor set in**, evidence the scene was disturbed.
- ▶ **Cadaveric spasm helps read manner of death:**
 - A weapon clenched in the hand supports suicide.
 - Hair or clothing gripped in the fist supports a struggle or homicide.
 - Weeds clutched by a body in water shows the victim was alive on entering the water.
- ▶ **Autopsy artefacts to not misread:**
 - Rigor of the heart can mimic left-ventricular hypertrophy.
 - Rigor of the arrector pili gives *cutis anserina* (goose-flesh).
 - Rigor of the dartos or seminal vesicle can cause postmortem semen extrusion.
 - Iris rigor can cause unequal pupils.



Describe the process of wound healing and repair. Add a note on healing of specialized tissues along with their forensic applications

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ **Wound healing** restores the structure and function of tissue damaged by injury.
- ▶ **Regeneration:** lost cells are replaced by identical parenchymal cells, leaving little or no scar.
- ▶ **Repair:** lost tissue is replaced by fibrous connective tissue, leaving a permanent scar.
- ▶ Its orderly timeline helps **estimate the age (time of infliction) of an injury**.
- ▶ It helps distinguish an **antemortem** wound from a **postmortem** one.
- ▶ It also helps grade hurt as simple or grievous.

Modes of wound healing

- ▶ **First intention (primary union):** a clean incised wound with edges re-approximated, as in a sutured wound.
 - Rapid re-epithelialisation, minimal granulation tissue, a fine linear scar.
- ▶ **Second intention (secondary union):** an open wound with a large gap or unapposed edges — a laceration, infected wound, or ulcer.
 - Heals by abundant granulation tissue, wound contraction, and slow inward migration of epithelium from the edges.
 - Inflammation is more intense and leaves a large, irregular scar.
- ▶ **Third intention (delayed primary closure):** the wound is left open about 3 days for heavy contamination, then closed as primary.

Timeline of healing (dating a wound)

Time since injury	Change
Seconds	Vasoconstriction begins to limit bleeding
Minutes	Fibrin clot forms; vasodilatation raises capillary permeability
15–30 min	Neutrophils infiltrate the wound
2–3 h	Macrophages begin to appear
24 h	Epithelium starts growing at the wound edges; macrophages now outnumber neutrophils
72 h (3 days)	Macrophages dominate; vascularised granulation tissue forms
4–5 days	New collagen fibrils form; re-epithelialisation completes
1 week	Soft, reddish scar
> 2 weeks	Collagen and elastin increase; the scar becomes dense and avascular

- ▶ Healing by second intention produces far more inflammation, granulation tissue, and scar than first intention.

Vital reaction and ancillary timing techniques

- ▶ A wound inflicted **during life** shows a **vital reaction** — proof the tissue was alive and circulating at the time of injury.
- ▶ Its components: swelling, lymph effusion, leucocytic infiltration, pus formation, and evidence of repair.
- ▶ **Enzyme histochemistry** is most useful for wounds **1–8 hours old**.
 - A central necrotic zone (0.2–0.5 mm) shows decreased enzyme activity.
 - A surrounding peripheral zone (0.1–0.3 mm) shows increased enzyme activity — the positive vital reaction.
 - Enzyme order: ATPase/esterase (~1 h), aminopeptidase (~2 h), acid phosphatase (~4 h), alkaline phosphatase (~8 h).
 - A postmortem wound shows no vital-reaction zone.
 - Unreliable in cachexia, senility, severe illness, and diffuse/multiple contusions; a control skin sample is essential.
- ▶ **Biochemical timing** is most useful in the **last hour before death**.
 - Calpains, cathepsins, and serotonin rise earliest, by about 10 minutes; histamine follows by about 30 minutes.
 - Antemortem origin needs histamine at least 50% higher, and serotonin at least 100% (double) higher, than control skin.
- ▶ **Immunohistochemistry (IHC)** detects wound-age proteins by antibody staining.

- In order: P-selectin (~5 min), fibronectin (~10–20 min), E-selectin (~1 h), ICAM-1 (~1.5 h), tenascin (~2 days), collagen III/V/VI (~3 days), collagen I (~5 days).

Healing of specialized tissues

- ▶ **Skin:** an injury confined to the epidermis regenerates completely, with no scar.
 - Once the dermis is breached, healing leaves a permanent scar.
 - A scar is fibrous tissue covered by epithelium, without hair follicles, glands, or pigment.
 - Scar ageing follows VAST: Vascular (angry red) up to 2 months, then Soft, Sensitive, Tender from 2–6 months, then Tough (white, firm, glistening) after 6 months.
- ▶ **Bone (fracture healing)** proceeds through four overlapping stages.
 - **Inflammation (< 7 days):** a haematoma clots, necrotic bone ends are cleared by neutrophils then macrophages, and new vessels and fibroblasts appear.
 - **Soft callus (1–4 weeks):** the callus — connective tissue and cartilage bridging the fracture — forms, with continuing angiogenesis.
 - **Hard callus (4–12 weeks):** weak, immature woven bone is laid down; its appearance marks clinical union.
 - **Remodelling (12 weeks–2 years):** woven bone is converted to strong, mature lamellar bone.
 - Rarely, failed union leaves a false joint (pseudoarthrosis).
- ▶ **Skull / flat bone:** heals with little or no external callus; a gross bony defect is filled only by fibrous tissue.
- ▶ **Cardiac muscle:** cannot regenerate; an infarct is replaced by a fibrous scar over about 3 months.
- ▶ **Nervous tissue:** neurons are permanent cells that do not regenerate, unlike labile tissues (surface epithelium, bone marrow) that divide throughout life.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Age of an injury:** gross appearance, histopathology, enzyme histochemistry, biochemistry, and IHC together estimate when a wound was caused.
 - A match with the alleged time of assault is valuable corroborative evidence.
 - Only an approximate age can be given — many factors affect it.
- ▶ **Antemortem versus postmortem wounds:** a vital reaction is present only if the wound was inflicted before death.
 - Antemortem wounds gape, with everted/swollen edges, arterial spurting, deep wash-resistant extravasation, firm clotting, and a positive vital reaction.
 - Postmortem wounds show closely apposed edges, slight venous oozing, no spurting, easily-washed staining, and no clot or vital reaction.
 - Beware the **perimortem (supravital) window:** white blood cells can still move for a few hours after cardiac arrest, so wounds from this period may mimic antemortem injury.
- ▶ **Pitfall:** an absent tissue reaction does not prove postmortem origin — it can be lost if death follows the injury quickly, in very small wounds, or when circulatory failure blunts the reaction.
- ▶ **Grading of hurt:** simple hurt — bodily pain, disease, or infirmity (not mental pain) — is defined under Section 319 IPC 1860 (now Section 114 BNS 2023).

- Grievous hurt under **Section 320 IPC 1860 (now Section 116 BNS 2023)** includes permanent disfiguration of the head or face and fracture or dislocation of a bone or tooth.
- A permanently disfiguring scar, or a contracture restricting a joint, converts the injury into grievous hurt.
- Punishment for voluntarily causing hurt and grievous hurt falls under Sections 115 and 117 BNS 2023 respectively.
- ▶ **Scars in identification:** permanent scars aid identification.
 - Their shape can suggest the weapon — linear from an incised wound, irregular from a laceration, circular and depressed from a bullet.
 - Their age corroborates the date of injury.
 - *Striae gravidarum* (pregnancy stretch marks) and their older, pale form, *linea albicantes*, indicate a past pregnancy — unlike scars, they retain elastic tissue.
- ▶ **Trauma–disease causation:** healing principles help decide if trauma caused a malignancy or triggered a myocardial infarction.
 - Relevant to the inquest under **Section 174/176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194/196 BNSS 2023)** and to expert medical opinion under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Timeline of wound healing:** a horizontal time axis showing, in order — vasoconstriction (seconds); fibrin clot and vasodilatation (minutes); neutrophils (15–30 min); macrophages and granulation tissue (72 h); collagen formation and re-epithelialisation (4–5 days); reddish scar (1 week); avascular mature scar (> 2 weeks).
- ▶ **Cross-section of an antemortem wound:** label the epidermis, dermis, central necrotic zone (0.2–0.5 mm, decreased enzyme activity), peripheral zone of positive vital reaction (0.1–0.3 mm, increased enzyme activity), and normal control skin.



Describe the role of micro-organisms in cases of Burns. Add a note on its medico-legal importance

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ A **burn** is tissue injury from *dry heat* — flame, a heated solid, radiant or microwave energy.
- ▶ A **scald** is the same injury from *moist heat* — liquid above 60°C, or steam.
- ▶ The burnt surface is a large, raw wound of dead tissue (**eschar**) with its protective skin barrier destroyed.
- ▶ This dead, protein-rich surface is an ideal medium for bacterial growth.
- ▶ Micro-organisms are the leading cause of **delayed death** in burns.

- ▶ The wound then passes through **colonisation, invasion, toxæmia, septicaemia and multi-organ failure**.
- ▶ These deaths typically occur **4–5 days or more** after the burn.
- ▶ This fixes the **cause of death**, the **fatal period** linking death to an earlier assault, and charges such as **dowry death** and **grievous hurt**.

Why the burn wound becomes infected

- ▶ The burn destroys the epidermal and dermal barrier, leaving a moist, avascular slough of dead tissue and pooled plasma — an ideal medium for bacteria.
- ▶ Coagulated dermal vessels stop immune cells and antibiotics from reaching the slough.
- ▶ The burn patient is also **immunosuppressed**, worsened by low blood protein (hypoproteinaemia) and anaemia.
- ▶ Infection enters through the raw wound itself, or through IV lines, urinary catheters and ventilator circuits (hospital-acquired infection).
- ▶ **Five stages** of microbial spread: **colonisation** by the patient's own skin commensals, **invasion** of viable tissue under the eschar, **bacteraemia, septicaemia**, and finally **septic (endotoxic) shock** with DIC and multi-organ failure.

The micro-organisms involved

Source	Organisms
Body-surface commensals	<i>Streptococcus</i> (esp. <i>S. pyogenes</i>), <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> (incl. MRSA), <i>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</i> (old name <i>B. pyocyaneus</i>), coliforms (<i>E. coli</i> , <i>Proteus</i>), <i>Klebsiella pneumoniae</i> (Friedländer's bacillus), <i>Clostridium perfringens</i> (<i>Cl. welchii</i> — gas gangrene)
Environmental invaders	Same streptococci/staphylococci, <i>Corynebacterium diphtheriae</i> , coliforms, <i>Cl. perfringens</i> , <i>Clostridium tetani</i> (tetanus)

- ▶ ***Pseudomonas aeruginosa*** is the classic, most-feared burn pathogen — greenish, sweet-smelling discharge; a leading cause of burn septicaemia.
- ▶ **Staph. aureus** and **β-haemolytic Streptococcus** colonise the wound early.
- ▶ **Gram-negative bacilli** (*Pseudomonas*, *Klebsiella*, *E. coli*, *Proteus*) dominate invasive infection and release **endotoxin**, causing endotoxic shock.
- ▶ ***Clostridium tetani*** causes tetanus; ***Clostridium perfringens*** causes gas gangrene — rapid, massive muscle necrosis with severe toxæmia — both dreaded in deeply devitalised burns.
- ▶ **Fungal** infection (e.g. *Candida*) can superinfect late, immunosuppressed cases and progress to gangrene.

Key microbiology terms

- ▶ **Bacteraemia**: a small number of bacteria present in blood, not multiplying significantly.

- ▶ **Septicaemia:** rapidly multiplying, highly pathogenic bacteria in the blood; enlarges/softens the spleen, causes toxic change in heart and liver. *Sepsis* is the systemic, life-threatening response to this.
- ▶ **Pyaemia:** small septic clots scattered in the blood that seed distant organs — meningitis, peritonitis, pericarditis.
- ▶ **Toxaemia:** absorption of bacterial toxins and tissue-breakdown products into the blood — systemic poisoning even before septicaemia is clinically obvious.
- ▶ **Septic (endotoxic) shock:** shock from overwhelming Gram-negative or Gram-positive infection, with vessel widening, blood pooling, vessel-lining injury and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC).

Timing and causes of death

- ▶ Burn deaths are **immediate** or **delayed**; micro-organisms dominate the delayed group.
- ▶ **Immediate (24–48 h):** neurogenic and hypovolaemic shock, asphyxia (smoke, carbon monoxide, hydrogen cyanide), or accidents during escape — microbes play almost no role here.
- ▶ **Delayed, early (from ~48 h):** toxaemia from absorbed toxins and tissue-breakdown products.
- ▶ **Delayed, later (4–5 days or more):** septicaemia/sepsis, pyaemia (meningitis, peritonitis, pericarditis), gangrene, tetanus, multi-organ failure — infection is central here.
- ▶ **Associated complications:** Curling's ulcer (acute stomach/duodenal stress ulcer, day 3–10) can perforate or bleed if infected; also bronchopneumonia/aspiration pneumonia, renal failure, anaemia/hypoproteinaemia.
- ▶ **Remote (10–15 years):** *Marjolin's ulcer* — squamous-cell carcinoma in a chronic, non-healing burn scar, favoured by chronic infection/ulceration.
- ▶ Mortality rises with burnt surface area: over **20% total body surface area (TBSA)** risks hypovolaemic shock; **50% TBSA or more** is usually fatal in Indian settings.
- ▶ The **Revised Baux score** (age + %TBSA, plus 17 if inhalation injury) predicts mortality; above **140 is unsurvivable**. Age over 60, TBSA over 40% and inhalational injury together push mortality to 90%.

Autopsy and clinical evidence of infection

- ▶ **Spleen, heart, liver:** enlarged/soft spleen, toxic change in heart and liver — the classic septicaemic triad.
- ▶ **Lungs:** congested, waterlogged; bronchopneumonia/aspiration pneumonia; "shock lung" (ARDS) with hyaline membranes.
- ▶ **Wound:** pus under the slough, greenish *Pseudomonas* discharge, spreading cellulitis, gangrene, gas in tissue with *Cl. perfringens*.
- ▶ **Pyaeic foci:** meningitis, peritonitis, pericarditis, septic infarcts.
- ▶ A visible host response at autopsy (pneumonia, abscess, foul-smelling fluid) is the best indication to take a culture; a positive culture from non-inflamed tissue is usually a meaningless contaminant.

- ▶ **Gram stain** of touch preparations (tissue pressed onto a glass slide) quickly shows the inflammatory response.
- ▶ **Postmortem blood cultures are notoriously unreliable** — contamination and after-death bacterial spread are common; interpret with strong clinical suspicion of sepsis, antemortem records and histology.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ The doctor must separate the **immediate cause** of death (e.g. septicaemia) from the **intermediate cause** (extensive burns) and the **underlying cause** (e.g. assault).
- ▶ Example: septicaemia (immediate) following extensive burns (intermediate) from a dowry-related assault (underlying).
- ▶ Because infection kills days to weeks later, death is still legally attributable to the assailant (**remote-cause principle**) — a septic death after a burn assault remains **homicide**, not a natural death.
- ▶ A married woman dying of burns/sepsis within seven years of marriage, after cruelty/harassment for dowry, is a **dowry death** — **Section 304B IPC 1860 (now Section 80 BNS 2023)**; punishment is seven years to life. Homicidal burning (kerosene) and suicidal self-immolation are both common patterns that must be distinguished.
- ▶ **Cruelty** by husband or relatives — **Section 498A IPC 1860 (now Section 85 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ The law **presumes** dowry death (**Section 113B IEA 1872, now Section 118 BSA 2023**) and abetment of suicide of a married woman (**Section 113A IEA 1872, now Section 117 BSA 2023**), shifting the burden of proof onto the accused.
- ▶ A **dying declaration** (**Section 26 BSA 2023, formerly Section 32 IEA 1872**) recorded before sepsis clouds consciousness is vital evidence.
- ▶ Surviving victims with disfiguring or life-endangering infected burns fall under **grievous hurt** — **Section 320 IPC 1860 (now Section 116 BNS 2023)** — also covers permanent joint contracture, endangered life, or over 15 days of severe pain/incapacity.
- ▶ **Negligence** — failing to give anti-tetanic serum, an error in fluid resuscitation (e.g. miscalculating the Parkland formula: $4 \text{ mL} \times \text{body weight in kg} \times \% \text{TBSA}$), or poor asepsis causing hospital-acquired sepsis — can found a negligence charge (formerly Section 304A IPC, now under BNS 2023).
- ▶ Signs of **infection, vital reaction, healing/granulation and a red line** at the wound margin show the burns were sustained during life; their absence suggests postmortem burning to conceal a crime.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — microbial pathway to death:** burn wound (eschar) → colonisation → invasion of sub-eschar tissue → bacteraemia → toxæmia/septicaemia (4–5 days) → septic (endotoxic) shock + DIC → multi-organ failure → death. Side branches: *Cl. tetani* → tetanus; *Cl. perfringens* → gas gangrene; Curling's ulcer → perforation/haemorrhage.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — timeline of causes of death:** immediate zone (0–48 h: neurogenic + hypovolaemic shock, asphyxia); delayed zone (toxæmia, then septicaemia/pyaemia/tetanus/gangrene at 4–5 days; Curling's ulcer at 3–10 days); remote zone (10–15 years: Marjolin's ulcer). Mark the **fatal period** band.



Diagnostic Chemistry of CSF

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2016 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / introduction

- ▶ Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) is a clear, colourless ultrafiltrate of plasma.
- ▶ It is secreted mainly by the choroid plexuses of the lateral, third and fourth ventricles.
- ▶ It circulates through the ventricles and subarachnoid space, cushioning the brain and spinal cord.
- ▶ Its diagnostic chemistry has four distinct medico-legal uses.
 - **Postmortem chemistry (thanatochemistry):** estimating the post-mortem interval (PMI, time since death).
 - **CSF-leak confirmation:** proving a base-of-skull fracture through rhinorrhoea or otorrhoea.
 - **Diatom test:** CSF as a peripheral fluid confirming antemortem drowning.
 - **Toxicology and child-abuse autopsies:** CSF as a specimen fluid.

Normal composition (reference baseline)

- ▶ **Volume:** 130–150 mL in an adult, secreted at about 500 mL/day; about 15 mL is withdrawn by lumbar puncture (LP) for analysis.
- ▶ **Appearance:** crystal clear and colourless ("gin-clear"); opening pressure 60–150 mm CSF in the lateral recumbent position.
- ▶ **Cells:** 0–5 lymphocytes/ μ L; no neutrophils and no red cells normally.
- ▶ **Protein:** 15–45 mg/dL, far lower than plasma because the blood–CSF barrier excludes large molecules.
- ▶ **Glucose:** 45–80 mg/dL, about two-thirds of a simultaneous blood glucose level.
- ▶ **Chloride** 115–130 mmol/L, higher than plasma; **lactate** below 2.1–2.8 mmol/L.
- ▶ CSF glucose is higher than in mucus or nasal/lacrimal secretions — used to confirm a CSF leak.
- ▶ ABO blood-group antigens are absent from CSF, even in secretors (people who secrete blood-group antigens into body fluids), so it cannot be used for ABO grouping or secretor typing.

Clinical (antemortem) patterns

Lumbar-puncture CSF gives each major neurological emergency a distinct chemical fingerprint.

Parameter	Normal	Bacterial meningitis	Viral meningitis	TB meningitis	Subarachnoid haemorrhage
Appearance	Clear	Turbid / purulent	Clear	Cobweb clot on standing	Bloody, turning xanthochromic
Cells	0–5 lymphocytes	Raised, neutrophils	Raised, lymphocytes	Raised, lymphocytes	Red cells, later xanthochromia
Protein	15–45 mg/dL	High	Normal / mildly high	Very high	Raised
Glucose	~2/3 of blood	Markedly low	Normal	Low	Usually normal

- ▶ **Xanthochromia** is yellow-pink discoloration of centrifuged CSF supernatant, forming as oxyhaemoglobin breaks down into bilirubin.
 - It appears a few hours after bleeding and persists about 2 weeks.
 - It is the key proof of true subarachnoid haemorrhage, ruling out a traumatic ("bloody") tap.
- ▶ **Albuminocytologic dissociation** is a raised protein with a normal or near-normal cell count.
 - It is the classic CSF sign of Guillain–Barré syndrome (acute inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy).
 - It is also seen in spinal block, known as Froin's syndrome.
- ▶ A low CSF glucose points to bacterial, tubercular or fungal meningitis, or meningeal spread of cancer; viral meningitis keeps glucose normal.

Forensic use 1 — postmortem chemistry (thanatochemistry)

- ▶ Cisternal CSF, drawn from the cisterna magna, is preferred for PMI work as it is least contaminated.
- ▶ Postmortem CSF changes are driven mainly by hypoxic damage to the choroid plexus.
- ▶ **Glucose:** falls very rapidly after death — not a reliable PMI marker.
- ▶ **Lactic acid:** rises sharply up to about 10 hours, then continues rising more slowly.
- ▶ **Inositol:** antemortem level is about 1.7 mg%; it rises after death to values up to 72 mg%.
- ▶ **Potassium (K⁺):** rises at a constant rate (tied to body temperature) for the first 20 hours, then in proportion to the logarithm of time, up to about 70 hours.
- ▶ **Inorganic sulphate:** stays stable for up to 3 days after death.
- ▶ Sodium, calcium and magnesium show no useful relationship to time since death.
- ▶ **Schourup's formula** combined CSF lactic acid, non-protein nitrogen, amino acids and axillary temperature into a PMI equation; it is now only of historical interest.

- ▶ Vitreous humour remains the single most useful PMI fluid, since vitreous potassium rises linearly.
- ▶ Only about 5 mL of CSF is obtainable, against 10–15 mL of pericardial fluid and 1–2 mL of vitreous; pericardial fluid itself is not helpful for PMI.
- ▶ Synovial fluid behaves like vitreous and can substitute when vitreous is unavailable.

Forensic use 2 — confirming a CSF leak

- ▶ A proven CSF leak (rhinorrhoea or otorrhoea) confirms a dural tear and a base-of-skull fracture.
- ▶ **Halo / ring (target) sign:** a simple bedside/autopsy test — a drop of blood-tinged fluid on filter paper separates into a central blood spot with a clear outer ring of CSF.
- ▶ **Glucose estimation:** CSF glucose is higher than nasal or lacrimal secretions; a level above 30 mg/dL in uncontaminated nasal fluid is diagnostic of CSF rhinorrhoea.
- ▶ **Beta-2 transferrin assay:** detects a CSF-specific transferrin isoform by immunoelectrophoresis (a technique separating proteins by charge and identifying them with antibodies).
 - This is the most widely used test and the gold-standard criterion for confirming CSF rhinorrhoea.
- ▶ An anterior cranial fossa fracture causes rhinorrhoea (nose); a middle/posterior fossa fracture causes otorrhoea (ear).

Forensic use 3 — diatom test and other uses

- ▶ In antemortem drowning, the victim's respiratory efforts rupture alveolar walls, letting diatoms smaller than 40 μm cross into the systemic circulation.
- ▶ These diatoms reach peripheral organs, including brain/CSF, marrow, liver and kidney; finding them there supports drowning during life.
- ▶ No such peripheral spread occurs in postmortem submersion.
- ▶ **Toxicology:** CSF is collected by LP on the intact body, from the cisterna magna, or from the lateral ventricles after brain removal, and used for example for alcohol estimation.
 - The blood : CSF alcohol ratio is about 1 : 1.17, reflecting CSF's high water content.
- ▶ **Child-abuse autopsies:** CSF is the specimen of choice when the eyes must be examined histologically, since this leaves the vitreous undisturbed.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ Line chart "Postmortem CSF chemistry vs time since death."
 - X-axis: hours after death (0–70 h).
 - Plot glucose (falling), lactic acid (rising sharply to ~10 h, then slower), inositol (rising to ~72 mg%), potassium (rising with log time to ~70 h) and inorganic sulphate (flat, stable to 3 days).
 - Label the constant-rate K^+ phase up to ~20 h.
- ▶ Halo / ring (target) sign card.
 - Concentric circles on filter paper: central blood spot, outer clear CSF ring (halo).
 - Annotate "positive = CSF leak / base-of-skull fracture."

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ A proven CSF leak (halo sign, glucose > 30 mg/dL, beta-2 transferrin) establishes a base-of-skull fracture.
 - This corroborates assault or accident and explains death from ascending meningitis, a late but important complication of head injury.
- ▶ CSF thanatochemistry supplements vitreous potassium in the multifactorial estimation of time since death.
 - Chemical PMI methods are temperature-dependent and the least reliable — they corroborate, not replace, physical findings.
- ▶ CSF analysis distinguishes meningitis and non-traumatic subarachnoid haemorrhage — both recognised causes of sudden natural death — from traumatic intracranial bleeding.
- ▶ ABO antigens are absent from CSF, so it cannot be used for blood-group typing of an unknown sample.
- ▶ Death certification and inquest follow the usual route under **Section 174/176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194/196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon's findings are tendered as expert opinion under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Acute tubular necrosis (acute renal tubular necrosis)*Asked in: Paper I Oct 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine***Definition / Introduction**

- ▶ Acute tubular necrosis (ATN) is acute, usually reversible kidney injury.
- ▶ The epithelial cells lining the renal tubules are damaged and die.
- ▶ This causes sudden failure of the kidney to filter blood — acute kidney injury (AKI), older term "acute renal failure".

- ▶ The exam phrase "acute renal tubular neurosis" is a transcription error for acute renal tubular ***necrosis***.
- ▶ ATN is the commonest **intrinsic** (within-the-kidney) cause of acute kidney injury.
- ▶ It is the final common renal pathway of shock, crush trauma, severe burns, intravascular haemolysis, and many poisons.
- ▶ This gives it major forensic weight: it explains **delayed deaths** occurring days after the original insult.
- ▶ It is a constant autopsy finding in deaths from trauma, sepsis, and poisoning.
- ▶ Kidneys look normal or only slightly enlarged; the necrosis is really a **microscopic** diagnosis.

Mechanism — two basic types

- ▶ ATN is divided by whether the tubular cell dies from lack of blood (ischaemia) or from a poison (toxin).
- ▶ Both routes end in the same lesion.

Type	Mechanism	Key examples
Ischaemic ATN	Falling renal blood flow starves the proximal tubule and thick ascending limb of oxygen.	Hypovolaemic/septic/ cardiogenic/neurogenic shock, severe haemorrhage, burns, prolonged hypotension.
Nephrotoxic ATN	A circulating toxin or pigment directly poisons the tubular epithelium.	Arsenic, mercury, copper, ethylene glycol, salicylates, paracetamol, aminoglycosides, CCl ₄ , snake venom, methyl isocyanate.

- ▶ Injured tubular cells slough off into the lumen.
- ▶ These cells, together with pigment, form **tubular casts** that block urine flow.
- ▶ Back-leak of filtrate across the denuded basement membrane adds to the damage.
- ▶ Intrarenal vasoconstriction follows.
- ▶ Together these produce **oliguria** and rising blood urea and creatinine.
- ▶ In irreversible shock, gut bacteria enter the circulation and cause bacteraemic shock.
- ▶ **ATN with complete renal shutdown** is then a terminal event.
- ▶ In crush injury or intravascular haemolysis, released **myoglobin/haemoglobin** precipitates in the tubules as **brown pigment casts**.
- ▶ This is the basis of *crush syndrome* and transfusion-reaction renal failure.

Clinical course — three phases

- ▶ **Oliguric phase:** urine output falls below 400 mL/day (oliguria), or stops altogether (anuria).
- ▶ Blood urea, creatinine, and **potassium** rise; metabolic acidosis and fluid overload develop.
- ▶ This phase lasts about 1–2 weeks.
- ▶ Death here is from **hyperkalaemia**, pulmonary oedema, acidosis, or **uraemia**.

- ▶ **Diuretic phase:** as tubular cells regenerate, large volumes of poorly concentrated urine are passed.
- ▶ The danger now shifts to dehydration and **hypokalaemia** (low blood potassium).
- ▶ **Recovery phase:** the tubular basement membrane is preserved, so the epithelium can regenerate.
- ▶ Renal function usually returns — ATN is **potentially reversible**, unlike cortical necrosis.

Causes relevant to forensic medicine

- ▶ **Trauma/shock:** secondary shock after major injury, haemorrhage, or road-traffic and fall-from-height trauma.
- ▶ **Crush syndrome** after prolonged limb compression, as in building collapse or vehicular entrapment.
- ▶ **Burns:** extensive thermal injury causes hypovolaemic shock and pigment release; ATN is common in deaths days later.
- ▶ **Intravascular haemolysis:** mismatched blood transfusion, falciparum malaria (blackwater fever), some snakebite envenomations.
- ▶ These produce **rhabdomyolysis** (muscle breakdown) with **myoglobinuria** (myoglobin in the urine).
- ▶ **Poisons — high yield:**
 - **Ethylene glycol:** renal phase at 24–72 hours; calcium-oxalate crystals in urine, hypocalcaemia, ATN, and oliguria.
 - Kidney histology shows oxalate crystals (von Kossa stain) filling the proximal convoluted tubule.
 - **Heavy metals:** arsenic (tubular necrosis with fatty change of heart, liver, kidney).
 - Mercury causes proximal/distal tubular necrosis; copper causes proximal tubular necrosis with haemoglobin casts.
 - **Salicylates/paracetamol:** ATN along with centrilobular liver necrosis, myocardial damage, and cerebral oedema.
 - **Aminoglycosides** (e.g., streptomycin): nephrotoxicity typically causes ATN after 7–10 days of therapy, usually reversible on stopping the drug.
 - **Organic solvents/CCl₄, phenol, methyl isocyanate (Bhopal disaster):** documented causes of ATN at autopsy.

Gross and microscopic autopsy findings

- ▶ **Gross:** kidneys are normal-sized or slightly enlarged, pale and swollen.
- ▶ Cortex is specifically pale; medulla is congested — the classic "shock kidney" look.
- ▶ **Microscopic (the diagnostic level):**
 - Tubular epithelial necrosis: flattening, loss of brush border, vacuolation, nuclear loss.
 - Damage is worst in the proximal convoluted tubule and the thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle.
 - Tubular casts fill the lumen — granular casts, brown pigment (myoglobin/haemoglobin) casts, or oxalate crystal casts in ethylene glycol poisoning.

- Interstitial oedema is present, but the **glomeruli stay relatively intact** — this separates ATN from glomerular disease.
- Renal changes **begin within 24 hours** of the insult and become **marked by 7–10 days**.
- This time course lets the autopsy surgeon estimate the **survival interval** after injury or poisoning.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Nephron tubule cross-section in ATN** — label the intact glomerulus, the proximal convoluted tubule with necrosed/sloughed epithelium, loss of brush border, denuded basement membrane, a granular/pigment cast obstructing the lumen, interstitial oedema, and the distal tubule.
- ▶ **Pathogenesis flowchart** — insult (ischaemia or nephrotoxin/pigment) → tubular epithelial injury and death → cast formation with luminal obstruction, back-leak of filtrate, and intrarenal vasoconstriction → fall in GFR → oliguria → uraemia/hyperkalaemia/acidosis → recovery or death.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ ATN explains **delayed death**: a victim may survive the original assault, accident, burn, or poisoning and die days later of renal failure.
- ▶ The doctor must establish a **continuous chain of causation** linking the original injury or poisoning to the fatal ATN.
- ▶ This ensures the offence is correctly graded — an assault leading to crush injury and fatal renal failure still remains attributable to the assailant.
- ▶ Such deaths (trauma, poisoning, custodial, industrial, transfusion mishap) are **unnatural/suspicious** and must be reported.
- ▶ Police hold an **inquest under Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ If death occurs in police or judicial custody, a **magisterial inquest under Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)** is mandatory.
- ▶ A medico-legal autopsy follows in every such case.
- ▶ In suspected poisoning, ATN at autopsy should prompt preservation of **viscera (kidney, liver, stomach and its contents), blood, and urine** for chemical analysis.
- ▶ Renal histology directs the analyst — oxalate crystals point to ethylene glycol, pigment casts point to haemolysis or crush injury.
- ▶ In building collapse, earthquake, or crush deaths, recognising ATN guides both autopsy interpretation and, in survivors, the urgency of fluid resuscitation and dialysis.
- ▶ In custodial/torture allegations, rhabdomyolysis from beating or prolonged restraint can cause pigment-induced ATN.
- ▶ Demonstrating this supports or refutes an allegation of assault under **Section 319/320 IPC (hurt/grievous hurt), now Sections 114–117 BNS 2023**.
- ▶ ATN following a mismatched transfusion, a nephrotoxic drug overdose, or a contrast/anaesthetic mishap can raise a question of **medical negligence** (civil and criminal).

- ▶ This requires documenting the offending agent and the standard of care.



Discuss briefly about the brainstem reflexes. Add a note on Organ transplantation act giving its latest amendments

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

- ▶ **Brainstem reflexes** are involuntary motor responses carried by cranial-nerve arcs passing through the midbrain, pons and medulla.
- ▶ Their irreversible and complete absence is the clinical basis for diagnosing **brainstem death** — the modern legal definition of death in a patient maintained on a ventilator.
- ▶ Organ retrieval from a "beating-heart donor" depends on certifying this state, so brainstem-death testing is inseparable from the law on organ donation, the **Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), 1994**, amended in 2011 with **Rules in 2014**.

Anatomical basis of the reflexes

- ▶ The brainstem houses the **ascending reticular activating system (ARAS)**, which sustains arousal and consciousness, and the **vital centres** for respiration and blood pressure.
- ▶ It is the brain's gateway — almost all sensory input enters and all motor output leaves through it, and it mediates every cranial-nerve reflex, so its loss equals functional death of the whole brain.
- ▶ **Medullary neurons are the most resistant brain cells to hypoxia** — if even these are dead, all higher brain cells can safely be assumed dead, which is why the *Minnesota concept* tests only the brainstem.

The five brainstem reflexes (Minnesota criteria)

Reflex	Nerve arc	How it is tested	Finding in brainstem death
Pupillary light	II → III	Bright light shone into each eye	Pupils fixed, no constriction
Corneal	V → VII	Cotton wisp touched to cornea	No blink
Vestibulo-ocular (caloric)	VIII → III, VI	Ice-cold water instilled into ear canal	No eye deviation
Oculocephalic ("doll's-eye")	VIII → III, VI	Rapid passive head rotation	No conjugate eye movement
Gag / cough	IX, X	Pharynx stimulated / trachea suctioned	No gag, no cough

- ▶ The oculocephalic test is not a separate reflex arc — it tests the same vestibular-to-ocular pathway as the caloric test, just with a different stimulus.
- ▶ **Grimacing**: deep pressure on the nail bed or supra-orbital ridge produces no facial response in brainstem death.

- ▶ **Apnoea test (crucial, performed last):** the patient is pre-oxygenated, disconnected from the ventilator with oxygen still flowing, and PaCO₂ is allowed to rise above **60 mm Hg** — the level that maximally stimulates breathing.
- ▶ A **positive test** (confirming brainstem death) is total absence of spontaneous breathing despite this stimulus.
- ▶ **Spinal reflexes** (deep-tendon, plantar, withdrawal) may persist for the first 24 hours, since they are mediated below the foramen magnum, and their presence does **not** rule out brainstem death.

Diagnosing brainstem death

- ▶ **Three cardinal findings:** deep coma, absence of all brainstem reflexes, and apnoea.
- ▶ **Preconditions:** deep coma on a ventilator, from a known, structural, irreversible cause (e.g. raised intracranial pressure, haemorrhage, trauma, hypoxia).
- ▶ **Reversible confounders excluded first:** hypothermia (core temperature must be above 35°C), sedative/neuromuscular-blocker intoxication, and severe metabolic or endocrine disturbance.
- ▶ **Who tests:** two registered medical practitioners, at least one of consultant status — never a junior doctor, never the transplant surgeon or team (conflict of interest); each tests twice.
- ▶ **Timing:** testing starts no earlier than 24 hours after the injury, and is repeated after an interval to rule out observer error before death is certified.
- ▶ **Historical criteria:** Harvard (1968) needed unresponsiveness, no breathing for ≥1 hour, absent reflexes and fixed dilated pupils, irreversible coma, plus a flat EEG, repeated after 24 hours.
- ▶ **Minnesota (1971)** shifted the emphasis onto the brainstem reflexes alone; EEG is not mandatory, and findings must stay unchanged for at least 12 hours.

Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), 1994

- ▶ India's primary law on organ and tissue donation — it regulates removal, storage and transplantation for therapeutic use, and prevents commercial dealing in organs.
- ▶ It promotes deceased (cadaveric) donation by giving legal recognition to brainstem death, which earlier was not recognised, so organs could not be retrieved from brainstem-dead persons even when technically possible.

Key original provisions:

- ▶ **Brainstem death** is legally defined [Section 2(d)].
- ▶ **Living donation** [Section 3(1)]: any adult over 18 may authorise removal of an organ/tissue; the heart cannot be taken, as this would kill the donor.
- ▶ **Donation after death** [Section 3(2)–(3)]: written authorisation before two witnesses, one a near relative — otherwise, the person in lawful possession of the body may authorise removal unless a relative objects.
- ▶ **Certification of brainstem death** [Section 3(6)], needed before retrieval from a ventilated donor, is done by a Board of four: the hospital RMP in charge, an independent specialist RMP, a neurologist/neurosurgeon, and the treating RMP.
- ▶ **Live donation is restricted to near relatives** [Section 9]; unrelated donation needs Authorisation Committee approval to prevent commercial transactions.

- ▶ **Cadaveric organs** [Section 9(2)] may go to any needy recipient — the donor cannot nominate who receives them.
- ▶ **Penalties** [Section 18(1)]: unauthorised removal — up to 10 years' imprisonment, fine up to ₹1 crore; a doctor involved is struck off the register for 3 years (permanently on repeat).

Latest amendments — THOTA (Amendment) Act, 2011 & Rules, 2014:

- ▶ Scope widened from "organs" to "**tissue**" [Section 2(oa)] — cornea, bone, skin, blood vessels, heart valves — bringing bone-marrow transplant under the Act.
- ▶ "**Near relative**" expanded from 7 to 11 relations, adding grandfather, grandmother, grandson and granddaughter.
- ▶ **Swap (paired-exchange) transplantation** was legalised, allowing exchange between two donor-recipient pairs who are each incompatible within their own pair.
- ▶ A **Transplant Co-ordinator** is now mandatory in every registered hospital.
- ▶ **Tissue banks** must be registered, and **Human Organ Retrieval Centres** are recognised.
- ▶ Penalties were strengthened, and the **2014 Rules** detailed brain-death certification procedures further, with mandatory audit of transplant centres.
- ▶ **NOTTO** (national) and **SOTTO** (state) were set up for transparent, computerised organ allocation by medical urgency, under the National Organ Transplant Programme.
- ▶ More recently, an online national registry and stricter monitoring of transplant centres have been added.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Sagittal section of the brain showing the brainstem and reflex centres** — label the cerebral cortex, thalamus, midbrain, pons, medulla oblongata, ARAS, respiratory centre, cerebral aqueduct, 3rd and 4th ventricles, and spinal cord.
- ▶ **Schematic of the five brainstem reflexes with their cranial-nerve arcs** — label pupillary (II→III), corneal (V→VII), vestibulo-ocular/caloric (VIII→III,VI), oculocephalic (VIII→III,VI), gag/cough (IX,X), and the apnoea test ($\text{PaCO}_2 > 60$ mm Hg, no respiration); mark afferent limbs in blue and efferent limbs in red.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ India legally equates the death of a ventilated patient with **brainstem death**, allowing withdrawal of life support and cadaveric ("beating-heart") organ retrieval without the certifying doctor being blamed — the original criminal act remains the true cause of death.
- ▶ Transplant-team doctors are excluded from the certifying Board, keeping the "interest in the organ" separate from the "declaration of death."
- ▶ The general definition of death — "the death of a human being" — appears in **Section 46 IPC 1860 (now Section 2(6) BNS 2023)**, though it lays down no medical criteria for death.
- ▶ The distinction between brain death and a persistent vegetative state is medico-legally critical: a patient in a vegetative state breathes spontaneously and is alive.
- ▶ Removing organs or withdrawing feeding from a vegetative-state patient can therefore amount to culpable homicide or **murder under Section 300 IPC 1860 (now Section 101 BNS 2023)**.

- ▶ Cornea is a *tissue*, not an organ, and can be harvested up to 6–12 hours after death through eye banks, without needing brainstem-death certification.
- ▶ Commercial dealing in organs and erasure from the medical register make commercialisation a serious professional offence, so the certifying doctor must carefully document the Board's certificate and all consents.



Discuss causes, investigations, medico-legal importance and autopsy findings of cirrhosis with portal hypertension

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2020 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

- ▶ **Cirrhosis** is chronic, irreversible end-stage liver damage.
- ▶ Hepatocytes die and are replaced by fibrous scarring and regenerative nodules.
- ▶ This destroys the liver's normal architecture.
- ▶ **Portal hypertension** is the resulting rise in pressure within the portal venous system.
- ▶ Scar tissue and nodules compress blood flow through the liver.
- ▶ Blood is diverted through collateral veins, causing splenomegaly, ascites, and **oesophageal varices**.
- ▶ This combination is a common cause of **sudden, unexpected natural death** — usually massive haematemesis from a ruptured varix.

Causes (aetiology)

- ▶ **Alcoholic liver disease** is the single most important cause in forensic practice.
- ▶ Alcoholic cirrhosis develops in **10–20%** of people who drink heavily for a decade or more.
- ▶ Alcohol blocks the liver's normal metabolism of protein, fat, and carbohydrate.
- ▶ Damage progresses through three stages: fatty liver, then alcoholic hepatitis, then cirrhosis.
- ▶ **Viral hepatitis** — chronic hepatitis B or C — causes post-hepatic (post-necrotic) cirrhosis.
- ▶ **Biliary causes** — chronic bile-duct obstruction from calculi, strictures, or tumours.
- ▶ **Cardiac cirrhosis** follows long-standing right-heart failure (chronic venous congestion).
- ▶ The liver shows a granular *nutmeg* cut-surface before fibrosis sets in.
- ▶ **Metabolic/toxic causes** include non-alcoholic fatty liver and toxic metals.
- ▶ *Indian childhood cirrhosis* and Wilson's disease are linked to **copper**.
- ▶ Chronic arsenic exposure is also relevant in metallic-poisoning enquiries.
- ▶ **Classification by gross morphology** is exam-favourite and guides autopsy description:

Type	Cause	Gross appearance
Portal (micronodular)	Alcohol	Nodules 1–3 mm
Post-hepatic (macronodular)	Viral / post-necrotic	Nodules 4–10 mm+
Biliary	Chronic biliary obstruction	Granular, olive-green
Cardiac (congestive)	Venous congestion	<i>Nutmeg</i> cut-surface

- ▶ **Mechanism of portal hypertension:** fibrous bands and nodules compress intrahepatic vessels and raise resistance to portal flow.
- ▶ Blood is then diverted through porto-systemic anastomoses.
- ▶ This produces **oesophageal and gastric varices**, **splenomegaly**, **caput medusae** (dilated peri-umbilical veins), and **ascites**.

Clinical features and investigations

- ▶ **Clinical features:** jaundice, hepatomegaly early (a small shrunken liver later), ascites, gynaecomastia, striae, and conjunctival suffusion.
- ▶ Chronic alcoholics also show a bloated plethoric face and red, raw, bleeding gums.
- ▶ **Alcoholic hepatitis** may coexist, with fever, hepatomegaly, jaundice, and anorexia.
- ▶ **AST and ALT** are both raised but characteristically stay **below 300 IU/L**.
- ▶ An **AST:ALT ratio above 2.0** is rarely seen outside alcoholic liver disease and strongly suggests it.
- ▶ **Raised GGT** occurs in about 80% of alcohol-dependent people and falls within 48 hours of abstinence.
- ▶ A persistently raised GGT in a claimed abstainer suggests resumed drinking.
- ▶ **Raised MCV** is another alcohol marker, present in roughly half of problem drinkers.
- ▶ One *unit* of alcohol is about 8–10 g; drinking becomes a problem above ~21 units/week.
- ▶ Anaemia, hypoproteinaemia, and deranged clotting are common.
- ▶ The diseased liver cannot make clotting factors, so variceal bleeds can turn fatal fast.
- ▶ Endoscopy demonstrates and grades varices directly.
- ▶ Ultrasound/Doppler shows a shrunken nodular liver, splenomegaly, ascites, and a dilated portal vein.
- ▶ **Liver biopsy** (or post-mortem histology) is confirmatory.
- ▶ It shows hepatocyte necrosis, **Mallory bodies**, neutrophilic infiltration, and perivenular inflammation.
- ▶ Established cirrhosis shows bridging fibrosis with regenerative nodules.

Autopsy findings

- ▶ If variceal bleeding is suspected — a history of alcoholism, cirrhosis, or varices seen on preliminary exam — the **oesophagus must NOT be opened in situ**.
- ▶ Opening it in place can make collapsed varices invisible.
- ▶ Instead, leave the oesophagus attached to the stomach and remove both together.
- ▶ **Evert the oesophagus** by passing a clamp up through the opened stomach.
- ▶ Varices then shine through the mucosa.
- ▶ Formalin fixation accentuates them further.
- ▶ They can also be shown by injecting a **barium sulfate–gelatin** mixture, which also works radiographically.
- ▶ **Oesophagus/stomach:** ruptured varices appear as hyperaemic, thick-walled ulcerations.
- ▶ The stomach may hold large soft blood clots shaped like the gastric cavity in a massive bleed.

- ▶ Smaller bleeds leave *coffee-ground* material.
- ▶ **Liver:** the normal adult liver weighs **1300–1550 g**.
- ▶ In cirrhosis it is small, shrunken, contracted, nodular, and firm.
- ▶ Portal cirrhosis shows nodules **1–3 mm**; post-hepatic cirrhosis shows nodules **4–10 mm or more**.
- ▶ Biliary cirrhosis is granular and olive-green; cardiac cirrhosis has a nutmeg cut-surface.
- ▶ **Ludwig's finger test:** push a fingertip through a fresh 2–2.5 cm liver slice.
- ▶ Normal liver tears easily; congested liver resists; cirrhotic liver is almost impossible to tear.
- ▶ **Spleen:** greatly enlarged and firm in portal hypertension.
- ▶ Massive splenomegaly risks a fatal **splenic rupture**.
- ▶ **Peritoneal cavity:** ascites, often with spontaneous bacterial peritonitis.
- ▶ **Porto-systemic collaterals:** dilated para-umbilical veins (**caput medusae**), retroperitoneal and haemorrhoidal collaterals.
- ▶ **Chronic-alcoholism clues:** alcoholic cardiomyopathy, aspiration pneumonia, mamillary-body/cerebellar-vermis atrophy, central pontine myelinolysis, and granular kidneys.
- ▶ **Battered alcoholic syndrome** — three or more fractures in different stages of healing.
- ▶ A fresh thyrohyoid fracture in an alcoholic can wrongly suggest strangulation and needs histological ageing.
- ▶ **Histology** confirms bridging fibrosis, regenerative nodules, and Mallory bodies; take several blocks from a cirrhotic liver.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Cirrhotic liver with porto-systemic collaterals:** small nodular liver, portal vein, obstructed intrahepatic flow, enlarged firm spleen, **oesophageal varices**, **gastric varices**, **caput medusae**, haemorrhoidal collaterals, **ascites**.
- ▶ **Everted-oesophagus technique:** oesophagus left attached to stomach; transverse gastric incision ~10 cm below the gastro-oesophageal junction; clamp passed up through the stomach; oesophagus pulled through and everted; varices shining through mucosa; barium-gelatin injection site.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Cirrhosis with portal hypertension is a recognised cause of **sudden death from the gastrointestinal tract** — chiefly ruptured oesophageal varices, or rupture of an enlarged spleen.
- ▶ Such deaths are sudden and unwitnessed, so they become **medico-legal autopsies** to exclude poisoning, trauma, or foul play.
- ▶ An unnatural, sudden, or unexplained death needs a **police inquest under Section 194 BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 174 CrPC 1973)**.
- ▶ A more complex case may instead need a **magistrate's inquest under Section 196 BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 176 CrPC 1973)**.
- ▶ After autopsy, the cause of death must be correctly entered on the **Medical Certificate of Cause of Death (MCCD)**.

- ▶ Enter the underlying cause (cirrhosis with portal hypertension) separately from the immediate cause (haematemesis, hypovolaemic shock).
- ▶ Confirmed alcoholic cirrhosis supports a history of chronic alcoholism.
- ▶ This matters for drunkenness and driving-under-influence cases, fitness-to-work and disciplinary proceedings, testamentary capacity, and life/accident-insurance claims.
- ▶ It also explains healed fractures as the **battered alcoholic syndrome**, so they are not mistaken for assault.
- ▶ Chronic metallic poisoning (arsenic, copper) can itself cause cirrhosis, jaundice, and ascites, and can mimic natural disease.
- ▶ Viscera (liver, kidney, hair, nails) must be preserved for chemical analysis whenever poisoning is suspected.
- ▶ **Oesophageal varices are a contraindication to gastric lavage** in a living patient — lavage risks rupture and torrential bleeding.
- ▶ A doctor who performs lavage on a known cirrhotic despite this risk faces negligence implications.



Discuss Decompression sickness

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2021 · Paper I Apr 2018 (2×) — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Decompression sickness (DCS)** is also called *caisson disease* or *the bends*.
- ▶ It is a form of **dysbarism** — the umbrella term for all adverse effects of a change in ambient (surrounding) pressure.
- ▶ It develops when a person breathing gas at raised pressure returns to normal pressure too quickly.
- ▶ The nitrogen dissolved in blood and tissues then comes out of solution as gas bubbles.
- ▶ These bubbles lodge in the circulation, tissues, and joint cavities, producing the disease.
- ▶ It typically affects deep-sea divers, tunnel/caisson workers, and aircrew after rapid cabin depressurisation.
- ▶ It is a forensically important cause of accidental occupational or sporting death, and a source of compensation and negligence litigation.

Key terms and physical basis

- ▶ **Dysbarism:** all adverse effects of a difference between ambient pressure and the pressure of gases within the body.
- ▶ **Hyperbarism:** exposure to higher-than-normal pressure, as in SCUBA diving.
- ▶ **Hypobarism:** exposure to lower-than-normal pressure, as in mountaineering or high-altitude flight.
- ▶ A blast wave has both compression and decompression phases, so it can cause both.

- ▶ **Barotrauma** is mechanical tissue damage from a gas-filled body cavity failing to equalise its pressure with the surroundings.
- ▶ **Decompression sickness** is a bubble (gas-evolution) phenomenon in blood and tissues, not simple mechanical tearing — the two overlap in a diving death.
- ▶ **Henry's law**: the amount of a gas dissolved in a liquid is proportional to its partial pressure.
- ▶ Nitrogen, the inert gas in air, dissolves progressively into plasma and tissue fluids as a diver descends.
- ▶ On rapid ascent, if pressure falls faster than the lungs can wash the gas out, the excess nitrogen leaves solution as bubbles.

How the bubbles cause harm

- ▶ **Nitrogen narcosis**: at depths beyond 30 metres, the dissolved nitrogen itself produces a drunkenness-like state.
- ▶ On rapid ascent, this dissolved nitrogen bubbles out into the circulation, tissues, and joint cavities — this is decompression sickness.
- ▶ **Gas emboli** block small vessels and cause infarction, especially in the central nervous system (CNS).
- ▶ Bubbles also interfere with coagulation, causing platelet aggregation and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC).
- ▶ **Subcutaneous emphysema** (air tracking under the skin) can appear.
- ▶ DCS can also follow a fall from normal to low pressure — for example, aircraft depressurisation at altitude (the hypobaric variant).

Pulmonary barotrauma and arterial gas embolism

- ▶ On ascent, trapped gas in body cavities expands as pressure falls.
 - **Paranasal sinuses**: barosinusitis.
 - **Tooth pulp cavities**: barodontalgia (tooth pain).
 - **Middle ear**: the commonest site, affecting 10–30% of divers.
- ▶ **Lung injury**: alveolar walls may rupture, producing interstitial emphysema.
 - Pleural **bullae** may form and, if they rupture, cause a **pneumothorax**.
 - Air can track into the mediastinum and up into the neck.
- ▶ **Arterial gas embolism**: air entering pulmonary capillaries and veins passes into the systemic arterial circulation.
 - It lodges in the arterioles and capillaries of the myocardium, spinal cord, and brain.
 - This causes micro-infarcts, haemorrhagic necrosis, and loss of function.
- ▶ Pulmonary barotrauma can occur in as little as 2–3 metres of water — even a shallow dive can be fatal if the diver holds the breath on a panicked ascent.
- ▶ Lethal air volumes: about **100 mL for venous embolism**, but only **2–3 mL for arterial embolism**, because arterial air reaches the coronary and cerebral arteries directly.
- ▶ Death from air embolism is usually within a few minutes, and rarely delayed beyond an hour.

Clinical classification

Type	What it affects	Manifestations
Type I (mild)	Skin, joints, lymphatics	Joint/limb pain (" <i>the bends</i> "), skin itching/mottling, lymphatic swelling
Type II (serious)	CNS, lung, inner ear	Spinal-cord/brain micro-infarcts (paralysis, sensory loss), respiratory distress (" <i>the chokes</i> "), vestibular disturbance (" <i>the staggers</i> ")

- ▶ Other barotrauma effects include epistaxis, an extra-alveolar air syndrome (surgical emphysema, pneumomediastinum, pulmonary interstitial emphysema), acute pulmonary oedema, and haemoptysis.
- ▶ **Nitrogen narcosis** ("rapture of the deep") beyond 30 m impairs judgement and can itself precipitate a fatal diving accident or drowning.

Autopsy findings

- ▶ **Lungs:** oedema, patchy haemorrhages, torn alveoli, focal emphysema, and subpleural bullae; a pneumothorax may be present.
- ▶ **Air/gas embolism:** frothy, air-bubble-laden blood; the right heart may contain a churned mixture of air, blood, fibrin, and platelet/erythrocyte aggregates.
- ▶ **Subcutaneous emphysema** of the chest wall and neck.
- ▶ **CNS and myocardial micro-infarcts** with haemorrhagic necrosis, from arterial gas embolism.
- ▶ **Air-embolism-specific autopsy technique** is essential:
 - Do not remove the mask or diving gear — examine the equipment for flaws.
 - Photograph the body at the site.
 - Document diving time, time of death, and duration of submersion.
 - Take a history of dive training and look for subcutaneous emphysema.
 - Radiograph the body before opening it.
 - Open the chest under water and puncture the heart under water, so any escaping gas can be seen and collected.

Treatment

- ▶ **Recompression** in a hyperbaric chamber, followed by slow staged decompression, is the definitive treatment.
- ▶ **100% oxygen** washes out nitrogen; supportive care treats shock, DIC, and CNS injury.
- ▶ **Prevention:** slow staged ascent, decompression stops, dive tables, and avoiding flying immediately after diving.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — Bubble formation on ascent (Henry's law):** a vertical water column with a diver at depth and at the surface. Label: high pressure at depth → nitrogen dissolves in blood/tissues; rapid ascent → ambient pressure falls; nitrogen leaves solution → gas bubbles in blood, tissues, and joints; bubbles → vascular obstruction/gas embolism.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — Targets of decompression injury:** a body outline with arrows to brain and spinal cord (micro-infarcts, Type II), lungs (alveolar rupture, pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum), joints/limbs (the bends), middle ear/sinuses/dental pulp (barotrauma), subcutaneous tissue (surgical emphysema), and heart (arterial gas embolism/coronary occlusion).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Manner of death** is almost always accidental — an occupational hazard for professional divers and caisson/tunnel workers, a sporting hazard for recreational SCUBA divers, and rarely follows aircraft depressurisation.
- ▶ The central medico-legal question is accident versus negligence — faulty equipment, an inadequate decompression schedule, or an untrained diver.
- ▶ **Equipment as evidence:** the diving apparatus must be preserved and examined for flaws before it is disturbed — this can decide a product-liability or employer-negligence claim.
- ▶ **Compensation:** because caisson disease and diving DCS are occupational diseases, deaths and disabilities attract workmen's/employees' compensation and industrial-safety scrutiny.
- ▶ **Inquest and reporting:** a death in or about water, or an unnatural occupational death, requires police intimation and inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Where the magistrate orders a further inquiry, **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)** applies.
- ▶ **Diagnostic trap:** if the autopsy is delayed, embolic air can dissipate by dissolving back into the tissues — examine and radiograph the body early, and use the air-embolism technique, or the diagnosis may be missed.

♦ ♦ ♦

Discuss gastric emptying. Medico legal importance of gastric emptying. Brief variability in gastric emptying*Asked in: Paper I Apr 2024 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine***Definition**

- ▶ **Gastric emptying** is the process by which ingested food (chyme) passes gradually from the stomach, through the pylorus, into the duodenum.
- ▶ In forensic practice it matters mainly as a marker of **time since death (TSD)**.
- ▶ The amount of food left in the stomach, and how far it is digested, is read against the known time of the last meal to estimate how long the person survived after eating.

- ▶ Because emptying varies so widely between people, this is only a **corroborative estimate**, never an absolute one.

Physiology of gastric emptying

- ▶ Peristalsis drives digestion, and peristalsis stops at death. The digestion seen at autopsy therefore reflects the living interval after the meal, not any post-mortem activity.
- ▶ Emptying begins about 10 minutes after the first mouthful enters the stomach.
- ▶ Emptying is gradual, and its rate rises with the size of the meal.
- ▶ Average total emptying time is about 3 hours — which is why hunger returns roughly 3 hours after eating.
- ▶ The bulk of a meal leaves the stomach within 2 hours. Contents still identifiable to the naked eye were usually eaten within that 2-hour window.
- ▶ After death, gastric contents do NOT pass into the duodenum, because peristalsis has stopped. So the position of food along the gut at autopsy shows how far digestion had progressed before death, not after.

Emptying times by meal size and composition

Meal type	Approximate emptying time
Light / small meal	1–2 hours
Medium meal	3–4 hours
Heavy / large meal	5–8 hours
Fluids / semi-fluids	Within ~2 hours

- ▶ Order of emptying by content: carbohydrates leave first, then proteins, then fats — fat is retained longest.
- ▶ Water taken with a solid meal empties rapidly and separately from the solid food.
- ▶ Milk is an exception to the fat rule — it contains fat but, being liquid, still leaves quickly.

Digestion state as a TSD indicator

- ▶ Stomach full of recognisable, undigested food points to death within about 2–4 hours of the last meal.
- ▶ Food largely digested or no longer individually identifiable points to more than about 4 hours having elapsed.
- ▶ Once digestion is complete the food can no longer be recognised, which generally means it has already passed into the intestine.
- ▶ As long as food remains in the stomach it can usually be identified. Recognising the actual meal (rice, potato, melon, etc.) lets the pathologist confirm or contradict witness accounts of when the deceased last ate.
- ▶ Once the stomach is empty, transit continues along the gut (used to refine TSD further):
 - Hepatic flexure reached at about 6 hours.
 - Splenic flexure reached at 9–12 hours.

- **Pelvic colon** reached at **12–18 hours**; material may then sit there as faeces for up to about 12 more hours.

Factors affecting gastric emptying (variability)

- ▶ **Total quantity of food** eaten, and any snacks taken between meals, change the emptying time.
- ▶ **Ratio of solid to liquid** in the meal — more liquid means faster emptying.
- ▶ **Carbohydrate, protein and fat content** — carbohydrate empties fastest, fat slowest.
- ▶ **Marked variation between individuals**, and day-to-day or seasonal variation in the same person.
- ▶ **Age and sex** play some part, though solid-food emptying does not differ significantly between young and old.
- ▶ **Psychogenic, emotional and endocrine factors** can cause dramatic swings in emptying time.
- ▶ **Digestion is delayed during sleep and during coma.**
- ▶ **Drugs:** parasympathomimetic drugs (e.g. insulin) speed up emptying.
- ▶ **Drugs:** parasympatholytic drugs (e.g. atropine) and sympathomimetic drugs (e.g. adrenaline) delay emptying.
- ▶ **Strong alcohol** (concentration above 40%) irritates the stomach lining and causes pyloric spasm, delaying emptying.
- ▶ **Most decisive variability — the key exam fact:**
 - **Head injury, physical or mental shock, severe stress, or coma** can completely stop gastric motility and close the pylorus.
 - Undigested food may then persist in the stomach for **more than 24 hours**, making a meal-based TSD estimate unreliable.
 - Any illness or emotional stress can also prolong emptying for many hours.
 - Conversely, **emotional hypermotility** (as in diarrhoea) can push food through the gut faster, shortening the apparent transit time.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Stomach-to-colon TSD timeline:** draw the stomach, pylorus, duodenum, hepatic flexure, splenic flexure and pelvic colon.
- ▶ **Label:** emptying starts ~10 min; bulk out by 2 h; light meal 1–2 h, medium 3–4 h, heavy 5–8 h; hepatic flexure 6 h, splenic flexure 9–12 h, pelvic colon 12–18 h.
- ▶ **Add the side note:** "**after death, contents do NOT pass the pylorus.**"
- ▶ **Bar chart:** three bars for light, medium and heavy meal emptying times, with an arrow showing carbohydrate faster than protein faster than fat.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Estimating time since death:** combined with the known time of the last meal, the stomach's contents and their digestion give an approximate hour of death.
- ▶ This estimate is recorded in the post-mortem report and often becomes important evidence at the inquest and at trial.

- ▶ **Corroborating or refuting witness accounts:** identifying the last meal and its digestion state can confirm or break a suspect's account of when the deceased was last alive.
- ▶ **Preserving evidence in poisoning:** the stomach and its contents, plus the upper part of the small intestine, must be examined, measured, described and sent for chemical analysis.
- ▶ Undigested tablets or capsules, or an unusual smell, colour or material in the contents, make this preservation essential.
- ▶ **Legal duty to investigate:** an unnatural or suspicious death requires a police inquest under **Section 194, Bharatiya Nagarik Suraksha Sanhita (BNSS) 2023** (formerly **Section 174, Code of Criminal Procedure 1973**).
- ▶ Custodial, dowry and exhumation deaths instead require a magistrate's inquest under **Section 196, BNSS 2023** (formerly **Section 176, CrPC 1973**).
- ▶ The doctor's TSD estimate feeds directly into this inquiry.
- ▶ **Limitation:** because of the wide variability described above, gastric emptying is only a rough, corroborative estimator.
- ▶ An overly precise time of death based on stomach contents alone is medico-legally unsafe, and should always be combined with rigor mortis, livor mortis, body cooling and other markers.



Discuss the anatomical significance of neck structures

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2017 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Why neck anatomy matters

- ▶ The neck carries the airway (larynx, trachea), the great vessels (carotid arteries, jugular veins), the vagal reflex apparatus (carotid sinus, carotid body), and a bony-cartilaginous skeleton (hyoid, thyroid and cricoid cartilage) — all just in front of the cervical vertebrae and easily compressed against it.
- ▶ That is why the neck is the chief target in mechanical asphyxia (hanging, ligature strangulation, throttling), in cut-throat injuries, and in reflex cardiac arrest (vagal inhibition).
- ▶ The level of a mark, the cartilage that fractures, and the vessel that occludes are all anatomically fixed — each carries medico-legal meaning.

Neck skeleton

- ▶ **Hyoid bone:** U-shaped, body plus paired greater and lesser cornua; hard to palpate. The greater cornu fuses with the body only by 40–45 years, so the young hyoid stays mobile and rarely fractures.
- ▶ **Thyroid cartilage:** the largest laryngeal cartilage; its midline bulge, the laryngeal prominence ("Adam's apple"), is the key landmark for the level of a neck mark.
 - Two laminae plus superior and inferior cornua — the slender superior cornu is the most fragile part.
 - Ossifies from about 45–50 years, after which it fractures far more easily.

- ▶ **Cricoid cartilage:** the only complete ring in the airway, shaped like a signet ring with the broad plate lying behind.
- ▶ **Larynx as a whole:** lies at C3–C6, made of nine cartilages — three single (epiglottis, thyroid, cricoid) and three paired (arytenoid, corniculate, cuneiform).
- ▶ **Triticeous cartilage:** a small normal nodule in the thyrohyoid ligament — do not mistake it for a fractured superior thyroid cornu.

Vessels and airway — why the neck is so vulnerable

- ▶ The common carotid splits into internal and external branches near the upper border of the thyroid cartilage, and runs directly over the transverse processes of C4, C5 and C6 — pressure crushes it against this bony backing.
- ▶ The intima (inner lining) tears near the carotid sinus in about 10–15% of strangulation/throttling deaths and 5–10% of hangings — a sign the victim was alive when compressed.
- ▶ The jugular vein is thin-walled and occludes even more easily; its blockage causes the congestion, cyanosis and petechiae above the compression — the classic asphyxial picture.
- ▶ The airway, held open by cartilage, resists compression, so it usually plays only a minor role in death; vascular occlusion and the vagal reflex dominate.
- ▶ **Force needed to compress (kg-force):**
 - Jugular vein ≈ 2 .
 - Carotid artery ≈ 5 .
 - Trachea ≈ 9 –15.
 - Vertebral artery ≈ 30 .
- ▶ So venous return is cut off first and the airway last — why facial congestion appears before consciousness is lost.

Carotid sinus reflex (vagal inhibition)

- ▶ The carotid sinus (widened wall of the internal carotid) and the carotid body sit near the mandible angle, rich in baroreceptors that sense blood pressure.
- ▶ Stimulation travels via Hering's nerve to the glossopharyngeal nerve (IX), on to the vagus nerve (X) in the brainstem, slowing the heart and dropping pressure — even stopping the heart.
- ▶ This can kill within seconds from minor neck pressure alone; commonest in throttling (about half of throttling deaths), frequent in hanging, least common in strangulation.
- ▶ The face stays pale, asphyxial signs are absent, and there is no characteristic postmortem finding — a diagnosis of exclusion.

Anatomical correlation with the asphyxial deaths

Feature	Hanging	Strangulation	Throttling
Mark level	Above thyroid cartilage (~80%)	At/below thyroid cartilage	Bruises over larynx/cricoid, finger-pad marks

Feature	Hanging	Strangulation	Throttling
Mark direction	Oblique, incomplete	Transverse, complete	No ligature mark; oval bruises + nail marks
Hyoid fracture	~15–20%, abduction type	Outward (abduction)	Inward (adduction) — commonest (30–50%)
Cricoid fracture	Rare	Rare	Near-pathognomonic, usually fatal
Carotid intimal tear	5–10%	10–15%	10–15%
Usual cause of death	Vascular occlusion ± vagal inhibition	Carotid/jugular occlusion	Carotid occlusion or vagal inhibition

Hyoid fracture mechanics

- ▶ **Adduction (inward):** typical of throttling — the greater horns are squeezed towards each other; periosteum tears on the outer surface.
- ▶ **Abduction (outward):** typical of hanging — the hyoid is driven backwards, the horns splay apart; periosteum tears on the inner surface.
- ▶ **Avulsion (traction):** a "tug" fracture from violent movement of the thyroid cartilage pulling through the thyrohyoid ligaments.
- ▶ The four horns of the thyroid-hyoid complex displace inward under direct pressure and outward under traction through the thyrohyoid membrane.
- ▶ The superior thyroid cornu, when fractured in throttling, is often broken only on the right side — it lies under the assailant's thumb.

Cut-throat wounds and choke holds

- ▶ As the head tips back, the carotid is drawn under the sternomastoid and against the spine, so it tends to escape injury in suicidal cuts; homicidal cuts typically sever both jugular veins and carotids.
- ▶ Suicidal wounds run high, above the thyroid cartilage; homicidal wounds run low, on or below it. Opening the jugular vein risks air embolism, since negative pressure sucks air in.
- ▶ A "carotid sleeper" (lateral vascular neck restraint) compresses the carotid and jugular but spares the vertebral artery and trachea — loss of consciousness in 10–15 seconds, no lasting damage, rarely fatal.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS► **Anterior view of the neck skeleton:**

- Hyoid bone — body, greater cornu, lesser cornu.
- Thyroid cartilage — laminae, laryngeal prominence, superior and inferior cornua.
- Thyrohyoid membrane with triticeous cartilage.
- Cricoid cartilage (signet ring) and first tracheal ring.
- Mark the larynx level, C3–C6.

► **Antero-lateral view of vessel relations:**

- Common carotid artery and its bifurcation.
- Carotid sinus and carotid body.
- Internal jugular vein.
- Vagus (X) and glossopharyngeal (IX)/Hering's nerve.
- Sternomastoid muscle and trachea.
- Transverse processes of C4–C6 lying behind the carotids.

Medico-legal significance

- The level, direction and completeness of a neck mark, read against the thyroid prominence, distinguish hanging from strangulation and guide the opinion on manner of death.
- Cartilage/hyoid fractures must be read against age — rare under 40 years, because the hyoid is unfused and elastic and the cartilages are unossified.
- An antemortem fracture shows surrounding haemorrhage; a bare fracture without bleeding may just be a postmortem handling artefact.
- Neck dissection must be done in situ, in a bloodless field, with a midline or V-shaped incision and layer-by-layer technique.
- Pulling the tongue and neck organs out en masse can fracture the hyoid and mimic throttling; toothed forceps can tear the carotid intima and mimic strangulation.
- **Artefacts to exclude:** triticeous cartilage, unfused hyoid synchondroses, Prinsloo–Gordon retro-oesophageal blood, and resuscitation/undertaker's injuries.
- An unnatural or suspicious death needs a police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)** and **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- Homicidal neck compression amounts to murder under **Section 300/302 IPC (now Sections 101/103 BNS 2023)**, or culpable homicide under **Sections 299/304 IPC (now Sections 100/105 BNS 2023)**.
- The doctor's autopsy opinion is expert opinion under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- A victim's dying statement is admissible as a dying declaration under **Section 32 IEA 1872 (now Section 26 BSA 2023)**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Discuss the anatomy of pelvis from a Medico-legal point of view

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ The bony **pelvis** is the basin-shaped ring formed by the two **innominate (hip) bones** in front and at the sides, and the **sacrum** and **coccyx** behind.
- ▶ Each innominate bone is the fused product of three elements: the **ilium, ischium and pubis**.
- ▶ Medico-legally the pelvis is the **single most reliable bone for determining sex** from skeletal remains.
- ▶ It also gives evidence of **age, previous childbirth (parturition), stature and individual identity**.
- ▶ The female pelvis is remodelled for childbirth, so its differences from the male pelvis are larger and more constant than anywhere else in the skeleton.

Why the pelvis matters — corpus delicti and identification

- ▶ Any unidentified human remains raise the **corpus delicti** question: is it human, who was it, and what was the cause and manner of death?
- ▶ The pelvis answers the "**who**" by fixing the **biological profile** — sex, age, stature and parity.
- ▶ Fixing sex halves the missing-persons pool and speeds up DNA matching and comparison with dental or other ante-mortem records.
- ▶ Skeletal sex differences **do not appear before puberty**.
- ▶ After puberty the pelvis, skull, sternal ratio and long bones all become usable for sexing, but the pelvis carries the most weight.
- ▶ Even in **foetuses and children** the pelvis keeps some dimorphism (for example in the sciatic notch), making it the most dependable region in immature remains.
- ▶ **Accuracy of sexing rises with the amount of bone available:**
 - Entire skeleton — 100%
 - Pelvis + skull together — 98%
 - **Pelvis alone — 95% (best single bone)**
 - Skull alone — 90%
 - Long bones alone — 80%

Sex determination from the hip bone

- ▶ The female pelvis is broad, shallow and capacious — a "flat bowl" — built for childbirth.
- ▶ The male pelvis is narrow, deep and heavily muscle-marked — a "deep funnel".
- ▶ The three most discriminating features are the **sub-pubic angle, greater sciatic notch and pre-auricular sulcus**.

Feature	Male	Female
Sub-pubic angle	V-shaped, sharp, 70°–75°	U-shaped, rounded, 90°–100°
Greater sciatic notch	Narrow, deep	Wide, shallow

Feature	Male	Female
Pre-auricular sulcus	Infrequent, narrow, shallow	Frequent, broad, deep
Pelvic inlet	Heart-shaped	Circular/elliptical, roomier
Obturator foramen	Oval	Triangular
Acetabulum	Large, 52 mm	Small, 46 mm
Body of pubis	Narrow, triangular	Broad, square; may show parturition pits

- ▶ The **greater sciatic notch** is the most dependable feature for sexing immature remains (a child or foetus) because its dimorphism is already present before puberty.

Sex determination from the sacrum

- ▶ The male sacrum is longer, narrower, heavier and rougher.
- ▶ Its curvature is evenly distributed and the **promontory** is **well-marked**.
- ▶ The female sacrum is shorter, wider, lighter and smoother.
- ▶ It stays almost straight in its upper half and curves sharply forward only at the last two segments.
- ▶ The body of the first sacral vertebra (S1) is broader than one ala in the male, narrower than one ala in the female.
- ▶ The **sacro-iliac articulation** extends up to the 3rd sacral segment in the male, only up to about the 2nd–2.5th segment in the female.
- ▶ The coccyx is more movable in the female.

Anthropometric indices

- ▶ Indices reduce dimorphism to a single number and remain useful even with fragmentary bone.
- ▶ The **ischiopubic (Washburn) index** is the **best index**: $\text{pubic length} \times 100 \div \text{ischial length}$.
 - Male 73–94; female 91–115.
- ▶ As a rule, **females score higher** on the sciatic-notch, ischiopubic, alar and sternal indices.
- ▶ **Males score higher** on the corporobasal and chilotic-line indices.
- ▶ The sciatic-notch index is reported with conflicting conventions across sources, so in the exam it is safer to describe the notch by **shape** rather than quote a single number — wider and shallower in the female, narrower and deeper in the male.
- ▶ **Chilotic-line index** ($\text{sacral segment} \times 100 \div \text{pelvic segment of the chilotic line}$):
 - Above 100 — sacral part is longer — the **male** pattern.
 - Below 100 — pelvic part is longer — the **female** pattern.

Parturition (evidence of previous childbirth)

- ▶ Important in disputed identity, concealment of birth, infanticide and disputed-maternity claims.
- ▶ **Dorsal pubic pits**: in women who have borne children, the back surface of the pubic symphysis becomes irregular or pitted from the stress of childbearing.
- ▶ **Pre-auricular groove scarring** is a second sign.

- ▶ **Scarring of the sacro-iliac (interosseous) ligament groove** is the third sign.
- ▶ These signs are corroborative, not absolute.
- ▶ Pits can occasionally be absent in a parous woman, or present without proven childbirth, so they must be reported with caution.

Age estimation from the pelvis

- ▶ The **ischiopubic ramus** of the hip bone unites at about 7–8 years.
- ▶ The secondary centres of the **iliac crest and pubis** appear and fuse across 14–20 years.
- ▶ The **acetabular (Y-shaped) cartilage** joining ilium, ischium and pubis fuses in the mid-teens.
- ▶ The **sacrum** fuses into one bone between 21 and 25 years.
- ▶ A gap between the first and second sacral segments can persist up to about 32 years.
- ▶ The **pubic symphyseal surface** changes predictably with age:
 - Adolescence — billowy ridges and grooves.
 - Middle age — flat, cup-shaped surface.
 - Old age — eroded, irregular surface.
- ▶ This progression is a recognised indicator of adult age.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Identifying skeletal, dismembered or decomposed remains:** the pelvis fixes sex, supports age and stature, and detects parity — the foundation of the biological profile in mass disasters and homicide concealment.
- ▶ **Sexing a foetus or child:** the greater sciatic notch is the most dependable trait, useful in infanticide, concealment of birth and abandoned-foetus cases.
- ▶ **Parturition evidence** corroborates disputed maternity, concealed birth and identity claims.
- ▶ **Trauma correlation:** pelvic-ring fractures from road-traffic crashes or falls from height can cause fatal retroperitoneal or pelvic haemorrhage with little external injury.
- ▶ A pelvic fracture injuring the **sacral parasympathetic nerves** can cause impotence, relevant to assessments of **grievous hurt and emasculation**.
- ▶ Skeletal findings are tendered as **expert opinion under Section 45 Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ Identification of unknown remains supports inquest proceedings under **Section 174/176 CrPC 1973 (now Sections 194/196 Bharatiya Nagarik Suraksha Sanhita 2023)**.
- ▶ Post-mortem skeletal sexing is lawful and routine.
- ▶ Ante-mortem disclosure of foetal sex on ultrasound is barred by **Section 5(2), Pre-Conception and Pre-Natal Diagnostic Techniques (Prohibition of Sex Selection) Act, 1994**.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Male vs female pelvis (anterior view, two outlines side by side).** Label: deep funnel shape vs flat broad bowl; heart-shaped inlet vs circular/elliptical inlet; V-shaped sub-pubic angle 70°–75° vs U-shaped 90°–100°; narrow deep sciatic notch vs wide shallow notch; oval obturator foramen vs triangular; narrow pre-auricular sulcus vs broad deep sulcus.
- ▶ **Sacrum, male vs female (ventral view).** Label: long, narrow, evenly curved with a marked promontory vs short, broad, with an abrupt curve at the last two segments and a flatter promontory; mark the auricular (sacro-iliac) surface on both.

**Discuss the forensic anatomy of mandible**

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

- ▶ The **mandible** (lower jaw) is the largest, strongest, and only freely movable bone of the facial skeleton.
- ▶ It articulates with the skull at the paired **temporomandibular joints**, just in front of each ear.
- ▶ It is one of the most valuable single bones for **personal identification**.
- ▶ Its size, contour, angle, and tooth-bearing alveolar margin change predictably with **age** and differ between the **sexes**.
- ▶ Being dense and compact, it survives fire, putrefaction, burial, and skeletonisation better than most facial bones.
- ▶ A recovered skull cannot be **positively identified** without its mandible, even if skull-superimposition shows a good match.

Developmental & gross anatomy

- ▶ **Ossification:** the mandible ossifies in **membrane**, not cartilage.
- ▶ Each half ossifies from **one primary centre** near the mental foramen.
- ▶ This centre appears at about the **6th week of intra-uterine life**, just after the clavicle's centre (early 2nd month).
- ▶ Ossification occurs lateral to **Meckel's cartilage**, the cartilage bar guiding early jaw formation.
- ▶ An ossifying mandible in fetal remains helps estimate **intra-uterine age**.
- ▶ **At birth:** the mandible exists as **two halves** joined at the midline by a fibrous **symphysis menti**.
- ▶ **Union:** the two halves start fusing from below upward during the **first year** of life.
- ▶ Fusion of the symphysis is **complete by about the second year**.
- ▶ A mandible found as one fused piece indicates age beyond infancy; two separate halves point to the first year of life.
- ▶ **Gross parts:** each half has a horizontal **body** bearing the tooth-bearing **alveolar margin**.
- ▶ A vertical **ramus** rises from the body, ending in the **coronoid process** in front and the **condyloid process (condyle)** behind, separated by the mandibular notch.
- ▶ The body and ramus meet at the **angle (gonion)**.

- ▶ The **mental foramen** lies on the outer surface of the body and transmits the mental nerve and vessels; its changing position is a key age marker.
- ▶ **Neck relevance:** the carotid body and carotid sinus lie roughly at the **level of the mandibular angle**.
- ▶ Pressure at this level can trigger fatal **vagal inhibition** (reflex cardiac arrest) — relevant to throttling and neck-compression deaths.

Mandible in age estimation

- ▶ Shape changes through life are driven mainly by **tooth eruption**, which deepens the alveolar part, and later **alveolar resorption** after tooth loss, which makes it shallow again.

Feature	Infancy	Adult	Old age
Body	Shallow	Thick and long	Shallow again (resorption)
Gonial angle	Obtuse	Almost a right angle	Obtuse again, about 140°
Mental foramen	Near the lower margin	Midway	Near the alveolar margin
Condyle vs coronoid	Condyle lower	Condyle projects above coronoid	Condyle lower again

- ▶ The gonial angle's **U-shaped change** — obtuse in infancy, near a right angle in the dentate adult, obtuse again in the edentulous elderly — is the single most quoted age feature of the mandible.
- ▶ The mental foramen does not truly migrate: it stays fixed while alveolar bone grows up around it in adulthood, then resorbs from above in old age.
- ▶ A **completely edentulous jaw with marked alveolar resorption usually indicates an age over 70 years**.
- ▶ Mandibular age findings are **supportive, not standalone** — combine with cranial suture closure, dental attrition, epiphyseal union, and pubic symphysis changes; accuracy falls sharply after 25 years.

Mandible in sex determination

- ▶ The mandible is sexually dimorphic, but less reliable alone than the **pelvis** or skull.
- ▶ It is best treated as **corroborative** and gains reliability when assessed together with the skull.
- ▶ **Size:** the male mandible is larger and thicker; the female is smaller and thinner.
- ▶ **Chin (symphysis menti):** square or U-shaped in the male; rounded in the female.
- ▶ **Gonial angle:** under 125° and **everted** (turned outward) in the male; over 125° and **inverted** in the female.
- ▶ **Ramus flexure:** a rearward indentation of the posterior ramus border at molar level, present in the male and absent (straight ramus) in the female.
- ▶ **Mental tubercle and muscle markings:** large and prominent in the male; insignificant in the female.

- ▶ These four features — gonial angle, chin shape, gonion eversion/inversion, and ramus flexure — are the ones most worth writing.
- ▶ As with age, sexing from a single bone is **probabilistic**, and the opinion strengthens when combined with the skull, pelvis, and long bones.

Individual identification & other medico-legal uses

- ▶ The mandible carries the **lower-arch teeth** that anchor dental records for identification.
- ▶ **Forensic odontology**: the mandibular teeth, especially the often-impacted **third molar**, are central to dental age estimation, **bite-mark** analysis, and ante-mortem/post-mortem dental comparison.
- ▶ **Skull-photo superimposition**: the recovered skull and mandible are superimposed on ante-mortem photographs, and the chin-jawline contour is a key matching landmark.
- ▶ This technique was first applied to a mandible in the *Ruxton case* (1935).
- ▶ Modern **digital superimposition**, combined with tooth matching and DNA, identified the remains in the *Sheena Bora case* (2012).
- ▶ **Mandibular fractures** are a recognised injury pattern in assault, road-traffic, and fall cases, and the jaw is also examined in **torture/abuse** cases.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Mandible at three ages (lateral view)**: three outlines side by side, labelled body, ramus, angle, coronoid process, condyle, and mental foramen. Show infancy (obtuse angle, foramen near lower margin, condyle below coronoid), adult (near-right angle, foramen midway, condyle above coronoid), and old age (obtuse ~140° angle, shallow body, foramen near alveolar margin).
- ▶ **Male vs female mandible (lateral + anterior chin view)**: label square/U-shaped chin vs rounded chin; gonial angle under 125° everted vs over 125° inverted; ramus flexure present vs straight ramus; prominent mental tubercle vs insignificant.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ The mandible contributes to all four pillars of the identity question: **age, sex, stature/race** (via the skull), and **individual identity**.
- ▶ It is therefore routinely examined in skeletal-remains and mass-disaster work.
- ▶ Identification findings feed into the **post-mortem/inquest** record.
- ▶ An unnatural or suspicious death requires a police inquest under **Section 174/176 CrPC 1973** (now **Section 194/196 BNSS 2023**).
- ▶ The doctor's opinion on age, sex, and identity is recorded as expert evidence under **Section 45 IEA 1872** (now **Section 39 BSA 2023**).
- ▶ Age or sex estimated from the mandible is **an opinion, not conclusive proof**, and must be stated with its inherent margin of error.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ Largest, strongest, only **movable** facial bone; ossifies in **membrane** from a single centre near the mental foramen at the 6th week of intra-uterine life.
- ▶ Two halves at birth, uniting **from below upward** and complete by about the **2nd year**.
- ▶ **Gonial angle** is the key age clue: obtuse in infancy, near a right angle in the adult, obtuse (~140°) again in old age.
- ▶ **Mental foramen** rises with age: lower margin (infancy) → midway (adult) → alveolar margin (old age).
- ▶ **Edentulous jaw with alveolar resorption** points to age over 70 years.
- ▶ **Sex**: male — larger, square chin, gonial angle under 125° everted, ramus flexure present, prominent mental tubercle; female — opposite.
- ▶ **Skull cannot be positively identified without the mandible**; used in superimposition and dental identification.
- ▶ Carotid sinus/body lie at the **level of the mandibular angle** — relevant to vagal-inhibition deaths.
- ▶ Findings are corroborative — combine with skull, pelvis, teeth, and pubic symphysis; age accuracy falls after 25 years.



Discuss the forensic anatomy of neck highlighting the various layers of neck dissection

Asked in: Paper I Dec 2023 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ The neck carries the upper airway (larynx, trachea), the great vessels (carotid arteries, jugular veins), the vagus nerve, and the cervical spinal cord.
- ▶ Its anatomy is studied to interpret **asphyxial deaths** — hanging, ligature strangulation, and throttling (manual strangulation).
- ▶ The core challenge is telling minute antemortem (during-life) bruises apart from postmortem (after-death) handling artefacts.
- ▶ **Layer-by-layer (layered) neck dissection** exposes each fascial and muscular plane *in situ* (in its natural position) in a **bloodless field**.
- ▶ This stops genuine haemorrhage being confused with artefact, and is the foundation of every neck autopsy.

Surface and applied anatomy (forensic landmarks)

- ▶ **Bony/cartilaginous skeleton, top to bottom**: hyoid bone, thyroid cartilage ("Adam's apple"), cricoid cartilage (the only complete ring), then the tracheal rings.
- ▶ These are the structures checked for fracture in every asphyxial death.
- ▶ The **hyoid bone** lies at the root of the tongue and moves up and down during swallowing.
- ▶ Its **greater horn (cornu)** lies 3 cm below the angle of the mandible and 1.5 cm from the midline — a precise fracture landmark.

- ▶ The **sternocleidomastoid muscle** divides each side of the neck into an anterior triangle (larynx, trachea, thyroid, carotid sheath) and a posterior triangle.
- ▶ Most asphyxial bruising lies within or deep to the anterior triangle.
- ▶ The **common carotid artery** bifurcates (divides) near the upper thyroid cartilage.
- ▶ The carotids run over the **transverse processes of C4–C6**, so anterolateral pressure compresses them against bone — the basis of cerebral anoxia (lack of oxygen to the brain) in strangulation.
- ▶ The internal jugular vein and vagus nerve travel alongside the carotid, all enclosed in the carotid sheath.
- ▶ **Reflexogenic zone:** the carotid sinus, carotid body, and carotid sheath wall carry pressure-sensitive baroreceptors.
- ▶ Pressure here, near the mandible angle and upper thyroid cartilage, can trigger **vagal inhibition** — reflex cardiac arrest with minimal injury ("instantaneous physiological death").

Fascial and muscular layers (superficial to deep)

Layer	Forensic note
Skin	Bears the ligature/nail marks; mobile, so the mark may not overlie the deep bruise
Superficial fascia + platysma	Subcutaneous fat enclosing platysma; bruising may lodge here
Investing layer of deep cervical fascia	Splits to enclose sternocleidomastoid and trapezius
Sternocleidomastoid muscle	Reflected off its sternal/clavicular heads to expose deeper structures
Strap muscles (omohyoid, sternohyoid, sternothyroid, thyrohyoid)	Common site of deep antemortem haemorrhage in strangulation/throttling
Pretracheal fascia + thyroid gland	Encloses thyroid, larynx, trachea, pharynx, oesophagus
Carotid sheath	Carotid artery, internal jugular vein, vagus nerve; intima examined for tears
Prevertebral fascia + muscles	Airway/gut pulled forward off this plane; posterior haemorrhage sought here
Vertebral column + spinal cord	Examined last; reached when craniocervical injury is suspected

- ▶ The deep cervical fascia has three named sleeves — **investing**, **pretracheal**, and **prevertebral** — with the **carotid sheath** as a tubular condensation between them.

Preparing a bloodless field

- ▶ Deep neck bruises are tiny and easily mimicked by postmortem artefact.
- ▶ Clumsy traction on the tongue/neck organs can force blood between muscle planes, or even fracture the hyoid/thyroid cornu, without true injury.
- ▶ To prevent this, the **skull and thoracic/abdominal cavities are opened first** in suspected throttling/strangulation.

- ▶ Removing the brain and viscera drains blood through the divided neck vessels.
- ▶ The head is then moved slowly up and down to help the body drain — this creates a **bloodless field**.
- ▶ The neck is then dissected **in situ, layer by layer**, with photography at each plane.
- ▶ *En bloc* (whole-block) removal of neck organs, as in a routine autopsy, is avoided here — it generates artefactual haemorrhage.

Step-by-step layered dissection

- ▶ A midline chin-to-manubrium incision, or a V-shaped incision from each mastoid process, is made once the bloodless field is achieved.
- ▶ **Skin and superficial fascia (with platysma)** are reflected as flaps.
- ▶ The **deep cervical fascia is incised and reflected** off the cervical muscles and submandibular gland.
- ▶ The **sternomastoid muscle is freed** from its sternal and clavicular attachments and reflected on each side.
- ▶ The **strap muscles are exposed, inspected, and reflected**; each plane is checked for haemorrhage.
- ▶ The **thyroid gland and carotid sheaths are freed by blunt dissection**; the carotid intima is inspected (tears occur in ~10–15% of throttling cases near the carotid sinus).
- ▶ The **larynx, trachea, pharynx, and oesophagus are mobilised forward** off the prevertebral tissue.
- ▶ The **hyoid bone and laryngeal cartilages are tested for fracture** — each hyoid horn is bent inward/outward, and the thyroid cartilage is stripped to check its superior cornu (its most often fractured part).
- ▶ **Posterior neck dissection** (to the spinous processes, exposing prevertebral fascia and, if needed, the spinal cord) is added when craniocervical derangement (skull-neck junction injury) is suspected.
- ▶ This applies to road-traffic fatalities and unexplained brainstem laceration, and is recommended in all infant deaths occurring outside hospital.

Antemortem injury vs postmortem artefact

- ▶ **Antemortem bruising** is found in the dermis, superficial fascia, deep fascia, strap muscles, and thyroid, sometimes the submandibular gland.
- ▶ It shows **vital reaction** — true infiltrative haemorrhage with surrounding tissue staining.
- ▶ It may coexist with surface bruises, scratches, and intralaryngeal or tongue haemorrhage.
- ▶ **Artefacts to recognise and exclude:**
 - Spurious blood behind the pharynx/larynx from an overdistended venous plexus.
 - Blood collections around the hyoid/thyroid that mimic strangulation.
 - Carotid intimal damage caused by toothed forceps during dissection.
 - Hyoid/thyroid cornu fractures produced by rough handling or hyperextension.
- ▶ The decisive safeguards against mistaking artefact for injury are the **bloodless field** and **in-situ layered examination**.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Transverse section of the neck at C6:** label, surface to deep — skin; superficial fascia with platysma; investing fascia; sternocleidomastoid; strap muscles; thyroid gland; trachea; oesophagus; carotid sheath (carotid artery, jugular vein, vagus nerve); prevertebral fascia and muscles; C6 vertebral body and spinal cord.
- ▶ **Anterior neck skeleton with V-shaped incision:** label hyoid bone (body, greater and lesser horns); thyrohyoid membrane; thyroid cartilage (laryngeal prominence, superior cornu); cricoid cartilage; tracheal rings; thyroid gland (lobes and isthmus); the mastoid-to-manubrium V-incision lines.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Correct layered dissection lets the autopsy surgeon **prove or exclude antemortem neck compression**.
- ▶ This distinguishes **homicidal throttling/strangulation** from **suicidal hanging**, accident, and natural death — directly affecting the criminal charge.
- ▶ It localises deep haemorrhage in the strap muscles, hyoid/thyroid/cricoid fractures, and carotid intimal tears.
- ▶ It documents the mechanism of death: airway occlusion, carotid occlusion against C4–C6, or vagal inhibition.
- ▶ It guards against reporting **postmortem artefact as injury**, which could wrongly support a homicide allegation.
- ▶ An unnatural or suspicious death is investigated by **police inquest** — Section 174/176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194/196 BNSS 2023).
- ▶ Homicidal strangulation is charged as murder — Section 300/302 IPC 1860 (now Section 101/103 BNS 2023) — or as culpable homicide not amounting to murder — Section 299/304 IPC (now Section 100/105 BNS 2023).
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon's opinion is expert evidence — Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023).



Discuss the forensic anatomy of skin and its appendages. Add a note on medicolegal importance of healing of skin wounds

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

- ▶ The **skin (integument)** is the largest organ of the body.
- ▶ It records almost every external injury, identification mark and post-mortem change.
- ▶ It has two layers, a superficial **epidermis** and a deeper **dermis**, resting on subcutaneous fat (the **hypodermis**).
- ▶ Its **appendages** are hair follicles, sebaceous glands, sweat glands and nails.

- ▶ The epidermis also carries **friction ridges**.
- ▶ Average skin thickness is **1.6 mm** — the working figure used to grade wound depth.
- ▶ The **depth an injury reaches** decides whether it bleeds, whether it scars, and how it is dated.

Layered anatomy of the skin

- ▶ **Epidermis** — the outer, avascular, cellular layer.
 - Contains the deep **Malpighian layer (stratum germinativum)** and the outer **stratum corneum**.
 - Has no blood vessels, so injury confined to it does not bleed and **regenerates without a scar**.
 - Its pigment cells determine complexion, a key identification feature.
- ▶ **Dermis** — the deeper fibrous layer of collagen and elastic tissue.
 - Carries blood vessels, nerves and the appendages.
 - Post-mortem lividity collects in its superficial capillary plexus, the **rete mucosum**.
 - Loss of its **elastic tissue** can be shown microscopically to prove or disprove a scar.
- ▶ **Dermal papillae** — upward projections of dermis into the epidermis.
 - "Superficial" abrasions often dip into these and **bleed**, giving deeper grazes their spotty look.
- ▶ **Subcutaneous tissue (hypodermis)** — the fat layer below the dermis, breached only by deeper wounds.
- ▶ **Forensic threshold rule:**
 - Injury limited to the **epidermis** heals **without a scar**.
 - Injury reaching the **dermis** or below heals with a **permanent scar**.

Skin appendages and their forensic value

Appendage	Forensic application
Hair	species/sex determination; DNA profiling (amelogenin gene); resists decomposition
Sebaceous glands	source of the oily component of a latent fingerprint
Sweat glands	ducts open on ridge summits; source of the watery component of a fingerprint
Nails	trap sub-ungual debris linking assailant and victim
Friction ridges	basis of fingerprinting; appear ~13th fetal week, complete by 21st week

- ▶ The skin also records **scars, tattoos, moles, occupational marks and complexion** — all identification features.
- ▶ **Tattoo** pigment in the **upper dermis** is permanent; pigment left only in the epidermis fades away.
- ▶ **Langer's cleavage lines** are the natural lines of tension of dermal collagen and elastic fibres.
 - A wound crossing these lines **gapes widely**.
 - One running parallel to them **gapes little** — a clue to wound direction and weapon.

Skin and the depth-based classification of injuries

- ▶ **Abrasion** — destruction limited to the **epidermis only**.
 - Bleeds slightly and heals fast, usually with **no scar**.
 - A deeper graze that breaches the dermal papillae does bleed and may leave superficial scarring.
 - Types: **graze (sliding)**, **pressure**, **impact (patterned/imprint)** and **scratch**.
- ▶ **Bruise (contusion)** — bleeding from vessels **ruptured in the dermis** and deeper tissue.
 - The epidermis stays intact — the key point distinguishing it from an abrasion.
- ▶ **Laceration and incised/stab wounds** — breach the **full thickness** of the skin.
 - Gape along Langer's lines and, being dermal-and-deeper, **always heal with a scar**.

Healing of skin wounds — the biological timeline

- ▶ Healing happens by one of **three modes**:
 - **Primary (first) intention**: clean, re-approximated (sutured) edges; fast re-epithelialisation; minimal scar.
 - **Secondary intention**: an open wound with a gap; heals by abundant **granulation tissue**, contraction and epithelial migration; leaves a **larger scar**.
 - **Third intention (delayed primary)**: a heavily contaminated wound left open for about 3 days, then closed.
- ▶ **Histological timeline** (used to date a wound):
 - Within 12 hours: capillary dilatation, early neutrophils, then fibroblasts and monocytes appear.
 - By 24 hours: epithelium starts growing in from the wound edges.
 - By 72 hours: **vascularised granulation tissue** forms.
 - By 4–5 days: new collagen fibrils appear; epithelium thickens.
 - By 1 week: a soft, reddish **scar** forms in small wounds.
 - After 2 weeks: the scar becomes dense and avascular.
- ▶ **Newer dating methods** — enzyme/immunohistochemical markers (e.g. histamine ~30 min, collagen I ~5 days) — appear before visible histology.
 - They also prove a wound is **antemortem**: histamine ~50% and serotonin ~100% higher than in a post-mortem wound.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Dating the injury** helps test the alleged time of assault, from the abrasion's colour change:
 - Bright red at first, a red scab by 12–24 hours.
 - Reddish-brown by 2–3 days, dark-brown/black by 4–7 days, scab off by ~7 days.
 - This is combined with the histological and enzyme/immunohistochemistry timeline for a tighter estimate.
- ▶ **Antemortem vs post-mortem injury** is judged by the vital reaction — granulation, fibroblast ingrowth, raised histamine/serotonin.

- A post-mortem abrasion instead dries to a brown, parchment-like mark that can mimic a burn.
- **The scar as a permanent identification feature.**
 - A scar is fibrous tissue with **no hair follicles, elastic tissue, glands, or pigment**.
 - Its elastic-tissue stain is negative, confirming it microscopically and separating it from *striae gravidarum* (pregnancy stretch marks), which retain elastic tissue.
 - Scars are **permanent** and **grow with the child**.
 - Shape hints at the cause: linear (incised), circular depressed (bullet), spotted (scald), irregular and firm (lacerated).
 - **Age of a scar:** "angry" red at 5–6 days, pale by 14 days, white/glistening at 2–6 months, tough after 6 months.
- **Grading of hurt** depends on the healing outcome.
 - **Hurt** = causing bodily pain, disease or infirmity — **Section 114 BNS 2023** (formerly S.319 IPC 1860).
 - A scar causing **permanent disfiguration of the head or face** is **grievous hurt** — **Section 116(f) BNS 2023** (formerly clause "Sixthly", S.320 IPC 1860).
 - **Section 116(h) BNS 2023** (formerly S.320 IPC 1860) makes severe bodily pain, or inability to follow one's ordinary pursuits, grievous hurt if it lasts **fifteen days** — BNS 2023 cut this down from the old **twenty days**.
 - A joint contracture restricting movement is also graded as grievous hurt.
 - Record every injury's site, type, dimensions, **depth** and **age** — depth predicts scarring.
- **Detecting fabrication:** a disease scar (e.g. smallpox) may be wrongly blamed on assault, or claimed as therapeutic — anatomical reading of the scar settles it.
- **At autopsy,** skin is read for lividity, patterned abrasions linking weapon to wound, vital reaction, and decomposition markers (skin slippage, loosened appendages).
- **Statutory medical examination and samples** — skin, hair, nails (sub-ungual scrapings) and sweat are specimens for histopathology, blood-grouping and DNA fingerprinting.
 - **Section 51 BNSS 2023 (S.53 CrPC 1973):** the accused, at police request.
 - **Section 53 BNSS 2023 (S.54 CrPC 1973):** an arrested person (routine).
 - **Section 52 BNSS 2023 (S.53A CrPC 1973):** a person accused of rape.
 - **Section 184 BNSS 2023 (S.164A CrPC 1973):** the rape victim/survivor.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Cross-section of skin and appendages** — label *stratum corneum*, *epidermis* (Malpighian layer), *dermal papillae*, *dermis* (vessels, nerves, rete mucosum), *subcutaneous fat*, *hair follicle*, *sebaceous gland*, *sweat gland and duct*, *sweat pore on a friction ridge*. Mark the **scar-threshold line** at the dermo-epidermal junction (no scar above, permanent scar at/below).
- ▶ **Friction-ridge detail** — label *epidermal ridge*, *furrow*, *sweat pore on ridge summit*, *subsidiary ridge*, and *underlying epidermis and dermis*.



Pathophysiology of Myocardial Infarction

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2016 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Myocardial infarction (MI)** is death (ischaemic necrosis) of a segment of heart muscle from a sudden, severe cut-off of its coronary blood supply, starving it of oxygen.
- ▶ The usual cause is **coronary atherosclerosis complicated by acute thrombosis** on a ruptured plaque.
- ▶ MI is the single commonest cause of **sudden natural death** at medico-legal autopsy.

Coronary anatomy and common sites

- ▶ The two coronary arteries are **functional end-arteries** with little collateral flow, so a blocked segment produces a matching area of dead muscle.
- ▶ **Commonest site of occlusion:** the first 2 cm of the **left anterior descending (LAD)** branch of the left coronary artery.
- ▶ **Next commonest sites, in order:**
 - Proximal right coronary artery.
 - First part of the circumflex branch.
 - Short left main trunk.
- ▶ **Most infarcts affect the anterior wall of the left ventricle.**
- ▶ Posterior (inferior) infarcts follow blockage of the right coronary or circumflex artery.
- ▶ The right ventricle and atria are involved in **under 10%** of cases; the **papillary muscles** are commonly involved.

From atherosclerosis to muscle death — the sequence

- ▶ **Atherosclerosis (the chronic substrate):** cholesterol deposits in the arterial intima, forming an atheromatous plaque with a lipid core and fibrous cap.
- ▶ **Stenosis grading:**
 - Mild: **under 50%** of the lumen.
 - Moderate: **50–75%**.
 - Severe (clinically significant): **75% or more**.

- ▶ **Chronic ischaemia:** a severely narrowed vessel starves the muscle beyond it, making it electrically unstable even before any infarct forms.
- ▶ **The acute trigger:** the fibrous cap **ruptures, fissures, or ulcerates**, or the plaque bleeds internally.
- ▶ The exposed lipid core and collagen are highly thrombogenic, so platelets aggregate and a **coronary thrombus** suddenly blocks the already-narrow lumen.
- ▶ **Other triggers that do not need a fresh thrombus:**
 - **Coronary artery spasm** — can occur even in a normal-looking artery and can be fatal in a person with angina.
 - **Haemorrhage into the plaque wall** narrowing the lumen from outside.
 - **Coronary embolism.**
 - **Occlusion of a coronary ostium** by aortic atheroma or syphilitic aortitis.
- ▶ **Cell death:** once the lumen falls to about **20% or less**, the muscle switches to anaerobic metabolism, ATP is depleted, and myocytes die — irreversible coagulative necrosis.
- ▶ **Demand–supply mismatch (no occlusion needed):** a heart with **≥75% narrowing but no thrombus** can be pushed into **acute coronary insufficiency** and sudden death by a sudden rise in cardiac demand, with no infarct ever forming.
- ▶ Fresh thrombus is found in **fewer than 25%** of such sudden coronary deaths — most show neither a thrombus nor a demonstrable infarct at autopsy.

Types of infarct

Type	Mechanism	Distribution
Laminar (subendocardial)	Generalised stenosis of the major branches; subendocardium is the last, worst-perfused zone	Patchy, poorly demarcated; may span half or more of wall thickness
Regional (transmural) — more common	Localised occlusion of one artery	Well-demarcated necrosis with a thin surviving subendocardial rim; papillary muscles usually involved

Ageing the infarct

- ▶ Ageing matters because it tells the pathologist **how long the patient survived** after the coronary event — vital when an assault or exertion is alleged to have precipitated death.
- ▶ **Under 4 hours:** no naked-eye change; a **TTC (triphenyltetrazolium chloride)** dip leaves the dead zone unstained pale while living muscle turns red-brown.
- ▶ **4–12 hours:** slight mottling; under the microscope the dying fibres stain intensely pink (eosinophilia) and nuclei shrink (pyknosis).
- ▶ **12–18 hours:** still no gross change — this is why an early MI is often an "obscure autopsy" diagnosis.
- ▶ **First visible sign, by ~24 hours:** oedema and pallor of the area appear.
- ▶ **1–3 days:** the infarct turns **yellow** with a hyperaemic border; interfibre haemorrhage gives a striped "tigroid" look.

- ▶ ~10 days: maximal softening — the **highest-risk period for cardiac rupture**.
- ▶ ~3 months: replaced by a **thin, grey-white, hard fibrous scar**.

Complications and modes of death

- ▶ **Lethal arrhythmia** — ventricular fibrillation or asystole, from chronically hypoxic muscle fibrillating under exertion or emotion, is the commonest mode of sudden death.
- ▶ A heart weighing **over 420 g** is at risk of sudden death from electrical instability even with normal coronaries.
- ▶ **Cardiogenic shock** — pump failure from the damaged muscle.
- ▶ **Asthenia** — deficient heart-muscle power; autopsy chambers still contain blood, unlike the empty heart after haemorrhage.
- ▶ **Cardiac rupture** of the softened infarct (greatest risk day 3–10) causes **haemopericardium and cardiac tamponade**.
- ▶ **Other sequelae:**
 - Papillary muscle or chordae tendineae rupture.
 - Ventricular aneurysm.
 - Mural thrombus, with risk of systemic embolism.
 - Pericarditis.

MI as a cause of sudden natural death

- ▶ **Sudden death (WHO):** death within **24 hours** of onset of terminal symptoms in a person not known to have a dangerous disease — about **10% of all deaths**.
- ▶ **Cardiovascular disease causes 45–50% of sudden natural deaths** — the leading group. Its chief causes:
 - Coronary atherosclerosis (with or without thrombosis).
 - Coronary embolism.
 - Ostial occlusion.
 - Hypertensive heart disease.
 - Rupture of a fresh infarct.
 - Angina pectoris.
- ▶ **Café coronary** is sudden death while eating, from a food bolus lodging in the larynx and triggering fatal **vagal inhibition** — it mimics MI clinically but is mechanical airway obstruction, not a true infarct.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Coronary tree diagram:** heart with aorta, left main coronary artery, LAD (mark "commonest site, within 2 cm of origin"), circumflex, right coronary artery, and the anterior-wall infarct shaded.
- ▶ **Cross-section of a stenosed coronary artery:** rings for vessel wall, elastic lamina, and lumen, with an eccentric atheromatous plaque and an occluding thrombus.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Sudden cardiac death is an **unnatural/unexpected death** requiring police intimation and inquest before the cause is certified.
- ▶ Inquest is conducted under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**, and, where applicable, magisterial inquiry under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ **Ageing the infarct** lets the pathologist correlate survival time with an alleged precipitating event such as assault, fright, or exertion.
- ▶ Severe injury and its associated terror, pain, or exertion can **precipitate a fatal arrhythmia or MI** in a person with existing heart disease.
- ▶ The death may then be ruled as **precipitated by the injury**, even when the injury alone was not enough to kill — relevant to charges of culpable homicide or murder under **Sections 299/300 IPC (now Sections 100/101 BNS 2023)** and **Section 304 IPC (now Section 105 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ **Distinguishing natural MI from trauma:** cardiac contusion (blunt chest impact) and rare traumatic coronary thrombosis or dissection can mimic or precipitate an infarct — document chest injuries and examine the coronaries histologically.
- ▶ **Beware mimics:** postmortem hypostasis (gravity pooling of blood after death) in the heart can simulate an infarct — do not over-call it.
- ▶ Flame-shaped subendocardial (Sheehan's) haemorrhages relate to shock, not to coronary occlusion.
- ▶ Expert opinion on cause of death is given under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ A dying patient's statement on the cause of death is admissible as a **dying declaration** under **Section 32 IEA 1872 (now Section 26 BSA 2023)**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Discuss the pathognomonic and morphological changes of myocardial infarction*Asked in: Paper I Apr 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine***Definition**

- ▶ **Myocardial infarction (MI):** death (necrosis) of a region of heart muscle from sudden, severe, prolonged ischaemia.
- ▶ **Ischaemia** means inadequate oxygen-carrying blood reaching the tissue.

- ▶ Almost always follows **coronary atherosclerosis** complicated by **thrombosis** of a coronary artery.
- ▶ Ischaemic heart disease is the single commonest cause of sudden natural death seen at autopsy.
- ▶ The forensic task is to recognise the **gross and microscopic changes** of an infarct and use them to **age it**.
- ▶ Ageing an infarct means estimating how long the person survived after the event.
- ▶ The earliest, most lethal infarcts often show **no visible change at all** — the classic trap behind an obscure autopsy.

Aetiology and pathogenesis

- ▶ **Underlying lesion:** coronary atherosclerosis with thrombosis is the dominant cause.
- ▶ Coronary artery disease alone causes roughly **45–50%** of all sudden natural cardiovascular deaths.
- ▶ **Critical stenosis:** infarction usually needs the artery lumen reduced to **about 20% or less** of normal.
- ▶ **≥75% stenosis** without thrombosis or a frank infarct can itself cause sudden death (acute coronary insufficiency).
- ▶ **Site of occlusion:** usually **less than 5 mm long**, within **3 cm of the vessel origin**.
- ▶ **Commonest site of occlusion:** first part of the **left anterior descending (LAD)** artery, within 2 cm of its origin.
- ▶ **Commonest site of infarct:** left ventricle, anterior wall.
- ▶ Posterior infarcts follow blockage of the right coronary artery or the circumflex branch.
- ▶ **Papillary muscles are usually involved.**
- ▶ **Right ventricle and atria are involved in less than 10%** of cases.
- ▶ **Thrombus:** a fresh thrombus is dark-brown and adherent to the vessel wall.
- ▶ An old thrombus is a homogeneous yellowish-grey, firm plug blocking the vessel.

Morphological types of infarction

- ▶ **Laminar (subendocardial) infarct:**
 - Caused by **generalised stenosis** of the major coronary branches.
 - Involves the subendocardial region, sometimes extending through half or more of the wall thickness.
 - Produces **less well-defined gross changes** than a transmural infarct.
- ▶ **Regional / focal (transmural) infarct** — the commoner type:
 - Caused by **localised occlusion or severe stenosis** of one coronary artery.
 - Sharply demarcated zone of necrosis.
 - A **thin rim of subendocardial muscle is preserved**, perfused directly by blood in the ventricular chamber.

Ageing the infarct — the pathognomonic sequence

No naked-eye change is visible for the **first 12–18 hours**; the infarct is reliably identifiable to the naked eye only when **more than about 12 hours old**. After that the morphology evolves in a predictable sequence:

Age	Gross (naked-eye) changes	Microscopic changes
0–6 h	None; TTC test negative	None; stretching and waviness of fibres
4–12 h	Slight pallor / mottling with dark discoloration	Coagulative necrosis and neutrophils begin; nuclear pyknosis ; early contraction-band necrosis
12–24 h	Pallor/mottling; mild oedema, bulging cut surface	Necrosis continues; neutrophil infiltrate builds
1–3 days	" Tigroid " red-and-pale banded appearance; progressive softening	Complete necrosis, loss of nuclei; neutrophils maximal
4–7 days	Soft yellow-tan core with hyperaemic border	Macrophages appear ; phagocytosis of dead fibres; granulation tissue at the edge
~10 days	Maximally yellow, soft, shrunken — peak rupture risk	Prominent peripheral granulation tissue; pigmented macrophages, lymphocytes
4–6 weeks	Thin grey-white, hard, shrunken scar	Rising collagen, falling vascularity
>1 month–3 months	Mature firm grey-white scar with retraction	Dense collagen; mature scar

- ▶ The red streaking of the tigroid pattern comes from breakdown of fibres plus dilated vessels and haemorrhage between fibres.
- ▶ Softening is greatest around the **10th day** — this is the period of highest **rupture risk**.

Special diagnostic tests for the early ("pathognomonic") infarct

- ▶ **Triphenyl tetrazolium chloride (TTC) test**: the classic aid for a very early infarct that is otherwise invisible.
- ▶ A heart slice is dipped in TTC.
- ▶ **Healthy myocardium stains red-brown** because its lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) is preserved.
- ▶ The infarcted area stays **pale and unstained** because its dehydrogenase is depleted.
- ▶ **Enzyme histochemistry** is regarded as the **most reliable method to detect an early MI**, before any structural change appears.
- ▶ **Contraction-band necrosis** — hypercontracted, hypereosinophilic transverse bands — is a hallmark of **reperfusion** and of catecholamine effect.
- ▶ It is an early, near-pathognomonic microscopic marker.

- ▶ **Sheehan's subendocardial haemorrhages** are flame-shaped confluent haemorrhages, chiefly of the left ventricle and septum.
- ▶ They must be distinguished from a true infarct.
- ▶ They occur with shock, heavy-metal (especially arsenic) poisoning, obstetric haemorrhage, and raised intracranial pressure.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Sketch 1 — cross-section of the left ventricle with a transmural anterior-wall infarct.**
Label: left ventricle, interventricular septum, right ventricle, infarcted (yellow) zone, hyperaemic red border, preserved subendocardial rim, tigroid red-and-pale banding, papillary muscle (involved).
- ▶ **Sketch 2 — coronary tree showing site of occlusion.** Label: aorta, left main coronary artery, left anterior descending (commonest site, within 2 cm of origin), circumflex branch, right coronary artery, posterior descending artery, thrombus/plaque at the point of occlusion.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Coronary atherosclerotic disease is the leading cause of sudden natural death.
- ▶ Recognising it at autopsy excludes unnatural causes (trauma, poisoning) that may have been alleged.
- ▶ Ageing the infarct estimates **how long the deceased survived** after the cardiac event.
- ▶ This can decide questions of manner of death, an alleged assault, or fitness to travel or work.
- ▶ Because no gross change appears for 12–18 h, a fatal early infarct is a classic **obscure autopsy**.
- ▶ The doctor should admit inability to give a cause on the spot rather than offer a premature opinion.
- ▶ Heart tissue should be retained for **histology, TTC, and enzyme histochemistry**.
- ▶ Sudden/unexpected deaths need a **police inquest under Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Where required, a **magistrate's inquest under Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)** follows.
- ▶ The post-mortem report and any opinion on age of infarct are **expert evidence under Section 45 Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ **Rupture of a fresh infarct** (greatest risk around the 10th day) can cause haemopericardium and tamponade — a recognised mode of sudden death.
- ▶ Coronary arteries should be examined **before** the rest of the heart.
- ▶ Use **serial transverse cross-sections at 2–3 mm intervals**, closer together near the vessel origin.
- ▶ Note percentage luminal stenosis, plaque rupture, plaque haemorrhage, calcification, and thrombus.
- ▶ The heart is weighed only **after** clot removal.
- ▶ A heart weighing over **~420 g** carries an independent risk of sudden death.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ No naked-eye change for 12–18 h; infarct grossly identifiable only when >12 h old — the single most testable fact.
- ▶ Microscopy sequence: wavy fibres → coagulative necrosis with neutrophils → macrophages → granulation tissue → collagenous scar.
- ▶ Distinguish a true infarct from post-mortem hypostasis of the heart and from Sheehan's subendocardial haemorrhages.



Discuss the pharmacology of prostaglandins and its forensic applications

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ Prostaglandins are eicosanoids — twenty-carbon lipid mediators.
- ▶ They are synthesised locally from the membrane fatty acid arachidonic acid via the cyclo-oxygenase (COX) pathway, acting on demand as short-range "local hormones" (autacoids).
- ▶ PGE2 (dinoprostone), PGF2-alpha (dinoprost), carboprost (a 15-methyl PGF2-alpha analogue) and misoprostol (an oral PGE1 analogue) are uterine ecbolics.
- ▶ These drugs are used for lawful Medical Termination of Pregnancy (MTP).
- ▶ The same drugs are misused to procure criminal abortion.

Biosynthesis: the prostaglandin pathway

- ▶ Precursor: the enzyme phospholipase A2 releases arachidonic acid from membrane phospholipids.
- ▶ Cyclo-oxygenase (COX) converts arachidonic acid into the unstable intermediates PGG2 and PGH2.
- ▶ Tissue-specific synthases then convert these into PGE2, PGF2-alpha, PGD2, prostacyclin (PGI2) and thromboxane A2.
- ▶ COX-1 is constitutive — always active for "house-keeping" functions like gastric protection, renal blood flow and platelet thromboxane.
- ▶ COX-2 is mostly inducible — it switches on at sites of inflammation and is the main source of pain, fever and inflammatory prostaglandins.
- ▶ NSAIDs are non-selective COX inhibitors, so they reduce prostaglandin synthesis.
- ▶ Most NSAIDs inhibit COX reversibly; salicylates (aspirin) inhibit it irreversibly.

Classification relevant to forensic practice

Drug	Type	Key forensic-relevant action
PGE2 — dinoprostone (<i>Prostin E2</i>)	Natural PGE2	Cervical ripening; induces labour and abortion

Drug	Type	Key forensic-relevant action
PGF2-alpha — dinoprost (<i>Prostin F2-alpha</i>)	Natural PGF2-alpha	Potent ecbolic; intra-amniotic second-trimester abortion
Carboprost (<i>Hemabate</i> / <i>Prostodin</i>)	Synthetic 15-methyl PGF2-alpha	Ecibolic for post-partum haemorrhage unresponsive to oxytocin/ergometrine
Misoprostol	Synthetic oral PGE1 analogue	Medical abortion (with mifepristone); gastroprotection
Epoprostenol	Prostacyclin (PGI2)	Vasodilator; inhibits platelet aggregation
Thromboxane A2	Platelet COX product	Vasoconstriction; platelet aggregation

- ▶ **Trade-name trap:** *Prostin F2-alpha* is **dinoprost**, not carboprost (a different, longer-acting drug).
- ▶ For the abortion question, the key group is the **uterotonic prostaglandins** — PGE2, PGF2-alpha and, above all, the orally active **misoprostol** used in the modern medical-abortion regimen.

Mechanism and pharmacological actions

- ▶ Prostaglandins act on specific **G-protein-coupled receptors** — EP receptors for PGE, the FP receptor for PGF2-alpha.
- ▶ On the uterus, FP/EP3 signalling raises intracellular calcium and produces strong, sustained **myometrial contraction**.
- ▶ **Uterine effect (the forensically critical action):**
 - They increase the **frequency, force and tone** of uterine contractions.
 - Unlike ergometrine and oxytocin, they act on the **gravid uterus at all stages of pregnancy**, including early pregnancy.
 - They also cause **cervical softening and ripening**.
 - This combination makes them effective abortifacients where ergot alone often fails in the earlier months.
- ▶ **Other systemic actions:** GI stimulation (nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea) and fever.
- ▶ PGF2-alpha causes bronchoconstriction; PGE2 causes bronchodilatation.
- ▶ **Routes used:** intravenous, oral, vaginal/per-cervical gel, and **intra-amniotic injection** — directly into the amniotic fluid.
- ▶ **Intra-amniotic 25 mg PGF2-alpha** is used for second-trimester abortion.

Therapeutic uses

- ▶ **Medical abortion (early gestation): mifepristone followed by misoprostol.**
 - Mifepristone blocks progesterone and sensitises the uterus; misoprostol then triggers expulsive contractions.
- ▶ **Cervical ripening and induction of labour at term:** PGE2 gel.
- ▶ **Post-partum haemorrhage refractory to ergometrine/oxytocin:** **carboprost**.

- ▶ **Non-obstetric use to remember:** alprostadil (PGE1) given by intracavernosal injection for erectile dysfunction is a recognised iatrogenic cause of **priapism**.

Adverse effects and criminal misuse

- ▶ **Maternal adverse effects:**
 - Nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea.
 - Fever, flushing, hypotension.
 - Bronchospasm in asthmatics.
- ▶ **Uterine hyperstimulation** (excessively strong or frequent contractions) can cause **uterine rupture**, especially in a scarred or grand-multiparous uterus.
- ▶ **Criminal abortion:** misoprostol is cheap, orally active and easy to obtain, so unsupervised self-administration is a common modern method of clandestine abortion.
- ▶ Typical sequelae are **incomplete abortion, sepsis and haemorrhage**, and rarely uterine rupture.
- ▶ The woman often presents to a doctor as a "spontaneous" or "threatened" abortion, concealing the criminal act.
- ▶ **Ectopic pregnancy must always be excluded (ultrasound)** before giving any abortifacient — a missed ectopic can rupture and kill.

Forensic applications

- ▶ The same prostaglandins are **lawful** when used as MTP by a registered medical practitioner in an approved place.
- ▶ They constitute **criminal abortion** when used outside the **MTP Act 1971 (amended 2021)**.
- ▶ **No simple test survives putrefaction**, so detection rests on circumstance and context.
- ▶ Look for misoprostol tablets, blister packs, "MTP-kit" packaging or prescriptions at the scene, and a history of clandestine drug ingestion.
- ▶ The clinical picture — retained products of conception, sepsis — supports induced abortion.
- ▶ If drug abortion is suspected, examine the **gastrointestinal tract** for irritant poisoning and preserve the whole tract, its contents and other organs for analysis.
- ▶ Preserve and examine the **expelled placental and foetal material** — very useful for identifying the accused by **DNA profiling**.
- ▶ **Four points that must be proved to convict the abortionist:**
 - That the woman was pregnant.
 - That the accused was responsible for the act that interrupted the pregnancy.
 - That the accused acted for the purpose of producing an illegal abortion.
 - That death resulted from the attempt to interrupt the pregnancy.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Voluntarily causing miscarriage** — **Section 88 BNS 2023 (Section 312 IPC 1860):** up to 3 years, or fine, or both; up to 7 years if the woman is "quick with child."
- ▶ **Miscarriage without the woman's consent** — **Section 89 BNS 2023 (Section 313 IPC 1860):** life imprisonment or up to 10 years, plus fine.

- ▶ **Death of the woman** from an act to procure miscarriage — **Section 90 BNS 2023 (Section 314 IPC 1860)**: up to 10 years plus fine (life imprisonment if done without consent).
- ▶ Act done to **prevent a live birth or cause death after birth** — **Section 91 BNS 2023 (Section 315 IPC 1860)**: up to 10 years, or fine, or both.
- ▶ **Causing death of a quick unborn child** — **Section 92 BNS 2023 (Section 316 IPC 1860)**: amounts to culpable homicide, up to 10 years plus fine.
- ▶ **Negligent death** — **Section 106(1) BNS 2023 (Section 304-A IPC 1860)**: general term now up to **5 years plus fine**; only **2 years plus fine** for a **registered medical practitioner performing a medical procedure** — directly relevant when a doctor gives an unsafe abortifacient and death results.
- ▶ A lawful MTP under the **MTP Act 1971 (amended 2021)** is exempt from the BNS abortion sections.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ Prostaglandins are **eicosanoids** made from **arachidonic acid** via **COX-1/COX-2**; NSAIDs inhibit COX, aspirin irreversibly.
- ▶ Ecbolics: **PGE2 = dinoprostone**, **PGF2-alpha = dinoprost**, **carboprost = 15-methyl PGF2-alpha**, **misoprostol = oral PGE1**. Do not equate carboprost with *Prostin F2-alpha*.
- ▶ **Intra-amniotic 25 mg PGF2-alpha** for second-trimester abortion; prostaglandins act on the gravid uterus at all stages and ripen the cervix.
- ▶ **Medical abortion (early gestation)** = mifepristone + misoprostol; always exclude ectopic pregnancy first.
- ▶ **Misoprostol misuse** is a common modern method of criminal abortion.
- ▶ Abortion law recap: **§88 BNS 3/7 yr**, **§89 BNS 10 yr/life**, **§90–92 BNS death of woman/child** (see Medico-legal significance above).
- ▶ **§106(1) BNS**: 5 years generally; 2 years only for a registered medical practitioner performing a medical procedure.
- ▶ Preserve expelled foetal/placental tissue for **DNA profiling**.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Prostaglandin biosynthetic pathway (flow diagram):** membrane phospholipids → (phospholipase A2) → arachidonic acid → (COX-1/COX-2) → cyclic endoperoxides (PGG2, PGH2) → prostaglandins (PGE2, PGF2-alpha, PGD2), prostacyclin (PGI2), thromboxane A2.
- ▶ A side branch via lipoxygenase gives leukotrienes.
- ▶ Mark the **NSAID block** at COX and the **steroid block** at phospholipase A2.
- ▶ **Action on the gravid uterus (sketch):** uterus with arrows for increased contraction frequency, force and tone, plus cervical softening/ripening.
- ▶ Label the arrows **PGE2 (dinoprostone)**, **PGF2-alpha (dinoprost)**, **carboprost**, **misoprostol**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Discuss types of embolism*Asked in: Paper I Oct 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine***Definition**

- ▶ An **embolus** is a detached mass in the blood — solid, liquid, or gas — carried to block a vessel at a distant site. That process is **embolism**.
- ▶ About **95% of all emboli are thrombo-emboli** — fragments of a pre-existing clot.
- ▶ Embolism is a **mechanism (mode) of death**, not the underlying cause — it links an injury to a fatal outcome.
- ▶ **Air embolism** usually kills **immediately** after the wound; **thrombo-embolism** and **fat embolism** kill **later**, days after.
- ▶ Dating the embolic event correctly establishes the **chain of causation** between the assault and the death.

Classification of emboli

- ▶ Emboli are classified two ways: by **source of origin** and by **composition**.

A. By source of origin

- ▶ **Arterial thrombi** form at vessel branch-points, take years to build up, and are **rarely traumatic**.
 - Sources: the left atrium in atrial fibrillation, a mural thrombus after myocardial infarction, an aortic aneurysm, or endocarditis vegetations.
 - Exception: a carotid stab/bullet wound can trigger a thrombus that embolises the brain.
- ▶ **Venous thrombi** form after immobilisation of any cause and give the common **pulmonary thrombo-embolism**.

B. By composition

Type	Embolitic material	Timing of death
Thrombo-embolism	Detached thrombus (95%)	Remote, ~10–20 days
Fat embolism	Liquid fat globules	Remote, 12–72 h lucid interval
Air (gas) embolism	Air / gas bubbles	Immediate, minutes
Tissue embolism	Marrow, brain, liver, skin, placenta	Variable
Amniotic fluid embolism	Fluid + fetal skin cells	Immediate / rapid
Foreign-body embolism	Bullet, needle, catheter	Variable

Thrombo-embolism (pulmonary thrombo-embolism)

- ▶ **Definition:** a thrombus breaks loose and lodges in another vessel; this is the type most often seen at autopsy.
- ▶ **Origin:** most often the **deep femoral, popliteal and posterior tibial veins**.
- ▶ **Cause:** traumatic (long-bone fracture) or non-traumatic — 10–20% of fatal cases have no trauma at all.
- ▶ **Risk factors:** poor cardiac output in the elderly, immobility/bed rest (venous stasis), and local vein injury.
 - **Economy-class syndrome:** DVT after long-haul flights, from immobility and dehydration; same on long bus/rail trips.
- ▶ **Timing:** forms **10–20 days after injury**; sudden death often follows the patient's first attempt to walk.
- ▶ **Cause of death:** acute right heart failure (*cor pulmonale*), acute asphyxia, or vagal inhibition.
- ▶ **Autopsy:** the pulmonary artery looks noticeably **full** before it is even opened.
 - A genuine ante-mortem embolus is **cylindrical, branched and curled**, matching the vein where it formed — not the vessel it lodged in.
 - A post-mortem clot, by contrast, takes the shape of the vessel holding it.
 - **Infarction** occurs only when a smaller (segmental) artery is blocked, not the main trunk.

Fat embolism

- ▶ **Definition:** a blood vessel blocked by an embolus made of fat, typically after fracture of a large bone.
- ▶ **History:** first described by **Zenker (1861)**; **Fat Embolism Syndrome (FES)** by **Von Bergmann (1873)**.
- ▶ **Causes:** long-bone fracture, crush injury to fat tissue, injected oil (criminal abortion), severe burns, or childbirth; rarely, non-traumatic disease.
- ▶ **Source of fat:** chiefly **bone marrow**; scanty in children, so fat embolism is **rare in children**.
- ▶ **Fatal amount:** about **100 mL** of fat; droplets are typically **20–40 µm**.
- ▶ **Mechanical theory:** injury releases fat into torn veins; 20–40 µm droplets block pulmonary vessels, smaller ones enter systemic circulation.

- Large droplets still reach the brain via **arteriovenous shunts** or a **patent foramen ovale**.
- ▶ **Biochemical theory:** stress hormones mobilise blood chylomicrons, which **C-reactive protein** coalesces into larger droplets — explaining non-traumatic fat embolism.
- ▶ **FES:** occurs in only **1–2%** of cases, typically **12–72 hours after fracture** — a "lucid interval."
 - **Pulmonary:** breathlessness. **Neurological:** agitation, delirium, coma.
 - **Dermatological:** a late **petechial rash** on chest/neck/axilla/eyes/mouth — fleeting, pathognomonic.
 - **Haematological:** anaemia, low platelets; largely **self-limiting**, mortality **10–20%**.
- ▶ **Post-mortem diagnosis:** lungs congested and oedematous.
 - **Spot test:** a lung slice with 20% KOH shows fat as **refractile plugs** once red cells dissolve.
 - **Frozen sections** with **Sudan III (orange)** or **osmic acid (black)** confirm fat.
 - Brain shows petechial haemorrhages in white matter — a "**flea-bitten**" appearance.

Air (gas) embolism

- ▶ **Definition:** air/gas bubbles enter the vessels and interrupt circulation like an air-lock — an **immediate cause of death**, classically from a neck wound.
- ▶ **Venous (pulmonary)** type is far more common; **arterial** type is rarer, with air reaching the left heart to embolise brain and coronary arteries.
- ▶ **Pre-conditions:** a direct opening between an air source and a vessel, plus a pressure gradient favouring air entry.
- ▶ **Venous causes:**
 - Neck wounds (jugular/subclavian vein).
 - Criminal abortion (air/soap solution into the uterus).
 - Central-line insertion, or neurosurgery in the sitting position.
- ▶ **Arterial causes:**
 - Penetrating chest wounds, or cardiac/bypass surgery.
 - Paradoxical embolism through a patent foramen ovale.
- ▶ **Fatal dose:** venous about **100 mL** (~3–5 mL/kg); arterial only **2–3 mL**, since it goes straight to the coronary/cerebral arteries.
- ▶ **Clinical signs:** a churning "**mill-wheel murmur**", raised venous pressure and falling BP (venous); marbled skin, retinal bubbles (arterial).
- ▶ **Timing:** death usually occurs within a **few minutes**, rarely beyond an hour.

Tissue, amniotic-fluid and foreign-body emboli

- ▶ **Tissue embolism:**
 - Bone marrow, after a fracture.
 - Brain (head trauma/gunshot) or liver (hepatic trauma).
 - Skin (venepuncture site) or placental tissue.
- ▶ **Amniotic fluid embolism:** amniotic fluid and fetal skin cells enter the maternal circulation during labour, abruption, or criminal abortion.

- It causes rapid collapse and **disseminated intravascular coagulation** with a low fibrinogen level.
- At autopsy this appears as fatal post-partum/post-abortion haemorrhage with fluid (unclotted) blood.
- ▶ **Foreign-body / bullet embolism:** an embolised **bullet** is the most commonly reported foreign-body embolus; others include bone chips, needles, and catheter fragments.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Embolism is a **mode of death**, not the underlying cause — the medical witness must trace it back to the original injury.
- ▶ **Air embolism** is an immediate cause of death from a wound; **thrombo-embolism and fat embolism** are remote (delayed) causes.
- ▶ The assailant remains responsible for a delayed embolic death once causation to the original trauma is proven — the offence (murder, culpable homicide, or hurt) then turns on the injury and intention, under the **Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita (BNS) 2023**.
- ▶ **Autopsy for suspected air embolism** must be planned **before** opening the body: chest opened first, pericardial sac filled with water, right ventricle punctured **under water** to watch for escaping bubbles.
- ▶ **Artefacts to exclude:** autopsy-induced air and putrefaction gas can mimic air embolism; putrefactive liquefied fat can mimic fat embolism. Diagnosis needs bubbles/fat genuinely inside vessels of a **fresh** body.
- ▶ **Fat embolism** is confirmed the same way — pulmonary artery dissected under water plus frozen-section fat stains.
- ▶ **Criminal abortion:** air/soap-solution and amniotic-fluid embolism are recognised causes of death in unlawful termination of pregnancy.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Pulmonary thrombo-embolus — origin and impaction.** Label: deep leg veins (site of clot), predisposing factors (injury, stasis, pressure), embolus travelling up the vena cava into the right atrium/ventricle, and the fatal embolus impacted in the pulmonary artery.
- ▶ **Fat embolism in the brain.** Label: cerebral white matter, fat droplets blocking capillaries, petechial ("flea-bitten") haemorrhages, and spared grey matter.



Dissection of neck structures

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2019 · Paper II Oct 2016 (2×) — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Neck dissection** is the systematic, layer-by-layer autopsy examination of the soft tissues and skeleton of the neck.

- ▶ Done chiefly in deaths from pressure on the neck (throttling, ligature strangulation, hanging) and in suspected neck trauma.
- ▶ Cardinal rule: examine the neck **in situ** (before removal) and in a **bloodless field**, dissecting plane by plane.
- ▶ This shows genuine antemortem bruises and fractures clearly, while avoiding **postmortem dissection artefacts** — false, injury-like changes created by the dissection itself.
- ▶ A careless *en masse* (block) removal of neck organs, as in a routine autopsy, can itself create such artefacts.

Indications for separate neck dissection

- ▶ **Asphyxial deaths:** throttling, ligature strangulation, hanging — neck injury is the crux of the diagnosis.
- ▶ **Suspected neck trauma** of any kind — blows to the front of the neck, a "karate"/commando blow, or a run-over.
- ▶ **Road-traffic fatality with suspected suffocation:** neck trauma must be excluded before suffocation can be diagnosed.
 - Posterior neck dissection is required when no lethal head or cardiovascular injury is found.
 - Or when there is unexplained brain-stem laceration or prevertebral haemorrhage.
- ▶ **Craniocervical derangement:** detects lethal atlanto-occipital or atlanto-axial injury with no visible dislocation — posterior dissection beats plain inspection here.
- ▶ **Infant deaths occurring outside hospital:** posterior neck dissection is recommended in all such cases.

Creating the bloodless field

- ▶ The neck is examined **last** — after the skull, chest and abdomen — so cervical vessels are drained and venous congestion does not create spurious haemorrhage.
- ▶ The **skull is opened first** and the brain removed, so blood drains from the head through the neck vessels.
- ▶ Thoracic and abdominal organs are removed next, and the **heart is opened before the neck is touched** so the great neck veins are empty.
- ▶ The head is then moved slowly up and down to let the neck drain.
- ▶ This reversed sequence is deliberate: it gives a bloodless field ideal for seeing antemortem neck injuries.

The skin incision

- ▶ **Midline incision:** chin to manubrium sterni (top of the breastbone).
- ▶ **V-shaped incision:** from the mastoid process on each side, meeting at the manubrium sterni.
- ▶ **Y-shaped incision:** for neck trauma needing layer dissection — two limbs from the mastoid processes meet at the xiphisternum, then run down the midline.
- ▶ **Modified Y-incision (females):** starts below the anterior axillary folds so the scar is not visible on the exposed face and neck.

- ▶ **Air-embolism caution:** expose the neck veins carefully but never **open them before the heart is examined**, or sucked-in air falsely suggests air embolism.

Layer-by-layer anterior dissection

- ▶ Each layer is dissected in order and photographed in situ when strangulation is suspected.
- ▶ **Skin and subcutaneous tissue:** contusions of the neck are best shown at this layer.
- ▶ **Platysma and superficial muscles.**
- ▶ **Strap muscles and sternocleidomastoid:** slice and inspect for intramuscular haemorrhage — bruising can be slight, so the muscle must be incised.
- ▶ **Salivary glands:** submandibular and parotid glands checked for haemorrhage.
- ▶ **Carotid sheath / great vessels:** expose the bifurcation of the common carotid and look for deep haemorrhage nearby.
 - Intimal tears near the carotid sinus occur in **10–15%** of cases.
 - Use blunt dissection — a **toothed forceps can itself tear the intima** and mimic a strangulation injury.
- ▶ **Tongue:** cut from tip to base to detect deep haemorrhage, usually at the sides.
- ▶ **Pharynx, epiglottis, tonsils, base of tongue:** checked for mucosal haemorrhage.
- ▶ **Thyroid gland:** removed and sectioned through the isthmus, exposing the thyroid cartilage behind it.

Laryngeal skeleton — hyoid, thyroid cartilage, cricoid

- ▶ **Hyoid bone:** each greater horn is bent inward and outward to detect a fracture, then the bone is removed and the fracture confirmed.
 - Fractures occur in **30–50%** of throttling cases.
 - Usually in those over 40–60 years with ossified bone; very rare in young children.
- ▶ **Larynx and trachea:** stripped of attached muscles and ligaments to demonstrate any fracture.
- ▶ **Thyroid cartilage:** the superior cornu is the most fragile part and fractures most often.
- ▶ **Cricoid cartilage:** fractures almost exclusively in throttling, from anteroposterior compression against the spine.
- ▶ **In-situ assessment is decisive:** an *inward* hyoid fracture points to throttling, an *outward* one to hanging/ligature — judged while the bone is still in the neck.
- ▶ **Confirmatory tests:**
 - Apply **1% toluidine blue** for 15 seconds, wash, view under a stereomicroscope — fracture sites stain bluish.
 - Take a **lateral-oblique neck X-ray** for hyoid and cricoid fractures.
 - Histology showing red-cell extravasation at the site supports an antemortem origin.

Posterior approach and the cervical spine

- ▶ After the neck organs are removed, the **anterior longitudinal ligament** of the vertebral column is exposed and checked — cervical spine/cord injuries are otherwise easily missed.

- ▶ **Posterior neck dissection:** body prone with blocks under the shoulders; posterior neck and prevertebral tissue dissected layer by layer.
- ▶ **Spinal cord removal (posterior approach):** the laminae of C1–C7 are removed to expose the cord within its dura, keeping the cervical spine intact — useful for in-situ infant photographs.

Postmortem artefacts — do not over-call injury

- ▶ **Spurious deep neck haemorrhage:** en masse traction on floor-of-mouth structures forces blood into deep tissue, worsened by early autopsy or a dependent, congested head.
- ▶ **Pharyngo-laryngeal venous plexus rupture:** spurious blood behind the pharynx/larynx and in front of the cervical spine; can occur in natural death and mimic throttling.
- ▶ **Carotid "tear" from a toothed forceps:** mimics a strangulation injury.
- ▶ **Artefactual air embolism:** from opening neck veins before the heart is inspected.
- ▶ **Hyoid/thyroid fracture from clumsy traction:** especially in the old, characteristically **without** surrounding haemorrhage.
 - Non-union of the greater cornu can be wrongly read as an antemortem fracture.
- ▶ **Anatomical mimics:** triticeous cartilages and normal cartilage junctions can be mistaken for fractures.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Skin incision:** V- or Y-shaped, labelled *mastoid process (right and left), chin, converging limbs, manubrium sterni, midline continuation downward*.
- ▶ **Front-of-neck structures:** labelled *hyoid bone (body, greater and lesser cornu), thyrohyoid ligament with triticeous cartilage, thyroid cartilage (lamina, superior and inferior cornu, laryngeal prominence), cricoid cartilage, thyroid gland with isthmus, trachea, common carotid artery with bifurcation/carotid sinus, strap muscles, sternocleidomastoid*.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Antemortem bruising of deep neck tissue/muscle and fractures of the hyoid/thyroid/cricoid are the objective backbone of a diagnosis of throttling or strangulation.
- ▶ Bruising can be present internally even when the skin shows no mark.
- ▶ Distinguishing an **inward** from an **outward** hyoid fracture (in situ) helps separate **throttling (homicidal)** from **hanging**.
- ▶ A **cricoid fracture is almost exclusively from throttling**; extensive neck injury in a suspended body suggests throttling followed by suspension.
- ▶ Rigorous artefact-avoidance protects the report — an over-called artefactual haemorrhage or forceps-induced intimal tear can wrongly turn a natural or accidental death into a homicide.
- ▶ The medico-legal autopsy itself follows a police requisition for inquest into an unnatural/suspicious death under **Section 174/176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194/196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Where homicide is alleged, the dissection findings support a charge of murder under **Section 302 IPC (now Section 103 BNS 2023)**.

- ▶ The autopsy surgeon's findings are tendered as **expert evidence under Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.



Draw and explain about Circle of Willis

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ The **Circle of Willis** (*circulus arteriosus cerebri*) is named after the English anatomist Thomas Willis (1664).
- ▶ It is a roughly **heptagonal** ring of arteries in the **subarachnoid space** at the base of the brain, around the optic chiasma, infundibulum (pituitary stalk), hypothalamus and midbrain.
- ▶ It is an **anastomotic ring** joining the paired **internal carotid arteries** (anterior circulation) with the **basilar artery**, formed by the two **vertebral arteries** (posterior circulation).
- ▶ It is a **collateral safety anastomosis**: slow occlusion of one vessel may stay silent as flow redistributes around the ring, but sudden occlusion outstrips this reserve and causes infarction.
- ▶ A "complete" classic ring is seen in only a minority of people — variants (hypoplastic or absent vessels, fenestrations, accessory vessels) are common, and decide whether collateral flow actually protects the brain in life.
- ▶ Forensic importance: it is the commonest site of a **berry (saccular) aneurysm**, whose rupture is the leading cause of **non-traumatic subarachnoid haemorrhage (SAH)** — a recurring problem of separating natural death from death precipitated by trauma.

Constituent arteries

- ▶ Ten named arteries form the ring — three pairs plus the unpaired anterior communicating artery, with the basilar artery at the back.
- ▶ **Anteriorly**: the two **anterior cerebral arteries** (branches of the internal carotids) are joined by the **anterior communicating artery**.
- ▶ **Laterally**: each **internal carotid artery** forms the side of the ring after giving off the anterior and middle cerebral arteries.
- ▶ **Note**: the **middle cerebral artery** is a continuation of the internal carotid, not part of the ring — but its first branch point is a major aneurysm site.
- ▶ **Posterolaterally**: each **posterior communicating artery** links the internal carotid to the **posterior cerebral artery** — the junction of the two circulations.
- ▶ **Posteriorly**: the **basilar artery** (union of the two vertebral arteries) splits into the two **posterior cerebral arteries**, closing the ring.
- ▶ Small central (perforating) branches supply the basal ganglia, internal capsule, thalamus, hypothalamus and midbrain.
- ▶ The circle is the principal site of congenital saccular aneurysms — examined closely at autopsy in sudden collapse, unexplained SAH, or alleged assault.

Berry (saccular) aneurysms — the forensic core

- ▶ **Berry aneurysms** are small, thin-walled out-pouchings (a few mm to a few cm) at **bifurcations** of the vessels forming the circle.
- ▶ They are developmental — a congenital weakness in the vessel wall at branch points — and enlarge over years under arterial pressure.
- ▶ About **90%** occur at the bifurcation of the **middle cerebral, anterior cerebral, and posterior communicating arteries**.
- ▶ Least common is the **vertebral artery**.
- ▶ Intracranial aneurysms cause **more than 50%** of all spontaneous (non-traumatic) subarachnoid haemorrhage.

Relative incidence of berry aneurysm by site:

Artery involved	Incidence
Anterior communicating artery	30%
Middle cerebral artery	20%
Internal carotid bifurcation	8%
Posterior communicating artery	8%
Posterior inferior cerebellar artery	3%

- ▶ Best seen in the **unfixed (fresh) brain** — fixation collapses them, so examine before formalin fixation.
- ▶ **To demonstrate rupture:** pour a gentle stream of water over the brain base while doing blunt dissection — the wall "**fans out**" under the stream, like a burst balloon.

Aneurysmal rupture and hypertensive haemorrhage

- ▶ Rupture of a circle-of-Willis berry aneurysm produces a **spontaneous subarachnoid haemorrhage**: blood spreads along the cerebral fissures into the major cisterns and may reach the fourth ventricle.
- ▶ The classic presentation is a sudden, severe "**thunderclap headache**", neck stiffness and vomiting, which may resolve or progress to collapse and death.
- ▶ Rupture can be **precipitated by a sudden rise in blood pressure** — emotional stress, an assault or quarrel, sudden exertion, or sexual intercourse. This trigger is the key forensic trap (see below).
- ▶ A separate hypertensive entity, the *Charcot–Bouchard aneurysm*, is a micro-aneurysm at the bifurcations of small vessels within the brain tissue itself, seen in chronic hypertensives.
- ▶ Its rupture causes spontaneous **hypertensive intracerebral haemorrhage**, mainly in the **putamen (55%)**, lobar white matter (15%), thalamus (10%), pons (10%), and cerebellar cortex (10%) — a *deep, parenchymal* bleed, distinct from the *basal, subarachnoid* bleed of a ruptured berry aneurysm.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — Circle of Willis (basal view):** a heptagonal ring, labelled with the anterior communicating, anterior cerebral, internal carotid, middle cerebral, posterior communicating and posterior cerebral arteries (right and left), the basilar artery, and the vertebral arteries.
- ▶ Mark the encircled centre too — optic chiasma, infundibulum, mamillary bodies, pons.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — Common aneurysm sites:** mark the anterior communicating artery (~30%), middle cerebral bifurcation (~20%), internal carotid bifurcation (~8%), posterior communicating-carotid junction (~8%), and posterior inferior cerebellar artery (~3%); add an arrow from rupture to basal subarachnoid haemorrhage.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Trauma versus natural disease:** is a ruptured berry aneurysm a *natural* event wrongly blamed on trauma, or one genuinely *precipitated* by it?
- ▶ **Scenario 1:** an already-leaking aneurysm causes a fall or conflict — the haemorrhage is the *cause*, not the result, of the incident.
- ▶ **Scenario 2:** the rupture is genuinely triggered by the blood-pressure surge of an assault or fall — the assailant may then bear legal responsibility.
- ▶ The pathologist must decide whether the bleed was "**probably due to or consequent upon** the fall and head injury", or spontaneous.
- ▶ **Apoplexy** (hypertension, atherosclerosis, aneurysm): past middle age, sudden onset, ganglionic region, deep unconsciousness, no contre-coup injury.
- ▶ **Post-traumatic haemorrhage:** younger, a **lucid interval** after head motion, temporo-occipital/frontal white matter, often contre-coup, consciousness preserved.
- ▶ **At autopsy:** subarachnoid blood cannot be washed off; subdural blood washes away under running water — the key test for traumatic versus spontaneous origin.
- ▶ Traumatic basal subarachnoid haemorrhage follows laceration of the carotid, vertebral, or basal arteries, and "**can be immediately fatal if the haemorrhage is more than 30 mL**".
- ▶ **Technique:** clamp the internal carotid and basilar arteries before opening the circle, to check for air/gas emboli and inspect for aneurysm or laceration; a laceration made during dissection is itself an **artefact** to guard against.
- ▶ **Statutes:** an unexplained collapse from a suspected ruptured aneurysm — especially with alleged assault — is an unnatural death needing inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)** or **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ If precipitated by assault amounting to grievous hurt or homicide: **culpable homicide under Section 299/304 IPC (now Sections 100/105 BNS 2023)**, or **murder under Section 300/302 IPC (now Sections 101/103 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ Expert testimony on causation is **opinion under Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ Ten arteries, heptagonal ring, named after Thomas Willis (1664) — the middle cerebral artery is NOT part of the ring, though its bifurcation is a top aneurysm site.
- ▶ Berry aneurysm: ~90% at the middle cerebral, anterior cerebral, and posterior communicating arteries; commonest single site is the anterior communicating artery (~30%).
- ▶ >50% of spontaneous SAH is a ruptured aneurysm — classic "thunderclap headache"; precipitated by stress, assault, exertion, or coitus.
- ▶ Demonstrate at autopsy in the fresh brain with a stream of water: walls "fan out like a burst balloon".
- ▶ Subarachnoid blood does NOT wash off; subdural blood does. Fatal traumatic basal SAH if >30 mL.
- ▶ Charcot–Bouchard micro-aneurysms cause hypertensive intracerebral bleed (putamen 55%) — distinct from the berry aneurysm's basal subarachnoid bleed.



Drug synergism

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ Drug synergism is when two or more drugs or poisons act together and produce a combined effect greater than the simple sum of their separate effects.
- ▶ The term comes from the Greek *synergos*, meaning "working together."
- ▶ It is one of the recognised factors that modify the action of a poison.
- ▶ It matters forensically for three reasons.
 - A dose of one drug that is sub-lethal alone can become fatal when combined with another.
 - Poisoners and assailants can deliberately exploit drug combinations to harm or stupefy a victim.
 - Fatal-dose figures quoted for a single drug can mislead if the actual death involved more than one agent.

Types of drug interaction

Interaction	Net effect vs simple sum	Example
Additive (summation)	Equal to the sum	Two CNS depressants in modest doses simply adding their sedation
Synergism (potentiation)	Greater than the sum	Barbiturates + alcohol; diazepam taken after alcohol
Antagonism	Less than the sum, or opposite	Alcohol taken after caffeine has little added effect; an antidote acts opposite to the poison

- ▶ Synergism vs addition: in a simple additive interaction, the two effects just add up.

- ▶ In true synergism, the combined effect is disproportionately greater than either dose alone predicts.
- ▶ **Potentiation** is a form of synergism where one agent has little effect on its own but sharply increases the effect of the other.
 - Example: an enzyme inhibitor that prolongs another drug's action.
 - This triple pattern is also called "synergia" — e.g. barbiturate effect increased by alcohol and antihistamines.
- ▶ **Synergism is the opposite of antagonism.** Synergism raises toxicity; antagonism lowers it.
- ▶ The same interacting pair can therefore be used either to **kill** (synergistic combination) or to **treat** (antagonist used as antidote).

Mechanisms

- ▶ **Pharmacodynamic synergism:** two drugs produce the same end-effect through similar or complementary actions, so their depressant or stimulant effects reinforce each other.
 - Classic example: alcohol + barbiturate, or alcohol + benzodiazepine.
 - Both are CNS depressants; together they cause profound respiratory depression, coma, and death at levels either drug alone might survive.
- ▶ **Pharmacokinetic synergism:** one drug raises the effective concentration of another.
 - It can do this by increasing absorption, slowing metabolism, reducing protein binding, or impairing excretion of the second drug.
 - Example: alcohol interferes with the liver's metabolism of co-ingested sedatives, raising their active blood levels.
- ▶ **Hastened action:** a poison's action is hastened when a synergistic second agent is present.
 - Example: diazepam taken after alcohol.
- ▶ **Synergistic adulterants:** substances added to street drugs are chosen specifically for their synergistic (or antagonistic) pharmacological effect.
 - Some substances act as both a diluent and a synergistic adulterant in heroin and cocaine.
 - This increases potency and makes toxicity harder to predict.

Important synergistic combinations

- ▶ **Alcohol + barbiturates:** the prototype lethal synergism.
 - Both depress the CNS, and each increases the other's effect.
 - A major cause of accidental and suicidal sedative deaths.
- ▶ **Alcohol + benzodiazepines:** diazepam taken after alcohol is the classic example of hastened, synergistic poison action.
 - The combination potentiates sedation and respiratory depression.
- ▶ **Barbiturates + antihistaminics + alcohol:** this triple combination is listed among the adverse effects of sedative-hypnotic drugs.
- ▶ **Chloral hydrate + alcohol:** historically called "knockout drops" or a "Mickey Finn."
 - Chloral hydrate dissolves in both water and alcohol.

- Alcohol strongly boosts its rapid, overwhelming sedative effect.
- Used to render a victim helpless for robbery or other stupefaction-facilitated crime.
- ▶ **Synergistic adulterants in heroin and cocaine:** increase the drug's effect and the risk of overdose.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Bar chart:** four bars on a common Effect axis.
 - Bar 1: Drug A alone. Bar 2: Drug B alone.
 - Bar 3: A + B additive (height = sum of the first two).
 - Bar 4: A + B synergistic (clearly taller than the additive bar).
 - Add a dotted line at the "expected additive level," with a shorter fifth bar below it marked Antagonism.
 - Title: "Synergism vs Additive vs Antagonism."
- ▶ **Concept-flow box:** a central box "Combined drugs/poisons" with three arrows leading out to:
 - pharmacodynamic synergism (same effect reinforced);
 - pharmacokinetic synergism (more active drug available);
 - the clinical result — toxicity greater than the sum, action hastened.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **A sub-lethal dose can become fatal in combination.** Because synergism produces an effect greater than the sum, amounts of each drug below its individual fatal dose can together kill.
- ▶ A pathologist should not exclude poisoning just because each detected drug level is "below fatal" on its own.
- ▶ **Toxicology reports need contextual interpretation.** Quantitative results must be read alongside any co-ingested synergist, especially alcohol with sedatives, hypnotics, opioids, or antihistamines.
- ▶ Always correlate blood-alcohol concentration with any CNS depressant detected.
- ▶ **Deliberate exploitation in crime.** Synergistic combinations (e.g. chloral hydrate + alcohol "knockout drops") are used to stupefy a victim to facilitate robbery, rape, or other offences.
 - This engages **causing hurt by poison with intent to commit an offence — Section 328 IPC 1860 (now Section 123 BNS 2023).**
- ▶ **Adulterated drugs of abuse.** Synergistic adulterants make street-drug toxicity unpredictable and contribute to overdose deaths.
 - Relevant when certifying cause of death in addicts.
- ▶ **Cause and manner of death.** Where a synergistic combination causes death and was intentionally administered, it may amount to:
 - **culpable homicide — Section 299 IPC 1860 (now Section 100 BNS 2023);**
 - **murder — Section 300 IPC 1860 (now Section 101 BNS 2023), punishable under Section 302 IPC 1860 (now Section 103 BNS 2023).**
 - Otherwise the death may be certified accidental or suicidal.
 - The medical opinion on fatal dose must explicitly account for synergism.

- ▶ **Treatment corollary.** The same principle, working in reverse, underlies pharmacological and physiological antidotes, which act opposite to the poison.
 - Examples: atropine in organophosphate poisoning, naloxone in opioid poisoning.
 - Understanding synergism guides both diagnosis and management.



Drugs affecting uterine motility

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2024 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ Drugs affecting uterine motility act on the myometrium, the muscular wall of the uterus.
- ▶ **Uterotonics (oxytocics, ecbolics)** increase the force and frequency of uterine contractions.
- ▶ **Tocolytics (uterine relaxants)** decrease uterine contractions.
- ▶ The forensic interest is dual: the same uterotonics are used lawfully in medical termination of pregnancy (MTP) and for post-partum haemorrhage.
- ▶ Unlawfully, they are the **abortifacient drugs** used to procure criminal abortion, which brings in the law of causing miscarriage under the **Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita (BNS) 2023**.

Classification of drugs affecting uterine motility

Group	Representative drugs	Forensic / clinical use
Oxytocin	Oxytocin, pituitary extract	Labour induction; 10 units intra-uterine for MTP
Ergot alkaloids	Ergometrine, ergotamine, ergotamine (from <i>Claviceps purpurea</i>)	Commonest ecboic for criminal abortion; controls post-partum haemorrhage
Prostaglandins	Dinoprostone (PGE ₂), dinoprost (PGF ₂ α), misoprostol (PGE ₁ analogue)	Labour induction, mid-trimester and early medical abortion
Antiprogesterin	Mifepristone (RU-486)	With misoprostol for medical abortion up to 9 weeks
Tocolytics	β ₂ -agonists, calcium-channel blockers, magnesium sulphate, oxytocin-receptor antagonists	Suppress premature labour; little forensic role

- ▶ Every uterotonic is a potential abortifacient when misused — this is the high-yield half of the table.

Uterotonic drugs — pharmacology and forensic relevance

- ▶ **Oxytocin/pituitary extract** has a specific oxytocic action on the uterus.
- ▶ It works only by injection, and its effect is significant only near term.
- ▶ In MTP, the cervix is dilated and oxytocin is given, or ten units are injected directly into the uterus.

- ▶ **Ergot** is the single most important agent in this topic — the dried sclerotium of the fungus *Claviceps purpurea*, grown on rye and other cereals.
- ▶ It contains about thirty alkaloids; the key three are ergotoxine, ergotamine, and ergometrine (the ecbolic).
- ▶ Ergot alkaloids stimulate adrenergic receptors and directly stimulate uterine muscle fibres.
- ▶ Its uterine action increases as pregnancy advances but often fails in early months.
- ▶ **Prostaglandins** (PGE_2 and $\text{PGF}_2\alpha$) induce labour and abortion, given intravenously or orally.
- ▶ Intra-amniotic injection of 25 mg $\text{PGF}_2\alpha$ is used for second-trimester abortion.
- ▶ **Mifepristone plus misoprostol** is the standard medical-abortion regimen up to 9 weeks; ultrasound must first exclude ectopic pregnancy.

Abortifacient drugs — the medico-legal core

- ▶ Forensic classification: drugs acting directly on the uterus, irritants of the genitourinary/gastrointestinal tract, and systemic poisons.
- ▶ Guiding forensic principle: no drug taken by mouth causes abortion without endangering the woman's life.

Direct uterine action

- ▶ **Ecbolics** increase uterine contraction but do not dilate the cervix, so they are dangerous and unreliable.
- ▶ **Ergot** is the most commonly used ecbolic.
- ▶ **Other ecbolics:** goldenseal (*Hydrastis canadensis*), quinine, and lead (as diachylon pills or lead plaster).
- ▶ Lead causes tonic uterine contraction and is directly toxic to the foetus; foetal death can occur at doses that do not seriously harm the mother.
- ▶ **Emmenagogues** increase menstrual flow; the direct-acting type is used for criminal abortion.
- ▶ Examples: aloes, cantharides, pennyroyal, savin, potassium permanganate.

Genitourinary-tract irritants

- ▶ Produce reflex uterine contraction locally and renal inflammation when taken systemically.
- ▶ Examples: cantharides, oil of pennyroyal, oil of tansy, oil of turpentine.
- ▶ **Potassium permanganate** (120–300 mg) applied to the vaginal vault produces a punched-out ulcer with a raised edge and a granular black base.
- ▶ It erodes small arteries, causing severe haemorrhage — a classic exam clue.

Gastrointestinal-tract irritants

- ▶ Colonic irritation causes hyperaemia and reflex uterine contraction.
- ▶ Examples: magnesium sulphate, castor oil, croton oil, senna, and tartar emetic.

Systemic poisons

- ▶ A sub-lethal maternal dose can still be lethal to the more susceptible foetus.
- ▶ Inorganic examples: salts of antimony, copper, iron, lead, mercury.
- ▶ Organic examples: calotropis, cantharides, croton, oleander, aconite, arsenic.

- ▶ Most irritant poisons can cause abortion simply by irritating the uterus into contraction.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Classification tree:** root box *Drugs affecting uterine motility*, splitting into **uterotonics** (oxytocin/pituitary extract, ergot alkaloids, prostaglandins, mifepristone) and **tocolytics** (β_2 -agonists, calcium-channel blockers, magnesium sulphate, oxytocin-receptor antagonist).
- ▶ **Abortifacient-drug box:** four columns — direct uterine action (ecbolics/emmenagogues), genitourinary irritants, gastrointestinal irritants, systemic poisons — with two representative drugs under each.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ The same drugs used as therapeutic oxytocics become abortifacients when misused for illegal abortion.
- ▶ **Ergotism** (ergot poisoning) causes tingling, dry gangrene of the fingers, toes, ears and nose, formication (a crawling-insect sensation), hallucinations, ataxia, and convulsions.
- ▶ Ergot's fatal dose is 5–10 g; the fatal period is one to several days.
- ▶ Lead poisoning preceding abortion, renal damage from genitourinary irritants, and punched-out vaginal ulcers from potassium permanganate all suggest attempted abortion.
- ▶ Presence of any drug in blood or urine indicates a systemic abortifacient was used.
- ▶ Local agents (phenol, potassium permanganate, soap) may be found in the uterus, expelled contents, or even embolised into the vena cava and pulmonary arteries.
- ▶ Local irritants also leave erosions of the vagina and cervix.
- ▶ On suspected criminal abortion, preserve any abortifacient drugs, sticks, syringes, or twigs from the genital tract and hand them to police.
- ▶ Arrange a dying declaration if the patient is serious, under **Section 32 IEA 1872 (now Section 26 BSA 2023)**, and maintain professional secrecy.
- ▶ Do not issue a death certificate if the woman dies — send the body for post-mortem examination, reportable to police for inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Therapeutic use within the **MTP Act 1971 (amended 2021)** is a complete legal defence.
- ▶ Outside the MTP Act, causing miscarriage is punishable under **BNS 2023** (dual-cited with the earlier IPC):
 - **Voluntarily causing miscarriage** — Section 312 IPC 1860 (now Section 88 BNS 2023): up to 3 years and/or fine, rising to 7 years if the woman is "quick with child."
 - **Miscarriage without the woman's consent** — Section 313 IPC (now Section 89 BNS 2023): up to 10 years or life.
 - **Death caused by an act done to cause miscarriage** — Section 314 IPC (now Section 90 BNS 2023): rigorous imprisonment up to 10 years.
 - **Act done to prevent a live birth, or to cause death after birth** — Section 315 IPC (now Section 91 BNS 2023): up to 10 years.

- **Causing death of a quick unborn child** (amounts to culpable homicide) — Section 316 IPC (now Section 92 BNS 2023): up to 10 years.
- An unsuccessful attempt is punishable under Section 511 IPC (now Section 62 BNS 2023), up to half the principal term.
- Both the abortionist and the consenting woman are liable.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ Four uterotonic classes: oxytocin, ergot alkaloids, prostaglandins, mifepristone; tocolytics do the opposite.
- ▶ Ergometrine is the prototype ecbolic and the commonest drug used for criminal abortion.
- ▶ Ecbolics increase contraction but do NOT dilate the cervix — hence dangerous and unreliable.
- ▶ Key forensic maxim: no orally taken drug causes abortion without endangering the woman's life.
- ▶ Potassium permanganate (120–300 mg) in the vaginal vault gives a punched-out ulcer with a granular black base — classic exam clue.



Drugs inhibiting the action of Acetylcholine

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2024 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ Drugs that inhibit the action of acetylcholine (ACh) are called **anticholinergic drugs**.
- ▶ ACh is the main neurotransmitter of the parasympathetic nervous system and of the somatic neuromuscular junction.
- ▶ These drugs act by **blocking a cholinergic receptor** (muscarinic, ganglionic-nicotinic, or muscle-nicotinic).
- ▶ A few act instead by **interfering with ACh release**.
- ▶ The forensically important group is the **belladonna alkaloids** — atropine, hyoscine (scopolamine), and hyoscyamine.
- ▶ These come from the **deliriant plants** *Datura*, *Atropa belladonna* (deadly nightshade), and *Hyoscyamus niger* (henbane), all of family Solanaceae.
- ▶ They produce the classic **anticholinergic toxidrome** and are used as **stupefying (road) poisons** for robbery and drug-facilitated sexual assault.
- ▶ Atropine itself is the **physiological antidote in organophosphate (cholinergic) poisoning**.

Acetylcholine and its receptors — the basis of "inhibition"

- ▶ ACh acts at all autonomic ganglia, all parasympathetic nerve endings, the sympathetic endings to sweat glands, the **neuromuscular junction**, and many brain synapses.
- ▶ **Muscarinic (M) receptors**: on smooth muscle, glands, heart, and brain — blocking them gives the antimuscarinic toxidrome.
- ▶ **Nicotinic (N) receptors** are ligand-gated ion channels of two kinds.
 - **N_N (ganglionic)**: blocked by ganglion blockers.

- **N_M (muscle end-plate):** blocked by neuromuscular (skeletal-muscle) relaxants.
- ▶ A drug can inhibit ACh in three ways: **receptor antagonism** (the commonest), **blocking ACh release** (e.g. botulinum toxin), or a **depletion/false-transmitter** mechanism.
- ▶ The belladonna alkaloids act by **competitive, reversible antagonism at muscarinic receptors**.
- ▶ Because the block is competitive, raising ACh overcomes it — this is why **physostigmine**, an anticholinesterase, is the antidote.

Classification of drugs inhibiting acetylcholine

The cleanest exam framework is by the site of cholinergic blockade.

Class (site of action)	Representative drugs
Antimuscarinic — natural	Atropine, hyoscine, hyoscyamine (from <i>Datura</i> , belladonna, henbane)
Antimuscarinic — synthetic	Ipratropium, dicyclomine, glycopyrronium
Centrally-acting antimuscarinic	Benzhexol, benztropine (antiparkinsonian drugs)
Ganglion blockers (N _N)	Hexamethonium, trimetaphan
Neuromuscular blockers (N _M)	Non-depolarising: curare, vecuronium · Depolarising: suxamethonium
ACh-release inhibitors	Botulinum toxin
Incidental anticholinergic side-effects	Antihistamines, antipsychotics, tricyclic antidepressants, amantadine

- ▶ The same anticholinergic toxidrome is produced by all of these plus antispasmodics and some plants and fungi — so chemically unrelated drugs can share one overdose picture.

The belladonna alkaloids — source, chemistry and pharmacology

- ▶ **Botanical source:** family Solanaceae — *Datura stramonium/metel* (thorn-apple), *Atropa belladonna* (deadly nightshade), and *Hyoscyamus niger* (henbane) — the active compounds are **tropane (belladonna) alkaloids**.
- ▶ **Active principles:** atropine (= d,l-hyoscyamine), hyoscyamine (the levo-isomer of atropine), and hyoscine (= scopolamine).
- ▶ The *Datura* seeds carry the highest alkaloid concentration.
- ▶ **Hyoscine** is a tertiary amine and crosses the blood–brain barrier (BBB) readily, giving more central sedation and amnesia.
- ▶ **Atropine** acts relatively more on peripheral and cardiac targets.
- ▶ **Effects (the toxidrome):**
 - Mydriasis with loss of accommodation (cycloplegia).
 - Dry mouth.
 - Dry, hot, flushed skin (anhidrosis), which in turn drives hyperthermia.
 - Tachycardia and bronchodilatation.
 - Reduced gut motility, leading to ileus.

- Urinary retention.
- Centrally: restlessness, delirium, and hallucinations.
- ▶ **Mnemonic:** hot as a hare, blind as a bat, red as a beet, dry as a bone, mad as a hatter — plus a toneless gut/bladder and a racing heart.

Toxicology of the deliriant (anticholinergic) plant poisons

- ▶ **Datura:** fatal dose ~50–100 crushed seeds (atropine/hyoscyamine ~120 mg, scopolamine ~30 mg); fatal period 1–2 days if untreated.
- ▶ **Atropa belladonna:** fatal dose ~80 grains of root or atropine 100–130 mg; fatal period 3–6 hours — notably shorter than *Datura*.
- ▶ **Hyoscyamus niger:** same alkaloids as belladonna, relatively more scopolamine; fatal period ~24 hours.
- ▶ **Diagnosis:**
 - **Mydriatic (cat's-eye) test:** urine or a seed extract instilled into a cat's or rabbit's eye produces immediate mydriasis.
 - **Pilocarpine/physostigmine test:** 1% pilocarpine fails to constrict the pupil within 30 minutes.
 - Atropine/scopolamine can be detected in blood, urine, and hair (segmental analysis up to ~3 weeks) by gas chromatography–mass spectrometry (GC-MS).
- ▶ **Autopsy:** no specific findings — signs of asphyxia, congested/oedematous lungs, inflamed gastric and intestinal walls.
- ▶ Seed fragments can survive in the stomach for days, because the alkaloids slow gut motility and the seeds resist putrefaction.
- ▶ **Management:**
 - Quiet, darkened room; support airway, breathing, and circulation.
 - Gastric lavage with weak tannic acid or potassium permanganate — useful even late, since gut motility is reduced.
 - Activated charcoal and purgatives to clear seeds.
 - Catheterise the bladder and cool the patient for hyperthermia.
 - Diazepam for agitation or seizures; avoid phenothiazines, antihistamines, and morphine, which add to the anticholinergic load.
 - **Physostigmine**, 0.5–2 mg slow IV with ECG monitoring, is the antidote of choice — a tertiary amine, it crosses the BBB and reverses central effects.
 - Neostigmine and pyridostigmine (quaternary amines) do **not** cross the BBB.

Atropine as an antidote — the reciprocal relationship with acetylcholine

- ▶ The same muscarinic block that makes atropine a poison also makes it the **antidote in cholinergic crises**, where ACh is in excess.

- ▶ **Organophosphate/carbamate poisoning:** atropine sulphate 2–5 mg IV, repeated every 5–10 minutes until atropinisation (dry flushed skin, pulse ~140/min, dilated pupils), continued for 48 hours or more.
- ▶ Atropine reverses the muscarinic and central effects but **not** the nicotinic effects; oximes such as pralidoxime are added to reactivate cholinesterase for that.
- ▶ **Nerve-agent exposure:** atropine and pralidoxime are given together, as in the military autoinjector kit.
- ▶ So *Datura*/belladonna (anticholinergic) and organophosphates (cholinergic) are **mutual physiological antidotes** — a favourite examiner contrast.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Cholinergic synapse with sites of block** — label:
 - ACh vesicles — **botulinum toxin blocks release**.
 - Postsynaptic muscarinic receptor — **blocked by atropine/hyoscine**.
 - Ganglionic N_N receptor — **blocked by hexamethonium**.
 - End-plate N_M receptor — **blocked by curare/suxamethonium**.
 - Acetylcholinesterase — **physostigmine raises ACh to overcome the block** (antidote arrow).
- ▶ **Anticholinergic toxidrome figure:** a human outline marking dilated pupils, dry mouth, flushed dry skin, a hyperthermia thermometer, a tachycardic heart, a distended bladder, and a silent (ileus) abdomen — annotated "hot-blind-red-dry-mad."

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Stupefying / "road" poison:** crushed *Datura* seeds mixed into food, drink, sweets, *pan*, tobacco, or *ganja*, or burnt as fumes, are used to stupefy travellers before robbery, kidnapping, or rape — the commonest forensic context.
- ▶ **Drug-facilitated sexual assault:** administering a stupefying or poisonous substance to cause hurt or facilitate an offence is punishable under **Section 328 Indian Penal Code (IPC) 1860 (now Section 123 Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita (BNS) 2023)**.
- ▶ **Criminal responsibility:** a victim stupefied **without their knowledge** is not responsible for acts done under the drug's influence — **involuntary intoxication, Section 85 IPC 1860 (now Section 23 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ A person who took the drug **voluntarily** remains responsible — **Section 86 IPC (now Section 24 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ **Manner of poisoning:** usually accidental — children eating belladonna berries, *Datura* seeds mistaken for chillies, or "gardener's mydriasis" from occupational dust — rather than suicidal or homicidal.
- ▶ **Therapeutic role:** atropine is routine pre-anaesthetic medication and the antidote in organophosphate/carbamate/nerve-agent poisoning; an overdose during such treatment is itself a recognised iatrogenic event.

- ▶ **Trace evidence:** preserve stomach contents, seeds (they resist putrefaction), blood, urine, and hair for the forensic laboratory — the alkaloids remain demonstrable long after death.



Explain the physiology of thermoregulation in new born

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2020 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Why the newborn is thermally vulnerable

- ▶ Birth is a sudden drop from the warm uterus (about 37.5 °C) to a delivery room at 20–25 °C.
- ▶ The baby is also wet with amniotic fluid, which multiplies heat loss.
- ▶ **High surface area:** a newborn has roughly three times the surface-area-to-mass ratio of an adult.
- ▶ **Thin skin, little insulating fat:** worst in preterm and low-birth-weight babies.
- ▶ **Wet skin at birth:** drives heavy evaporative heat loss.
- ▶ **Cannot shiver:** immature neuromuscular control and small muscle mass rule out shivering, so the baby depends on non-shivering thermogenesis.
- ▶ **Immature thermostat:** the infant cannot add clothing, move to warmth, or curl up effectively, and its sweating and vasomotor responses are poorly developed (worst in preterm babies).

Routes of heat exchange

Route	Physical basis	Newborn relevance
Evaporation	Water (amniotic fluid, sweat, breath) turning to vapour	Greatest loss right after birth; prevented by drying the baby at once
Conduction	Direct transfer to a cooler surface touching the skin	Loss to cold scales, mattresses, hands; prevented with warm surfaces
Convection	Heat carried away by moving air	Loss to draughts/AC, magnified by the large surface area
Radiation	Infrared heat lost to cooler nearby surfaces, no contact needed	Loss to cold walls/windows even in a warm room; controlled by warmers/incubators

- ▶ Heat is **gained** the same way in reverse: radiant warmers and incubators add heat mainly by radiation and convection, and skin-to-skin ("kangaroo") contact adds heat by conduction.

Heat production: non-shivering thermogenesis in brown fat

- ▶ **What it is:** the newborn's main heat-generating mechanism, centred on brown adipose tissue (brown fat).
- ▶ **Where it sits:** nape of the neck, interscapular region, axillae, mediastinum, and around the great vessels, kidneys and adrenal glands.
- ▶ **Amount:** roughly 2–6% of a term newborn's body weight.
- ▶ **Histology:** multiple small (multilocular) fat droplets, a rich blood supply, and abundant mitochondria — their iron-containing cytochromes give the brown colour.

- ▶ **Trigger:** cold sensed by skin and central thermoreceptors is relayed to the posterior hypothalamus.
- ▶ **Sympathetic drive:** the posterior hypothalamus activates the sympathetic nervous system, which releases noradrenaline onto brown fat.
- ▶ **Lipolysis:** noradrenaline triggers breakdown of triglycerides into free fatty acids.
- ▶ **Oxidation:** these fatty acids are oxidised inside the mitochondria.
- ▶ **Uncoupling:** the protein UCP-1 (thermogenin) in the inner mitochondrial membrane uncouples oxidative phosphorylation, so the energy is released as heat instead of being stored as ATP.
- ▶ **Booster:** thyroid hormone (local conversion of T4 to the more active T3) strengthens this response.
- ▶ **Net effect:** a fast, metabolically costly heat burst that can roughly double the resting metabolic rate, using extra oxygen and glucose.

Central control: the hypothalamus

- ▶ **Anterior (preoptic) hypothalamus:** drives heat-loss responses — skin vasodilatation and sweating.
- ▶ **Posterior hypothalamus:** drives heat-conservation and heat-production responses — vasoconstriction and non-shivering thermogenesis.
- ▶ **Afferent input:** peripheral skin cold/warm receptors plus central receptors sensing blood temperature.
- ▶ **Response to cold:** peripheral vasoconstriction, a flexed posture to cut exposed surface area, increased muscle tone and restlessness, and above all non-shivering thermogenesis.
- ▶ **Response to heat:** vasodilatation and sweating — both weak and slow to mature in the newborn, especially if preterm.

Neutral thermal environment and cold stress

- ▶ **Neutral thermal environment:** the narrow ambient-temperature range where the newborn holds a normal core temperature at the lowest possible metabolic rate and oxygen use.
- ▶ For a naked term baby this is about 32–34 °C; it is higher for a preterm baby.
- ▶ **Cold stress — sequence of decompensation:**
 - Rising oxygen demand causes hypoxia.
 - Rising glucose use causes hypoglycaemia.
 - Anaerobic metabolism and free fatty acids cause metabolic acidosis.
 - Acidosis causes pulmonary vasoconstriction, which worsens the hypoxia.
 - Brown-fat and glycogen stores run out.
 - Core temperature finally falls — **neonatal hypothermia**.
- ▶ Severe cold injury can progress to apnoea, bradycardia, coagulopathy and death.
- ▶ Its classic clinical sign is **sclerema neonatorum** (hardening of the skin).

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Heat-balance diagram:** a neonate with four outward arrows for heat loss — evaporation, radiation, convection, conduction — and one inward arrow for heat gain (radiant warmer/incubator/skin-to-skin contact). Mark the brown-fat depots: nape of neck, interscapular, axillae, mediastinum, perirenal/peri-adrenal.
- ▶ **Brown-fat thermogenesis flow:** Cold → posterior hypothalamus → sympathetic noradrenaline → brown adipocyte lipolysis → fatty-acid oxidation in mitochondria → UCP-1 uncouples oxidative phosphorylation → heat instead of ATP.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Algor mortis in infants:** the same high surface-area-to-mass ratio that endangers a living neonate makes a dead infant cool very rapidly.
- ▶ Children and old people cool faster than adults, and lean bodies cool faster than fat ones.
- ▶ So an infant cadaver reaches ambient temperature much sooner than an adult body.
- ▶ This makes temperature-based time-since-death estimation unreliable in infants — a critical caveat in suspected infanticide.
- ▶ **Neonatal hypothermia/exposure death:** failure of thermoregulation in a neglected or abandoned newborn is a genuine cause of death.
- ▶ In suspected infanticide or exposure, the autopsy must distinguish death from cold from other causes.
- ▶ It must also assess whether the child was live-born, viable, and given proper care (warmth and feeding).
- ▶ **Newborn autopsy objectives:** was the child dead-born or live-born, viable/full-term, how long did it survive after birth, and what was the cause of death.
- ▶ If the infant breathed and lived, then died of cold or neglect, this can support a charge of **culpable homicide** (Section 299/304 IPC 1860, now Sections 100/105 BNS 2023).
- ▶ It can support a charge of **murder** (Section 300/302 IPC 1860, now Sections 101/103 BNS 2023) depending on intent.
- ▶ Inquest and autopsy for any such unnatural/suspicious infant death proceed under **Section 174/176 CrPC 1973 (now Sections 194/196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ **Toxicological link:** Gray Baby Syndrome from chloramphenicol, caused by immature hepatic glucuronidation, presents with hypothermia, flaccidity and ashen-grey skin — a recognised iatrogenic neonatal death.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ Core temperature is normally kept at about 36.5–37.5 °C; the neonate has roughly 3× the **surface-area-to-mass ratio** of an adult.
- ▶ The neonate **cannot shiver**; it relies on **non-shivering thermogenesis** in **brown fat**.
- ▶ Brown fat is **multilocular** and mitochondria-rich; sites are the nape of the neck, interscapular region, axillae, mediastinum and perirenal/peri-adrenal areas.

- ▶ Heat is made when noradrenaline triggers lipolysis, and UCP-1 (**thermogenin**) uncoupling turns that energy into heat.
- ▶ Four routes of heat loss: **evaporation, conduction, convection, radiation**; evaporation dominates at birth, so dry the baby immediately.
- ▶ **Hypothalamus** is the control centre: anterior = heat loss, posterior = heat conservation/production.
- ▶ **Neutral thermal environment** $\approx 32\text{--}34^\circ\text{C}$ for a naked term baby — this gives minimum oxygen consumption.
- ▶ Cold stress causes **hypoxia, hypoglycaemia, metabolic acidosis**, and may end in **neonatal hypothermia** and **sclerema neonatorum**.
- ▶ Forensic link: an infant cadaver cools rapidly, so temperature-based time-since-death estimation is unreliable in neonates — relevant to infanticide/exposure deaths.



Fetal circulation and its forensic applications

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ **Fetal (intra-uterine) circulation** is the pattern of blood flow in the unborn child.
- ▶ Gas exchange happens at the **placenta**, not the lungs.
- ▶ Oxygenated blood reaches the fetus through the umbilical vein.
- ▶ The unexpanded lungs are bypassed through **three temporary shunts**: the ductus venosus, the foramen ovale, and the ductus arteriosus.
- ▶ At birth, the first breath and clamping of the cord close these shunts and adult circulation takes over.
- ▶ This physiology underlies every test used on a dead newborn to answer: was the child viable, was it born alive or dead, and if alive, how long did it survive.
- ▶ These answers decide whether a charge of infanticide or culpable homicide can stand.

Anatomy and physiology

- ▶ Fetal lungs are collapsed, fluid-filled and non-respiratory, with a very high vascular resistance.
- ▶ The **umbilical vein** carries the most oxygen-rich blood from the placenta to the fetus.
- ▶ About half of this blood bypasses the liver through the **ductus venosus**.
- ▶ **Foramen ovale**: shunts oxygen-rich blood from the right atrium into the left atrium.
 - This sends the best-oxygenated blood to the head, brain and coronary arteries.
- ▶ **Ductus arteriosus**: shunts blood from the pulmonary artery into the aorta.
 - This bypasses the high-resistance, unexpanded lungs.
- ▶ Deoxygenated blood returns to the placenta through the paired **umbilical arteries**.
- ▶ **At birth**: the first breath expands the lungs and drops pulmonary resistance, while cord clamping removes the placental circuit and raises systemic pressure.

- ▶ Left atrial pressure now exceeds right atrial pressure, closing the foramen ovale.
- ▶ Rising blood-oxygen level constricts and closes the ductus arteriosus.
- ▶ The shunts become fibrous adult remnants: ligamentum venosum, fossa ovalis, ligamentum arteriosum, and the medial umbilical ligaments.

Forensic timetable: closure of fetal vascular structures

Closure rate is the single best circulatory marker of how long a newborn survived.

Structure	Closure timing	What it tells the examiner
Umbilical arteries	10 hours – 3 days	Survival of hours to a few days
Umbilical vein / ductus venosus	3–5 days	Survival of several days
Ductus arteriosus	7–10 days	Survival of about a week or more
Foramen ovale	2–3 months	Survival of weeks to months

- ▶ Closure is **anatomical, not respiratory** — it proceeds even if breathing was feeble, so it complements but does not replace the tests of breathing.
- ▶ The foramen ovale may never close (**patent foramen ovale**, in about 30% of people), so an open foramen at autopsy does not by itself prove a short survival.

Tests of livebirth (how fetal circulation drives them)

- ▶ These tests exist because the fetal lungs and gut are unaerated; proving they were aerated proves the child breathed after birth.
- ▶ **Hydrostatic (Raygat) test:**
 - Lung specific gravity is about 1.040–1.050 before respiration (sinks), falling to about 0.940 after (floats).
 - Lungs are ligated, floated whole, then cut into pieces and re-floated to expel trapped air.
 - A piece of liver is the control; if the liver floats too (putrefaction), the test is void.
- ▶ **Fodéré's static test:** lungs weigh 30–40 g before respiration and 60–66 g after.
- ▶ **Ploucquet's test:** the lung-to-body-weight ratio rises from about 1/70 before respiration to about 1/35 after.
- ▶ **Breslau's second life test:** swallowed air floats the ligated stomach and intestine; milk in the stomach proves the child fed after birth.
- ▶ **Wreden's test:** gelatinous tissue in the middle ear is replaced by air once respiration begins.
- ▶ **Naked-eye lung changes after breathing begins:**
 - Lungs expand and now overlap the mediastinum.
 - Margins turn from sharp to rounded.
 - Texture turns from firm/liver-like to spongy and crepitant.
 - Colour turns from uniform dark red to a mottled pink-and-blue mosaic.
- ▶ **Fallacies:**
 - Expanded lungs can still sink: atelectasis, pneumonia, oedema, congenital syphilis.

- Unexpanded lungs can still float: putrefactive gas, artificial resuscitation.
- So "proof of breathing is not proof of livebirth" — a child may breathe before complete birth (*vagitus uterinus/vaginalis*) and still die.

Stillbirth, deadbirth and the fetal state

- ▶ A child never born alive keeps the fetal lung state — atelectatic and unexpanded.
- ▶ Once air vesicles have distended, they never return to this fetal state, which separates a stillbirth from a livebirth.
- ▶ **Maceration:** aseptic autolysis over 3–4 days in utero, a sign of intra-uterine death.
- ▶ **Robert's sign:** gas seen in the great vessels/aorta within about 12 hours of fetal death.
- ▶ Rigor mortis already present at delivery also points to death in utero.
- ▶ **Foetus papyraceus:** a flattened, parchment-like mummified co-twin, also signals intra-uterine death.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Fetal circulation schematic:** label placenta, umbilical vein, ductus venosus, liver, inferior vena cava, right atrium, foramen ovale (RA to LA), left atrium/ventricle/aorta (to head), right ventricle/pulmonary artery, ductus arteriosus (PA to aorta), bypassed lungs, descending aorta, umbilical arteries.
- ▶ Use a red-to-blue gradient for falling oxygen content and mark the three shunts clearly.
- ▶ **Inset:** the closure timetable table above, plus the adult remnant names.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ The infanticide work-up settles four questions in order: viability, livebirth vs stillbirth, survival duration, then cause of death.
- ▶ **Viability:** generally taken as ≥ 28 weeks of intra-uterine life (≥ 210 days); survival itself is recorded from 180 days.
- ▶ **Livebirth (forensic definition):** the child showed signs of life while only part of it was out of the mother, even if it never breathed or was never completely born — killing such a child is homicide.
- ▶ **Stillbirth (forensic definition):** a child born after 28 weeks of gestation that shows no sign of life at any time after being completely born.
- ▶ The law presumes every newborn found dead was born dead, until the prosecution proves otherwise.
- ▶ **Timing survival** at autopsy also uses supporting evidence besides vessel closure:
 - cord changes — clots by 2 hours, dries by 12–24 hours, separates at 5–6 days, scars by 10–12 days.
 - fetal haemoglobin falling from 80–90% at birth to 7–8% by 3 months.
 - air reaching the stomach by 15 minutes, the colon by 5–6 hours, the rectum by 12 hours.
- ▶ Only a **livebirth** can support a charge of culpable homicide or murder of the newborn; death of a child wholly in utero is not homicide.

- ▶ **Culpable homicide** is causing death with intent to kill, with intent to cause an injury likely to cause death, or with knowledge the act is likely to cause death — **Section 100 BNS 2023** (formerly **Section 299 IPC 1860**).
- ▶ **Culpable homicide** is **murder** under **Section 101 BNS 2023** (formerly **Section 300 IPC 1860**); the punishment for murder is **Section 103 BNS 2023** (formerly **Section 302 IPC 1860**).
- ▶ India has **no separate Infanticide Act** — a born-alive newborn's killing is tried as ordinary culpable homicide or murder.
- ▶ A suspicious or unnatural newborn death requires an **inquest under Section 194 BNSS 2023** (formerly **Section 174 CrPC 1973**).
- ▶ The alleged mother must be examined for signs of recent delivery and her mental state assessed.



Forensic anatomy of hyoid bone

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ The **hyoid bone** is a small, mobile, U-shaped bone in the front of the neck.
- ▶ It lies at the level of the **third cervical vertebra (C3)**, between the mandible above and the thyroid cartilage below.
- ▶ It is the **only bone in the body that does not articulate directly with any other bone**.
- ▶ It is held in place only by muscles, ligaments and tendons — a muscular sling, not a joint.
- ▶ It forms the bony root of the tongue and moves up and down during swallowing and speech.
- ▶ Its forensic importance lies almost entirely in its **fracture in neck-compression deaths** — throttling, ligature strangulation and hanging.
- ▶ The pattern, side and direction of the fracture help reconstruct how the neck was compressed, and help distinguish homicide from suicide and from a postmortem artefact.

Gross and applied anatomy

- ▶ **Shape and position:** U-shaped, convexity forwards, lying in the midline of the neck at C3, between the floor of the mouth and the larynx.
- ▶ **Parts:** one central **body**, plus on each side a long **greater cornu** projecting backwards and a small **lesser cornu** projecting upwards — five parts in all.
- ▶ **Suspension below:** connected to the thyroid cartilage by the **thyrohyoid membrane** and paired **thyrohyoid ligaments**.
- ▶ **Suspension above:** held from the styloid processes by the **stylohyoid ligaments**.
- ▶ **Palpation:** the body of the hyoid is difficult to feel.
- ▶ The **greater cornu** is palpable behind the sternomastoid muscle, about **3 cm below the angle of the mandible** and **1.5 cm from the midline**.
- ▶ **Relations:** it overlies the **laryngopharynx**.
- ▶ Just below it lies the **thyroid cartilage**, whose superior cornu points up toward the greater cornu.

- ▶ The **carotid sheath** (covering the major neck vessels) lies laterally — the same force can injure the larynx and carotid vessels too.

Ossification and age changes

- ▶ The hyoid develops from a body centre and paired cornual centres.
- ▶ In youth the **greater cornu** is joined to the body by **cartilage**, so the bone bends rather than breaks under compression.
- ▶ The **greater cornu fuses with the body at about 40–45 years**.
- ▶ **Consequence:** fractures are **rare below 30 years** because the cornua are still cartilaginous and elastic.
- ▶ Fractures become **progressively commoner with age**, occurring in roughly **50–70% of victims above 40 years**.
- ▶ Rule to remember: **absence of a hyoid fracture in a young victim never excludes neck compression**.

Forensic significance — fracture of the hyoid

- ▶ Hyoid fractures fall into three patterns, by the direction of the causal force.
- ▶ **Inward (adduction) fracture:** the fingers squeeze the greater cornua toward each other — the diagnostic fracture of **throttling**.
- ▶ **Anteroposterior (abduction/outward) fracture:** the hyoid is driven straight backwards.
 - Seen in **hanging**, ligature strangulation, run-over motor-vehicle accidents, and blows to the front of the neck.
- ▶ **Avulsion (traction) fracture:** caused by traction transmitted through the thyrohyoid ligaments, as in violent hyperextension of the neck.

Fracture type	Periosteum torn on	Typical setting
Inward (adduction)	Outer side	Throttling
Anteroposterior (outward)	Inner side	Hanging, ligature strangulation
Avulsion (traction)	Variable	Hyperextension, muscular over-activity

- ▶ **Common site:** within about **1 cm of the tip of the greater cornu**, or at the junction of the greater cornu with the body.
- ▶ Fractures may be **unilateral or bilateral**.
- ▶ **Incidence in hanging:** variable, reported 0–60%, averaging about **15–20%**.
- ▶ **Incidence in throttling:** the commonest skeletal injury, seen in about **30–50%** of cases.
- ▶ The **inward compression fracture is the single most diagnostic finding of throttling**.
- ▶ **Mobility test:** in an inward fracture the loose fragment can be bent further inward but not outward.
- ▶ In an outward (anteroposterior) fracture the reverse holds — the fragment moves freely outward but not inward.

- ▶ Hyoid fracture can also occur in **chronic alcoholics from repeated falls** ("battered alcoholic syndrome") — an old fall must not be misread as strangulation.
- ▶ Examine the **thyroid cartilage** (its superior cornu, commoner over 40 years) and the **cricoid cartilage** (fractured almost only in throttling, and nearly always fatal) alongside the hyoid as one thyrohyoid–laryngeal complex.

Distinguishing genuine fracture from artefact

- ▶ **Normal variants not to mistake for fracture:**
 - The cartilaginous gap between the greater cornu and the body, before fusion.
 - The joints between the lesser cornua and the body, before fusion.
 - **Incomplete bony union** — a normal finding in the young.
 - **Triticeous cartilages** — small nodules embedded in the thyrohyoid ligament, freely movable, and normal; not a fractured superior cornu of the thyroid cartilage.
- ▶ **Postmortem artefact:** rough neck dissection, or forceful handling of an ossified hyoid during larynx removal, can fracture the bone after death.
- ▶ Such artefactual fractures show **no vital reaction** — no surrounding soft-tissue haemorrhage, the key way to tell them apart from a true (antemortem) fracture.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Labelled hyoid bone (anterior/superior view):** label the **body**, **greater cornu** (each side), **lesser cornu** (each side), and the **thyrohyoid membrane/ligament** below, showing the U-shape with convexity forwards.
- ▶ Add inward arrows on the greater cornua for the **inward (adduction) fracture of throttling**, and outward/backward arrows for the **anteroposterior (abduction) fracture of hanging**.
- ▶ **Thyrohyoid–laryngeal complex (front view):** label the **hyoid bone**, **superior cornu of thyroid cartilage**, **thyroid cartilage**, **cricoid cartilage**, **thyrohyoid membrane**, and the **triticeous cartilage** within the lateral thyrohyoid ligament — the structure most often mistaken for a fracture.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Demonstrating the fracture:**
 - X-ray the neck in lateral and oblique views before or during dissection.
 - Apply 1% **aqueous toluidine blue** to the suspected area for **15 seconds**, then rinse with water.
 - Viewed under a **stereomicroscope**, a true fracture line takes up the dye and appears bluish.
 - **Preserve the bone with its soft tissue attached** if it is to go to court, so the vital reaction stays visible and tampering cannot be alleged.
- ▶ **Antemortem vs postmortem:** surrounding haemorrhage/vital reaction means a genuine fracture; a clean fracture with no haemorrhage suggests an autopsy or handling artefact.

- ▶ **Autopsy technique:** dissect the neck layer by layer in a bloodless field, ideally after opening the head first to drain cranial blood.
- ▶ Handle the hyoid carefully — the lesser cornua are easily cut — and never force an ossified hyoid during larynx removal.
- ▶ **Reconstructing the mode of death:** an inward fracture supports **throttling**, which is necessarily homicidal since self-throttling is physically impossible.
- ▶ An outward/anteroposterior fracture fits **hanging or ligature strangulation**.
- ▶ Any hyoid or laryngeal fracture points to appreciable force, away from a merely accidental light touch on the neck.
- ▶ Where the death is unnatural or suspicious, the autopsy proceeds under police requisition for a **police inquest** — Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023).
- ▶ A **magisterial inquest** falls under Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023).
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon's opinion on the fracture is admitted as **expert opinion under Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ Where the fracture helps classify the death: **murder** — Section 300/302 IPC (now Section 101/103 BNS 2023); **culpable homicide** — Section 299/304 IPC (now Section 100/105 BNS 2023).



Forensic anatomy of the base of the skull

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ The **base of the skull** is the floor of the cranium on which the brain rests, formed by parts of the frontal, ethmoid, sphenoid, temporal and occipital bones.
- ▶ Internally it is divided into three terraced steps: the **anterior, middle and posterior cranial fossae**.
- ▶ Its uneven, foramen-perforated, buttress-reinforced shape decides how fracture lines travel, producing external signs (raccoon eyes, Battle sign, CSF leak) and often-fatal brainstem/cranial-nerve damage.
- ▶ Skull-base anatomy is therefore central to reconstructing the mechanism, direction and manner of a fatal head injury.

Applied anatomy of the cranial base

- ▶ **Anterior fossa:** orbital plates of frontal bone, cribriform plate of ethmoid, lesser wings of sphenoid; roofs the orbits/nose and overlies the frontal lobes. Floor is paper-thin over the orbital plates.
- ▶ **Middle fossa:** body/greater wings of sphenoid centrally, squamous and petrous temporal bone laterally; lodges the temporal lobes and pituitary gland (sella turcica).
- ▶ **Posterior fossa:** occipital bone and petrous temporal bones; lodges the cerebellum, pons and medulla, centred on the foramen magnum.

- ▶ **Bone thickness:** average about 6 mm; occipital thickest (~15 mm), then frontal (~8 mm), parietal (~7 mm), temporal thinnest (~4 mm).
- ▶ **Buttresses:** thick reinforcing pillars (midfrontal, midoccipital, parietosphenoid, parietopetrous); the **petrous buttress** of the temporal bone is the single most important, steering basal fracture lines.
- ▶ **Foramina** carry cranial nerves/vessels, so fracture lines open into them and bring cranial-nerve damage — the **sphenoidal fissure** most commonly, and the **foramen magnum** never spared despite its thick margins.

Mechanism of basal fracture

- ▶ **Direct force** applied at the level of the base itself.
- ▶ **General deformation:** force applied anywhere momentarily changes skull shape, and this is transmitted to the floor.
 - Indirect violence (a fall on the feet or buttocks) mainly fractures the base, rarely the vault.
- ▶ **Extension** of a vault fracture down onto the base.
- ▶ **Transmitted (remote) force** through the face or spine, usually producing an **isolated** fracture.
 - A chin blow transmits through the mandible and maxilla to fracture the cribriform plate; a fall on the feet drives weight up the spine to produce a ring fracture.
- ▶ **Petrous-buttress steering:** fracture lines approaching the petrous ridge turn towards its apex or base, depending on the angle of strike.
 - The petrous body fractures through its middle only with very great force; most basal fractures overrun the pituitary fossa.
- ▶ **Sudden rise in intracranial pressure** fractures the orbital roofs, especially in suicidal contact gunshot wounds; thin orbital plates also fracture by contrecoup after a fall on the back of the head.

Types of basal fracture

Type	Pattern	Mechanism
Longitudinal	Splits the base into right and left halves	Impact on face/forehead or back of head; front-to-back compression
Transverse	Splits the base into front and back halves	Impact on either side of head; side-to-side compression
Ring (foramen)	Circular fissure 3–5 cm around foramen magnum	Fall onto feet/buttocks, or heavy weight on vertex; usually lethal
Hinge (motorcyclist)	Splits base fully, creates a mobile "nodding face"	Lateral head impact, or a blow on the chin tip

- ▶ **Hinge fracture subtypes:**
 - **Type I** — commonest; coronal, petrous ridge to petrous ridge through the sella; the "motorcyclist's fracture" (side impact or chin blow).
 - **Type II** — front-to-back to the opposite side, also through the sella.

- **Type III** — side-to-side, sparing the sella.
- ▶ Hinge fractures cause brainstem (ponto-medullary) injury and are rapidly fatal.
- ▶ **Contrecoup fracture**: a basal fracture opposite the impact site with an unsupported head, most common in the anterior fossa.

Fossa-specific signs and complications

- ▶ **Anterior fossa:**
 - **Raccoon (panda/spectacle) eyes**: bilateral periorbital bruising from blood gravitating into loose tissue; distinguish from a direct black eye, where trauma signs mark the true impact site.
 - **CSF rhinorrhoea** from a torn cribriform plate and dura, risking **leptomeningitis**.
- ▶ **Middle fossa:**
 - **Battle sign**: mastoid bruising, appears ~36 hours after injury as blood tracks along the posterior auricular artery; marks a fracture at the middle-posterior fossa junction. (After *William Henry Battle*, 1855–1936.)
 - CSF otorrhoea, haemotympanum, and VII/VIII cranial-nerve palsy.
 - A sella-turcica fracture opens the cranial cavity to the airway — blood is then inhaled into the lungs, proving death was not instantaneous.
- ▶ **Posterior fossa:**
 - Bruising at the nape; blood/CSF from the mouth.
 - Brainstem damage; tonsillar herniation if the fracture reaches the foramen magnum causes rapid death.
- ▶ **Halo (ring) sign**: blood-stained CSF on paper separates into a central blood spot with a clear outer ring — a bedside sign of CSF leak masked by blood.
 - Confirmed by CSF glucose > 30 mg/dL and the **beta-2-transferrin assay** (most specific test).

Confirmatory autopsy tests

- ▶ **Water test**: done before opening the skull, to check for a Type I hinge fracture.
 - The head is turned to one side and water poured into one ear.
 - Dripping from the opposite ear indicates a Type I hinge fracture; dripping from the nostrils indicates a cribriform-plate fracture.
 - Forewarns the prosector, so the vault is opened carefully without extending the fracture; useful when radiology is unavailable.
- ▶ **Routine demonstration**: never open the skull until the cranial vessels are decompressed; the dura is then stripped from the base to expose basal fractures, and bones are checked for abnormal mobility before cutting the skull cap.
- ▶ **Ante-mortem vs post-mortem fractures**: forceful prising and sawing of the skull cap during autopsy can itself produce or extend middle-fossa fractures, mimicking or masking a genuine injury.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ Interior of the base of the skull, superior view, with the three fossae labelled.
 - Anterior: orbital plate of frontal bone, cribriform plate of ethmoid, lesser wing of sphenoid.
 - Middle: body/greater wing of sphenoid, sella turcica, petrous temporal bone.
 - Posterior: occipital bone, foramen magnum.
 - Mark the sphenoidal (superior orbital) fissure and the petrous buttress.
- ▶ Overlay the hinge fracture types and the ring fracture.
 - Type I: coronal, through the sella turcica.
 - Type II: front-to-back, through the sella.
 - Type III: side-to-side, sparing the sella.
 - Ring fracture: a circle 3–5 cm around the foramen magnum.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Direction of force:** a longitudinal split points to antero-posterior force, a transverse split to lateral force.
 - An isolated basal fracture suggests transmitted force (chin blow, fall on feet); a ring fracture points to a fall from height onto the feet or buttocks.
- ▶ **Manner of death:** most basal fractures are accidental (falls, road-traffic crashes).
 - Multiple localised depressed fractures suggest homicide.
 - Orbital-roof fractures from a sudden pressure rise suggest a suicidal contact firearm injury.
- ▶ **Survival interval:** inhaled-blood foci in the lungs (a sella-turcica fracture opening the cranial cavity to the airway) prove the victim breathed after injury — bearing on dying declarations and the sequence of events.
- ▶ **Grievous hurt in a live victim:** raccoon eyes, Battle sign, CSF leak and cranial-nerve palsies document the injury.
 - A skull-base fracture is grievous hurt under the fracture clause ("Seventhly") of **Section 320 IPC 1860 (now Section 116 BNS 2023)**; voluntarily causing it is **Section 322 IPC 1860 (now Section 117 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ **Certification and inquest:** a fatal basal fracture with brainstem injury is the cause of death; such an unnatural death needs an inquest under **Section 174/176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194/196 BNSS 2023)**.
 - Alleged homicide is charged under **Section 300/302 IPC 1860 (now Section 101/103 BNS 2023)** (murder) or **Section 299/304 IPC 1860 (now Section 100/105 BNS 2023)** (culpable homicide).
 - The doctor's report and testimony are expert opinion under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Glasgow coma scale

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

- ▶ The Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) is a standardised bedside score for the **level of consciousness (depth of coma)**.
- ▶ It is used mainly after **traumatic brain injury (TBI)**, but also in poisoning and other causes of impaired consciousness.
- ▶ It was devised in 1974 by *Graham Teasdale* and *Bryan Jennett* in Glasgow.
- ▶ Three responses are scored separately: **best eye opening (E)**, **best verbal response (V)**, **best motor response (M)**.
- ▶ The three scores are summed: **total GCS = E + V + M**, range **3 (worst) to 15 (best)**.
- ▶ The best response on each axis is recorded — e.g. if one limb obeys and the other only flexes, the better limb is scored.

Components and scoring

- ▶ **Eye opening (E, max 4):**
 - Spontaneous — 4
 - To speech — 3
 - To pain — 2
 - None — 1
- ▶ **Verbal response (V, max 5):**
 - Oriented — 5
 - Confused conversation — 4
 - Inappropriate words — 3
 - Incomprehensible sounds — 2
 - None — 1
- ▶ **Motor response (M, max 6):**
 - Obeys commands — 6
 - Localises to pain — 5
 - Normal flexion / withdrawal to pain — 4
 - Abnormal flexion to pain (*decorticate* rigidity) — 3
 - Extension to pain (*decerebrate* rigidity) — 2
 - None — 1
- ▶ Always record components and time, e.g. "GCS 7 = E1 V3 M3 at 10:40", so a falling trend can be caught.
- ▶ The **motor score is the strongest single predictor of outcome**.
- ▶ *Decorticate* posture (M3) means a lesion above the midbrain.
- ▶ *Decerebrate* posture (M2) means a more caudal, brainstem-level lesion, with a graver prognosis.

Grading head injury severity by GCS

- Severity is judged along with loss of consciousness (LOC) and post-traumatic amnesia (PTA).

Severity	GCS	LOC	PTA
Mild TBI	13–15	< 30 min	< 24 h
Moderate TBI	9–12	30 min – 24 h	1–24 h
Severe TBI	≤ 8	> 24 h	> 24 h

- A GCS of 8 or less means the patient is in coma by definition.
- At GCS 8, the airway is considered unprotected — "GCS 8, intubate".
- A persistently low GCS is the clinical hallmark of **diffuse axonal injury (DAI)**.
- DAI itself is graded by **duration of coma**, not by the GCS band:
 - **Mild DAI:** coma 6–24 hours.
 - **Moderate DAI:** coma > 24 hours, no brainstem signs.
 - **Severe DAI:** coma > 24 hours, with brainstem signs.
- DAI is shearing/stretching injury to axons at the grey–white junction, the corpus callosum and the brainstem.
- It is caused by acceleration–deceleration forces — about 90% from vehicle accidents, 10% from falls and assaults.

Use in the poisoned / unconscious patient

- The GCS also grades depth of **central nervous system (CNS) depression** in poisoning.
- It is used in the "D — Depression of CNS" step of the A-B-C-D resuscitation approach, before decontamination and antidote therapy.

GCS	Interpretation
≤ 8	Severe poisoning (in coma)
9–12	Moderate poisoning
≥ 13	Minor poisoning

- An alternative in poisoning is the **Matthew–Lawson Scale of coma**:
 - **Grade 0:** fully conscious and alert.
 - **Grade 1:** drowsy but responds to verbal commands.
 - **Grade 2:** maximum response to a minimum painful stimulus (earlobe pinch).
 - **Grade 3:** minimum response to a maximum painful stimulus (sternal rub).
 - **Grade 4:** no response to pain, with loss of corneal, laryngeal and pharyngeal reflexes.

Modifications and pitfalls

- **GCS-Pupils (GCS-P):** subtracts the **pupil reactivity score** (0, 1 or 2 unreactive pupils) from the GCS total.
 - New range is 1 to 15, extending the low end for the most severe injuries.

- It adds brainstem information to sharpen prognosis.
- ▶ **Paediatric GCS:** modifies the verbal component for pre-verbal children (coos/babbles, irritable cry, cry to pain).
- ▶ **Confounders that must be documented, not guessed** — mark the component "NT" (not testable):
 - **Intubation or tracheostomy:** verbal response cannot be tested (marked "VT").
 - **Periorbital oedema or facial fractures:** eye opening cannot be assessed.
 - **Sedation, paralysing agents, alcohol or drug intoxication:** artificially lower the score; drunkenness can mimic concussion.
 - **Aphasia, deafness, language barrier, dementia, or spinal cord injury** (a quadriplegic cannot move the limbs).
- ▶ A single reading matters less than a **trend of serial readings**.
- ▶ A falling GCS signals an expanding intracranial haematoma or rising intracranial pressure and needs urgent imaging.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **GCS chart:** three columns — Eye (max 4), Verbal (max 5), Motor (max 6) — each listing its graded behaviours and scores.
- ▶ **Footer box:** **Total** = E + V + M (3–15), severity bands (Mild 13–15, Moderate 9–12, Severe ≤ 8), and the note "GCS ≤ 8 = coma, intubate."
- ▶ **Posture sketch:** *decorticate* (M3 — arms flexed on chest, legs extended) vs *decerebrate* (M2 — arms extended and internally rotated, legs extended, worse prognosis).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ The GCS gives a numerical, reproducible record for the **medico-legal case (MLC) record, accident register and injury certificate**, usable later in court.
- ▶ Along with LOC and PTA, it helps decide **simple vs grievous hurt**.
- ▶ A head injury causing prolonged unconsciousness supports certifying **grievous hurt** under **Section 320/322 IPC 1860 (now Sections 116/117 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ A fatal head injury is relevant to **Section 304 IPC (now Section 105 BNS 2023)** (culpable homicide) or **Section 302 IPC (now Section 103 BNS 2023)** (murder).
- ▶ Before police record a statement, the doctor must certify fitness — a low GCS means the patient is **not fit for statement**.
- ▶ A head-injured patient may have amnesia, act automatically yet look lucid, and give a false history — the GCS documents this.
- ▶ The same fitness assessment applies before recording a **dying declaration**, admissible under **Section 32 Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 26 Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ A falling serial GCS demands urgent imaging or surgery; failing to monitor and act can support an allegation of **medical negligence**.

- ▶ Brain-stem death is diagnosed by its own apnoea and reflex tests, not the GCS — but the entry point is a deeply comatose patient (GCS 3) on a ventilator, relevant to certification under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act 1994 (as amended).

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ Devised by Teasdale and Jennett, 1974, Glasgow; scores E (max 4), V (max 5), M (max 6).
- ▶ Range 3 to 15; minimum is 3, never 0.
- ▶ Severity: Mild 13–15, Moderate 9–12, Severe ≤ 8 ; $GCS \leq 8$ = coma, intubate.
- ▶ Record as "GCS 7 = E1 V3 M3 at 10:40"; motor score is the best predictor of outcome.
- ▶ Decorticate (M3) = lesion above midbrain; decerebrate (M2) = brainstem lesion, worse prognosis.
- ▶ In poisoning: GCS is the "D" in A-B-C-D; alternative is the Matthew–Lawson Scale (Grades 0–4).
- ▶ GCS-Pupils subtracts unreactive-pupil score (0–2), giving range 1–15; paediatric GCS has a modified verbal scale.
- ▶ Document confounders (intubation, oedema, sedation/intoxication) as "NT" — never guess.
- ▶ Forensic uses: simple vs grievous hurt, fitness for statement/dying declaration, MLC documentation, prognosis, negligence.



Gross anatomy of female genitalia. Types and medico legal importance of HYMEN

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ The **female external genitalia (vulva)** include the mons pubis, labia majora, labia minora, clitoris, vestibule, urethral opening, hymen, and vestibular glands.
- ▶ The **vagina** is the internal fibromuscular canal connecting the vulva to the cervix.
- ▶ The **hymen** is a thin mucous-membrane fold, about **1 mm thick**, partially closing the vaginal outlet.
- ▶ Its condition has traditionally been treated as a marker of **virginity (virgo intacta)**; rupture is called **defloration**.
- ▶ This gives the hymen major medico-legal weight in alleged rape, child sexual abuse, nullity of marriage, and defamation.

Gross anatomy of the vulva

- ▶ **Mons pubis**: fat pad over the pubic bone, covered by hair after puberty.
- ▶ **Labia majora**: two skin folds meeting at the anterior and posterior commissures.
 - In a virgin they are thick and apposed, completely closing the vaginal orifice.
- ▶ **Labia minora**: thin, sensitive folds about **4 cm long**, inside the labia majora.

- Anteriorly they form the clitoral **prepuce** and **frenulum**; posteriorly they fuse into the **fourchette**, backed by the **fossa navicularis**.
- ▶ **Clitoris**: small erectile organ above the urethral opening, homologous with the penis.
- ▶ **Vestibule**: area between clitoris, hymen, and labia minora; holds the urethral and vaginal openings.
- ▶ **Urethral opening**: **2.5 cm behind the clitoris**, just in front of the vaginal orifice.
- ▶ **Vestibular glands**: **Bartholin's glands** (secrete lubricating mucus near the lower vagina) and **Skene's glands** (paraurethral, a source of PSA).
- ▶ **Perineum**: tissue between the posterior vaginal wall and the anus.

Gross anatomy of the vagina

- ▶ A fibromuscular canal about **7.5 cm long**; the anterior wall is shorter (~6 cm), the posterior wall longer (~9 cm).
- ▶ Normally collapsed into a transverse slit; distended, it looks gourd-shaped, wider above.
- ▶ Upper-end width: **3–4 cm in a nullipara**, **6–7 cm in a parous woman**.
- ▶ The mucosa is **rugose** (folded) in a virgin; rugae flatten with repeated intercourse, and the vagina lengthens after childbirth.
- ▶ Four **fornices** surround the cervix — a deep posterior, a shallow anterior, and two lateral.
- ▶ Relations: bladder in front, levator ani on each side, rectum behind, pouch of Douglas above.

The hymen — structure and features

- ▶ A thin, transparent fold with a connective-tissue core covered by squamous epithelium.
- ▶ Usually **annular or crescentic**, broadest **posteriorly**, often deficient anteriorly.
- ▶ Orifice diameter grows about **1 mm per year of age** in children, reaching **10 mm** prepubertally and **1.2 cm** at puberty.
 - Over **1 cm (or more than 1 mm/year)** in a prepubertal girl raises suspicion of sexual abuse.
- ▶ Consistency varies — thin and delicate, or fleshy/cartilaginous and tough.
 - A thick, elastic hymen can stretch **without rupture**, even after intercourse — producing a **false virgin**.

Types of hymen

Type	Key feature
Annular	Central oval opening; common in children.
Semilunar/crescentic	Crescent shape, concavity anterior; commonest type .
Infantile	Small, central, linear opening.
Cribriform	Several small perforations; may hinder tampon use.
Vertical	Single near-vertical slit.
Septate	Two openings divided by a midline septum.

Type	Key feature
Sub-septate	Septum hangs like a uvula, not fully bridging.
Microperforate	Opening much smaller than normal.
Fimbriated (denticular)	Tooth-like indented margins; notches don't reach the periphery.
Imperforate	No opening; blood accumulates behind it at puberty.

- ▶ **Carunculae myrtiformes**: after childbirth or repeated intercourse the hymen almost disappears, leaving small fleshy tags of fibrosed tissue.
- ▶ An **imperforate hymen**, if it persists to puberty, traps menstrual blood — first in the vagina (**hematocolpos**), then the uterus (**hematometra**) — needing surgical opening.

Causes of hymenal rupture

- ▶ **Sexual intercourse** — the usual cause; rupture at first coitus is defloration.
- ▶ **Accident** — a fall on a projecting object, a straddle injury, or a see-saw.
 - Comes with perineal tears and other injuries, but **not** bruising of the hymenal margins.
- ▶ **Masturbation** — especially with a large foreign body; often spares the hymen.
- ▶ **Instrumentation** — gynaecological exam, tampons, or a dilator such as **sola pith**.
- ▶ **Ulceration or scratching** — from infection (diphtheria, fungal) or poor hygiene/worm infestation in children.
- ▶ **Does NOT rupture it**: riding, jumping, dancing, vigorous exercise, or simply forcing the thighs apart.
- ▶ **True tear vs natural notch**:
 - A **fimbriated notch** sits anteriorly, is symmetrical, covered by intact mucosa, and does not reach the base.
 - A **true tear** sits posteriorly (6 o'clock) or at 5 and 7 o'clock, asymmetrical and torn through to the periphery — several such tears suggest first intercourse.

Examination of the hymen

- ▶ Examine in the lithotomy position with good light; inspect, then gently separate, the labia.
- ▶ Note tears by clock position: recent tears are red, swollen, tender, and bleed on touch; old tears are rounded and scarred.
- ▶ **Glaister–Keene rods**: warmed rods with a spherical head, rotated to evert the edges and reveal notches without pain.
- ▶ A Foley's catheter/balloon works similarly; warm saline helps show the edges in a fimbriated hymen.
- ▶ **Toluidine-blue dye** highlights lacerations.
- ▶ A speculum must never be used on a prepubertal child.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — Female external genitalia:** label mons pubis, labia majora, labia minora, clitoris with prepuce/frenulum, vestibule, urethral opening, vaginal orifice, hymen, fourchette, fossa navicularis, Bartholin's gland opening, perineum, and anus.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — Types of hymen:** small labelled panels for each type (annular through imperforate), plus a clock-face inset contrasting natural notches (10–11 o'clock) with true tears (5–6–7 o'clock).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ An intact hymen is only a **presumption of virginity**, not proof.
 - A true virgin may have a ruptured hymen (accident, tampons, sola pith).
 - A false virgin may keep an intact, elastic hymen even after intercourse — sometimes via **hymenoplasty**, betrayed by a narrow new opening and stitch marks.
- ▶ **Rupture of the hymen is not proof of rape, and an intact hymen does not exclude it** — the law needs only penetration "to any extent" (**Section 63, Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita (BNS) 2023**, formerly Section 375 IPC 1860; punishment Section 64 BNS 2023, formerly Section 376 IPC).
 - *Rape is a legal, not a medical, diagnosis* — the doctor records consistency with the history and never opines "rape."
- ▶ Examination of the victim or accused needs consent, under **Section 184, Bharatiya Nagarik Suraksha Sanhita (BNSS) 2023** (formerly Section 164A CrPC 1973), with findings recorded by clock position.
- ▶ Using **sola pith** to dilate an immature girl's vagina amounts to rape (Section 63 BNS 2023), also covered by the **POCSO Act, 2012** for a child victim.
- ▶ Fresh tears are red and bleed on touch for ~2 days, healing without uniting into carunculae myrtiformes over about a week — useful for aging the injury.
- ▶ Virginity is also relevant to **nullity of marriage** (**Section 12, Hindu Marriage Act 1955**) and **defamation** (**Section 356 BNS 2023**, formerly Section 499 IPC), and corroborates disputed paternity.
- ▶ The **two-finger test is forensically valueless and judicially banned** — in *Lillu @ Rajesh & Anr v. State of Haryana* (2013), the Supreme Court held it violates the survivor's privacy and dignity, and that even a positive finding cannot imply consent.

♦ ♦ ♦

Hazards of blood transfusion*Asked in: Paper I Apr 2024 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine***Definition**

- ▶ A hazard of blood transfusion is any adverse reaction or complication following transfusion of whole blood or a blood component.
- ▶ Reactions occur in about **1–2%** of transfusions, and a small fraction are fatal.

- ▶ The **ABO and Rh** blood-group antigens cause most significant reactions.
- ▶ Reactions to minor antigens usually need repeated incompatible transfusions before enough antibody builds up.
- ▶ Complications are grouped as **immunological** (antigen–antibody mismatch) and **non-immunological** (physical, chemical or infective causes).
- ▶ Medico-legally important because incompatible transfusion is a recognised cause of sudden death, and a preventable error can amount to negligence.

Classification of transfusion hazards

Immunological reactions	Non-immunological reactions
Intravascular haemolysis	Circulatory overload
Extravascular haemolysis	Coagulation defects
Sensitivity to WBC, platelets, plasma	Hyperkalaemia, citrate toxicity, infection, air embolism, hypothermia, rigors

Immunological reactions

- ▶ **Acute intravascular haemolytic reaction:** the most dangerous reaction.
- ▶ Usually caused by **ABO incompatibility** from a clerical or identification error.
- ▶ Recipient antibodies destroy donor red cells inside the blood vessels.
- ▶ This releases free haemoglobin into the circulation.
- ▶ Features: fever, rigors, loin/back pain, hypotension, oliguria, and haemoglobinuria (red-brown urine).
- ▶ Can progress to disseminated intravascular coagulation, shock and acute renal failure.
- ▶ **Extravascular haemolytic reaction:** donor red cells are coated with antibody and removed slowly by the spleen and liver.
- ▶ Produces a rise in unconjugated bilirubin, jaundice and a falling haemoglobin.
- ▶ Usually a milder, delayed picture than the intravascular reaction.
- ▶ **Sensitivity to leucocytes, platelets and plasma components:** antibodies form against donor white cells, platelets or plasma proteins.
- ▶ Causes the common febrile non-haemolytic reaction and allergic/anaphylactic responses.
- ▶ IgA-specific antibodies may be found in the recipient in these reactions.

Non-immunological reactions

- ▶ **Circulatory overload:** too rapid or too large a transfusion causes acute pulmonary oedema.
- ▶ Risk is highest in the elderly, infants, and patients with cardiac or renal disease.
- ▶ At autopsy the lungs are oedematous.
- ▶ **Coagulation defects:** massive transfusion of stored blood dilutes platelets and clotting factors, causing a bleeding tendency.
- ▶ **Hyperkalaemia:** stored red cells leak potassium; large or rapid transfusion of old blood raises serum potassium and can trigger arrhythmia.

- ▶ **Citrate toxicity:** citrate (the anticoagulant in stored blood) binds ionised calcium; massive transfusion can cause hypocalcaemia with tetany or arrhythmia.
- ▶ **Air embolism:** air entering the right ventricle can be rapidly fatal.
- ▶ Air is found in the right ventricle of the heart at autopsy.
- ▶ **Hypothermia:** rapid infusion of cold, refrigerated blood lowers core temperature and may trigger arrhythmia.
- ▶ **Rigors:** chills and shivering, often with febrile reactions or a bacterially contaminated unit.
- ▶ **Infection transmission:** donor blood may transmit syphilis, hepatitis, toxoplasmosis and HIV/AIDS.
- ▶ Every unit of blood collected in India must test negative for **HIV-1 and HIV-2** before release for transfusion.

Commonest mistakes leading to a transfusion accident

- ▶ **Clerical error** — wrong labelling or identification of the unit.
- ▶ **Confusing terminology** — e.g. asking for "group A serum" instead of "anti-B serum".
- ▶ Staff failing to check the label against the actual laboratory compatibility report.
- ▶ Similarly-named patients in the same ward causing mis-identification.

Investigation of a suspected reaction

- ▶ **Haematological:** intravascular haemolysis shows free haemoglobin and methaemalbumin with reduced haptoglobins.
- ▶ Extravascular haemolysis shows a rise in unconjugated bilirubin.
- ▶ **Urine:** intravascular haemolysis shows haemoglobin, urobilin, urobilinogen and red-cell casts.
- ▶ **Serological:** a 2% saline suspension of the patient's red cells may show agglutinates.
- ▶ The **Coombs (antiglobulin) test** is positive.
- ▶ IgA-specific antibodies may be present in sensitivity reactions; eosinophilia may occur.
- ▶ **Bacteriological:** culture of residual donor blood detects a contaminated or septic unit.

Autopsy findings in a fatal transfusion reaction

- ▶ **Acute intravascular haemolysis:** haemoglobinuric nephrosis — renal tubules show acute necrosis and haemoglobin casts.
- ▶ **Circulatory overload:** oedematous, heavy, wet lungs.
- ▶ **Air embolism:** air in the right ventricle of the heart.
- ▶ Cause of death is confirmed by re-grouping and cross-matching the recipient's blood against the donor-bag blood.
- ▶ This is correlated with the serological, bacteriological, clinical and clerical records.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Flow-chart of transfusion-hazard classification** — box "HAZARDS OF BLOOD TRANSFUSION" branching into two columns.
 - **Immunological:** intravascular haemolysis; extravascular haemolysis; sensitivity to WBC/platelets/plasma.
 - **Non-immunological:** circulatory overload; coagulation defects; hyperkalaemia; citrate toxicity; infection (syphilis/hepatitis/toxoplasmosis/AIDS); air embolism; hypothermia; rigors.
- ▶ **Mechanism sketch of an acute intravascular haemolytic reaction** — labels in sequence: donor red cells → recipient anti-A/anti-B antibody → intravascular lysis → free haemoglobin → haemoglobinuria → renal tubular casts (haemoglobinuric nephrosis) → shock / DIC / acute renal failure.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Incompatible (mismatched) blood transfusion is an established cause of sudden death, listed among **iatrogenic causes of sudden death**.
- ▶ A fatal reaction caused by a preventable error (wrong unit, unchecked cross-match, mis-identification) may amount to **negligence**.
- ▶ "Blood transfusion misadventure" is a textbook example of *res ipsa loquitur* — "the thing speaks for itself".
- ▶ A genuinely unforeseeable reaction despite due care may instead be defended as **therapeutic/medical misadventure**.
- ▶ Death caused by a rash or negligent act may attract prosecution under **Section 304A Indian Penal Code (IPC) 1860 (now Section 106 Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita (BNS) 2023)**.
- ▶ A transfusion-related death is an unnatural/medical-care-related death requiring intimation and inquest: **Section 174 / 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 / 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ This is followed by a medico-legal autopsy, with the recipient's and donor-bag blood retained for re-grouping, cross-match and culture.
- ▶ Informed consent, correct patient/unit identification, and complete records (compatibility report, batch numbers) are the doctor's key safeguards and the main evidence at inquiry.
- ▶ Every unit must test negative for **HIV-1 and HIV-2** before issue; failure to screen, or transmission through unscreened blood, raises both negligence and public-health liability.

♦ ♦ ♦

Healing and repair of bony fractures*Asked in: Paper I Apr 2024 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine***Definition and introduction**

- ▶ A **fracture** is a break in the continuity of a bone.

- ▶ **Fracture healing** is the biological process that reunites the broken ends and restores structural integrity.
- ▶ Healing passes through four overlapping stages: inflammation, soft callus, hard callus, and remodelling.
- ▶ Bone heals by **regeneration of true bone**, not by a fibrous scar, so the repaired site becomes indistinguishable from the original.
- ▶ Forensic value is twofold.
 - It lets the doctor estimate the **age (dating) of a fracture**.
 - It helps distinguish **antemortem from postmortem fractures** (vitality).
- ▶ This answers RGUHS/NMC competency FM5.4 — healing of injury and fracture of bones with medico-legal importance.

Types of fracture

- ▶ **By skin breach:**
 - **Closed (simple):** no overlying skin wound.
 - **Open (compound):** a wound communicates with the fracture.
 - **Complicated:** associated injury to a vessel, nerve, or viscus.
- ▶ **By completeness:**
 - **Complete:** entire cross-section broken.
 - **Greenstick:** one cortex breaks, the other bends; seen in children because their bone is soft and pliable.
 - **Lead-pipe:** one cortex is compressed/bulged with a crack on the other side.
 - **Fissured (hairline/capillary):** a fine crack with no separation; common in the skull.
- ▶ **By line/mechanism:** transverse, oblique, **spiral** (bone twisted apart), **comminuted** (more than two fragments), **impacted** (one fragment driven into another), **depressed** (skull), **avulsion** (a fragment torn off at a ligament/tendon attachment), and **compression** (vertebral body).
- ▶ **Eponymous fractures:** **Colles'** (lower radius, dorsal "silver-fork" deformity), **Smith's** (reverse Colles'), **Pott's** (bimalleolar ankle), **Bennett's** (base of first metacarpal), **Monteggia's/parry fracture** (proximal ulna with radial-head dislocation — a classic defence injury), and **hangman's fracture** (traumatic spondylolisthesis of C2).
- ▶ **Pathological fracture:** occurs through bone weakened by disease (tumour, osteomalacia, osteomyelitis); trivial or no trauma suffices.

Primary versus secondary bone healing

- ▶ **Primary (direct/osteonal) healing:**
 - Occurs when the fracture ends are **closely apposed and rigidly stabilised** (skull fractures, plate-fixed fractures).
 - Callus is **minimal or absent**.
 - Lamellar bone is laid directly across the fracture line by osteoclast/osteoblast cutting cones.
- ▶ **Secondary (indirect) healing:**

- Occurs when the fracture ends are **separated or mobile** — the usual situation, e.g. a fracture in plaster.
 - Abundant, visible **callus** is the hallmark.
 - Callus (cartilage plus woven bone) forms first and is then replaced by true bone.
- Skull and rigidly fixed bones heal without visible callus, so age is read from edge changes instead.

The four stages of (secondary) fracture healing

Stage	Time frame	Key events
1. Inflammation (haematoma)	Up to 7 days	Haematoma clots by 12–24 h; bone ends necrose by ~2 days as neutrophils move in; macrophages clear debris and granulation tissue forms by 3–4 days; new vessels and fibroblasts appear by ~7 days.
2. Soft-callus formation	1–4 weeks	A soft callus of connective tissue and cartilage bridges the gap, sited as external (subperiosteal), intracortical, or intramedullary.
3. Hard-callus formation	4–12 weeks	Woven bone (immature, randomly arranged, mechanically weak) replaces the soft callus; its completion is clinical union .
4. Remodelling	12 weeks–2 years	Woven bone is remodelled into stronger lamellar bone by osteoclastic resorption and osteoblastic deposition, restoring shape; this is radiological/bony union .
Pseudoarthrosis (false joint)	Months–years	Adverse outcome: fibrous (non-osseous) union with a false joint from inadequate immobilisation, movement, infection, or poor blood supply. Related failures: delayed union, non-union, mal-union.

- **Cellular order** (also helps date the injury): polymorphs first, then macrophages, then fibroblasts, then osteoblasts/chondroblasts, and finally osteoclasts during remodelling.

Radiological dating of a fracture (in the living)

- Serial X-rays date a fracture in the living; callus is the most reliable marker.
- Timings below are for a healing forearm (upper-limb) long bone; **lower-limb fractures take roughly twice as long**.
- **1 week**: rounding of fracture margins.
- **Under 2 weeks**: subperiosteal new-bone formation.
- **2 weeks**: soft callus appears as a faint radiolucent mass.

- ▶ **4 weeks:** calcified callus appears.
- ▶ **4–6 weeks:** fracture-margin resorption and sclerosis.
- ▶ **8 weeks:** partial bridging; fracture gap decreases.
- ▶ **10 weeks:** complete bridging; callus density equals surrounding cortex (hard callus); subperiosteal bone incorporates into the cortex.
- ▶ **12 weeks:** remodelling begins.
- ▶ **Skull fractures are different** — they heal without visible external callus because periosteal vessels are damaged.
 - Edges stick together by about **1 week**.
 - Pitting, lime-salt deposition, and slight edge erosion by **14 days**.
 - Bands of new bone cross the fissure by **3–5 weeks**.
 - Edges become smooth by **3 months**.
 - A large gap fills only with fibrous tissue, not bone.

Antemortem versus postmortem fractures (vitality)

- ▶ Distinguishing the two rests on signs of **vital reaction** — the living body's tissue response to injury, present only if the injury occurred before death.
- ▶ **Antemortem fracture:**
 - Blood effusion is present, penetrating further into muscle as the fracture ages.
 - Surrounding muscle is lacerated, oedematous, and contused.
 - Signs of healing (callus, granulation tissue) are present if survival was long enough.
 - Histology shows active cellular infiltration — polymorphs, then macrophages, then fibroblasts.
 - **Fat embolism** may occur.
- ▶ **Postmortem fracture:** none of the above — no effusion, no muscle reaction, no healing, no active infiltration, no fat embolism.
- ▶ **Caveat:** a fracture made shortly before or after death looks almost the same; the antemortem one just shows more effused blood, penetrating further. Vital reaction is unreliable in the agonal/perimortem period.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — Four stages of fracture healing** (longitudinal section of a long bone): label the fracture line, haematoma, necrotic bone ends, periosteum, external/intracortical/intramedullary callus, soft (cartilaginous) callus, hard callus (woven bone), remodelled lamellar bone, restored medullary cavity, osteoblasts/chondroblasts, osteoclasts, and new blood vessels.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — Calcified callus on X-ray** (a 4-week-old long-bone fracture): label the fracture line, subperiosteal new-bone formation, calcified (bridging) callus, and sclerotic fracture margins.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Dating a fracture** shows whether it fits the alleged time of assault, accident, or torture — central to hurt cases and expert testimony.
- ▶ **Antemortem versus postmortem distinction** confirms whether a fracture, and the death, resulted from violence in life or from postmortem handling.
- ▶ **Child abuse (battered baby/Caffey syndrome)**: fractures of different ages on one skeletal survey — fresh ones beside healing, callused ones — mark repeated non-accidental injury.
- ▶ **Foetal/birth injury**: a foetal fracture's age should match the alleged trauma; in a living foetus or neonate it is dated by X-ray to separate birth trauma from later injury.
- ▶ **Custodial torture**: chronic pain from faulty, mal-united healing is a recognised sign of custodial torture.
- ▶ **Fatal complications to seek at autopsy**: fat embolism, haemorrhagic shock, infection/abscess, deep-vein thrombosis with pulmonary embolism, and crush/compartment syndrome.
- ▶ A fracture is statutorily **grievous hurt**: simple hurt is **Section 114 BNS 2023**, grievous hurt (fracture or dislocation of a bone or tooth) is **Section 116 BNS 2023** — earlier **Section 320 IPC 1860**.
- ▶ The report on a fracture's age and nature is **expert opinion under Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ A death involving fractures needs inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Histochemistry*Asked in: Paper I Oct 2017 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine***Definition / Introduction**

- ▶ **Histochemistry** uses chemical reactions between reagents and tissue constituents to localise those constituents exactly on a slide.
- ▶ **Enzyme histochemistry** is the most forensically useful type.
- ▶ The enzyme acts on a supplied substrate.

- ▶ This forms an insoluble, coloured deposit exactly where the enzyme is active.
- ▶ Colour intensity reflects the intensity of enzyme activity at that site.
- ▶ Its main forensic use is **timing (ageing) of wounds**.
- ▶ It also helps decide if a wound is **antemortem** (inflicted while alive) or **postmortem** (inflicted after death) — the "**vital reaction**."
- ▶ Enzyme changes appear before any change is visible on routine light microscopy.

Principle and technique

- ▶ If the reaction product is colourless, it is coupled with a dye (e.g. a diazonium salt) to make it visible.
- ▶ **Histochemistry vs immunohistochemistry (IHC)**: histochemistry uses plain chemical reactions; IHC uses a labelled antibody against a specific antigen, visualised by a fluorescent dye, enzyme label, or colloidal gold.
- ▶ **Specimen must be frozen, never formalin-fixed** — formalin destroys enzyme activity.
- ▶ Excise the wound with a 1–2 cm rim of surrounding skin and split the sample:
 - One part → **10% formalin**, paraffin sections, **H&E stain** (routine histology).
 - Other part → **snap-frozen on dry ice** (for enzyme histochemistry).
- ▶ Take at least about **2 g of skin free of fat**.
- ▶ Always take a **control sample** of uninjured skin — the diagnosis rests on enzyme/amine levels being clearly higher in the wound than in the control.

The two reaction zones around a wound

- ▶ Two concentric zones form around an injury in living tissue — the structural basis of the vital reaction.
- ▶ **Central zone** (right at the wound edge, ~0.2–0.5 mm wide): enzyme activity **decreased or absent** (tissue becomes necrotic) = **negative vital reaction**.
- ▶ **Peripheral zone** (just beyond the central zone, ~0.1–0.3 mm wide): enzyme activity **increased** during repair = **positive vital reaction**.
- ▶ An **antemortem** wound develops this positive peripheral zone.
- ▶ A **postmortem** wound does not develop it.
- ▶ Memory aid: the smaller (peripheral) zone shows the higher activity.

Timing wounds by histochemistry

- ▶ Enzymes and vasoactive amines (histamine, serotonin) appear in a fixed sequence after injury.
- ▶ This allows approximate dating of wounds inflicted before death.
- ▶ Most useful for wounds in the **last hour** before death.
- ▶ Contributes to timing wounds inflicted **1 to 8 hours** before death.

Time after wounding	Marker that appears
10 minutes	Calpains, cathepsins, serotonin

Time after wounding	Marker that appears
30 minutes	Histamine
1 hour	ATPase and esterase
2 hours	Aminopeptidase
4 hours	Acid phosphatase
8 hours	Alkaline phosphatase

- ▶ Cathepsins rise almost immediately, detectable within 5–10 minutes.
- ▶ Serotonin peaks by about 10 minutes.
- ▶ Histamine peaks by 20–30 minutes.
- ▶ **Antemortem proof thresholds:** histamine at least 50% **higher**, serotonin at least 100% (**double**), than the control skin.
- ▶ Changes persist for **a few days after death** if the tissue is **refrigerated** (prevents autolysis, i.e. self-digestion of tissue).
- ▶ Reactions are similar across body sites and are **not blocked by antiseptics** or other treatment.
- ▶ **Less reliable** in **cachexia**, **senility**, and **severe illness** (poor reparative response), and in **contusions or diffuse/multiple injuries** (the two clean zones fail to form).

Immunohistochemical (IHC) correlation of wound age

- ▶ Once enzyme markers plateau, IHC of inflammatory and matrix proteins extends the dating window.
- ▶ **P-selectin** at 5 minutes — earliest marker, appears on activated endothelium as leukocytes are recruited.
- ▶ **Fibronectin** at 10–20 minutes.
- ▶ **E-selectin** at 1 hour.
- ▶ **ICAM-1** (Inter-Cellular Adhesion Molecule-1) at 1.5 hours.
- ▶ **Tenascin** at 2 days.
- ▶ **Collagen III, V, VI** at 3 days.
- ▶ **Collagen I** at 5 days.

Other forensic applications

- ▶ **Early myocardial infarction:** an infarct less than about **12 hours** old is invisible to the naked eye and on routine H&E.
 - Enzyme histochemistry is the **most reliable method** to detect it.
 - A slice of heart is dipped in **triphenyl tetrazolium chloride (TTC)**.
 - Viable myocardium retains **lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)** and stains **brick-red**.
 - The infarcted zone, depleted of oxidative enzymes, stays **pale/unstained**.
- ▶ **Burn blister:** enzyme activity is **present** in the wall of a vital (antemortem) blister and **absent** in a postmortem blister.

- ▶ **Ligature mark:** a vital mark shows **increased serotonin and histamine**, supporting that constriction was applied during life.
- ▶ **Seminal stains:** **acid phosphatase** is **500–1000 times higher** in semen than in any other body fluid.
 - The **acid phosphatase (Brentamine/Walker) test** is the commonest presumptive test for semen (produces a purple azo dye).
 - Finding spermatozoa (e.g. the *Christmas-tree stain*) remains the confirmatory test.
- ▶ **Autopsy special stains:** **Verhoeff–van Gieson** for elastic tissue of coronary arteries/valves, **trichrome** for cardiac conduction tissue, **methenamine silver** for organisms in valve vegetations.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Cross-section of a skin wound showing the two histochemical zones.** Labels: *Epidermis, Dermis, Wound edge, Central (necrotic) zone 0.2–0.5 mm — decreased activity = negative vital reaction, Peripheral zone 0.1–0.3 mm — increased activity = positive vital reaction, Normal (control) skin beyond.*
- ▶ **Timeline of wound-age markers.** Horizontal time axis: *10 min — serotonin/cathepsins, 30 min — histamine, 1 h — ATPase + esterase, 2 h — aminopeptidase, 4 h — acid phosphatase, 8 h — alkaline phosphatase.*

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Proving a wound was inflicted **antemortem** versus **postmortem** is a central forensic question.
- ▶ The positive vital-reaction zone, and raised histamine/serotonin, give objective microscopic support when naked-eye signs (gaping, haemorrhage, extravasation, coagulation) are equivocal.
- ▶ Approximate timing of wounds (and of myocardial infarction) helps reconstruct the **sequence of events**.
- ▶ It also helps test or corroborate eyewitness and accused accounts.
- ▶ Only an **approximate** time can be given.
- ▶ A negative result does **not** prove a wound is postmortem — the person may have died soon after injury, the wound may be small, or circulatory failure may have blunted the reaction.
- ▶ In the **perimortem (supravital) period** — the brief window around death when tissue can still react even though the heart has stopped — enzyme histochemistry may still be positive.
- ▶ Such wounds can therefore mimic antemortem injuries, so the opinion must be qualified accordingly.
- ▶ These findings go before the court as **expert opinion** under **Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ They also feed the medico-legal report and inquest, governed by **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The frozen and formalin-fixed specimens must be preserved and labelled with an intact **chain of custody**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Hyoid bone — anatomy and medico-legal aspects

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ **Hyoid bone:** a small, U-shaped (horseshoe-shaped) bone in the front of the neck at the level of the third cervical vertebra (C3).
- ▶ Suspended between the mandible above and the larynx below.
- ▶ Held in place by muscles and ligaments, not by a joint.
- ▶ It is the only bone in the body that does not articulate with any other bone.
- ▶ Forms the bony skeleton of the root of the tongue.
- ▶ Forensically important because its fracture is one of the most valuable autopsy findings in deaths from pressure on the neck, especially throttling (manual strangulation).

Gross anatomy

- ▶ **Shape:** U-shaped, with **five parts** — a central **body**, two **greater cornua (horns)**, and two **lesser cornua**.
- ▶ Greater cornua project backward and upward from the body.
- ▶ Lesser cornua project upward from the body–greater-horn junction.
- ▶ Lesser cornua are slender and may be cut accidentally during rough neck dissection — a postmortem artefact, not a real injury.
- ▶ **Suspension:** held above by the suprahyoid muscles and the stylohyoid ligament.
- ▶ Connected below to the thyroid cartilage by the thyrohyoid membrane and ligaments.
- ▶ Being mobile rather than fixed, it moves up and down during swallowing and speech.
- ▶ **Palpation:** the body is hard to feel; the greater horn is felt behind the front of sternomastoid, about 3 cm below the angle of the mandible and 1.5 cm from the midline.
- ▶ The tip of the greater cornu is the part most often fractured.
- ▶ **Ossification:** develops from **six centres** — two for the body, one for each greater and each lesser cornu.
- ▶ The greater cornua fuse with the body late, at about **40–45 years**.
- ▶ Before fusion the junctions are cartilaginous and mobile — must not be mistaken for a fracture.
- ▶ This late fusion is why hyoid fracture is far commoner in older subjects; a younger, unfused hyoid tends to spring rather than break.

Forensic relevance

- ▶ Chief importance: fracture in deaths from pressure on the neck.
- ▶ Also used as a corroborative marker in skeletal age estimation.
- ▶ A fractured hyoid strongly suggests throttling and is a cardinal finding sought in any pressure-on-neck death.
- ▶ Fracture is **not invariable** — seen in about **50–70% of victims above 40 years**, uncommon in the young.

- Absence of a fracture does **not** rule out strangulation.

Classification of hyoid fractures

Type	Mechanism	Typically seen in	Displacement
Inward (adduction)	Greater horns squeezed together by grasping fingers	Throttling	Inward; outer periosteum torn
Anteroposterior (abduction/outward)	Hyoid forced backward against the spine	Hanging (also ligature strangulation, run-over RTAs, blows to neck)	Outward; inner periosteum torn
Avulsion (traction/tug)	Traction via thyrohyoid ligaments from violent thyroid-cartilage movement	Hanging / sudden forceful neck movement	Pulled away at ligament attachment

- **Inward (adduction) fracture** is the **most diagnostic finding of throttling**.
 - Breaks within about 1 cm of the tip of the greater cornu.
 - Outer periosteum torn, inner intact — fragment bends inward but not outward on testing.
 - May be bilateral.
- **Anteroposterior (abduction) fracture** is characteristic of hanging.
 - Divergence of the horns increases and the fragment displaces outward.
 - Inner periosteum torn, so the fragment moves outward but not inward.
 - When compression is severe, the fragment may fully detach.
- **Avulsion (traction) fracture** results from traction through the thyrohyoid ligaments.

Demonstration, examination and pitfalls

- Examine the hyoid **in situ** in the neck — the direction of displacement (inward vs outward) is the key diagnostic clue.
- Preserve the bone with its attached soft tissue if it is kept as an exhibit.
- In putrefied or macerated bodies, soft tissue may be lost, making the direction of displacement impossible to judge.
- **Toluidine blue test**: apply 1% aqueous toluidine blue to the suspected fracture site for about 15 seconds, then wash with water.
- Fractured sites stain bluish under a stereomicroscope.
- **Radiology**: X-ray the neck in lateral and oblique views before dissection to show hyoid (and cricoid) fracture.
- **Vital reaction**: focal haemorrhage at the fracture site (visible or on histology) confirms the fracture is antemortem, separating it from a postmortem artefact.
- **Mimics to avoid**:
 - Normal cartilaginous separations, and incomplete bony union in the young, are not fractures.

- **Triticeous cartilage** — a normal nodule in the thyrohyoid ligament — can mimic a fracture of the thyroid cartilage's superior horn; it is freely movable.
- Artefactual fractures arise from rough neck dissection, the neck striking a hard edge during handling, or undertaker mishandling.
- In burnt bodies, the cooked, fragile hyoid may fracture spontaneously or with the gentlest manipulation.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Throttling:** an inward (adduction) fracture of a greater horn near its tip is the most diagnostic skeletal finding.
- ▶ Associated findings: neck bruises, crescentic nail abrasions, bruising/rupture of neck muscles, congestion above the level of compression, and thyroid cartilage fracture.
- ▶ **Cricoid cartilage fracture is almost pathognomonic of throttling.**
- ▶ **Hanging:** gives the anteroposterior/abduction (outward) pattern; hyoid fracture is less common here than in throttling, and thyroid/superior-horn injuries predominate.
- ▶ Hyoid fracture may occur in hanging but is uncommon in ligature strangulation, whereas thyroid/larynx fractures are commoner in strangulation.
- ▶ An unnatural or suspicious neck-pressure death requires a police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**, or a magisterial inquiry under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)** for a custodial or otherwise suspicious death.
- ▶ Such a death is prosecuted as **murder under Section 103 BNS 2023 (formerly Section 302 IPC 1860)**, or as **culpable homicide not amounting to murder under Section 105 BNS 2023 (formerly Section 304 IPC 1860)**.
- ▶ Culpable homicide itself is defined under **Section 100 BNS 2023 (formerly Section 299 IPC 1860)**, with a sudden-fight exception under **Section 101, Exception 4, BNS 2023 (formerly Section 300 Exception 4 IPC 1860)**.
- ▶ The forensic expert's opinion on the fracture and its mechanism is admissible as expert evidence under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ **Doctor's duties:** dissect the neck in a bloodless field (remove brain and neck organs first to drain the vessels), examine the hyoid in situ, palpate for the bone, and check for haemorrhage in the thyrohyoid ligament.
- ▶ Confirm any fracture is antemortem, demonstrate it with toluidine blue and X-ray, preserve the hyoid with its soft tissue, photograph it, and give a reasoned opinion on mechanism and manner of death (homicidal/suicidal/accidental) to the investigating officer and court.
- ▶ **Age estimation:** ossification of the laryngeal cartilages/hyoid, and fusion of the greater cornu with the body (~40–45 years), corroborate skeletal age determination in later decades.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — Anterior view of the hyoid.** Label body, greater horn (left/right), lesser horn (left/right), thyrohyoid membrane/ligament (below), stylohyoid ligament (above), and the overall U-shape. Mark the greater-horn landmark: 3 cm below the angle of the mandible, 1.5 cm from midline, behind sternomastoid.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — Fracture mechanisms.** Paired sketch: (a) inward/adduction — horns squeezed together, fragment displaced inward, seen in throttling; (b) anteroposterior/abduction — hyoid driven backward, fragment displaced outward, seen in hanging. Mark the periosteal tear (outer in adduction, inner in abduction).



Hypostatic pneumonia

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2017 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Hypostatic pneumonia** is inflammatory consolidation of the **dependent (lowermost) parts of the lungs**.
- ▶ It develops in patients who lie immobile in one position for a long time.
- ▶ The typical patient is **supine, debilitated, or unconscious**.
- ▶ *Hypostasis* means pooling of blood and fluid in the lowermost parts of the body under gravity.
- ▶ The word combines this with *pneumonia* (lung inflammation).
- ▶ It matters in forensic medicine for three reasons.
- ▶ **Reason 1:** it is a recognised **delayed ("remote") cause of death** after injury, poisoning, or asphyxia.
- ▶ **Reason 2:** it can make an assailant or poisoner liable for a death that occurs days or weeks after the original assault.
- ▶ **Reason 3:** at autopsy, **postmortem hypostasis (lividity) of the dorsal lung** can mimic true hypostatic pneumonia and must be told apart from it.

Pathophysiology — why the dependent lung consolidates

- ▶ **Gravitational pooling:** in a person lying still, blood and fluid pool in the **dependent lung** — the posterior/basal segments in a supine patient.
- ▶ This causes **venous congestion and oedema**, which is the soil on which infection grows.
- ▶ **Stasis of secretions:** immobility, shallow breathing, and a weak cough let mucus build up in the dependent bronchi and alveoli.
- ▶ This leads to poor ventilation of the dependent lung.
- ▶ **Loss of protective reflexes:** in the unconscious, sedated, or terminally ill patient, cough and swallowing reflexes are depressed.
- ▶ Retained secretions (and sometimes regurgitated material) may be aspirated, overlapping with aspiration pneumonia.

- ▶ **Depressed general vitality:** illness, injury, blood loss, malnutrition, or old age lower the body's resistance.
- ▶ This lets resident and environmental organisms colonise the stagnant, oedematous dependent lung.
- ▶ **Superadded bacterial infection:** the congested, poorly aerated lung develops **patchy, basal/posterior bronchopneumonia** rather than lobar pneumonia.

Predisposing factors

- ▶ **Prolonged bed rest** is the single most important factor — chronic illness, immobilised fractures, stroke, paralysis, or post-operative confinement.
- ▶ **Old age and severe debility**, with feeble respiratory effort and a weak cough.
- ▶ **Unconsciousness or coma** from any cause — head injury, poisoning, or asphyxial brain damage.
- ▶ **Severe injury or major fractures**, especially of the lower limb, pelvis, or spine, that force immobility.
- ▶ **Rib fractures** that splint respiration.
- ▶ **Corrosive (acid/alkali) poisoning** and other serious poisonings, where the patient survives the acute phase but stays bedridden.
- ▶ **Survivors of partial asphyxia** (attempted hanging or strangulation) who remain unconscious.
- ▶ **Chronic debilitating disease, malnutrition, and post-surgical states.**

Clinical features and autopsy findings

- ▶ **In the living:** low-grade fever, increasing breathlessness, cough with mucopurulent sputum, basal crepitations, and hypoxia.
- ▶ These features are often **insidious and easily missed** in an already sick patient.
- ▶ **At autopsy:** consolidation is confined to or worst in the **dependent (posterior and basal) parts of both lungs**.
- ▶ The affected lung is firm, heavier than normal, and dark red to greyish.
- ▶ The cut surface shows **congestion, oedema, and patchy bronchopneumonic consolidation**.
- ▶ Mucopurulent fluid can be expressed from the cut bronchi.
- ▶ Consolidated lung tends to **sink in water** because it has lost its normal buoyancy.
- ▶ **On microscopy:** a neutrophil-rich inflammatory exudate fills the bronchioles and surrounding alveoli, on a background of congestion and oedema.
- ▶ This genuine inflammatory reaction is the key to telling true disease apart from a postmortem artefact.

Hypostatic pneumonia versus postmortem lung hypostasis

- ▶ At autopsy, **postmortem hypostasis (livor mortis)** also settles in the **dorsal lung** of a body lying supine.
- ▶ It can closely mimic pneumonia, so the two findings must be separated.
- ▶ The key rule: **hypostasis shows no inflammatory exudate; true infective congestion does.**

- **Histopathology is decisive** — a genuine antemortem inflammatory cellular exudate confirms hypostatic pneumonia, while pure gravitational staining shows none.

Feature	Hypostatic pneumonia	Postmortem lung hypostasis
Nature	True inflammatory consolidation	Passive gravitational pooling after death
Consistency	Firm, consolidated, sinks in water	Crepitant, spongy, floats
Cut surface	Mucopurulent exudate expressible	Only blood-stained fluid
Inflammatory exudate	Present (neutrophils on microscopy)	Absent
Timing	Develops during life, over days	Appears after death

Medico-legal significance

- **Delayed cause of death:** hypostatic pneumonia is a classic **remote cause of death** after injury or poisoning.
- It is specifically recognised as a delayed cause of death in **corrosive poisoning**, and among the complications of "depressed general vitality."
- **Assailant/poisoner liability:** if the original injury or poisoning confined the victim to bed and hypostatic pneumonia followed, the assailant remains liable.
- The law takes the victim "as found" — an accused is answerable even if the victim was already unwell when attacked.
- This engages **Section 299/300 IPC 1860 (now Sections 100/101 BNS 2023)** and **Section 304/302 IPC (now Sections 105/103 BNS 2023)**.
- **Chain of causation** must be established by the autopsy surgeon, linking the terminal pneumonia back to the original injury or poisoning.
- This expert opinion is given under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- **Diagnostic care at autopsy:** failing to distinguish true hypostatic pneumonia from postmortem lung hypostasis can wrongly attribute or wrongly exclude a cause of death; histology resolves it.
- **Asphyxia survivors:** in partial hanging or strangulation, unconsciousness leads to hypostatic pneumonia, which causes further anoxia, which can damage vital centres and end in death.
- **Companion lesions of the bedridden** are often documented together at autopsy as evidence of prolonged immobility.
 - **Decubitus (pressure) ulcers** from pressure necrosis over bony prominences.
 - **Pyelonephritis and cystitis.**
- In an institutionalised, elderly, or dependent person, these findings together may also raise the question of **neglect**.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Posterior view of both lungs in a supine patient**, showing shaded dependent consolidation.
- ▶ Labels: apex (spared, well-aerated); posterior/basal dependent zone (hypostatic consolidation); direction of gravity; pooling of blood and secretions; diaphragmatic surface.
- ▶ **Two-panel comparison**: "antemortem hypostatic pneumonia" versus "postmortem lung hypostasis."
- ▶ Labels for each panel: distribution (patchy-firm vs uniform-stained); cut surface (mucopurulent exudate vs blood-stained fluid); float or sink in water; microscopy (neutrophilic exudate present vs absent).



Immune-histochemistry of wound healing

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Immunohistochemistry (IHC)**: localisation of antigens (proteins) in a tissue section using labelled antibodies.
- ▶ The antigen–antibody binding is made visible by a fluorescent dye, an enzyme, or colloidal gold.
- ▶ Four techniques study a wound — gross examination, histopathology (H&E stain), enzyme histochemistry, and IHC.
- ▶ **Together they answer two questions**: is the wound antemortem or postmortem — judged by the vital reaction, a living tissue's response to injury — and how old is the wound?
- ▶ IHC proteins appear in a fixed order after a vital injury, so IHC ages a wound more precisely than gross or routine microscopy alone.

Principle and technique

- ▶ **History**: Albert H. Coons and colleagues first labelled antibodies with a fluorescent dye in the 1950s; enzyme labels and colloidal gold followed later.
- ▶ **Core principle**: an antibody raised against the target protein binds wherever that protein is present, and the bound antibody is then made visible by a coloured or fluorescent signal.
- ▶ **Indirect (two-step) method — the one most used**:
 - The section is first treated with an unlabelled primary antibody against the target antigen.
 - A secondary antibody carrying an enzyme label, usually horseradish peroxidase (HRPO), then attaches to the primary antibody.
 - Diaminobenzidine (DAB) reacts with the HRPO to deposit a brown coloured product exactly at the antigen site.
- ▶ **Immunofluorescence**: the same steps, but the antibody carries a fluorophore (fluorescein or rhodamine) read under a fluorescence microscope.

- ▶ **Key advantage:** IHC can demonstrate any protein, including enzymes, and works on routine formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tissue, so archived autopsy blocks remain usable.
- ▶ **IHC versus enzyme histochemistry:** IHC uses an antibody to demonstrate a protein; enzyme histochemistry instead lets an enzyme already in the tissue act on a substrate, leaving a coloured deposit at the site of its activity.
- ▶ The two are complementary, not interchangeable.

Wound healing — the basis for timing

- ▶ **Primary (first-intention) healing:** a clean, apposed incised wound; rapid re-epithelialisation, minimal granulation tissue, fine scar.
- ▶ **Secondary (second-intention) healing:** an open wound with gaping edges, such as a laceration; more intense inflammation, much more granulation tissue, wound contraction, and a larger scar.
- ▶ **Third-intention (delayed primary) healing:** a contaminated wound left open for about 3 days, then closed as a primary closure.
- ▶ **Repair sequence (in order):**
 - **Haemostasis:** vasoconstriction and clot formation.
 - **Inflammation:** neutrophils first, then macrophages.
 - **Proliferation:** fibroblasts, angiogenesis, granulation tissue, re-epithelialisation.
 - **Maturation:** collagen remodelling into a scar.
- ▶ The proteins detected by IHC track this exact sequence.

IHC markers for wound age — the core of the answer

- ▶ These proteins appear in a vital wound in a fixed order, letting IHC age the wound.
- ▶ **Postmortem wounds do not develop this sequence**, so a positive marker also proves the wound is antemortem.

Age of wound	Marker (IHC)
5 minutes	P-selectin (earliest marker)
10–20 minutes	Fibronectin
1 hour	E-selectin
1.5 hours	ICAM-1
2 days	Tenascin
3 days	Collagen III, V, VI
5 days	Collagen I (mature scar)

- ▶ **Selectins** are cell-adhesion molecules (CAMs) — surface proteins that let cells stick to each other or to the vessel wall.
- ▶ **P-selectin** sits on activated endothelium and recruits leukocytes first, which is why it is the earliest marker.

- ▶ The order runs in three logical stages: adhesion molecules first (selectins, ICAM-1), then matrix glycoproteins (fibronectin, tenascin), then collagens (III/V/VI, and finally I).

Complementary findings: histopathology and enzyme histochemistry

- ▶ **H&E timeline — key stages:**
 - Fibrin clot forms within minutes.
 - Neutrophils appear by 15–30 minutes, replaced by macrophages by 2–3 hours.
 - Epidermis starts spreading by 15 hours.
 - Vascularised granulation tissue forms by 72 hours.
 - New collagen fibrils appear by 4–5 days.
 - Scar becomes dense and avascular after 2 weeks.
- ▶ **Enzyme histochemistry** shows changes before histopathology becomes visible, so it is valuable in very fresh wounds.
- ▶ A vital wound develops two zones around it.
- ▶ **Central (negative) zone:** ~0.2–0.5 mm wide, necrotic, decreased enzyme activity.
- ▶ **Peripheral (positive) zone:** ~0.1–0.3 mm wide, increased enzyme activity — the true positive vital reaction.
- ▶ Postmortem wounds do not develop the positive zone.
- ▶ **Enzyme/amine timing:**
 - Calpains, cathepsins and serotonin appear by ~10 minutes.
 - Histamine appears by ~20–30 minutes.
 - ATPase, esterase, aminopeptidase, and acid and alkaline phosphatase follow over the next ~1–8 hours.
- ▶ **Biochemical proof of antemortem origin:** histamine at least 50% higher, and serotonin at least twice (100% higher), than in a control sample of adjacent uninjured skin.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Indirect immunohistochemistry:** tissue section → antigen on the cell → primary antibody bound to antigen → HRPO-labelled secondary antibody → DAB substrate → brown coloured signal. Add a side panel for immunofluorescence: primary antibody carrying a fluorescent tag on the antigen.
- ▶ **Two zones of vital reaction (skin cross-section):** label epidermis, dermis, wound edge, the central negative zone (necrotic, 0.2–0.5 mm), and the peripheral positive zone (increased enzyme activity, 0.1–0.3 mm).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Vital reaction — antemortem versus postmortem wound — is judged from gross examination, histopathology, enzyme histochemistry, and IHC together.
- ▶ Positive IHC markers and a positive enzyme zone indicate a vital (antemortem) wound; their absence supports postmortem origin.

- ▶ This distinction matters when a body is placed on a railway track, or mutilated, after death to mislead investigators.
- ▶ **Caveats — state these to avoid over-interpretation:**
 - White cells can migrate for a few hours after cardiac arrest, so a leukocytic "vital reaction" alone is unreliable.
 - Absence of a tissue reaction does not prove postmortem origin — death may have followed the injury very quickly, the wound may be too small, or circulatory failure may have blunted the response.
 - Wounds inflicted just before or just after death may look identical even under the microscope.
 - Wound age can never be fixed within narrow limits — give only an approximate range.
- ▶ **Sample handling:** excise the wound with a 1–2 cm rim of tissue, plus a separate control of uninjured skin; fix one part in 10% neutral buffered formalin (H&E, IHC) and fresh-freeze the other (enzyme histochemistry), since formalin destroys enzyme activity.
- ▶ Refrigeration can preserve enzyme changes for a few days after death by preventing autolysis.
- ▶ **Window of usefulness:** enzyme histochemistry best times a wound inflicted 1–8 hours before death; IHC and histopathology extend reliable timing across hours to days.
- ▶ **Other forensic IHC markers:**
 - β -amyloid precursor protein (β -APP) — diffuse axonal injury.
 - Cardiac troponins and complement C9 — early myocardial ischaemia.
 - MAP2 down-regulation — hypoxia/ischaemia (hanging, drowning, carbon-monoxide poisoning).
- ▶ These findings feed into the legal grading of an injury as simple or **grievous hurt**, defined under **Section 320 IPC 1860 (now Section 116 BNS 2023)** — includes fracture/dislocation of a bone or tooth, and any hurt causing severe bodily pain or inability to follow ordinary pursuits for 20 days.
- ▶ Punishment for voluntarily causing grievous hurt was **Section 325 IPC (now Section 117 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ IHC and enzyme findings also help reconstruct the sequence of injuries and survival interval in fatal assaults.



Immuno-histo-chemistry in wound healing

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2016 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition and principle

- ▶ **Immunohistochemistry (IHC)** localises a specific protein (antigen) in a tissue section using a labelled antibody.
- ▶ The antibody binds its antigen through a highly specific antigen–antibody reaction.

- ▶ This binding is then made visible with a marker such as an enzyme, a fluorescent dye, or colloidal gold.
- ▶ In wound healing, injury switches on specific proteins in a fixed, time-dependent sequence.
- ▶ Demonstrating which proteins are present lets the pathologist estimate the **age of a wound**.
- ▶ It also helps decide whether a wound was sustained during life (**vitality**).
- ▶ IHC is the most refined of four wound-ageing tools: gross changes, histopathology, enzyme histochemistry, and IHC.

Technique

- ▶ A **primary antibody** raised against the target protein is applied and binds only that antigen.
- ▶ The bound antibody is revealed directly, or (more commonly) by a labelled **secondary antibody**.
- ▶ **Indirect (chromogenic) IHC**: the secondary antibody carries an enzyme label, classically **horseradish peroxidase (HRPO)**.
- ▶ The chromogen **diaminobenzidine (DAB)** reacts with this enzyme to deposit a brown product exactly at the antigen site.
- ▶ **Immunofluorescence**: the same scheme, but the antibody carries a **fluorophore** (fluorescein or rhodamine), read under a fluorescence microscope.
- ▶ **Albert Coons** and colleagues first used a fluorescent-labelled antibody in the 1950s, founding the technique.
- ▶ IHC uses an *antibody* to demonstrate a protein; enzyme histochemistry uses a *chemical reaction* to demonstrate a cellular component.
- ▶ IHC can therefore demonstrate any protein, including enzymes themselves, giving it the widest scope.
- ▶ For plain IHC, **10% neutral buffered formalin** fixation is suitable.
- ▶ If enzyme histochemistry is also planned, the tissue must instead be **frozen, not formalin-fixed**, since formalin destroys enzyme activity.

The four tools for ageing a wound

- ▶ Wound age is judged from **gross changes, histopathology, enzyme histochemistry, and immunohistochemistry**, used together.
- ▶ **Gross changes** (colour, scabbing, scarring) are useful from hours to weeks.
- ▶ **Histopathology (H&E stain)** shows inflammatory cells and granulation tissue from about 15–30 minutes.
- ▶ **Enzyme histochemistry** on frozen section shows activity from about 10 minutes.
- ▶ **Immunohistochemistry** is the earliest and most specific tool — **P-selectin is detectable from about 5 minutes**.
- ▶ Biochemical markers suit wounds within the last hour before death; enzyme histochemistry suits wounds 1–8 hours before death.
- ▶ IHC pushes detection earlier still and gives sharper specificity, since each marker is one precisely identified protein.

Immunohistochemical markers and wound age

The reparative cascade switches on a reproducible sequence of proteins:

Age of wound	Protein marker
5 minutes	P-selectin
10–20 minutes	Fibronectin
1 hour	E-selectin
1.5 hours	ICAM-1
2 days	Tenascin
3 days	Collagen III, V, VI
5 days	Collagen I

- ▶ **Selectins** are a family of cell-adhesion molecules.
- ▶ **P-selectin** is pre-formed and stored in endothelial cells.
- ▶ It appears on activated endothelium within minutes — the earliest IHC marker of injury.
- ▶ P-selectin drives the **initial rolling and recruitment of leucocytes** to the injury site.
- ▶ **E-selectin** is synthesised later (about 1 hour), marking sustained endothelial activation.
- ▶ **Fibronectin** (10–20 min) is an early matrix glycoprotein laid down for cell adhesion and migration.
- ▶ **ICAM-1** (1.5 h) firmly arrests rolling leucocytes so they can migrate into the tissue.
- ▶ **Tenascin** (2 days) marks the shift into active matrix remodelling and granulation.
- ▶ **Collagen III, V, VI** appear first, at about 3 days, and are progressively replaced by mature **collagen I** from about 5 days onward.
- ▶ The shift from collagen III to collagen I is a useful marker of an older, organising wound.
- ▶ **Other forensic IHC markers of vitality / tissue injury:**
 - **β -amyloid precursor protein** — axonal injury.
 - **Cardiac troponin-C/-T and complement C9** — early myocardial ischaemia.
 - **E-selectin, ICAM-1, lactoferrin, VLA-4** — septicemic ("shock") lung.
 - **Down-regulation of MAP2** — hypoxic-ischaemic states (hanging, drowning, carbon-monoxide poisoning).
 - **Heat-shock proteins** — many toxic conditions.

Correlation with histopathology and enzyme histochemistry

- ▶ **Histopathology timeline (H&E):**
 - Seconds — vasoconstriction.
 - Minutes — fibrin deposition and vasodilatation with increased permeability.
 - 15–30 min — neutrophils appear.
 - 2–3 h — macrophages appear.
 - 4 h — mast cells lose their granules.

- 4–12 h — marked leucocytic infiltration.
- ~15 h — fibroblast mitoses begin.
- 24 h — marginal leucocyte palisade; macrophages now exceed neutrophils.
- 1.5 days — myofibroblasts appear.
- 3 days — granulation tissue and new capillaries form.
- 5 days — collagen forms, re-epithelialisation completes.
- 2 weeks — scar becomes avascular.
- ▶ **Enzyme histochemistry — the "two-zone" reaction** around a vital wound:
 - A **central necrotic zone (0.2–0.5 mm)** shows decreased, negative enzyme activity.
 - A **peripheral zone (0.1–0.3 mm)** beyond it shows increased, positive enzyme activity.
- ▶ **Enzymes appear in this order** as the wound ages:
 - Esterase and ATPase — about 1 hour.
 - Aminopeptidase — about 2 hours.
 - Acid phosphatase — about 4 hours.
 - Alkaline phosphatase — about 8 hours.
- ▶ The earliest changes are biochemical: **cathepsins/calpains and serotonin at about 10 minutes, histamine at about 20–30 minutes.**
- ▶ To prove antemortem origin, histamine should be **at least 50%**, and serotonin **at least double**, the level in control skin.
- ▶ These reactions are absent in postmortem wounds, but can persist a few days after death if the body is **refrigerated**.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Age of injury:** IHC, combined with histopathology and enzyme histochemistry, brackets a wound from minutes to days, corroborating or refuting an alleged time of assault.
- ▶ **Vitality (antemortem vs postmortem):** a vital wound shows the marker cascade and the positive enzyme zone; a postmortem wound does not.
- ▶ This distinguishes injuries inflicted in life from postmortem artefacts — animal or insect feeding, dragging, a body staged as a railway run-over — which is central to murder investigation.
- ▶ Culpable homicide and murder are defined under **Sections 299 & 300 IPC 1860 (now Sections 100 & 101 BNS 2023)**, punishable under **Sections 302 & 304 IPC (now Sections 103 & 105 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ Postmortem examination follows inquest under **Sections 174 & 176 CrPC 1973 (now Sections 194 & 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Expert opinion on wound age or vitality is admissible under **Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ **Limitations:** dating is approximate, never precise.
- ▶ Reaction intensity depends on the severity of injury, vascularity, and any infection or foreign bodies present.

- ▶ Reactions are unreliable in cachexia, senility, or severe illness, and in contused, diffuse, or multiple injuries where no definite zones form.
- ▶ A control of uninjured skin is mandatory, and the sample should be refrigerated to preserve labile markers.
- ▶ Preserve tissue blocks and slides for a second opinion.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Indirect IHC / immunofluorescence schematic:** tissue section with sought antigen; primary antibody; labelled secondary antibody; enzyme label (HRPO); chromogen (DAB); coloured signal — with a parallel arm showing a fluorophore tag and its fluorescence signal.
- ▶ **Wound-age marker time-line:** a horizontal axis from 5 minutes to 5 days, marking P-selectin (5 min), fibronectin (10–20 min), E-selectin (1 h), ICAM-1 (1.5 h), tenascin (2 days), collagen III/V/VI (3 days), and collagen I (5 days).
- ▶ Optionally overlay the enzyme two-zone diagram: central negative (necrotic) zone and peripheral positive (reactive) zone.



Lab diagnosis of HIV-AIDS

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ **AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome)** is the end-stage clinical disease caused by **HIV**, a retrovirus.
- ▶ HIV attaches to the **CD4 receptor** on T-helper lymphocytes and progressively destroys cell-mediated immunity.
- ▶ This exposes the patient to opportunistic infections and malignancies.
- ▶ Clinical features are non-specific, so **laboratory diagnosis is the cornerstone of confirmation**.
- ▶ Diagnosis rests on two pillars: detecting **HIV antibodies in serum**, and identifying **viral DNA/RNA** in infected cells.
- ▶ In practice this means **serology** for screening and confirmation, plus **nucleic-acid (molecular) tests** for early diagnosis, infant diagnosis and monitoring.
- ▶ Every test sits inside a **medico-legal frame**: informed consent, confidentiality, and the HIV and AIDS (Prevention and Control) Act, 2017.

Virology relevant to the tests

- ▶ **Two types:** HIV-1 (worldwide, more virulent) and HIV-2 (mainly West Africa, slower course).
- ▶ Blood must be screened for **both HIV-1 and HIV-2** before it is declared fit for transfusion.
- ▶ HIV infects cells bearing the **CD4 receptor**, chiefly T-helper lymphocytes.
- ▶ **Order of marker appearance after infection:** viral RNA first, then the **p24 core antigen**, then antibody.

- ▶ The **window period** is the gap between infection and a positive test.
- ▶ By antibody testing alone, blood turns positive **2 to 18 months** after infection.
- ▶ Combination antigen-plus-antibody assays and nucleic-acid tests shorten this window markedly.

Laboratory diagnostic strategy (tiered)

- ▶ No diagnosis is made on a **single reactive screening test**.
- ▶ The rule is a sensitive **screening test** first, followed by a different, more specific **confirmatory test**.

Tier	Test	Detects	Role
Screening	ELISA	Antibody ($\pm$ p24 in 4th-gen kits)	First-line, highly sensitive
Screening (field)	Rapid test	Antibody	Point-of-care; used at ICTC, PPTCT, blood banks, emergencies
Antigen	p24 antigen ELISA	p24 core antigen	Detects infection before antibody appears
Combined	4th-generation combo assay	p24 antigen + antibody	Detects acute infection earliest among serology tests
Confirmatory	Western blot	Antibody to specific viral proteins	Classic gold-standard confirmatory test
Confirmatory (alt.)	Second different assay	Antibody	Used in the NACO 3-test algorithm
Molecular	NAT / RT-PCR	Viral DNA/RNA	Window period, infant diagnosis, viral-load monitoring
Immunological	CD4 count	Host CD4 lymphocytes	Staging and monitoring, not diagnosis

- ▶ **ELISA** is the principal screening assay; **4th-generation** kits detect antibody **and** p24 antigen together.
- ▶ **Western blot** separates viral proteins by electrophoresis and reads antibodies against them; the result is positive, negative, or indeterminate depending on which protein bands react.
- ▶ **PCR/NAT** detects viral DNA/RNA directly.
- ▶ It is essential in the **window period**, in **infants of HIV-positive mothers** (maternal antibody crosses the placenta and confuses antibody tests), and for **viral-load monitoring** during antiretroviral therapy.
- ▶ **CD4 count** guides staging, prognosis and starting/monitoring treatment — it does not diagnose HIV.

Specimen and postmortem considerations

- ▶ **Antemortem sample**: serum or plasma is standard; oral-fluid and dried-blood-spot kits exist for rapid testing.

- ▶ **Postmortem diagnosis is valid:** HIV antibodies remain **stable in postmortem blood**, so cadaveric serology can establish HIV status at autopsy.
- ▶ **Autopsy hazard:** HIV stays **viable in blood for up to two months** after death and is **not air-borne**.
- ▶ This makes safe specimen handling, labelling, and universal precautions essential at postmortem examination.
- ▶ **Donor blood is coded:** the donor register is kept separate from the sample, which carries only a code number.
- ▶ **A reactive donor unit is discarded;** in this screening context the donor need not be told the result.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Governing law: the **HIV and AIDS (Prevention and Control) Act, 2017**.
- ▶ **Informed consent (Section 5):** no HIV test, treatment or research may be done on a person without their informed consent.
- ▶ **Confidentiality (Sections 8–9):** a person cannot be compelled to disclose their HIV status except with consent or a court order.
- ▶ A healthcare provider likewise needs the patient's informed consent before disclosing their status.
- ▶ **Partner-notification exception:** disclosure is permitted to the treating healthcare worker, or to a spouse/sexual partner/needle-sharing partner facing significant transmission risk — reflecting the Supreme Court's position in *Mr X v Hospital Z*.
- ▶ **Non-discrimination (Section 3):** the Act, WHO guidance and NACO policy prohibit isolation, quarantine or discrimination in employment, education or healthcare on the basis of HIV status.
- ▶ A fit HIV-positive worker cannot be removed from service on that ground alone.
- ▶ **Consent-exempt testing** is limited to screening of donated **blood, semen, organs or tissue**; a reactive unit is discarded and samples stay code-identified.
- ▶ **Criminal liability for transmission:** a negligent act likely to spread HIV attracts **Section 269 IPC 1860 (now Section 271 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ A malignant (deliberate) act likely to spread HIV attracts **Section 270 IPC 1860 (now Section 272 BNS 2023)** — for example, a person who knowingly marries and transmits HIV.
- ▶ An expert report on HIV testing is tendered in court as **expert opinion under Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ **Occupational duty:** the treating doctor must inform paramedical, mortuary, pathology and crematorium staff so universal precautions are taken.
- ▶ After a needlestick exposure to HIV-positive blood, the seroconversion risk is about **0.3%**.
- ▶ The exposure must be reported, source and recipient blood tested, and post-exposure prophylaxis considered.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — tiered HIV testing algorithm.** Flow: risk/clinical indication → informed consent and pre-test counselling → screening (ELISA/rapid test) → *non-reactive*: report negative, retest if within window period, OR *reactive*: confirmatory test (Western blot/second assay, NACO 3-test algorithm) → *confirmed positive*: post-test counselling, CD4 count, viral-load PCR, link to ART; *indeterminate*: repeat testing or NAT. Side box: window period or infant under 18 months → NAT (DNA/RNA PCR).
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — marker timeline versus window period.** X-axis = weeks from infection; markers appear in order — HIV RNA (NAT) → p24 antigen → antibody (ELISA/Western blot). Shade the window period before antibody positivity and note that the 4th-generation combo assay detects p24 antigen plus antibody together, narrowing that window.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ Diagnosis = antibody detection in serum **plus** identification of viral DNA/RNA — serology plus molecular tests.
- ▶ Two-step principle: sensitive screening (ELISA/rapid) → specific confirmation (Western blot/NACO 3-test algorithm); never diagnose on one reactive screen.
- ▶ Order of marker appearance: HIV RNA first, then p24 antigen, then antibody.
- ▶ Window period is about **2–18 months** by antibody testing, much shorter with NAT or 4th-generation assays.
- ▶ 4th-generation combo ELISA detects p24 antigen **and** antibody together, narrowing the window.
- ▶ PCR/NAT is the test of choice for the window period, infant diagnosis (under 18 months), and viral-load monitoring.
- ▶ CD4 count is for staging and monitoring, not diagnosis.
- ▶ Test both **HIV-1 and HIV-2** before transfusion.
- ▶ HIV antibodies are stable postmortem, so cadaveric serology is valid; HIV stays viable in blood up to two months and is not air-borne.
- ▶ Governing law: HIV and AIDS (Prevention and Control) Act, 2017 — consent (§5), confidentiality/disclosure (§§8–9), non-discrimination (§3); transmission liability **§269/270 IPC 1860 (now §271/272 BNS 2023)**.

**Nosocomial infections in autopsy room**

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ In the autopsy room, a **nosocomial infection** is really an *occupationally acquired infection*.
- ▶ It passes from the cadaver, its body fluids, tissues or instruments to the autopsy team — the prosecutor (the doctor doing the dissection), technician, photographer and attendants.
- ▶ The deceased's infective status is usually **unknown at the time of autopsy**.

- ▶ So every postmortem must be treated as potentially infectious, and **Universal Work Precautions** are mandatory.
- ▶ Classic example: *Laennec* (inventor of the stethoscope) developed a granulomatous lesion of his left forefinger after cutting himself while autopsying a tuberculous patient.

Routes of transmission

- ▶ **Percutaneous inoculation:** the leading route — accidental pricks and cuts from needles, scalpels and saws.
 - Transmits HIV in about **0.3–0.5%** of exposures.
 - Transmits hepatitis B (HBV) **10–30 times more efficiently** than HIV.
- ▶ **Mucocutaneous splash:** body fluid splashing onto the conjunctiva, nose, mouth, or a pre-existing skin break.
- ▶ **Aerosol/droplet inhalation:** generated while cutting bone, especially with an **oscillating bone saw**.
 - Can spread tuberculosis, anthrax, rabies, plague and SARS-CoV-2.
- ▶ **Direct contact:** with infected clothing, discharges or vomit (e.g. cholera, typhoid).
- ▶ **Cross-contamination:** between successive cases via poorly disinfected tables, instruments and trolleys.

High-risk organisms

- ▶ Agents transmissible at autopsy include cholera, meningitis, rabies, tetanus, smallpox, anthrax, plague, tuberculosis, hepatitis B & C, HTLV-I/II and HIV.
- ▶ **HIV:** concentrated in lymphoid tissue and brain (also colon, lungs).
 - Stays viable up to **3 weeks** in tissue and **2 months** in liquid blood.
 - **No airborne transmission.**
- ▶ **Hepatitis B & C:** circulate in blood, concentrated in liver tissue.
 - No airborne spread; HBV transmits more readily than HIV by needle-stick.
- ▶ **Tuberculosis:** cutaneous inoculation gives the **prosector's wart** (anatomist's wart, *verruca necrogenica*) — the classic occupational autopsy infection.
 - Pulmonary TB can also be acquired by aerosol.
- ▶ **Prion disease (CJD):** the agent concentrates in nervous and lymphoid tissue.
 - It spreads only by ingestion, inoculation or transplantation.
 - It resists routine disinfection, autoclaving and formalin fixation.
- ▶ **SARS-CoV-2:** an RNA virus in ACDP risk group 3.
 - Spreads by respiratory aerosol/droplet; RNA is detectable up to ~3 days postmortem.

Biohazard classification (ACDP groups)

- ▶ The **Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens (ACDP)** grades organisms by pathogenicity, worker risk, community-spread risk and availability of prophylaxis.
- ▶ A **high-risk autopsy** is one on a body infected (or likely infected) with a **Group 3 or 4** organism.

Group	Disease severity	Community spread	Prophylaxis	Examples
1	Unlikely to cause disease	Negligible	—	Non-pathogens
2	May cause disease	Unlikely	Usually available	Adenovirus, herpesvirus
3	Severe disease	Possible	Usually available	HBV, HIV, TB, rabies
4	Severe disease	High	Usually none	Ebola, smallpox

Prevention — Universal Work Precautions

- ▶ Precautions apply to **blood, semen, vaginal secretions**, and to **CSF, synovial, pleural, peritoneal, pericardial and amniotic fluid**.
- ▶ They do **not** apply to **faeces, sputum, sweat, tears, urine or vomitus unless visibly blood-stained**.
- ▶ **Tagging:** infected bodies go in a **double-layer plastic bag** with a **red "Biologically Hazardous" tag** carrying name, age, sex and registration number.
- ▶ **Staff exclusion:** anyone with an exudative lesion, weeping dermatitis or open injury must not handle an infected body.
- ▶ **Protective clothing:** full-sleeved waterproof overall, plastic apron, head cap, mask, goggles or visor.
 - **Gloves:** double gloves — heavy autopsy gloves over surgical gloves; chain-mail or Kevlar gloves where available.
 - **Footwear:** knee-length rubber gumboots with shoe covers.
 - For aerosol-generating high-risk cases, add a **HEPA respirator or PAPR**.
- ▶ **Sharps injury:**
 - Remove and replace the glove immediately if it is cut or pricked.
 - The most commonly pricked digits of a right-handed prosector are the **left index, left middle and left thumb** — protect these specially.
 - After a cut, **dip the finger in sodium hypochlorite (bleach)**, then wash with soap and water.
 - **Never "milk" blood** out of the wound.
 - Report the injury for HIV/HBV follow-up.
- ▶ **Specimens:** handle only with gloves, fix in **10% formalin**, label clearly, avoid splash and aerosol.
- ▶ **Instruments:** wash in **2% glutaraldehyde**, then soap-detergent-water, then rinse in methylated spirit.
- ▶ **Room disinfection:** phenol, savlon, or 2% glutaraldehyde.
- ▶ **Vaccination:** staff must be immunised against tetanus, tuberculosis (BCG), hepatitis B and polio.
- ▶ **After the autopsy:** take a complete soap-and-water bath.

Autopsy room design and waste management

- ▶ The room must be well-ventilated, well-lit (daylight-equivalent), and have plenty of running water.
- ▶ **Daily cleaning and disinfection, with weekly fumigation.**
- ▶ Avoid unnecessary soiling of the floor, walls and instruments, and avoid splashing body fluids.
- ▶ Biomedical waste is disinfected and disposed of under the **Bio-Medical Waste Management Rules, 2016.**
 - Colour-coded segregation.
 - Soiled cotton/gauze double-bagged for incineration.
 - Laundry soaked in 1% bleach for 30 minutes, then washed and autoclaved.
- ▶ **High-risk / COVID-19 autopsies (ICMR guidance):**
 - Prefer a **negative-pressure room** with **≥12 air changes per hour**.
 - **Avoid the oscillating saw** — use a chisel/hammer, hand shears, or a vacuum shroud.
 - Limit personnel present in the room.
 - Disinfect the body bag and all surfaces/instruments with **1% sodium hypochlorite for ≥10 minutes**.
- ▶ **Technique: Rokitsansky's technique** (in-situ dissection combined with en-bloc organ removal) is preferred for highly transmissible disease (HIV, hepatitis B) because it minimises handling and splash.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Prosecutor in full PPE for a high-risk autopsy** — label: HEPA respirator/PAPR, plastic visor + goggles, head cap, face mask, waterproof overall, plastic apron, double gloves, rubber gumboots with shoe covers.
- ▶ **Flowchart — needle-stick / sharp injury:** Injury occurs → remove & replace gloves → wash, dip in sodium hypochlorite (do NOT milk) → report to authority → baseline + follow-up HIV/HBV/HCV testing → post-exposure prophylaxis (PEP) as indicated.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ The institution owes a duty to provide a safe working environment.
 - Failing to supply PPE, ventilation or immunisation may create liability.
- ▶ The postmortem report should document the biohazard precautions used.
- ▶ Specimens from infectious cases (HBV, HIV, TB, tetanus, anthrax, gas gangrene) must be flagged to the chemical examiner/laboratory as infective.
- ▶ The red "Biologically Hazardous" tag and double-bagging protect downstream handlers (mortuary, transport, crematorium/burial staff) and preserve chain of custody.
- ▶ Negligent or malicious spread of a dangerous infection is itself an offence:
 - **Negligent spread** — **Section 269 IPC 1860 (now Section 271 BNS 2023)** — up to 6 months' imprisonment, or fine, or both.

- **Malignant (deliberate) spread** — Section 270 IPC 1860 (now Section 272 BNS 2023) — up to 2 years' imprisonment, or fine, or both.
- Do not confuse these with the neighbouring IPC 271 (disobeying a quarantine rule) or IPC 272 (food adulteration) — the numbering changed on renumbering to BNS.
- ▶ The medico-legal autopsy itself is ordered on police requisition under Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023), or magistrate inquest under Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023).
- ▶ Notifiable diseases found at autopsy may require reporting.
- ▶ Other occupational hazards worth noting:
 - **Chemical exposure:** formaldehyde, corrosives, pesticides.
 - **Radiation:** from a radioactive corpse.
 - **Psychological morbidity:** depression, alcohol abuse from repeated exposure to mutilated/decomposed bodies.



Pathogenesis of Gas gangrene

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2017 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ Gas gangrene (clostridial myonecrosis) is a rapidly spreading, life-threatening infection of skeletal muscle.
- ▶ It is caused by toxin-producing **Clostridia**, chiefly *Clostridium perfringens* (older name *Cl. welchii*).
- ▶ It is a special, severe form of **wet (moist) gangrene**.
- ▶ An untreated, contaminated wound gets invaded by anaerobic bacteria.
- ▶ Their exotoxins destroy muscle and release gas within the tissue.
- ▶ The hallmark is massive, rapid muscle necrosis with severe toxæmia (toxin in the blood).
- ▶ It can kill within hours.
- ▶ It matters medico-legally as a delayed cause of death after wounds, and as an autopsy biohazard.

Causative organisms

- ▶ **Principal organism:** *Clostridium perfringens* (*Cl. welchii*).
- ▶ It is a Gram-positive, spore-forming, **anaerobic** bacillus.
- ▶ It lives in soil and faeces, and is also a normal commensal of the human gut and skin.
- ▶ Because it is everywhere, it reaches wounds easily.
- ▶ *Cl. perfringens* **produces lecithinase** — the enzyme central to the disease mechanism (see Pathogenesis).
- ▶ **Other gas-gangrene-group clostridia:** *Cl. novyi* (*oedematiens*), *Cl. septicum*, *Cl. histolyticum*.
- ▶ Infection is often **polymicrobial** — staphylococci, streptococci and coliforms are commonly present too.

- ▶ **Wound infection by source of organism:** environmental (e.g. *Cl. tetani*, *Cl. welchii* from soil/clothing) versus from both body and environment.
- ▶ **Wound infection by time of entry:** primary infection (carried in at the time of injury) versus secondary infection (invading afterwards, e.g. via dressings or surgery).
- ▶ **Key distinction:** ordinary infections keep gas confined to connective tissue; in true gas gangrene the **muscle itself is destroyed**.
- ▶ This muscle destruction is what makes gas gangrene fulminant and lethal.

Predisposing factors

- ▶ Clostridia are obligate anaerobes — they multiply only where tissue oxygen is low.
- ▶ **Deep, lacerated or crushed wounds** with dead (devitalised) muscle — war wounds, crush injuries, gunshot wounds, compound fractures.
- ▶ **Heavy soil or faecal contamination**, with clothing fragments or foreign bodies in the wound.
- ▶ **Impaired blood supply** — vascular injury, tourniquets, tight casts, atherosclerosis, diabetes.
- ▶ **Anaerobic micro-environment** — closed wounds, swelling, clot and retained foreign material.
- ▶ **Iatrogenic and obstetric settings** — surgery, criminal abortion with unsterile instruments, retained products of conception.
- ▶ **Host factors** — diabetes, malignancy, immunosuppression, old age, malnutrition.

Pathogenesis — step by step

- ▶ The disease is fundamentally a **toxin-mediated muscle necrosis**.
- ▶ **Step 1 — Inoculation and germination:** clostridial spores or bacteria enter a wound containing dead, poorly perfused muscle.
- ▶ Low oxygen tension lets the spores germinate into actively dividing bacilli.
- ▶ **Step 2 — Anaerobic proliferation:** bacteria multiply rapidly in the oxygen-poor tissue.
- ▶ They ferment muscle glycogen, producing hydrogen and carbon dioxide gas.
- ▶ This gas collects in tissue planes and gives the palpable crackling sensation called **crepitus**.
- ▶ **Step 3 — Toxin production, the key event:** the bacteria secrete a battery of exotoxins.
- ▶ The most important is **alpha (α) toxin**, a **lecithinase (phospholipase C)**.
- ▶ Lecithinase splits lecithin in cell membranes.
- ▶ This lyses muscle cells, red blood cells (causing intravascular haemolysis), platelets and endothelial cells.
- ▶ It also destroys capillary walls, causing thrombosis and further loss of blood supply.
- ▶ Reduced blood supply deepens local ischaemia and creates more anaerobic, toxin-rich tissue — a **self-amplifying vicious cycle**.
- ▶ Other toxins (theta/perfringolysin, collagenase, hyaluronidase, proteinases) liquefy connective tissue and help spread along muscle bundles.
- ▶ **Step 4 — Spreading myonecrosis:** muscle undergoes massive, rapid necrosis.
- ▶ The tissue becomes oedematous, discoloured and gas-filled, spreading visibly over hours.

- ▶ **Step 5 — Systemic toxemia and shock:** absorbed toxins and breakdown products enter the circulation.
- ▶ This produces severe toxemia, haemolysis, jaundice, haemoglobinuria, acute kidney injury and hypotension.
- ▶ Death follows from toxic shock and multi-organ failure.

Clinical evolution

Stage	Feature
Incubation	Hours to a few days after wounding
Local	Severe pain out of proportion, tense oedema, crepitus
Skin	Dusky/bronze discolouration, haemorrhagic bullae, foul thin discharge
Muscle	Pale → brick-red → black, dead, non-contractile
Systemic	Tachycardia, hypotension, toxic shock, jaundice, renal failure, death

Post-mortem appearances

- ▶ **Large blisters (bullae) on the skin** are a recorded post-mortem sign of gas gangrene, with cellulitis at the wound.
- ▶ Generalised toxic signs: enlarged, softened spleen and congested internal organs.
- ▶ Associated lesions: bedsores, pneumonic consolidation, cystitis.
- ▶ **"Honeycomb (foamy) liver":** *Cl. welchii* multiplies in liver tissue after death, producing gas that gives the cut liver a frothy, honeycomb look.
- ▶ This is a putrefactive/clostridial sign and must not be mistaken for a vital (ante-mortem) change.
- ▶ Muscle/wound tissue and blood are cultured under aseptic conditions at autopsy to confirm the organism.
- ▶ **Caution:** tissue gas at autopsy may simply be ordinary putrefaction.
- ▶ Ante-mortem gas gangrene is diagnosed from the clinical history, muscle necrosis, cellulitis/blistering and culture — not from gas alone.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Pathogenesis flowchart:** Contaminated/devitalised wound (low O₂) → clostridial spore germination and anaerobic multiplication → glycogen fermentation gives gas/crepitus + alpha-toxin (lecithinase) → lysis of muscle, RBCs, endothelium + capillary thrombosis → loss of blood supply (vicious cycle) → spreading myonecrosis → systemic toxaemia/haemolysis/shock → death.
- ▶ **Labelled limb diagram:** show tense oedema, bronze/dusky skin, haemorrhagic bullae, subcutaneous gas (crepitus), the spreading line of necrosis, and foul thin discharge.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Gas gangrene is a recognised **delayed (secondary) consequence of wounds** — assault, crush/road-traffic injury, gunshot, compound fracture, burns, bedsores.
- ▶ The original assailant remains responsible where the wound was the proximate origin of the fatal infection.
- ▶ This matters when grading the offence: culpable homicide under IPC §299/§304 (now §100/§105 BNS 2023).
- ▶ Or murder under IPC §300/§302 (now §101/§103 BNS 2023).
- ▶ **Criminal abortion:** gas gangrene of the uterus is a classic delayed death (within 48–72 hours) of unsafe/criminal abortion, alongside septicaemia, pyaemia, peritonitis, tetanus.
- ▶ It is significant under the **Medical Termination of Pregnancy Act 1971 (as amended 2021)**.
- ▶ For unlawful termination it falls under IPC §312–316 (now §88–92 BNS 2023).
- ▶ **Autopsy biohazard:** infectious viscera — gas gangrene, tetanus, anthrax, hepatitis B, HIV — need special handling.
- ▶ The chemical examiner/laboratory must be warned in writing before samples are sent.
- ▶ Aseptic technique and personal protection are essential at autopsy.
- ▶ **Negligence questions:** failure to debride or recognise a clostridial wound may raise allegations of medical negligence.
- ▶ Documentation of timing and management is therefore critical.
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon must distinguish ante-mortem gas gangrene from ordinary post-mortem putrefaction, since both produce tissue gas.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ Gas gangrene = clostridial myonecrosis, a severe form of wet gangrene; principal organism *Cl. perfringens* (*Cl. welchii*) — anaerobic, Gram-positive, spore-forming.
- ▶ Key toxin = **alpha toxin = lecithinase (phospholipase C)** — lyses muscle, RBCs and endothelium, and thromboses capillaries.
- ▶ Gas comes from anaerobic fermentation of muscle glycogen (H₂, CO₂) → crepitus.
- ▶ Distinguishing feature: muscle itself is destroyed, not just connective-tissue gas → severe toxaemia.

- ▶ Predisposing factors: deep contaminated wounds with dead muscle, ischaemia, soil/faecal contamination, criminal abortion, surgery, diabetes.
- ▶ Clinical triad: severe pain out of proportion, crepitus, foul thin discharge with bronze skin and haemorrhagic bullae.
- ▶ Post-mortem: large skin blisters, cellulitis, enlarged softened spleen, honeycomb liver; also an autopsy biohazard.
- ▶ Medico-legal: delayed death after wounds; delayed death (48–72 h) after criminal abortion.



Pathology of Thrombo-embolism

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ **Thrombosis** is the formation of a solid mass (a **thrombus**) from platelets, fibrin, red cells and leucocytes *within* an intact, living vessel.
- ▶ An **embolus** is any abnormal mass carried in the bloodstream, which lodges at a distant site and blocks a vessel too small to let it pass.
- ▶ Most emboli are a broken-off piece of thrombus, but some are fat, air, bone marrow, amniotic fluid, tumour, or a foreign body.
- ▶ **Thrombo-embolism** is this two-step sequence: a thrombus forms, then breaks off and lodges elsewhere.
- ▶ It is a leading cause of **sudden and unexpected death**.
- ▶ It is a frequent **delayed complication of injury**, raising questions of causation.
- ▶ Telling an **antemortem thrombus** apart from a **postmortem clot** is a recurring autopsy problem.

Pathogenesis — Virchow's triad

A thrombus forms when one or more of three classic factors act together (*Virchow*, 1856).

- ▶ **Endothelial/intimal injury**: damage to the vessel lining is the dominant cause of arterial and cardiac thrombosis.
- ▶ Crush injury of a limb, or a fracture with bone-end laceration of a vessel, starts a thrombus there.
- ▶ A carotid stab or bullet wound can injure the intima, with later embolism to the middle cerebral artery.
- ▶ **Abnormal blood flow**: venous stasis from immobilisation (bed rest, plaster cast, long-bone fracture) favours **deep venous thrombosis (DVT)** of the calf and femoral veins.
- ▶ Turbulent flow over atheromatous plaques or in aneurysms favours arterial thrombi.
- ▶ The *lines of Zahn* — alternating pale platelet/fibrin and dark red-cell layers — form only in this flowing, turbulent blood.
- ▶ Their presence marks a thrombus as **antemortem**.
- ▶ **Hypercoagulability of blood**: raised by malignancy, the puerperium, sepsis, steroid therapy, and inherited or acquired clotting disorders.

Types of thrombi

- ▶ **Arterial (pale/white) thrombus:** platelet/fibrin-rich, forms on injured intima in fast turbulent flow (atheroma, aneurysm, traumatic tear).
- ▶ **Venous (red/coagulative) thrombus:** red-cell/fibrin-rich, forms in slow flow — the usual source of fatal pulmonary embolism.
- ▶ **Cardiac thrombus:** a mural clot over a heart-muscle infarct or in a dilated chamber, or a vegetation on a valve.
- ▶ **Agonal thrombus:** a chicken-fat clot forming in the heart and great vessels during the slow process of dying, tree-shaped as a cast of the right atrium, right ventricle and pulmonary outflow.
- ▶ It straddles the antemortem/postmortem boundary and must not be mistaken for a true embolus.

Types of emboli

- ▶ **Pulmonary thrombo-embolism:** a detached femoral/calf-vein DVT thrombus, usually after lower-limb injury, fracture or immobilisation.
- ▶ It matures over **10–20 days** before breaking off and travelling to the pulmonary trunk, where a large *saddle embolus* may straddle the arterial bifurcation.
- ▶ A saddle embolus kills within minutes by **vagal inhibition, acute asphyxia, or acute right-heart failure (acute cor pulmonale)** — with no lung infarct.
- ▶ Smaller emboli block a segmental branch and cause a **pulmonary infarct**.
- ▶ **Fat embolism:** follows fracture of long bones, crushing of buttocks or breasts, or severe burns.
- ▶ Non-traumatic causes include fatty liver, diabetes, pancreatitis, liposuction and decompression sickness.
- ▶ Fat globules block pulmonary capillaries, or cross over into the brain causing **cerebral fat embolism**.
- ▶ Onset is **8–20 hours** after injury: dyspnoea, cyanosis, petechiae over the chest, axillae and conjunctivae.
- ▶ Death occurs by about **30 hours** after the trauma.
- ▶ **Air (gaseous) embolism:** follows wounds of neck veins or the sagittal sinus, criminal abortion (air/soapy fluid into the uterus), IV/central-line mishaps, and decompression (Caisson's) disease.
- ▶ About **100 mL** of air under pressure froths the blood and blocks the right ventricle — fatal pulmonary air embolism.
- ▶ *Paradoxical* embolism through a patent foramen ovale gives systemic or cerebral air embolism.
- ▶ **Bone-marrow embolism:** follows fracture of a marrow bone, or a CPR rib/sternal fracture — marks an antemortem fracture unless it is CPR-caused.
- ▶ **Amniotic-fluid embolism:** follows labour, retained abortion, or uterine instrumentation, causing pulmonary occlusion plus disseminated intravascular coagulation.
- ▶ This leaves fluid unclotted blood at autopsy — a cause of sudden maternal death.
- ▶ **Tissue/parenchymal embolism:** liver or brain fragments enter torn vessels after severe trauma — a marker of antemortem injury.

- ▶ **Foreign-body embolism:** a migrated bullet or pellet lodges in a distant artery; X-ray is needed to locate it.
- ▶ **Septic/tumour embolism:** detached endocarditis vegetations or tumour fragments cause septic infarcts or metastatic seeding.

Morphology and fatal mechanism of pulmonary embolism

- ▶ Obstruction of the bifurcation or a main branch causes immediate acute dilatation and failure of the right heart.
- ▶ Obstruction of smaller branches provokes generalised vasospasm, a sharp rise in pulmonary-artery pressure, right-ventricular over-distension and systemic shock.
- ▶ A pulmonary embolus is **cylindrical, firm, brittle, dull/matt and striated** with fibrin lamination, often branched and curled.
- ▶ Side-branches that don't match its host artery show it formed elsewhere — proof it is a true embolus.
- ▶ **In every case of pulmonary embolism the legs must be examined for the source venous thrombi** — a mandatory autopsy step.

Antemortem thrombus versus postmortem clot

A postmortem clot can be mistaken for a fatal embolus — this distinction is the practical heart of the topic.

Feature	Antemortem thrombus/clot	Postmortem clot
Colour	Uniformly greyish-red, no layers	Two layers — dark-red "black-currant-jelly" + pale-yellow "chicken-fat"
Consistency	Firm, tough, dry, friable, granular	Gelatinous, moist, rubbery, shiny, soft
Lines of Zahn	Present	Absent
Attachment	Adherent to the vessel wall	Not adherent, lifts out easily
On stripping	Peels off in shreddy layers	Homogeneous, like jelly throughout
Shape	Takes the vessel's shape; side-branches may not match	Forms a perfect cast of the vessel, pulled out whole

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Cause of sudden/unexpected death.** Pulmonary and systemic embolism (e.g. bacterial endocarditis) fall in the cardiovascular group, causing **45–50%** of sudden natural deaths; massive pulmonary embolism is immediately incompatible with life.
- ▶ Such a death, within 24 hours of onset (WHO definition), is reportable for inquest under **Section 174/176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194/196 BNSS 2023)**.

- ▶ **Traumatic causation.** A delayed death from pulmonary embolism after a limb-injury DVT, or fat embolism after a long-bone fracture, still links back to the original trauma.
- ▶ The assailant may remain liable despite the delay, bearing on **murder/culpable homicide — Sections 299/300/302/304 IPC 1860 (now Sections 100/101/103/105 BNS 2023).**
- ▶ **Proof of vital reaction.** Fat globules in the bloodstream, an adherent striated thrombus with lines of Zahn, and bone-marrow emboli show the injury was **inflicted during life**, except in charring/burns and putrefaction, which can mimic fat embolism artefactually.
- ▶ **Artefacts to avoid.** Cutting vessels during autopsy can create a spurious air embolism.
- ▶ Agonal or postmortem clots can likewise mimic a true embolus, so careful technique is essential.
- ▶ **Autopsy workup.** Examine the legs for source thrombi in every pulmonary-embolism death.
- ▶ Confirm air embolism by the under-water heart-incision test and X-ray, and fat embolism by frozen-section of lung stained with Sudan III/osmic acid.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Pulmonary thrombo-embolism (saddle embolus).** Label the right ventricle, pulmonary trunk, bifurcation of the pulmonary artery, right and left main pulmonary arteries, the saddle embolus at the bifurcation, the source thrombus in the femoral/calf vein (leg inset), and acute right-ventricular dilatation.
- ▶ **Antemortem thrombus vs postmortem clot (two panels).** Panel A, antemortem: vessel wall, adherent dry granular thrombus, lines of Zahn. Panel B, postmortem: upper pale-yellow chicken-fat layer, lower dark-red black-currant-jelly layer, non-adherent clot forming a cast of the vessel.



Pathophysiology of pulmonary edema

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ Pulmonary edema is abnormal fluid accumulation in the lung.
- ▶ Fluid first collects in the **interstitial space** (perivascular and peribronchial tissue).
- ▶ It then floods the **alveolar air-spaces** once lymphatic drainage is overwhelmed.
- ▶ The fluid widens the alveolar-capillary diffusion barrier and impairs gas exchange.
- ▶ This causes dyspnoea, hypoxaemia, and — when severe — frothy, sometimes blood-stained, fluid in the airway.
- ▶ **As a mode of dying:** it is the terminal mechanism in many drownings, poisonings, and head injuries.
- ▶ **As an autopsy finding:** it is non-specific, so it must be read in context, not treated alone as a cause of death.

The Starling principle — physiological basis

- ▶ Fluid movement across the pulmonary capillary wall follows the **Starling balance of forces**.

- ▶ **Capillary hydrostatic pressure:** when raised, pushes fluid out of the capillary into the interstitium.
- ▶ **Plasma oncotic (colloid-osmotic) pressure:** mainly from albumin; when lowered, less fluid is held back in the vessel.
- ▶ **Membrane permeability:** when the alveolar-capillary barrier is injured, protein-rich fluid leaks even at normal pressures.
- ▶ **Lymphatic drainage:** the safety valve; pulmonary lymphatics can clear several times the normal filtrate.
- ▶ Interstitial edema appears first.
- ▶ Once the interstitium and lymphatics are saturated, fluid floods the alveoli, destroying surfactant and producing the frothing seen at autopsy.

Mechanistic classification

Type	Primary disturbance	Forensic causes
Cardiogenic (raised hydrostatic pressure)	Elevated pulmonary capillary pressure	Left ventricular failure, myocardial infarction; fluid overload in fresh-water drowning
Non-cardiogenic / ARDS pattern (permeability)	Direct injury to alveolar-capillary membrane	Toxic gas/smoke inhalation, aspiration in drowning, sepsis, organophosphates, paraquat
Reduced oncotic pressure	Hypoalbuminaemia	Severe burns, malnutrition, hepatic/renal disease
Lymphatic obstruction	Failure of the clearing safety valve	Lymphangitis, fibrosis
Neurogenic	Sympathetic surge after acute CNS injury	Head injury, raised intracranial pressure

Drowning — the forensically central model

- ▶ In drowning, the **tonicity of the inhaled water decides the direction of fluid shift.**
- ▶ **Fresh-water (hypotonic) drowning:**
 - Fresh water (about 0.05% sodium chloride) is hypotonic to plasma.
 - Inhaled water is rapidly absorbed across the alveolar membrane into the circulation.
 - Up to two-and-a-half litres or more may be absorbed within three minutes.
 - Blood volume can rise by up to 50%, causing **hypervolaemia and haemodilution.**
 - Red cells are **lysed**, causing relative anaemia and myocardial hypoxia.
 - Haemoglobinaemia and haemoglobinuria follow.
 - Marked **hyponatraemia and hyperkalaemia** develop.
 - Fresh water also **denatures pulmonary surfactant**, causing alveolar collapse and lower lung compliance.
 - The result is a severe ventilation-perfusion mismatch (up to 75% of blood perfusing non-ventilated lung).

- Death may follow in three to five minutes from ventricular fibrillation triggered by anoxia and the disturbed sodium-potassium ratio (hyperkalaemia itself plays only a minor part).
- **Sea-water (hypertonic) drowning:**
 - Sea water (usually over 3% sodium chloride) is hypertonic to plasma.
 - It draws fluid out of the plasma into the alveoli and interstitium.
 - This produces severe pulmonary edema, **hypernatraemia**, and **haemoconcentration**.
 - Salts cross from the alveolar water into the blood, raising plasma sodium.
 - The raised sodium causes marked **bradycardia**.
 - Heart failure may follow from myocardial anoxia and increased blood viscosity.
 - Death is a slower asphyxial process than in fresh-water drowning.
 - Red cells are **crenated** (shrunken), not lysed.
- **Haemodilution (fresh water) is far more dangerous than haemoconcentration (sea water).**

Genesis of froth and the autopsy lung

- Inhaled water irritates the airway; the tracheal and bronchial glands secrete copious tenacious mucus, while the alveolar lining produces edema fluid.
- Violent respiratory efforts churn mucus, surfactant, edema fluid, aspirated water, and retained air into a **fine, white (sometimes blood-tinged) lathery froth** at the mouth and nostrils — the classic external sign of drowning.
- The fine bubbles do not readily collapse when touched with a knife-point, because of surfactant.
- If wiped away, the froth reappears on chest compression.
- Froth also occurs, less copiously and with larger bubbles, in these conditions.
 - Acute pulmonary edema.
 - Strangulation.
 - Electrocution.
 - Epileptic fits.
 - Opium poisoning.
 - Putrefaction.
- The drowned lungs are voluminous and balloon out of the chest (**emphysema aquosum**), because edema fluid in the bronchi blocks passive post-mortem collapse.
- On section, watery, frothy, sometimes blood-stained fluid exudes.
- **Fresh-water lungs:** ballooned but light, pale, and crepitant (little fluid).
- **Sea-water lungs:** heavy (up to ~1–2 kg each), purplish, sodden, jelly-like, pit on pressure, and pour out copious fluid.

Toxicological and other forensic causes

- **Cholinergic / organophosphate and carbamate poisoning:** muscarinic over-stimulation causes bronchorrhoea (watery bronchial secretion) and pulmonary edema.
- **Opioid overdose** (morphine, heroin, fentanyl): respiratory depression with non-cardiogenic pulmonary edema; froth at the mouth is classic.

- ▶ **Aluminium / zinc phosphide (phosphine gas):** death within hours from pulmonary edema and cardiovascular collapse from direct myocardial toxicity.
- ▶ **Corrosives** (acids, phenol, ammonia): laryngeal and pulmonary edema from inhaled vapour or aspiration.
- ▶ **War/choking gases** (chlorine, phosgene): chlorine forms hydrochloric acid in airway water, causing diffuse pulmonary edema; phosgene's effect is delayed.
- ▶ **Neurogenic pulmonary edema:** pulmonary haemorrhage and edema shortly after acute head injury, from a sympathetic surge.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Alveolar-capillary unit with Starling forces:** a pulmonary capillary apposed to an alveolus across the thin membrane.
 - Label capillary hydrostatic pressure (arrow out), plasma oncotic pressure (arrow in), interstitial space, lymphatic drainage (safety-valve arrow), alveolar epithelium, and surfactant layer.
 - Show transudate crossing into the interstitium, then flooding the alveolus with froth.
- ▶ **Fresh-water vs sea-water shift in drowning:** two alveolus-capillary panels.
 - Left panel: *hypotonic fresh water* → *water absorbed into blood* → *haemodilution, hypervolaemia, haemolysis*.
 - Right panel: *hypertonic sea water* → *fluid drawn into alveoli* → *pulmonary edema, haemoconcentration*.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Cause-of-death interpretation:** pulmonary edema is a non-specific finding.
- ▶ Froth and oedematous lungs are not unique to drowning — they occur in cardiac death, poisoning, electrocution, and head injury too.
- ▶ The examiner must integrate the finding with diatom testing, electrolyte/strontium studies, scene findings, and exclusion of other causes before attributing death to drowning.
- ▶ **Diagnosis of drowning:** copious fine non-collapsing froth, ballooned lungs with rib-grooving, emphysema aquosum, and the fresh-water/sea-water lung differences support ante-mortem drowning.
- ▶ **Resuscitation artefact:** vigorous artificial respiration or a respirator can greatly reduce froth and intrapulmonary fluid, so absence of froth does not exclude drowning.
- ▶ **Statutory framework:** a drowning, poisoning, or head-injury death is an unnatural/suspicious death.
- ▶ It requires police intimation and inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ A magisterial inquest under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)** applies where relevant.
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon's opinion on cause of death is **expert opinion under Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.

- ▶ Where the manner is homicidal drowning or poisoning, the offence may attract **Section 300/302 IPC 1860 (now Sections 101/103 BNS 2023)** for murder.



Physiology of gastric emptying and its forensic applications

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Gastric emptying** is the process by which the stomach delivers its contents into the duodenum at a regulated rate.
- ▶ It happens through **antral peristalsis** — rhythmic churning contractions of the lower stomach — plus pyloric control.
- ▶ The stomach contents are called **chyme**, the partly digested semi-liquid food mass.
- ▶ **Digestion is an antemortem process** — peristaltic churning stops at death, even though gastric acid and enzymes are still present.
- ▶ So the **amount and state of digestion of stomach contents at autopsy** helps estimate the **time since death (TSD)** and the **time since the last meal**.
- ▶ It also shapes the interpretation of **poisoning** and **alcohol** cases.
- ▶ Because the emptying rate varies widely between and within individuals, it is only a **corroborative indicator of TSD, never a sole one**.

Physiology of gastric emptying

- ▶ Food is mixed with acid and enzymes, churned by antral peristaltic waves, and squirted in small portions through the pylorus into the duodenum.
- ▶ **Average gastric emptying time is about 3 hours** — hunger normally returns about 3 hours after a meal.
- ▶ **Emptying depends on meal size:**
 - Light meal — empties in about 1–2 hours.
 - Average meal — empties in about 3–4 hours.
 - Heavy meal — empties in about 5–6 hours.
- ▶ **Emptying depends on food type — order in which it leaves the stomach:**
 - Carbohydrates leave first.
 - Proteins leave next.
 - Fats leave last.
 - Meat and pulses are retained longer than pure carbohydrate.
- ▶ **Onward transit of the meal after it leaves the stomach:**
 - Reaches the hepatic flexure by about 6 hours.
 - Reaches the splenic flexure by about 9–12 hours.
 - Reaches the pelvic (sigmoid) colon by about 12–18 hours.

- ▶ **Key principle:** gastric emptying shows wide individual variation even for the same meal, so all these timings are averages, not fixed rules.

Factors that modify gastric emptying

- ▶ **Delay emptying:**
 - Larger quantity of food.
 - High-fat meals, meat, and pulses.
 - Solid food — liquids empty faster than solids (milk, though fatty, is liquid and leaves early).
 - Concentrated alcohol (>40%, e.g. spirits) — causes **pyloric spasm**.
 - Parasympatholytics (atropine) and sympathomimetics (adrenaline, benzedrine).
 - Sleep and many illnesses.
 - **Stress, head injury, coma, or physical/mental shock** — these reduce gastric secretion and motility and close the pylorus; undigested food may then remain in the stomach for **more than 24 hours**. This is a classic exam trap.
- ▶ **Speed up emptying:**
 - Carbohydrate-rich and liquid meals.
 - Parasympathomimetics and insulin.
- ▶ **Confounder:** a fresh inter-meal snack resets the apparent "last meal" and can mislead timing.

Using stomach contents to estimate time since death

- ▶ Since peristalsis stops at death, the stomach contents are **frozen at the moment of death**.
- ▶ The degree of digestion and the position of the food bolus reflect how long the meal had been processing before death.
- ▶ **Recognisable food to the naked eye** — the meal was eaten within about **2 hours** before death.
- ▶ **Substantially digested food** — several hours had elapsed.
- ▶ **Complete digestion, food unrecognisable (more than about 4 hours)** — the food has usually passed on into the intestine.
- ▶ As long as food remains in the stomach it can usually be identified, so it can **corroborate or refute witness accounts** of the last meal — especially valuable in sudden or homicidal death.
- ▶ The same physiology underlies bladder timing: urine forms at about 1 mL/min, so the volume in the bladder against the known time of last urination gives an independent TSD estimate. Gastric and bladder findings are best used together.
- ▶ **Caution:** because of this variability, always combine the stomach-content estimate with **cooling (algor mortis), rigor mortis, postmortem lividity, and putrefaction** — never quote it as a precise figure alone.

Forensic applications in toxicology

- ▶ Stomach content state helps date **when a poison was taken** relative to the last meal and to death — important in distinguishing suicide, homicide, and accident.
- ▶ An unusual smell, colour, or unidentified material in the stomach is itself a reason to **preserve viscera** for chemical analysis.

- ▶ **Viscera preservation in a fatal suspected poisoning:**
 - Stomach and all its contents (preserve the stomach wall if it is empty).
 - Upper ~30 cm of small intestine with contents.
 - Liver, 200–300 g.
 - Half of each kidney.
 - Blood, 30 mL (minimum 10 mL).
 - Urine, 30 mL.
- ▶ The intestinal sample matters because emptying carries poison distally over time.
- ▶ **Gastric lavage** is most useful when the patient is brought early, for example within about 2 hours of ingestion; it is withheld in corrosive ingestion and in the unconscious patient.
- ▶ **Alcohol absorption:** about 20% is absorbed from the stomach and about 80% from the small intestine.
- ▶ Food in the stomach delays absorption; on an empty stomach about 60% is absorbed in 30 minutes and about 90% in 1 hour.
- ▶ Concentrated alcohol causes pyloric spasm, delaying both emptying and absorption.
- ▶ **Postmortem artefact (must-know):** after death, alcohol in the stomach diffuses through the gastric wall into nearby blood, body cavities, and tissues, falsely raising the measured level.
- ▶ So blood for alcohol estimation must never be sampled from sites near the stomach.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Principal use: estimating **time since death** and **time since the last meal**, provided to the investigating officer and the court.
- ▶ Corroborates or refutes witness statements about when the deceased last ate or was last seen alive — pivotal in homicide and sudden-death enquiries.
- ▶ Supports reconstruction in poisoning cases — dating ingestion, identifying residue, and guiding viscera preservation for the **Forensic Science Laboratory**.
- ▶ **Autopsy technique:** the stomach is ligated at both ends, removed, and opened along the **greater curvature**; contents are examined for food type, digestion state, smell, colour, and foreign matter, then preserved in a clean jar. The upper small intestine and its contents are preserved alongside.
- ▶ A death requiring this opinion needs a **police inquest under Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**, or a **magistrate inquest under Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The doctor's reconstruction of time of death from stomach contents is admitted as **expert evidence under Section 45 Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ **Reporting discipline:** always give the estimate as a range with caveats, integrated with cooling, rigor, lividity, and putrefaction — an overconfident single-figure opinion is the commonest medico-legal pitfall.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Stomach and gastrointestinal transit timeline.** Label the *oesophagus*, *gastro-oesophageal junction*, *fundus*, *body*, *antrum*, *pylorus (pyloric sphincter)*, and *duodenum*, with an arrow showing antral peristalsis pushing chyme through the pylorus. Add a time-axis: light meal 1–2 h, average meal 3–4 h, heavy meal 5–6 h (stomach empty), hepatic flexure 6 h, splenic flexure 9–12 h, pelvic colon 12–18 h.
- ▶ **State-of-digestion interpretation box.** Recognisable food = within ~2 h; partly digested = several hours; unrecognisable/empty stomach = >4 h or food passed on — with the caveat "variable, corroborative only; delayed by stress/coma/head injury/atropine; accelerated by carbohydrate/liquids."



Symphysis pubis

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2017 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ The **symphysis pubis** (pubic symphysis) is the midline joint between the two pubic bones of the pelvis.
- ▶ It is a **secondary cartilaginous joint** (an *amphiarthrosis*).
- ▶ Each pubic body is capped by hyaline cartilage.
- ▶ The two sides are bound by a fibrocartilage pad, the **interpubic disc**.
- ▶ The disc is reinforced by the **superior pubic ligament** above and the **arcuate (inferior) pubic ligament** below.
- ▶ Its **articular surface changes progressively with age** — the single best skeletal criterion for adult age, especially in the 3rd–5th decades.
- ▶ The surrounding pubic bone also shows clear **sex differences** and the **scars of parturition** (marks left by childbirth).

Anatomy and autopsy relevance

- ▶ Only slight movement occurs at the joint normally.
- ▶ In late pregnancy, the hormone **relaxin** softens and widens the symphysis to ease passage of the fetal head.
- ▶ It is a fixed midline landmark for the **standard autopsy incision** — the I-shaped, modified Y-shaped, and T-shaped incisions all run down to the symphysis pubis.
- ▶ The umbilicus is deliberately skipped by these incisions because its dense fibrous tissue is hard to re-stitch.
- ▶ For removal of pelvic organs, the **superior and inferior pubic rami are sawn about 5 cm from the symphysis**.
- ▶ Urine can be aspirated by needle directly above the symphysis through the anterior abdominal wall.

- ▶ In the living, age-related change of the symphysis can be shown on CT.

Age estimation from the symphyseal surface

- ▶ This is the **single best criterion for age from the 3rd to the 5th decade** (roughly 25–50 years).
- ▶ The method needs bone that is **free of cartilage** — erosion or drying blurs the features and degrades the estimate.
- ▶ **Around 20 years:** the surface is irregular, crossed by **transverse ridges with grooves** (billowing).
- ▶ **24–36 years:** the ridges fade, the surface turns **granular**, and the ventral and dorsal margins become clearly defined.
- ▶ **Early 5th decade (~40–45 yr):** the face becomes an oval, **smooth surface with raised upper and lower ends**.
- ▶ **Late 5th decade (~45–50 yr):** a **narrow, beaded rim** appears on the margins.
- ▶ **6th decade (~51–60 yr):** erosion begins, with **breakdown of the ventral margin**.
- ▶ **7th decade (~61–70 yr):** the surface becomes **irregularly eroded**.
- ▶ Standard descriptions and casts come almost entirely from **male material**.
- ▶ Applying **male criteria to a female under-estimates age by about 10 years**, because the female pubis matures roughly 10 years later.

Standardised age-estimation methods

Method	Author & year	Basis
Todd's ten-phase system	<i>Todd, 1920</i>	First systematic study, 306 males; scored billowing, ridging, ossific nodules, and texture across 10 phases (18 to 50+ yr)
Brooks modification	<i>Brooks, 1955</i>	Refined Todd's phase system
McKern & Stewart three-component system	<i>McKern & Stewart, 1957</i>	349 male Korean-War dead; splits the surface into a dorsal demiface , a ventral demiface , and the symphyseal rim , each scored 0–5 and summed
Suchey–Brooks system	<i>Katz & Suchey, 1986</i>	Modified Brooks' method; 6 phases validated on a large autopsy sample, with reference casts for comparison; most widely accepted today

- ▶ **McKern & Stewart's drawback:** its three components do not vary independently, and scoring is unduly complex.
- ▶ **General limitations:** the method gives **wide age ranges**, and precision falls **after about 40 years** in every system.
- ▶ Change also depends on poorly understood **environmental and genetic factors**, so results vary widely between individuals.
- ▶ Scoring is **subjective**, with **wide inter-observer variability**.

- ▶ **Best practice:** combine the symphysis with other indicators — sternal rib ends, the **auricular surface of the ilium**, cranial suture closure, and dental changes.
- ▶ Report age at death as a **range or mean $\pm$ SD**, never a single year.

Sex determination from the symphysis and pelvis

- ▶ The pubis and symphyseal region are among the **most reliable skeletal parts for sexing**, because the female pelvis is adapted for childbirth.
- ▶ **Symphysis:** higher and narrower with everted pubic-arch margins in males; lower, wider, and rounded, margins not everted, in females.
- ▶ **Body of pubis:** narrow and triangular in males; broad and square in females.
- ▶ **Symphyseal block:** **triangular** in males, **rectangular** in females.
- ▶ **Subpubic angle:** **V-shaped**, **70°–75°** in males; **U-shaped**, **90°–100°** in females.
- ▶ **Dorsal border of the symphysis:** regular in males; **irregular with pits** in females who have borne children.
- ▶ **Ischiopubic rami:** more everted, thicker, rougher in males; less everted, thinner, smoother in females.
- ▶ **Greater sciatic notch:** smaller, narrower, deeper in males; larger, wider, shallower in females.
- ▶ **Pelvic inlet:** heart-shaped in males; circular/elliptical and more spacious in females.
- ▶ **Scars of parturition:** in women who have given birth, the dorsal border of the symphysis develops **pits or depressions**, thought to result from trauma to ligament attachments during childbirth — a useful but not absolute sign of previous delivery.
- ▶ The symphysis therefore answers **both** cardinal identity questions — age and sex — which makes it especially valuable when only fragmentary remains are recovered.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Symphyseal-surface age changes:** a vertical series of the right pubic symphyseal face showing transverse ridges/billowing (~20 yr), a granular surface with forming margins (24–36 yr), an oval smooth face with raised ends (~40–45 yr), a narrow beaded rim (~45–50 yr), and erosion with ventral-margin breakdown (>50 yr). Mark the three McKern–Stewart components — ventral demiface, dorsal demiface, symphyseal rim.
- ▶ **Male vs female pubic symphysis:** two anterior views of the pubic region labelled with body of pubis shape (triangular/male, square/female), subpubic angle (V-shaped 70°–75°/male, U-shaped 90°–100°/female), symphyseal block shape (triangular/male, rectangular/female), dorsal pits (scars of parturition, female), and the greater sciatic notch (narrow/male, wide/female).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ The symphysis helps prove **corpus delicti** — the legal proof that a crime occurred, including the victim's identity — by giving **age** and **sex** from skeletal or decomposed remains.
- ▶ It survives moderate decomposition, making it useful when only a skeleton, mutilated body, or charred remains are available.

- ▶ Age estimation has direct legal consequences for **criminal responsibility, age of consent, marriage/employment eligibility, juvenility, and identity of the unknown dead**.
- ▶ The report must state a **range with a margin of error** — an over-precise single-year estimate is indefensible in cross-examination.
- ▶ Opinion evidence on age or sex from the skeleton is admissible under **Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ The examining doctor records findings, issues the report, and may be summoned as an **expert witness**.
- ▶ Skeletal examination is usually done on the requisition of the investigating officer or magistrate, often after **exhumation**, which in India must be supervised by the medical officer and the magistrate.
- ▶ The symphysis also serves as a key **autopsy landmark** — the terminus of the midline incision, the reference point for suprapubic urine sampling, and the cut point for pelvic-organ removal.



What are prostaglandins? Describe their pharmacological actions and therapeutic uses

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / introduction

- ▶ Prostaglandins are **eicosanoids** — lipid mediators built on a 20-carbon (C20) skeleton.
- ▶ They are made from **arachidonic acid** through the **cyclo-oxygenase (COX) pathway**.
- ▶ They were first isolated from seminal fluid and the prostate gland, hence the name.
- ▶ Almost every nucleated cell in the body can synthesise them.
- ▶ They are **local hormones (autacoids)**: not stored, made on demand, and rapidly inactivated.
- ▶ Their action is **paracrine** (on nearby cells) or **autocrine** (back on the same cell), so effects are short-lived.
- ▶ Forensically they matter as **abortifacients and oxytocics/ecbolics** used for medical termination of pregnancy and induction of labour.
- ▶ They are also the target blocked by **NSAIDs**, which explains NSAID toxicity.

Chemistry and biosynthesis

- ▶ **First step:** phospholipase A2 releases arachidonic acid from membrane phospholipids.
 - This is the rate-limiting step and is inhibited by corticosteroids.
- ▶ Arachidonic acid then splits into two pathways:
 - **COX pathway** → prostaglandins, prostacyclin (PGI₂), thromboxane A₂ (TXA₂) — together called *prostanoids*.
 - **Lipoxygenase (LOX) pathway** → leukotrienes.
- ▶ **Naming rule:** the letter (A–F) shows the ring substituent.
 - The subscript number shows the number of double bonds (e.g. PGE₁, PGE₂).

- A Greek suffix (e.g. PGF2 α) shows the stereochemistry of the ring hydroxyl group.
- ▶ The "2-series" (PGE2, PGF2 α , PGI2, TXA2) is the most important group in humans.
- ▶ **COX-1 (constitutive)**: a house-keeping enzyme that protects gastric mucosa, maintains renal blood flow, and supports platelet thromboxane.
- ▶ **COX-2 (inducible)**: switched on by inflammatory stimuli; makes the prostaglandins of pain, inflammation and fever.
- ▶ NSAIDs inhibit COX, so they relieve pain/fever but also cause gastric and bleeding side effects.

Prostanoid	Drug analogue	Main action
PGE1	Misoprostol, alprostadil	Uterine contraction, cervical ripening, gastric protection, vasodilatation (keeps ductus arteriosus open)
PGE2	Dinoprostone	Powerful uterine stimulant, cervical ripening, fever
PGF2 α	Dinoprost, carboprost, latanoprost	Uterine/bronchial contraction, lowers intra-ocular pressure
PGI2 (prostacyclin)	Epoprostenol	Vasodilatation, inhibits platelet aggregation
TXA2 (thromboxane)	Target of low-dose aspirin	Platelet aggregation, vasoconstriction

Pharmacological actions

- ▶ **Uterus**: stimulate contraction and ripen the cervix throughout pregnancy.
 - This makes them **oxytocics/ecbolics** and **emmenagogues**.
- ▶ **Stomach**: PGE2 and PGI2 protect the mucosa by cutting acid and boosting mucus/bicarbonate.
 - Losing this protection is why NSAIDs cause peptic ulcers.
 - They also raise gut motility, causing cramps and diarrhoea.
- ▶ **Heart and vessels**: PGE and PGI2 dilate vessels and lower blood pressure.
 - TXA2 and PGF2 α constrict vessels instead.
 - PGE1/PGE2 keep the fetal **ductus arteriosus** open.
- ▶ **Platelets**: TXA2 promotes aggregation; PGI2 opposes it.
 - Low-dose aspirin blocks platelet COX-1, cutting TXA2 production.
- ▶ **Lungs**: PGE2 and PGI2 cause bronchodilation; PGF2 α and TXA2 cause bronchoconstriction.
- ▶ **Inflammation, pain, fever**: PGE2 sensitises nerve endings to pain and resets the hypothalamic thermostat to cause fever.
 - This is exactly what NSAIDs block.
- ▶ **Kidney**: maintain renal blood flow and filtration, promote salt/water excretion, stimulate renin release.
- ▶ **Eye**: PGF2 α analogues raise uveoscleral outflow of aqueous humour, lowering intra-ocular pressure.

Therapeutic uses

- ▶ **Medical termination of pregnancy** (most forensically important use):
 - Misoprostol (PGE1) + mifepristone (RU-486) is the first-trimester method of choice.
 - Mifepristone detaches the placenta and sensitises the uterus.
 - Misoprostol then triggers contraction and cervical dilation.
 - Success rate is about 90–95%.
 - PGE2 and PGF2 α can also induce labour or abortion, given intravenously or orally.
 - Intra-amniotic 25 mg PGF2 is used for second-trimester abortion.
- ▶ **Cervical ripening / induction of labour:** dinoprostone gel or pessary, or misoprostol, at or near term.
- ▶ **Postpartum haemorrhage:** carboprost controls atonic bleeding by sustaining uterine contraction.
- ▶ **Peptic ulcer prophylaxis:** misoprostol prevents NSAID-induced gastric ulcers.
- ▶ **Ductus arteriosus patency:** alprostadil keeps the duct open in neonates with duct-dependent heart disease before surgery.
- ▶ **Erectile dysfunction:** intracavernosal alprostadil relaxes corpus-cavernosum smooth muscle to produce erection.
 - It is also a recognised iatrogenic cause of priapism.
- ▶ **Glaucoma:** latanoprost and related PGF2 α analogues lower intra-ocular pressure.
- ▶ **Pulmonary arterial hypertension:** epoprostenol by continuous infusion.
- ▶ **Peripheral vascular disease:** prostaglandin vasodilators for critical limb ischaemia.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Lawful MTP:** prostaglandin abortion is legal only when done under the **Medical Termination of Pregnancy Act 1971** by a registered medical practitioner at an approved place.
- ▶ Documenting **consent and indication** is the doctor's duty.
- ▶ **Unlawful abortion:** misoprostol, often combined with mifepristone, is the commonest agent used in **illegal/self-induced abortion** outside the MTP Act.
- ▶ Such misuse attracts the causing-miscarriage offences:
 - **Section 312 IPC 1860 (now Section 88 BNS 2023):** voluntarily causing a woman with child to miscarry.
 - **Section 313 IPC (now Section 89 BNS 2023):** causing miscarriage without the woman's consent.
 - **Section 314 IPC (now Section 90 BNS 2023):** death caused by an act done to cause miscarriage.
- ▶ Recovery of misoprostol/mifepristone tablets, or their chemical detection, supports a charge under these sections.
- ▶ **NSAID poisoning:** NSAIDs act by inhibiting COX, which blocks prostaglandin synthesis.
 - This explains aspirin's gastric erosion and bleeding tendency.

- It is relevant to autopsy interpretation of acute salicylate poisoning.
- ▶ **Iatrogenic effects:** prostaglandin abortifacients commonly cause nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea and uterine pain.
 - Rarely, uterine hyperstimulation or rupture occurs — a possible ground for a negligence allegation if mismanaged.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Arachidonic-acid cascade:** membrane phospholipid → phospholipase A2 (blocked by steroids) → arachidonic acid.
 - Branch 1: cyclo-oxygenase, COX-1/COX-2 (blocked by NSAIDs) → cyclic endoperoxides (PGG2/PGH2) → PGE2, PGF2α, PGD2, prostacyclin (PGI2), thromboxane A2 (TXA2).
 - Branch 2: lipoxygenase → leukotrienes.
- ▶ **Basic prostaglandin structure:** cyclopentane ring, two side chains, carboxyl group, double-bond position (subscript number), ring substituent (letter A–F).



What is the role of wound healing in determining time of assault?

Asked in: Paper I Dec 2023 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Wound healing** is the orderly repair of injured tissue through overlapping phases: haemostasis, inflammation, proliferation, and maturation/remodelling.
- ▶ Each phase has typical gross, microscopic, and biochemical markers.
- ▶ Reading the healing stage lets us estimate the **age of the wound** — the time since it was inflicted.
- ▶ This estimated wound age is the medico-legal bridge to the **time of assault**: it can confirm or contradict the alleged timeline.
- ▶ Healing is variable, so only an **approximate** age can ever be given, never an exact time.

Why wound age matters for "time of assault"

- ▶ Dating a wound through its healing stage tests whether the alleged time of assault is true.
- ▶ A healing stage that matches the alleged date supports the complaint.
- ▶ A fresh wound when an assault is claimed a week old, or a partly healed scar when it is claimed as "of today," refutes the history.
- ▶ Such mismatches can expose a fabricated or self-inflicted injury made to support a false charge.
- ▶ Wound age also shows whether several injuries on one body were inflicted at the same time or on different occasions.
 - Suicidal (hesitation) incised wounds are classically of different ages.

- Old healed scars next to a fresh injury point to chronic abuse (domestic violence, child abuse) rather than one recent assault.
- ▶ It separates **antemortem** from **postmortem** wounds: a **vital reaction** — an early healing or inflammatory response — proves the injury occurred before death.
- ▶ Courts routinely ask the medical witness whether the time of infliction can be determined.

Types of wound healing (sets the timetable)

- ▶ **First (primary) intention:** clean, well-apposed edges, as in a sutured incised wound.
 - Rapid re-epithelialisation, minimal granulation tissue, fine scar.
- ▶ **Second (secondary) intention:** open wounds with gaping or unapposed edges.
 - Lacerations heal this way by rule.
 - Abundant granulation tissue, wound contraction, slower healing, larger scar.
- ▶ **Third intention (delayed primary):** a heavily contaminated wound is deliberately left open for about 3 days, then closed.
- ▶ Second-intention healing has a more intense reaction and far more granulation tissue, so it takes longer to date.

Methods of dating a wound

- ▶ **Gross examination:** colour, scab, swelling, granulation, scar — useful from hours to weeks.
- ▶ **Histopathology (H&E stain):** the cellular sequence of neutrophils, then macrophages, then fibroblasts, then collagen — useful from hours to about 2 weeks.
- ▶ **Enzyme histochemistry:** vasoactive amines and enzymes in frozen tissue.
 - Best for wounds inflicted 1–8 hours before death; most reliable in the last hour.
- ▶ **Immunohistochemistry (IHC):** antibody-detected proteins such as selectins, fibronectin, and collagens.
 - Extends the datable window down to minutes.
- ▶ Enzyme histochemistry needs **frozen tissue**, not formalin-fixed (formalin destroys the enzymes).
- ▶ A **control sample** of uninjured skin is mandatory for comparison.

The histopathological "clock" (core timeline)

Time since injury	Change
Minutes	Vasoconstriction, then fibrin deposition and vasodilatation
15–30 min	Neutrophils appear
2–4 h	Macrophages appear
4–12 h	Leucocytic infiltration peaks
15 h	Fibroblast mitoses begin
24 h	Epithelial edge growth; vascular buds form
72 h (3 days)	Vascularised granulation tissue forms

Time since injury	Change
4–5 days	Collagen begins to form
1 week	Soft scar in small wounds
>2 weeks	Dense, avascular, mature scar

Gross dating of specific injuries (at the bedside)

- ▶ **Abrasions** heal by epithelial growth inward from the edges; the exact age cannot be fixed precisely.
 - Fresh: bright red.
 - 12–24 h: bright-red scab as lymph and blood dry.
 - 2–3 days: reddish-brown scab.
 - 4–7 days: scab dark brown to black; epithelium regrows underneath.
 - After 7 days: scab dries, shrinks, and falls off, leaving a depigmented area that later re-pigments.
- ▶ **Bruise (contusion)** heals by breakdown of the extravasated blood; colour change begins at the periphery and moves inward.
 - Fresh: red (oxygenated blood).
 - Hours–3 days: blue/blue-black (deoxyhaemoglobin).
 - 4–5 days: brown (haemosiderin).
 - 5–6 days: green (biliverdin).
 - 7–12 days: yellow (bilirubin).
 - About 2 weeks: back to normal skin colour.
 - **Bruise dating is the least reliable** of all — colour-change rate varies with the person, the bruise's depth, the amount of bleeding, and skin tone.
 - The honest opinion is only "recent" or "old," never an exact day.
 - **Subconjunctival and meningeal haemorrhages do not follow this colour sequence** because they stay oxygenated by diffusion.
- ▶ **Lacerations** are hard to age unless clear healing signs are present — granulation tissue, fibroblast ingrowth, or organising infiltrate — and they heal by second intention.
- ▶ **Incised wounds** follow the first-intention histological clock above when the edges are apposed.
- ▶ **Cerebral contusions:** ischaemic neuronal change within 1 hour; capillary proliferation starts at 5 days and peaks at 10–12 days; a depressed, pale golden-yellow scar forms by about 2 months.

Newer biochemical and immunohistochemical markers

- ▶ **Vasoactive amines:** serotonin appears within about 5–10 minutes; histamine peaks at 20–30 minutes.
- ▶ **Antemortem cutoff:** histamine $\geq 50\%$ above control, serotonin $\geq 100\%$ (double) the control level.

- ▶ **Enzyme sequence:** serotonin/cathepsins (~10 min), then histamine (~30 min), then ATPase and esterase (~1 h), then aminopeptidase (~2 h), then acid phosphatase (~4 h), then alkaline phosphatase (~8 h).
- ▶ **IHC markers:** P-selectin (~5 min), fibronectin (~10–20 min), E-selectin (~1 h), ICAM-1 (~1.5 h), tenascin (~2 days), collagen III/V/VI (~3 days), collagen I (~5 days).

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Timeline bar of healing markers** — axis of minutes → hours → days → weeks, with tracks for: vasoconstriction, fibrin/vasodilatation, neutrophils (15–30 min), macrophages (2–4 h), peak leucocytes (4–12 h), fibroblast mitoses (15 h), vascular buds/epithelial growth (24 h), granulation tissue (72 h), collagen (4–5 days), scar (1 week), dense avascular scar (>2 weeks).
- ▶ **Bruise colour-clock** — red (fresh) → blue/blue-black (hours–3 days) → brown/haemosiderin (4–5 days) → green/biliverdin (5–6 days) → yellow/bilirubin (7–12 days) → normal (~2 weeks).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ The injury report on an assault victim or an accused must state the **probable age of each injury** so the court can match it against the FIR and the alleged date.
 - Mandated under **Section 53/53A CrPC 1973 (now Sections 51/52 BNSS 2023)**.
 - Rape examination is mandated under **Section 164A CrPC 1973 (now Section 184 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Grading of hurt as **simple or grievous** depends partly on healing time and duration, such as the 20-day criterion for grievous hurt.
 - Governed by **Sections 319/320 IPC 1860 (now Sections 114/116–117 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ A healing stage that contradicts the alleged history exposes fabricated or self-inflicted injuries, such as artificial marks from marking-nut juice, or hesitation cuts of differing ages in a faked suicide.
- ▶ Antemortem versus postmortem timing rests on the **vital reaction**, the earliest sign that healing had begun before death.
- ▶ Always state the wound age as a **range** — recent, a few days old, or old — never a fixed day.
- ▶ Support this with measurements, colour photographs, and where possible histology or frozen-tissue enzyme histochemistry against a control.
- ▶ Recommend **re-examination at 24–48 hours** to reveal delayed or deep bruises before finalising the opinion.

♦ ♦ ♦

With a neat labeled diagram, describe the arterial supply of penis and physiology of erection. Add a note on erectile dysfunction and its forensic aspects

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ The penis is the male copulatory and urinary organ, built around three erectile columns — paired **corpora cavernosa** (dorsal) and a single **corpus spongiosum** (ventral, around the urethra).
- ▶ **Erection** is a neuro-vascular event: parasympathetic relaxation of cavernosal smooth muscle lets blood flood these columns under pressure, giving rigidity for penetration.
- ▶ **Erectile dysfunction (ED)** is the modern term for *impotence* — persistent inability to attain or maintain an erection adequate for satisfactory intercourse.
- ▶ Forensically it matters for settling **impotence and sterility** — civil disputes (nullity, divorce, legitimacy) and criminal matters (rape allegations, emasculation as grievous hurt).

Gross structure of the penis

- ▶ **Corpora cavernosa**: paired dorsal erectile columns, each wrapped in the tough **tunica albuginea**.
- ▶ **Corpus spongiosum**: single ventral column, encloses the penile urethra, ends as the **glans penis**.
- ▶ **Root and shaft**: the cavernosa diverge proximally as the **crura**, and the spongiosum expands as the **bulb of the penis**; the three columns are bound together by Buck's fascia and skin, with the foreskin (*prepuce*) covering the glans.
- ▶ **Erectile tissue** is a meshwork of vascular spaces (**sinusoids**) surrounded by **trabecular smooth muscle** — its tone is the master switch between flaccidity and erection.

Arterial supply of the penis

- ▶ Main supply: the **internal pudendal artery** (branch of the anterior division of the internal iliac artery) continues as the **common penile artery**, which divides into three named arteries.

Artery	Supplies	Role in erection
Cavernosal (deep) artery	Centre of each corpus cavernosum; gives the coiled helicine arteries	Main erectile inflow vessel
Dorsal artery of penis	Dorsum, glans, skin, tunica	Glans engorgement, skin nutrition
Bulbourethral / urethral arteries	Corpus spongiosum, bulb, urethra, glans	Spongiosum and glans filling

- ▶ **Helicine arteries** — small, tortuous terminal branches of the cavernosal artery — uncoil and relax to drive the rapid arterial inflow of erection.
- ▶ **Venous drainage**: emissary venules drain the sinusoids into the **deep dorsal vein**, then the prostatic (Santorini's) plexus and internal pudendal veins.
 - During erection these venules are compressed against the tunica albuginea — the **veno-occlusive mechanism** — trapping blood inside.

Nerve supply

- ▶ **Sensory:** the glans is supplied by the **dorsal nerve of the penis** (S2–S4, via the pudendal nerve and pelvic plexus), carrying the afferent limb of erection and of the *bulbocavernosus reflex*.
- ▶ **Parasympathetic (pro-erectile):** the **nervi erigentes** (pelvic splanchnic nerves, S2–S4) supply the corpora cavernosa and dominate the erectile drive.
- ▶ **Sympathetic (pro-detumescence):** from the **thoracolumbar plexus** (T11–L2) — keeps the penis flaccid and ends the erection after ejaculation.
- ▶ A **pelvic fracture** injuring the parasympathetics, or an **L4–L5 spine fracture** damaging the sacral cord, can cause impotence.

Physiology of erection

- ▶ **Flaccid phase:** sympathetic tone (T11–L2) contracts cavernosal/helicine smooth muscle, keeping sinusoids collapsed and inflow minimal.
- ▶ **Initiation:** tactile stimuli (glans → dorsal nerve → pudendal → S2–S4, *reflexogenic*) and psychogenic stimuli (sight, thought) fire the parasympathetic erigentes.
- ▶ **Vasodilatation and tumescence:** parasympathetic activation releases **nitric oxide (NO)**, which raises **cyclic GMP (cGMP)** and relaxes cavernosal/helicine smooth muscle.
 - The **helicine arteries uncoil and dilate**; blood floods the sinusoids and the corpora cavernosa swell.
- ▶ **Veno-occlusion:** the swollen sinusoids compress the sub-tunical venules against the tunica albuginea, trapping blood at near-systolic pressure — a fully rigid erection (axis averages 26°, range 16°–36°).
- ▶ **Detumescence:** after ejaculation, sympathetic activity contracts the smooth muscle again, the enzyme **phosphodiesterase-5 (PDE-5)** breaks down cGMP, and flaccidity returns.
- ▶ In short: erection = parasympathetic **NO–cGMP**-driven arterial inflow plus veno-occlusion; detumescence = sympathetic, **PDE-5**-mediated outflow.
- ▶ **PDE-5 inhibitors** (sildenafil, vardenafil) prolong relaxation — used to treat, and forensically test, erectile capability.

Erectile dysfunction: causes

- ▶ About 75–85% of cases have an **organic** cause.
- ▶ **Vasculogenic (~40%, the commonest organic cause):**
 - **Arteriogenic:** poor arterial inflow from atherosclerosis (diabetes, hypertension, smoking) or pelvic/genital injury.
 - **Venogenic:** excessive venous leak, congenital or acquired.
- ▶ **Endocrine/metabolic:** **diabetes mellitus (15–20%)**, testosterone deficiency, hypothyroidism, Cushing's syndrome.
- ▶ **Psychogenic (~12%):** performance anxiety, depression, guilt, "honeymoon impotence."
- ▶ **Neurogenic (~7%):** spinal cord injury (L4–L5, sacral cord), multiple sclerosis, pelvic surgery (radical prostatectomy).

- ▶ **Drug/toxin-induced:** alcohol, anabolic steroids, opiates, antihypertensives, occupational lead exposure.
- ▶ **Local/general disease:** phimosis, Peyronie's disease, tertiary syphilis, tabes dorsalis.
- ▶ Mnemonic for organic causes — "**IMPOTENCE**": Inflammatory, Mechanical, Postsurgical, Occlusive, Traumatic, Endurance (renal failure), Neurogenic, Chemicals, Endocrine.

Diagnostic evaluation

- ▶ **History:** sudden onset suggests a psychogenic cause (raises suspicion of malingering in an accused), gradual onset an organic cause.
- ▶ Spontaneous REM-sleep erections exclude a major neuro-vascular cause.
- ▶ **Examination:** peripheral pulses, secondary sexual characters, penis, testes, and the **bulbocavernosus reflex** (glans squeeze should make the anus contract).
- ▶ **Blood tests:** serum testosterone, fasting glucose/HbA1c, lipid profile, prolactin, thyroid function.
- ▶ **Nocturnal penile tumescence (NPT)** monitoring.
- ▶ **Duplex Doppler ultrasound** during a papaverine-induced erection.
- ▶ **Pudendal/penile arteriography.**
- ▶ **Cavernosography** to demonstrate a venous leak.
- ▶ **Sildenafil 50 mg challenge** with Doppler — used to test potency and detect organic vasculopathy.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Impotence vs sterility:** impotence = inability to have intercourse; sterility = inability to beget or conceive — a person may have one without the other.
- ▶ ***Impotence quoad hoc*** ("as to this"): impotent towards one particular woman only — relevant in nullity suits and rape-defence arguments.
- ▶ Examination is done only on **court or police** request (or personally), with informed consent.
- ▶ For an arrested accused, examination — even with reasonable force at a sub-inspector-or-above's request — is lawful under **Section 53 CrPC 1973 (now Section 51 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ A victim's statement in sexual-assault cases is recorded under **Section 164A CrPC 1973 (now Section 184 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Opinion is cautious, in the **negative form** — normal genitals do not prove potency, so only "nothing abnormal found" is stated.
- ▶ **Emasculation** — amputation of the penis, or nerve/genital injury causing loss of masculine vigour — is grievous hurt under **Section 320 IPC 1860 (now Section 116 BNS 2023)**; the ***Bobbitt syndrome*** (partner amputation) and penile constriction injuries are seen at autopsy.
- ▶ **Priapism** (persistent, painful erection without desire) points to spinal cord disease/injury or poisoning — **cantharides** (fatal dose 30–50 mg cantharidin), opiates — not ante-mortem sexual activity.
- ▶ Impotence at the time of marriage can make it **voidable (Section 12, Hindu Marriage Act 1955)** or **void (Section 24, Special Marriage Act 1954)**; not so if it develops after consummation.

- ▶ ***Fecundatio ab extra*** (semen deposited on the vulva without penetration) shows that pregnancy does not prove consummation.
- ▶ **Malingering** of impotence is common in accused men; objective tests (NPT, Doppler, sildenafil challenge) now allow positive confirmation rather than mere inference.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Sagittal view, penis with arterial supply.** Labels: internal iliac → internal pudendal → common penile artery; cavernosal (deep) artery (with helicine arteries), dorsal artery, bulbourethral/urethral artery; corpus cavernosum, corpus spongiosum, glans, tunica albuginea, crus and bulb, deep dorsal vein, penile urethra.
- ▶ **Cross-section of the shaft.** Labels: two corpora cavernosa each with a central cavernosal artery; ventral corpus spongiosum around the urethra; tunica albuginea and Buck's fascia; dorsal midline bundle (deep dorsal vein, paired dorsal arteries, dorsal nerves); superficial dorsal vein and skin.



Forensic pathology & thanatology



Aneurysms and Medico-legal importance

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ An **aneurysm** is a localised, permanent, abnormal dilatation (ballooning-out) of a blood vessel, most often an artery, or of the heart wall, caused by weakness in the vessel wall.
- ▶ **Spontaneous rupture** is a leading cause of sudden natural death.
- ▶ Rupture can also be **precipitated by trauma, emotion, exertion, or alcohol**.
- ▶ This raises the key question: was the death purely natural, or did an assault, fall, or accident "cause" it?

Classification of aneurysms

- ▶ **True aneurysm:** all three coats of the wall (intima, media, adventitia) are involved, sac lined by thinned vessel wall; rare as a *traumatic* aneurysm, when only the outer coat is torn (e.g. a tangential bullet injury).
- ▶ **False aneurysm (pseudoaneurysm):** a through-and-through rent in the wall, blood contained in a peri-vascular haematoma communicating with the lumen; most traumatic aneurysms are this type (e.g. a periaortic haematoma from an aortic laceration).
- ▶ **Dissecting aneurysm:** blood enters the media through an intimal tear and splits the wall lengthwise, as in *lap-belt (seat-belt) aorta* from hyperflexion in high-speed deceleration.
- ▶ **Berry (saccular) aneurysm:** a thin-walled out-pouching at bifurcations of the **circle of Willis**, from developmental weakness of the media.

- ▶ **Charcot–Bouchard (micro-) aneurysm:** minute aneurysms at bifurcations of small intra-cerebral arteries, increasing with age and hypertension; rupture causes hypertensive intracerebral haemorrhage.

Berry aneurysms — the forensically pivotal lesion

- ▶ **Incidence:** found silently in about 5% of routine autopsies; rupture is the commonest cause (about 85%) of spontaneous (non-traumatic) subarachnoid haemorrhage (SAH).
- ▶ **Site:** about 90% lie at the anterior cerebral, middle cerebral, and internal carotid bifurcations (including the posterior communicating–internal carotid junction); least common in the vertebral artery.
- ▶ **Congenital or not?** One view: not truly congenital — rare before adulthood, developing on a background of medial weakness; risk factors are alcohol, hypertension, and smoking.
- ▶ Also seen described as "congenital aneurysms of the circle of Willis" — know both terms.
- ▶ **Mechanism of death:** rupture causes SAH, triggering generalised vasospasm (narrowing of the brain's blood vessels) and ischaemic brain injury.
- ▶ The victim suffers a sudden "thunderclap" headache, neck stiffness, and vomiting, then rapid cardiorespiratory failure and death.
- ▶ **Triggers of rupture:** a sudden rise in blood pressure from emotional stress (assault, exertion, intercourse), or alcohol-driven aggression, a fight, and a fall.

Aortic and other systemic aneurysms

- ▶ **Rupture of an aortic aneurysm** is a classic autopsy lesion incompatible with continued life; aortic and other cardiovascular ruptures together cause roughly 45–50% of all sudden natural deaths.
- ▶ An aortic aneurysm may also rupture into the air passages, causing sudden death by aspiration/asphyxia.

Aneurysm as a cause of sudden natural death

Site of aneurysm	Event	Forensic category
Circle of Willis (berry)	Rupture → spontaneous subarachnoid haemorrhage	2nd most common CNS cause of sudden death (after epilepsy)
Small intra-parenchymal arteries (Charcot–Bouchard)	Rupture → hypertensive intracerebral haemorrhage	CNS cause of sudden death
Thoracic / abdominal aorta	Rupture → massive haemorrhage / haemopericardium	Cardiovascular cause; incompatible with life
Coronary artery (dissecting)	Acute occlusion → myocardial infarction / arrhythmia	May follow direct trauma to an atheromatous coronary

- ▶ **Sudden death (WHO):** death within 24 hours of symptom onset in someone without known dangerous disease; some limit it to 1 hour.
- ▶ Cardiovascular causes account for about 45–50%, CNS causes for about 10–18%, of sudden natural deaths.

Trauma and aneurysm — the central medico-legal issue

- ▶ Trauma can either form a new aneurysm or rupture an existing one, e.g. a severe head injury rupturing a berry aneurysm, as in *shaken baby syndrome*.
- ▶ Traumatic aneurysms are mostly false (e.g. lap-belt aorta); true traumatic aneurysms are rare, forming only from partial wall disruption.
- ▶ **Spontaneous versus traumatic SAH:** non-traumatic SAH is usually from a berry aneurysm, while traumatic basal SAH follows laceration of the internal carotid, vertebral, or basal arteries and can be immediately fatal above 30 mL.
- ▶ Distinguishing the two decides whether a death is homicide/accident or natural disease.
- ▶ **The classic conundrum:** a leaking aneurysm may itself cause the neurological or behavioural change that leads to a fight, fall, or accident.
- ▶ So the head injury may be consequent upon, not the cause of, the rupture — the reverse must equally be excluded.
- ▶ **Apoplexy versus post-traumatic haemorrhage** must be differentiated at autopsy.
 - **Apoplexy** (from hypertension, atherosclerosis, or aneurysm): middle-aged or older, sudden onset, any head position.
 - It lies in the ganglionic region with no contre-coup haemorrhage, and unconsciousness is deep.
 - **Post-traumatic haemorrhage:** young, after a distinct interval, head in motion.
 - It lies in temporo-occipital/frontal white matter, often with contre-coup haemorrhage.
- ▶ **Ewing's postulates**, applied when trauma allegedly caused or aggravated disease:
 - Adequacy of the trauma.
 - Previous integrity of the part.
 - Origin of the lesion at the injured site.
 - A reasonable latent period.
 - A positive pathological diagnosis.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Circle of Willis, with relative incidence of berry aneurysms.** Label: anterior communicating artery (commonest site), middle cerebral bifurcation, posterior communicating–internal carotid junction, basilar tip, vertebral arteries (least common), and a saccular aneurysm sac at a bifurcation.
- ▶ **Aortic aneurysm, longitudinal section.** Label: tunica intima/media/adventitia, an atheromatous plaque, the aneurysmal sac with mural thrombus, the site of rupture; for a dissecting type, also the intimal tear and false lumen.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Natural versus unnatural death:** a ruptured aneurysm is a classic sudden natural death, but autopsy must positively demonstrate it and exclude trauma before death is certified as natural.

- ▶ **Trauma-precipitated rupture:** even a trivial assault, fall, exertion, emotion, or alcohol may rupture a diseased vessel, and the doctor must opine whether the injury caused, precipitated, or merely coincided with, the rupture.
- ▶ **Cause-of-death certification:** distinguish a lesion incompatible with life (e.g. a massive aortic rupture) from one compatible with continued life but capable of precipitating death; avoid attributing death to mild, incidental disease.
- ▶ **Autopsy demonstration:** examine the cerebral aneurysm before formalin fixation, using a constant stream of water and blunt dissection at the base of the brain.
- ▶ Examine the entire cerebral vascular system and aorta; measure every aneurysm found and culture any that appears infected.
- ▶ **Negative/obscure autopsy:** a small leaking aneurysm can easily be missed; thorough vascular dissection, histology, and the circumstantial history are all needed.
- ▶ **Inquest duty:** a sudden, unexpected, or suspicious death from a possible ruptured aneurysm is an inquest case.
- ▶ Police inquest — **Section 194 BNSS 2023** (formerly **Section 174 CrPC 1973**); the panchnama must now reach the District/Sub-Divisional Magistrate within 24 hours.
- ▶ Magistrate inquest — **Section 196 BNSS 2023** (formerly **Section 176 CrPC 1973**).
- ▶ **Where an assault is alleged**, the causation opinion decides the offence charged.
 - **Culpable homicide** — definition under **Section 100 BNS 2023** (formerly Section 299 IPC 1860); punishment under **Section 105 BNS 2023** (formerly Section 304 IPC 1860).
 - **Murder** — definition under **Section 101 BNS 2023** (formerly Section 300 IPC 1860); punishment under **Section 103 BNS 2023** (formerly Section 302 IPC 1860).
 - Failing to inform the police in a medico-legal case is liable under **Section 211 BNS 2023** (formerly **Section 176 IPC 1860**).



Berry aneurysm

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ A **berry (saccular) aneurysm** is a small, round, thin-walled bulge on a cerebral artery.
- ▶ It forms at a branch point of the **circle of Willis**, the arterial ring at the base of the brain.
- ▶ The sac sits on a narrow neck, like a berry on a stalk.
- ▶ The cause is a **developmental weakness in the tunica media** (the muscular middle coat) at the fork of the vessel.
- ▶ Its forensic importance is that it can **rupture suddenly**, causing a **non-traumatic subarachnoid haemorrhage (SAH)** and sudden death.
- ▶ This natural cause of sudden death must be carefully separated from a head injury or a homicidal assault.

Nature, pathology and sites

- ▶ **Site:** forms at bifurcations of the arteries making up the circle of Willis.
- ▶ About **90%** occur on the **anterior circulation** — anterior cerebral, anterior communicating, middle cerebral, and internal carotid–posterior communicating junction.
- ▶ **Least common** on the vertebral artery (posterior circulation).
- ▶ **Multiplicity:** often multiple — finding one aneurysm does not rule out a second as the true bleeding source.
- ▶ **Mechanism:** the defect is a developmental weakness of the media, so the aneurysm is loosely called "congenital."
- ▶ This label is misleading — the aneurysm is **almost never present at birth** and is **rare in children**.
- ▶ It **develops over the course of life** at points of stress on the vessel wall where the media is congenitally thin.
- ▶ **Contributing factors:** trauma, infection, or a connective-tissue disorder can add to the underlying weakness.
- ▶ **Modifiable risk factors:** hypertension, smoking, alcohol abuse, and atherosclerosis.
- ▶ **Incidence:** unruptured ("silent") berry aneurysms are found in about **5% of routine autopsies** — common, and usually silent until they bleed.
- ▶ **Distinguish from the Charcot–Bouchard microaneurysm** — a tiny aneurysm at the bifurcation of small arteries **within** the brain substance, seen in chronic hypertension.
- ▶ It ruptures to cause a **hypertensive intracerebral haemorrhage** (putamen, thalamus, pons, or cerebellum) — not a basal subarachnoid bleed.
- ▶ Saccular (berry) aneurysms are far more common than dissecting aneurysms, which are rare in the cerebral circulation.

Clinical features and mechanism of death

- ▶ **Onset:** a sudden, very severe "**thunderclap headache**," with neck stiffness and vomiting.
- ▶ This may resolve, or progress rapidly to collapse, coma, and death.
- ▶ **Death sequence:** rupture leads to subarachnoid haemorrhage.
- ▶ This triggers widespread **vasospasm** (narrowing of the cerebral arteries).
- ▶ Vasospasm causes widespread **ischaemic brain injury**.
- ▶ The clot over the brain-stem and cranial-nerve roots spasms the vessels supplying the vital centres.
- ▶ This produces rapid cardiorespiratory failure, sudden collapse, and death.
- ▶ **Spread of blood:** it tracks along the fissures into the basal cisterns and into the fourth ventricle.
- ▶ **Triggers of rupture:** a sudden rise in blood pressure from emotional stress, assault, sudden exercise, or intercourse.
- ▶ **Alcohol** contributes two ways — it raises blood pressure, and it precipitates the fights and falls that rupture the aneurysm.

Berry aneurysm as a cause of sudden death

- ▶ Spontaneous (non-traumatic) SAH is the **second most common CNS cause of sudden death**, after epilepsy.
- ▶ **Berry aneurysm is the commonest cause of spontaneous SAH** — about 85% of cases.
- ▶ Intracranial aneurysms overall cause **more than 50%** of all spontaneous subarachnoid haemorrhage.
- ▶ **Other causes of non-traumatic SAH to exclude:**
 - Rupture of an arteriovenous (AV) malformation.
 - Blood dyscrasias.
 - Infective endocarditis with embolic phenomena.
 - Overuse of anticoagulants.
 - Sickle-cell haemoglobinopathy.
 - Sunstroke.
 - Tumours, primary or metastatic.
- ▶ **Mycotic (infective) aneurysms** are often multiple, lie deep in the brain substance, and point to infective endocarditis.

Spontaneous versus traumatic SAH

Feature	Spontaneous SAH (berry aneurysm)	Traumatic SAH
Cause	Rupture of a weak saccular aneurysm of the circle of Willis	Head injury tearing the carotid, vertebral, basal, or cortical vessels
Site of blood	Base of brain, spreading along the fissures	Over the convexities and frontal/parietal/temporal surfaces, often with contusions
External injury	Usually absent; any scalp wound may be secondary to the fall	Skull fracture, contusions, and other intracranial bleeds usually present
Fatal volume	A massive basal bleed driven by vasospasm	Over ~30 mL of basal SAH may be immediately fatal

- ▶ **Autopsy tip:** subarachnoid blood **stains the cortex and will not wash off**; subdural blood washes away under running water — a key distinguishing test.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Circle of Willis, base-of-brain view** — label the anterior communicating, anterior cerebral, internal carotid, middle cerebral, posterior communicating, posterior cerebral, basilar, and vertebral arteries.
- ▶ Mark the commonest aneurysm sites — anterior communicating/cerebral, middle cerebral bifurcation, internal carotid–posterior communicating junction (about 90% anterior circulation) — and the least common site, the vertebral artery.
- ▶ **Berry aneurysm at a bifurcation** — label the parent artery, the daughter branches, the neck, the sac (dome), the weak spot in the tunica media, the rupture point at the dome, and blood tracking into the basal cistern.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Natural death mimicking homicide:** a ruptured berry aneurysm is a leading cause of sudden, unexplained death that can raise suspicion of foul play.
- ▶ The aneurysm must be positively demonstrated before certifying the death as natural.
- ▶ **Causation dilemma:** emotional stress, a quarrel, exertion, a blow, or a fall can precipitate rupture of a pre-existing aneurysm.
- ▶ Conversely, a leaking aneurysm can itself cause the behavioural change, fall, or accident that preceded death.
- ▶ A scalp wound found at autopsy may be **secondary to the fall**, not its cause — reason out the sequence, do not assume it.
- ▶ **Do not certify prematurely:** report a subarachnoid haemorrhage as such until the aneurysm is actually identified.
- ▶ A restricted (no-cranial) autopsy can miss the aneurysm entirely.
- ▶ **Technique:** examine the base of the brain before formalin fixation.
- ▶ Pour a constant gentle stream of water over the base of the brain while doing blunt dissection with a forceps handle or scalpel.
- ▶ This rinses away blood and exposes the sac; record the exact rupture site and the estimated blood volume.
- ▶ **Post-mortem cerebral arteriography** is the most reliable method when an aneurysm is suspected but not visible.
- ▶ **Rule out artefact:** subarachnoid blood can appear as an autopsy artefact from damage to cerebral veins/arachnoid during brain removal, or from decomposition — do not mistake this for a genuine fatal bleed.
- ▶ **Toxicology:** screen blood for alcohol, and note any history of hypertension, smoking, or anticoagulant use.
- ▶ A sudden, unexplained, or suspicious death needs a police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**, or a magistrate's inquest under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.

- ▶ The autopsy surgeon's expert opinion is admissible under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ If trauma is alleged to have precipitated the rupture, the manner-of-death opinion may bear on charges of culpable homicide or murder under **Sections 299/300 IPC (now Sections 100/101 BNS 2023)**, punishable under **Sections 302/304 IPC (now Sections 103/105 BNS 2023)**.



Bio-chemical changes in blood and cerebro-spinal fluid after death

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2024 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ The study of chemical changes in body fluids after death is called **postmortem chemistry** or **thanatochemistry**.
- ▶ After circulation stops, tissues lose their oxygen and energy supply, and the energy-dependent sodium–potassium pump in cell membranes fails.
- ▶ Autolytic enzymes and residual anaerobic metabolism then steadily alter electrolytes, glucose, nitrogenous waste and other metabolites.
- ▶ Some of these changes follow a roughly linear, time-related course, so they are used to estimate the **postmortem interval (PMI)**, also called time since death (TSD).
- ▶ They can also reveal antemortem disease states such as diabetes, uraemia or dehydration.
- ▶ Chemical methods are the **least reliable** of the TSD methods and are strongly **temperature dependent**.

Why these changes occur

- ▶ **Pump failure:** loss of the $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$ pump lets potassium leak out of cells while sodium and chloride move in.
- ▶ **Glycogenolysis:** dying liver tissue breaks down glycogen and releases glucose.
- ▶ **Glycolysis:** that glucose is then consumed anaerobically, generating lactic acid.
- ▶ **Autolysis:** lysosomal enzymes leak out, raising enzyme levels and breaking proteins into non-protein nitrogen (NPN), amino acids and ammonia.
- ▶ **Hypoxic AMP breakdown:** adenosine monophosphate breaks down under hypoxia to form hypoxanthine, especially in the vitreous.
- ▶ **Diffusion:** substances move down new concentration gradients — potassium from retina/choroid into the vitreous, glucose from liver into the inferior vena cava and right heart.

Blood

- ▶ Blood is the sample of choice for haemoglobin S, hormones, cholinesterase and inborn-error-of-metabolism metabolites.
- ▶ For PMI estimation it is **less reliable** than vitreous humour, because haemolysis, putrefaction and diffusion alter it fast.

- ▶ **Glucose:** liver glycogenolysis raises glucose in the inferior vena cava and right heart, giving falsely high "spurious diabetes" readings there.
 - Glycolysis continues at about 12.8 mg/100 mL/hour, so blood glucose is **not a reliable PMI marker**.
- ▶ **Lactic acid:** rises from about 1 mEq/L in life to about 20 mEq/L at 1 hour, to 50–75 mEq/L by 12–24 hours.
- ▶ **Nitrogenous compounds:** creatinine, NPN and total soluble protein all rise linearly with PMI.
 - Amino-acid nitrogen stays under 14 mg% up to 10 hours, reaching 30 mg% or more by 48 hours, then plateaus.
- ▶ **Potassium:** rises to about 18 mEq/L within 1 hour, then rises gradually (the same pattern is seen in banked blood).
- ▶ **Sodium and chloride** both fall steadily ($\approx 0.9\text{--}1.0$ mEq/L/hour); **calcium and phosphorus** rise after an initial constant phase.
- ▶ **Enzymes** all rise — acid and alkaline phosphatase, LDH, SGOT and amylase are several times higher by 48–60 hours.
- ▶ **Cholesterol and cholinesterase** stay stable after death.
 - Stable cholinesterase is what allows postmortem diagnosis of organophosphorus/carbamate poisoning.

Cerebro-spinal fluid (CSF)

- ▶ Sample 5–15 mL, ideally cisternal fluid (drawn from the base of the skull), to avoid contamination.
- ▶ Electrolyte changes come mainly from hypoxic damage to the choroid plexus, the tissue that produces CSF.
- ▶ **Potassium** rises after death, at a fairly constant, temperature-related rate for about the first 20 hours; it is less reliable than vitreous potassium as a PMI marker.
- ▶ **Sodium, calcium and magnesium** show no consistent relationship with time since death.
- ▶ **Glucose** falls very rapidly after death.
- ▶ **Lactic acid** rises sharply up to about 10 hours, then more slowly.
- ▶ **Inositol** rises steadily, from about 1.7 mg% in life to up to 72 mg%.
- ▶ **Schourup's formula** combined CSF lactic acid, NPN and amino acids with body temperature to estimate TSD — of historical interest only now.

Vitreous humour — the most useful fluid

- ▶ Vitreous humour is the single most reliable fluid for postmortem chemistry.
- ▶ It is protected by the bony eye socket, so it survives even severe head trauma.
- ▶ It putrefies more slowly than blood, has almost no red cells, and is not contaminated by drug/alcohol diffusion from the stomach.
- ▶ **Potassium — the best marker.**
 - Low at death, about 5–8 mmol/L, then rises linearly as potassium diffuses from the retina and choroid into the eye, up to about 120 hours (rate ≈ 0.2 mmol/L/hour).

- The two eyes can differ by up to 10%.
- ▶ **Hypoxanthine:** formed by hypoxic breakdown of AMP; rises linearly up to about 120 hours.
 - Correlates with vitreous potassium — combining both gives the best accuracy.
- ▶ **Sodium and chloride** fall slowly, too small a change to be useful alone.
- ▶ **Glucose** falls after death, reaching near zero within 4–5 hours in non-diabetics.

TSD formulae from vitreous potassium

Formula	Equation (TSD in hours; K^+ in mmol/L)
Sturner's	$TSD = 7.14 \times K^+ - 39.1$
Madea's (Madea–Henssge)	$TSD = 5.26 \times K^+ - 30.9$
James'	$TSD = 4.32 \times K^+ - 18.35$

- ▶ The linear relationship holds up to about 120 hours.
- ▶ 95% confidence limits are about ± 20 hours up to 100 hours (± 32 hours for hypoxanthine) — a broad estimate, not a precise time.
- ▶ Accuracy is affected by rate of decomposition, temperature, chilling and urea retention.

Diagnostic uses beyond PMI

- ▶ **Diabetes:** vitreous glucose above 11.1 mmol/L (200 mg%) indicates diabetes, even if IV glucose was given before death.
- ▶ **Hypoglycaemia:** vitreous glucose below 1.4 mmol/L suggests it.
- ▶ **Uraemia:** vitreous or blood urea above 150 mmol/L indicates renal failure.
- ▶ **Dehydration vs over-hydration:** combined vitreous sodium, chloride and urea patterns distinguish the two.
- ▶ **Drowning:** the serum potassium:sodium ratio rises in both sea-water and fresh-water drowning.
- ▶ **Organophosphate poisoning:** stable serum cholinesterase allows postmortem diagnosis.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Vitreous potassium, with hypoxanthine, is the chief biochemical PMI tool; blood and CSF lactic acid/NPN are only supportive.
- ▶ These findings hold mainly in cold and temperate climates and are temperature dependent, so they corroborate — not replace — algor mortis, rigor mortis and livor mortis.
- ▶ Record the time of sample collection separately from the autopsy time.
- ▶ Collect vitreous by gentle aspiration through the pars plana (about 2–3 mL per eye), replacing the withdrawn volume to preserve the globe's shape and avoiding retinal cells, which give falsely high potassium readings.
- ▶ In suspected child abuse, use CSF or synovial fluid instead of vitreous, since the eye is needed for histology.
- ▶ Postmortem chemistry can help establish diabetic ketoacidosis, hypoglycaemia, uraemia, dehydration, anaphylaxis (raised serum tryptase) or organophosphate poisoning as cause of death.

- ▶ An unnatural or suspicious death requires a police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**; a magistrate's inquest is held under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The doctor may later depose to these findings as expert opinion under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Graph — vitreous potassium vs time since death:** X-axis = time since death (0–120 hours); Y-axis = vitreous potassium (about 5–30 mmol/L); a near-straight ascending line.
 - Mark the baseline at about 5–8 mmol/L at death.
 - Annotate slope ≈ 0.2 mmol/L/hour and 95% confidence ± 20 hours up to 100 hours.
 - Box the three formulae (Sturner, Madea, James).
- ▶ **Flow diagram — mechanism of postmortem chemical change:** circulation stops $\rightarrow$ hypoxia / loss of $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$ pump $\rightarrow$ four branches.
 - Potassium leaks out of cells into vitreous and CSF.
 - Glycogenolysis raises glucose, then glycolysis raises lactic acid.
 - Autolysis raises enzymes, NPN and amino acids.
 - AMP breakdown raises hypoxanthine.



Biochemical changes in the EYE after death

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Why the vitreous humour matters

- ▶ After death the eye shows visible changes (corneal opacity, *tache noire*, retinal blood-column segmentation) and biochemical changes in the **vitreous humour** — the gel filling the vitreous chamber between lens and retina.
- ▶ The biochemical changes matter more medico-legally, because the vitreous is protected, poorly vascular, and resists putrefaction, so its chemistry changes slowly and predictably.
- ▶ Rising **vitreous potassium** is the single most useful chemical method for estimating **time since death (postmortem interval, PMI)**.
- ▶ Vitreous glucose, urea, sodium and chloride also help diagnose diabetes, uraemia and dehydration.

Why the vitreous is the specimen of choice

- ▶ It is the preferred fluid for postmortem chemistry — sodium, potassium, chloride, urea, creatinine and glucose are all run on it.
- ▶ It sits inside the bony orbit, so it survives even severe head trauma.
- ▶ It resists putrefaction, staying analysable in decomposed and even embalmed bodies.

- ▶ It is not contaminated by postmortem diffusion of drugs or alcohol from the stomach, and stays nearly free of red cells, avoiding the haemolysis artefact that corrupts postmortem serum.
- ▶ Postmortem ethanol does not form to any significant extent in the vitreous, making it a clean matrix for alcohol testing.
- ▶ Only 1–2 mL is obtainable per eye, but that is enough for chemical analysis.

Vitreous potassium — the principal TSD method

- ▶ **Mechanism:** after death, cells lose their ion pumps and potassium leaks out, diffusing mainly from the **retina and choroid** into the centre of the globe, producing a steady, near-linear rise.
- ▶ **Baseline:** potassium at death is about **5–8 mmol/L**.
- ▶ **Rate of rise:** about **0.17–0.238 mmol/L per hour**, commonly taken as **0.2 mmol/L/hour**.
- ▶ **Duration and accuracy:** the rise stays linear for up to **120 hours**, with a 95% confidence interval of **±20 hours up to 100 hours** — always a range, never a single time point.
- ▶ **Inter-eye variation:** values can differ by up to **10%** between the two eyes, so both eyes should be sampled.
- ▶ **Confounders:** electrolyte imbalance at death, ambient temperature, chilling of the body, and urea retention all alter the rate of rise.

Potassium-based PMI formulae

Formula	Equation (TSD in hours; K ⁺ in mmol/L)
Sturner	$\text{TSD} = 7.14 \times K^+ - 39.1$
Madea (Madea & Henssge)	$\text{TSD} = 5.26 \times K^+ - 30.9$
James	$\text{TSD} = 4.32 \times K^+ - 18.35$

Other vitreous chemical changes

- ▶ **Hypoxanthine:** rises linearly for up to 120 hours, starting immediately after death.
 - It is formed by hypoxic breakdown of AMP and is raised by antemortem hypoxia.
 - Its 95% confidence interval is **±32 hours**.
 - Combining hypoxanthine with potassium gives a more accurate TSD estimate than either alone.
- ▶ **Glucose:** falls rapidly, reaching near zero within **4–5 hours** in non-diabetics, because retinal-cell metabolism briefly continues after death.
- ▶ **Lactic acid:** rises steadily after death, the inverse partner of falling glucose.
- ▶ **Sodium and chloride:** both fall slowly (sodium ~0.9 mmol/L/hour, chloride <1 mmol/L/hour) — too little change to help with TSD, but still diagnostically useful.
- ▶ **Urea and creatinine:** stay essentially stable after death, so they reliably reflect antemortem blood levels.
- ▶ **Calcium and magnesium:** change too slowly to be of any practical TSD use.

Diagnostic value of vitreous chemistry

- ▶ **Diabetes / diabetic ketoacidosis:** vitreous glucose above **11.1 mmol/L (>200 mg%)** is diagnostic of diabetes, even if intravenous glucose was given before death, because the orbit shields the vitreous.
- ▶ **Uraemia:** vitreous urea above **150 mmol/L** indicates uraemia, with urea nitrogen and creatinine rising markedly while sodium and chloride stay near normal.
- ▶ Because urea stays stable after death, this reading reliably reflects antemortem renal failure.
- ▶ **Hypoglycaemia / insulin overdose:** a vitreous glucose below **1.4 mmol/L** is sometimes quoted as suggestive of hypoglycaemia, but the figure is unreliable — vitreous glucose falls to near zero in everyone within 4–5 hours after death.
- ▶ So a low postmortem reading cannot separate true antemortem hypoglycaemia from this universal fall.
- ▶ A firm diagnosis of insulin overdose instead needs circumstantial/scene evidence, the insulin-to-C-peptide ratio, an exogenous-insulin assay, and injection-site analysis.
- ▶ **Dehydration:** high vitreous sodium (>155 mEq/L) and chloride (>135 mEq/L) with raised urea nitrogen (>40 mg/dL) indicate antemortem dehydration.
- ▶ **Drowning:** vitreous and CSF electrolyte patterns can support a diagnosis of drowning and help distinguish salt-water from fresh-water drowning.

Accompanying ocular changes

- ▶ **Corneal opacity:** hazy cornea from drying, delayed by about 2 hours if the eyelids are kept closed.
- ▶ **Tache noire:** when the lids stay open, debris forms two yellow triangles on the sclera beside the iris, turning brown then black within 3–4 hours.
- ▶ **Kevorkian sign (cattle trucking):** the retinal blood column fragments into segments, visible on ophthalmoscopy within minutes of death; the disc outline blurs by 7–10 hours.
- ▶ **Pupils:** may become unequal or irregular from iris rigor; they react to atropine and eserine for about an hour after death, but never to light.
- ▶ **Intraocular pressure:** falls progressively, so the globe becomes soft.

Sampling technique

- ▶ Use a wide-bore needle (about 15–20 gauge) on a 10 mL syringe, inserted obliquely through the sclera about 5 mm lateral to the limbus, through the pars plana of the ciliary body, into the vitreous body.
- ▶ Apply gentle aspiration only — aggressive suction dislodges retinal cells and gives a **falsely high potassium** reading.
- ▶ Withdraw all available vitreous (roughly 1–5 mL) from each eye separately, since central and peripheral concentrations differ.
- ▶ For alcohol-related and insulin/hypoglycaemia deaths, preserve the sample with sodium fluoride and record the exact sampling time.

- ▶ In suspected child abuse, examine the fundus first and do NOT blindly aspirate vitreous — the artefact can mimic or destroy evidence of traumatic retinal haemorrhage.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Graph — vitreous potassium vs time since death:** x-axis "time since death (hours)" 0–120; y-axis "vitreous K^+ (mmol/L)" starting ~5–8.
- ▶ Draw a near-linear rising line (slope ~0.2 mmol/L/hour) with dashed ± 20 -hour confidence bands above and below.
- ▶ Label the baseline " K^+ at death ~5–8 mmol/L", mark "linear up to 120 h", and annotate the formula $TSD = 5.26 \times K^+ - 30.9$ (Madea & Henssge).
- ▶ **Labelled sagittal section of the eyeball for vitreous sampling:** cornea, limbus, sclera, pars plana of ciliary body, vitreous humour, retina, choroid, optic nerve, with an arrow showing the needle entering obliquely ~5 mm lateral to the limbus.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Vitreous potassium, often combined with hypoxanthine, is one of the most reliable chemical TSD methods, especially once cooling, rigor and lividity have plateaued.
- ▶ Vitreous chemistry can uncover a cause of death invisible on gross autopsy — diabetic ketoacidosis, uraemia, dehydration — and gives a clean matrix for alcohol and drug screening in decomposed or embalmed bodies.
- ▶ Every medico-legal autopsy should have vitreous collected from both eyes, labelled separately, preserved appropriately, and the sampling time recorded.
- ▶ The report must state a range of time since death, never a single figure — over-interpretation is medico-legally indefensible.
- ▶ An unnatural/suspicious death needs a police inquest under §174/176 CrPC 1973 (now §194/196 BNSS 2023), which the autopsy and TSD estimate feed into.
- ▶ The doctor's chemical findings are tendered in court as **expert opinion under §45 IEA 1872** (now §39 BSA 2023).

♦ ♦ ♦

Classify Anesthetic drugs and write about the medico-legal importance

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2020 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Anesthetic drugs** produce a reversible loss of sensation, with or without loss of consciousness, for surgery or diagnosis.
- ▶ **General anesthesia** abolishes consciousness and pain over the whole body.
- ▶ **Local (regional) anesthesia** blocks nerve conduction in one limited area, and the patient stays conscious.

- ▶ An **anesthetic/operative death** is one occurring in the operating room, or before full recovery from anesthesia (usually within 24 hours).
- ▶ These deaths are rare — about 1 in 10,000 administrations historically, now closer to 5–6 per million in healthy patients.
- ▶ Every such death raises a presumption of negligence, so it is always treated as a medico-legal death — police must be informed, the certificate withheld, and an autopsy done.

Classification of anesthetic and associated agents

Class	Key agents
Local anesthetics	Lidocaine (lignocaine), bupivacaine, procaine, cocaine
General — inhaled	Nitrous oxide (gas); chloroform, diethyl ether, halothane, isoflurane, sevoflurane (volatile liquids)
General — IV, non-opioid	Thiopentone, midazolam, ketamine, propofol, etomidate
General — IV, opioid	Fentanyl (short-acting, intra-operative); morphine, pethidine (post-operative analgesia)
Muscle relaxants	Depolarizing — succinylcholine; non-depolarizing — vecuronium, pancuronium, tubocurarine
Reversal agents	Naloxone (opioids), flumazenil (benzodiazepines), neostigmine (non-depolarizing relaxants), sugammadex (rocuronium)

- ▶ **Muscle relaxants** do not cause unconsciousness or relieve pain — they paralyse skeletal muscle to ease intubation, and are given only after induction.
- ▶ Used carelessly with an IV barbiturate, they also paralyse the respiratory and throat muscles — a recognised cause of fatal respiratory failure.
- ▶ **Ester-type** local anesthetics (procaine, cocaine) cause hypersensitivity more often than **amide-type** agents (lidocaine, bupivacaine).
- ▶ **Bupivacaine** is more cardiotoxic than lidocaine if accidentally injected intravenously.

Classification of anesthetic/operative deaths

- ▶ (A) **During anesthesia but not due to it:** the underlying disease or the operation itself is the real cause.
 - Example: the surgical lesion itself is lethal.
 - Example: undiagnosed valvular or coronary heart disease.
 - Example: a surgical accident, such as injury to a great vessel.
- ▶ (B) **Direct result of the anesthetic:**
 - **Respiratory failure** from depression of the respiratory centre — overdose, over-premedication, or relaxant drugs.
 - **Respiratory failure from airway obstruction:**
 - Laryngeal spasm.

- Aspiration of gastric contents.
- The tongue falling back.
- Reactionary hemorrhage (bleeding that resumes hours after surgery).
- **Cardiac causes** — vagal inhibition and cardiac arrest during induction from light anesthesia; arrhythmias and catecholamine-triggered ventricular fibrillation (halogenated agents sensitise the heart to adrenaline).
- **Overdose, hypersensitivity, or idiosyncrasy** to the anesthetic agent.
- **Hypovolemia** — an unrecognised pre-operative deficit worsened by anesthesia-induced vasodilation.
- **Technical mishaps** are the commonest cause of these deaths.
- Oesophageal instead of tracheal intubation.
- Breathing-circuit disconnection or a kinked tube.
- Mislabeled gas cylinders.
- Explosion or fire from a spark igniting an inflammable anesthetic gas.
- ▶ **(C) Death by disease** — either the disease the operation was for (e.g., aortic aneurysm repair) or an unrelated condition (ischemic heart disease, pulmonary embolism, pheochromocytoma).

Specific types of anesthesia and their hazards

- ▶ **Local/regional anesthesia** causes severe reactions in about 0.05% of cases, very few of them fatal.
 - Main hazards: overdose of the drug or its vasoconstrictor.
 - Rapid systemic absorption or accidental intravascular injection.
 - Hypersensitivity reaction.
 - Adrenaline added to the local agent can cause tachycardia, hypertension, and ventricular fibrillation.
 - Lignocaine overdose causes circumoral paresthesia, tinnitus, convulsions, and death — called **Local Anesthetic Systemic Toxicity (LAST)**.
- ▶ **Spinal anesthesia** causes hypotension from sympathetic paralysis, which is dangerous in the elderly and in heart disease.
 - Cardiac standstill can follow vagal stimulation, and the drug can spread upward to vital centres.
 - Lumbar-puncture headache occurs in about 25% of cases.
 - **Paraplegia** can follow contamination of syringes or ampoules by phenol or detergent.
- ▶ **Dental anesthesia risks:**
 - Aspiration of blood, teeth, or packs.
 - A vasovagal faint in the sitting position.
 - Intravascular injection near the inferior dental nerve.
- ▶ **Obstetric anesthesia** carries the risk of **Mendelson's syndrome** — chemical pneumonitis from aspirating acid gastric contents — common because it is often given as an emergency without preparation.

Malignant hyperthermia

- ▶ A rare, autosomal-dominant pharmacogenetic disorder — an inherited abnormal reaction to a drug.
- ▶ Triggered by volatile inhalational anesthetics and the depolarizing relaxant **succinylcholine**.
- ▶ Caused by a mutation in the **RYR1 (ryanodine-receptor) gene**, which causes uncontrolled calcium release inside the muscle cell.
- ▶ **Features:**
 - Body temperature rises suddenly to 40–45°C.
 - Muscle rigidity.
 - Metabolic acidosis and hyperkalemia.
 - Red-brown (myoglobinuric) urine.
- ▶ Incidence is about 1 in 14,000–15,000 general anesthetics; mortality was 60–80% before **dantrolene sodium** cut it to about 10%.
- ▶ Raised creatine phosphokinase (CPK) is found in most carriers, making CPK and RYR1 testing relevant at autopsy.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Classification tree of anesthetic agents** — root "Anesthetic & associated agents"; branches: *Local anesthetics*, *General anesthetics* (Inhaled / Intravenous), *Associated agents* (Muscle relaxants / Reversal agents).
- ▶ **Flowchart of anesthetic/operative deaths** — three boxes (A) not due to anesthetic, (B) direct result of anesthetic, (C) death by disease — converging on "Was death due to the anesthetic, the operation, or the disease?"

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Every anesthetic/operative death is a medico-legal death.
- ▶ The death certificate must **not** be issued, and the surgeon must inform the police.
- ▶ A police inquest is mandatory under **Section 194 BNSS 2023 (Section 174 CrPC 1973)**, since these deaths raise a suspicion of negligence.
- ▶ The autopsy and inquiry decide whether death followed a technical defect — possible **criminal negligence under Section 106 BNS 2023 (Section 304A IPC 1860)** — or an unforeseeable *misadventure*.
- ▶ In *Roe vs Ministry of Health*, patients given Nupercaine spinal anesthetic developed permanent paraplegia from phenol that had seeped through micro-cracks in glass ampoules; since the risk was then unknown, the court held this to be **misadventure, not negligence**.
- ▶ Valid written informed consent for both the operation and the anesthetic must always be verified.
- ▶ A patient may validly consent to a high-risk, potentially fatal operation that is the only available treatment — if death follows, the surgeon is not liable.
- ▶ **Investigation should include** an independent anesthetist and surgeon from a different hospital.

- ▶ They seal the operating room and check every gas cylinder, valve, and connection for correct mixing or mislabeling.
- ▶ They review the pre-anesthetic chart, checking whether the procedure was necessary and the patient fit, and whether the equipment and technique were correct.
- ▶ **At autopsy**, photograph the body and do **not** remove indwelling tubes, drains, or cannulae — open the body with them still in place, to verify correct placement.
- ▶ Test for air embolism and pneumothorax before opening the body.
- ▶ Check every suture line for slippage or a leak, and search for retained swabs or instruments.
- ▶ Sample the brain — the hippocampus and cerebellar Purkinje cells show hypoxic change.
- ▶ Many fatal mechanisms — vagal inhibition, arrhythmia, laryngeal or coronary spasm — leave **no autopsy finding**, so the opinion often rests on exclusion and reasoning.
- ▶ Both lungs are tied off and submitted whole; alveolar and cavity gases are trapped under water using a rubber dam (a sealed rubber sheet).
- ▶ Volatile anesthetics are lost easily, so samples are sealed air-tight and refrigerated.
- ▶ **Fatal blood concentrations** are used to judge overdose:
 - Chloroform 40–60 mg%.
 - Diethyl ether 180 mg%.
 - Divinyl ether 50 mg%.
 - Halothane 20 mg%.
 - Trichloroethylene 50 mg%.
- ▶ Expert medical opinion in the inquiry is admitted under **Section 39 BSA 2023 (Section 45 IEA 1872)**.



Describe medical and medicolegal aspect of death associated anaesthesia and surgery

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ A **death associated with anaesthesia and surgery** is a death in the operating theatre, or before the patient fully recovers from anaesthesia (conventionally within about 24 hours).
- ▶ The term "*anaesthetic death*" is avoided because it pre-judges the anaesthetist; "*death associated with anaesthesia*" is preferred.
- ▶ These deaths are rare: classically about **1 in 10,000** anaesthetics, now roughly **5–6 per million** with modern monitoring and safer agents.
- ▶ Every such death is legally an **unnatural death**, reportable to police for a medico-legal autopsy.

Classification

- ▶ (A) **During anaesthesia, but NOT due to it:**
 - The disease or injury needing surgery is itself fatal; anaesthesia only precipitates it.

- Serious co-morbidity, e.g. valvular heart disease.
- An undiagnosed lesion, e.g. coronary atherosclerosis.
- Surgical shock/exhaustion from a poor pre-operative state or a long operation.
- A surgical accident, e.g. injury to a large vessel.
- ▶ **(B) Direct effect of the anaesthetic itself:**
 - Respiratory failure, hypovolaemia.
 - Vagal inhibition — sudden cardiac slowing/stopping via a vagal reflex.
 - Overdose, arrhythmia, hypersensitivity.
 - Explosion/burn, and malignant hyperthermia (below).
- ▶ **(C) Due to surgery** (anaesthesia not usually blamed after recovery):
 - Injury to a vital organ, or air embolism.
 - Massive haemorrhage from a slipped ligature.
 - Perforation of a viscus, or hospital-acquired infection.
- ▶ **(D) Due to disease** (commonest overall):
 - The condition operated for, e.g. polytrauma or severe biochemical upset.
 - An unrelated disease — ischaemic heart disease, pulmonary embolism, phaeochromocytoma, tension pneumothorax.

Medical causes of anaesthetic deaths

- ▶ **Inexperience** is the commonest contributing factor.
 - Intubation mishaps: vomit aspiration, a kinked tube, or oesophageal placement.
 - Vagal inhibition from inadequate depth of anaesthesia.
 - Breathing-circuit disconnection, or excessive airway pressure rupturing the lung.
 - Positive-pressure ventilation turning a pneumothorax into a **tension pneumothorax**.
- ▶ **Respiratory failure:**
 - Respiratory-centre depression from overdose, over-premedication, or a relaxant like curare.
 - Airway obstruction from laryngeal spasm, aspirated gastric contents, impacted swabs/dentures, or a falling-back tongue.
- ▶ **Cardiovascular:**
 - Vagal inhibition causing cardiac arrest at induction.
 - Arrhythmia from pre-existing disease, drug reaction, or raised catecholamines.
 - Commonest cause of sudden death under general anaesthesia = **acute neurogenic cardiovascular failure**.
- ▶ **Hypovolaemia:**
 - Unrecognised pre-operative volume loss.
 - Vasodilatation tipping compensated shock into uncompensated shock.
- ▶ **Technical mishaps:**
 - Incompatible blood transfusion.
 - Wrong drug/fluid or mislabelled gas cylinder given by mistake, e.g. sodium citrate for saline.

- Explosion/fire from inflammable vapour ignited by a diathermy spark or static electricity.
- ▶ **Drug-specific reactions:**
 - Chloroform and halothane are hepatotoxic; chloroform can also trigger ventricular fibrillation.
 - Halogenated agents (cyclopropane, halothane, trichloroethylene) sensitise the heart to adrenaline.
 - Thiopentone: circulatory collapse in elderly arteriosclerotic patients.
 - Suxamethonium without atropine: fatal bradycardia.

Malignant hyperthermia

- ▶ A rare, life-threatening, **autosomal-dominant** disorder of the **RYR1 ryanodine-receptor gene**, which disrupts calcium handling in muscle.
- ▶ Triggered by **volatile anaesthetics (classically halothane)** and by the muscle relaxant **succinylcholine**.
- ▶ **Features:** muscular rigidity, hypercapnia, tachycardia, and body temperature rising rapidly to **40–45°C**.
- ▶ Rhabdomyolysis follows, with red-brown urine and electrolyte disturbance.
- ▶ **Incidence:** about 1 in 14,000 general anaesthetics.
- ▶ **Mortality:** historically 60–80%, now about 10% with **dantrolene sodium**, the specific treatment.

Local, spinal and regional anaesthesia

- ▶ **Local anaesthesia:** severe reactions in ~0.05% of cases, rarely fatal.
 - Death follows overdose, rapid systemic absorption, accidental intravascular injection, or hypersensitivity.
- ▶ **Spinal anaesthesia:**
 - Hypotension from sympathetic paralysis, worst in elderly/cardiac patients.
 - Cardiac standstill from vagal stimulation.
 - Post-lumbar-puncture headache in about 25% of cases.
 - Paraplegia from ampoule/syringe contamination with phenol or detergent.
- ▶ **Obstetric anaesthesia — Mendelson's syndrome:** chemical pneumonitis from aspirating acidic gastric contents; common in emergency obstetric anaesthesia given without fasting.

Fatal blood concentrations

Agent	Fatal level
Halothane	20 mg%
Chloroform	40–60 mg%
Trichloroethylene	50 mg%
Diethyl ether	180 mg%

Autopsy and investigation

- ▶ Include an independent **anaesthetist and surgeon from another hospital**, plus a specialist for obstetric/paediatric deaths.
- ▶ The single most important step is obtaining the **anaesthetic and recovery-room records**.
- ▶ Record health at admission, pre-medication, duration of anaesthesia, and whether **informed consent** was taken.
- ▶ **Before opening the body:**
 - Photograph it, and examine the wounds/dressings.
 - Test for **air embolism and pneumothorax**.
- ▶ Open with all **indwelling devices left in situ** — tube, drains, cannulae — to check correct placement.
- ▶ Inspect every suture line for leakage.
- ▶ Look for a wrongly ligated vessel, a perforation, or a retained swab/instrument.
- ▶ The **Sommer's sector (CA1) of the hippocampus** and the **cerebellar Purkinje cells** show selective hypoxic damage.
- ▶ **Specimens:** blood for grouping/culture, lungs tied off for toxicology, and alveolar air via needle under water.
- ▶ Volatile anaesthetics need air-tight, refrigerated containers — a negative test does not exclude the agent's role.
- ▶ Cause of death is often **physiological and undemonstrable** — vagal inhibition, arrhythmia, laryngeal/coronary spasm. Opinion rests on exclusion after a complete autopsy.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Flowchart:** "Death in/after operation (within about 24 hours)" branching into (A) during anaesthesia but not due to it, (B) direct effect of the anaesthetic, (C) due to surgery, and (D) due to disease.
- ▶ **Labelled brain diagram (coronal section):** hippocampus/Ammon's horn, Sommer's sector (CA1), cerebellar Purkinje cell layer, and white-matter leukoencephalopathy — zones vulnerable to hypoxia.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ This is an **unnatural death**: no death certificate, inform the police, and a medico-legal autopsy under **Section 194 BNSS 2023 (Section 174 CrPC 1973)**.
- ▶ Scene investigation is under **Section 195 BNSS 2023 (Section 175 CrPC 1973)**.
- ▶ The central question is **negligence versus misadventure**.
 - An unforeseeable, accepted complication despite due care is *misadventure* — no liability (e.g. the Nupercaine/ampoule paraplegia case).
 - A *rash or negligent act* attracts **Section 106 BNS 2023 (Section 304-A IPC 1860)** — up to 2 years' imprisonment, or fine, or both.

- *Res ipsa loquitur* ("the thing speaks for itself") may apply to an obvious lapse like a retained swab or a mismatched transfusion.
- ▶ **Consent** is pivotal:
 - Valid, written, **informed consent** for both the operation and the anaesthetic must be documented.
 - Consent under fear, or by an incompetent person, is invalid (**Section 28 BNS 2023**).
 - Good-faith treatment of a minor or person of unsound mind, with the guardian's consent, is protected under **Section 27 BNS 2023 (Section 89 IPC 1860)**.
 - Emergency treatment, when consent cannot be obtained in time and no guardian exists, is protected under **Section 30 BNS 2023 (Section 92 IPC 1860)**.
 - An anaesthetist who gives an agent **expressly prohibited** by the patient is liable even without negligence.
 - A **dying declaration** on the cause of death is admissible under **Section 26 BSA 2023 (Section 32 IEA 1872)**.
- ▶ **Anaesthetist's duty**: refuse and report an illegal operation — e.g. illegal MTP (Medical Termination of Pregnancy), organ retrieval, or maiming — found at the pre-anaesthetic check, or become a party to the crime.
- ▶ **Autopsy opinion** must state whether death was **due to, contributed to by, or independent of** the anaesthetic/surgery, addressing:
 - Was consent obtained.
 - Was the procedure necessary and life-saving.
 - Was the patient fit and properly prepared.
 - Was there any defect in technique.
 - Would the patient have died without the operation.



Describe the anatomy of midline structures of Neck. Discuss Post Mortem findings in cases of Pressure over the neck

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ The midline (anterior column) of the neck is the **hyoid bone, thyroid cartilage, cricoid cartilage, larynx and trachea**, covered by strap muscles and flanked by the thyroid gland and great vessels.
- ▶ **Pressure on the neck** (compression of the neck) is a form of mechanical asphyxia.
- ▶ It occurs via a noose with body weight (**hanging**), a ligature without suspension (**ligature strangulation**), or the hands (**throttling**).
- ▶ These structures "record" the force applied, so the neck is dissected last, in situ, in a bloodless field.

Applied anatomy of the midline neck structures

- ▶ **Skin**: thinner in front than at the nape, so the front marks and abrades more easily.

- ▶ **Strap muscles:** sternohyoid, sternothyroid, thyrohyoid, omohyoid (sternomastoid lies deep to them laterally) — reflected layer by layer at autopsy to expose haemorrhage.
- ▶ **Hyoid bone:**
 - A U-shaped bone at the root of the tongue, held only by muscles and ligaments — no bony joint to the rest of the skeleton.
 - Has a central **body**, two **greater horns** (behind sternomastoid, ~3 cm below the mandibular angle), and two minor **lesser horns**.
 - The body–horn junction often has a natural joint that can mimic a fracture.
 - Horn tips ossify only after ~30 years, so fractures are commoner in older persons, rarer in the young and in females.
- ▶ **Thyroid cartilage:** the largest laryngeal cartilage, forming the laryngeal prominence (Adam's apple).
 - Two laminae meet in the midline; the **superior horn** is the most fracture-prone part.
 - The triticeous cartilage and an asymmetric horn are normal variants, not fractures.
- ▶ **Larynx:** lies at the C3–C6 vertebral level, between the pharynx and trachea.
 - Has 9 cartilages — 3 single (epiglottis, thyroid, cricoid) and 3 paired (arytenoid, corniculate, cuneiform); the protected epiglottis rarely fractures.
- ▶ **Cricoid cartilage:** the only complete ring in the airway, shaped like a signet ring with the broad plate behind.
 - Fractures almost only by anteroposterior compression against the spine (an assailant's thumbs) — so a genuine fracture is near-pathognomonic of throttling and usually fatal, but usually not seen in ligature strangulation.
- ▶ **Trachea:** C-shaped rings; rarely fractures.
- ▶ **Great vessels:** common carotids cross C4–C6 and bifurcate near the thyroid cartilage, where the carotid sinus/body can trigger reflex vagal cardiac arrest; jugular veins run alongside, while vertebral arteries stay protected in bony canals, so the head still gets some blood even when the jugulars are blocked.

Mechanism — force needed to occlude each structure

Structure occluded	Approx. tension needed
Internal jugular veins	~2 kg
Carotid arteries	~4–5 kg
Trachea (airway)	~15 kg
Vertebral arteries	~20 kg

- ▶ Because the jugulars and carotids close at far lower pressure than the trachea, **venous congestion and reflex vagal arrest usually kill before true airway asphyxia does** — even partial hanging is enough.
- ▶ Death results from asphyxia, venous congestion (commonest in hanging), cerebral anaemia, reflex vagal inhibition, or a combination of these.

Post-mortem findings — general

- ▶ **External asphyxial signs:** facial congestion/cyanosis, puffy oedematous face, bulging suffused eyes, petechial (Tardieu) haemorrhages in the eyelids/conjunctivae/face, and a swollen, bruised tongue.
 - Well marked in strangulation and throttling but often slight or absent in hanging, where the face is typically pale since arterial supply is also cut off.
- ▶ **General autopsy:** visceral congestion, congested oedematous lungs with subpleural petechiae and silvery blebs, blood-stained airway froth, congested petechiated brain.
- ▶ **Cardinal rule:** dissect the neck last, in a bloodless field, layer by layer and in situ — this avoids mistaking artefacts (spurious peri-laryngeal blood, oesophageal banding, handling-induced hyoid fracture) for real injury.

Post-mortem findings — by type of compression

Hanging

- ▶ **Ligature mark:** oblique, incompletely encircling, placed high between chin and larynx — above the thyroid cartilage in ~80% of cases.
 - Base pale, hard, parchment-like; runs upward toward the knot, forming an inverted-V with a gap (suspension peak) where the noose lifts away.
- ▶ **Other external signs:** a stretched, elongated neck; Tardieu spots on dependent limbs; penile turgidity if long-suspended; saliva dribbling from the mouth angle — the surest sign of ante-mortem hanging.
- ▶ **La facie sympathique** (a separate, now-unreliable but classic ocular sign): knot pressure on the cervical sympathetic chain leaves the same-side eye open and dilated, the opposite eye closed and constricted.
- ▶ **Internal findings:** tissue under the mark is dry, white, glistening; haemorrhage in strap muscles (~25%).
 - **Amussat's sign** — transverse carotid intimal tears, in 5–10%, more often after a long or judicial drop.
 - **Simon's sign** — haemorrhage beneath the lower spinal ligament at the thoracic/lumbar discs — a vital sign of suspension.
 - Hyoid fracture is uncommon (15–20%); trachea and larynx rarely fracture.

Ligature strangulation

- ▶ **Ligature mark:** transverse, completely encircling the neck, low — at or below the thyroid cartilage.
 - Base soft and reddish, more marked in front and at the sides, with common margin abrasions/bruises; a cross-over mark may show the assailant's position.
- ▶ **Internal findings:** severe engorgement/haemorrhage in and above the compressed zone; bruised neck muscles; subcapsular thyroid haemorrhage.
 - Thyroid (especially superior horn) fracture common; hyoid fracture uncommon; cricoid usually not fractured.

- Carotid intimal damage only with a deeply sunken, narrow ligature.

Throttling (manual strangulation)

- ▶ **External signs:** disc-shaped oval finger-pad bruises (~1.5–2 cm) and crescentic fingernail abrasions over the front/sides of the neck, plus the victim's own vertical defence scratches and signs of struggle, often with sexual assault.
- ▶ **Internal findings:** deep bruising of neck muscles, thyroid, tongue base, pharynx and peri-carotid tissue; carotid intimal tears (10–15%).
 - **Hyoid fracture is commonest of all** (30–50%), usually from inward or lateral compression.
 - Superior thyroid horn fracture is common; a genuine cricoid fracture is near-pathognomonic of throttling.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Neck-mark type, level, direction and continuity, plus the fracture pattern, distinguish hanging from ligature strangulation from throttling; most strangulation/throttling is homicidal, most hanging suicidal — **strangulation should be presumed homicidal until proved otherwise**.
- ▶ X-ray the neck for hyoid/cricoid fractures, and use **1% toluidine-blue staining** or **stereomicroscopy** to confirm fractures and rule out natural joints, the triticeous cartilage and dissection artefacts.
- ▶ Preserve and dispatch the ligature (note noose circumference against neck), nail clippings/scrapings, and the hyoid bone with soft tissue attached.
- ▶ Inquest: police inquest under **Section 194 BNSS 2023** (was **Section 174 CrPC 1973**); custodial/similar deaths need a magistrate's inquest under **Section 196 BNSS 2023** (was **Section 176 CrPC 1973**).
- ▶ Culpable homicide is defined under **Section 100 BNS 2023** (was **Section 299 IPC 1860**); murder under **Section 101 BNS 2023** (was **Section 300 IPC 1860**), punished under **Section 103(1) BNS 2023** (was **Section 302 IPC 1860**).
- ▶ Culpable homicide not amounting to murder falls under **Section 105 BNS 2023** (was **Section 304 IPC 1860**).

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — Anterior view of the midline neck skeleton.** Label the hyoid body and horns, thyrohyoid membrane, thyroid laminae with superior/inferior horns, laryngeal prominence, cricoid cartilage, cricothyroid membrane, and tracheal rings.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — Comparative ligature marks.** Two neck outlines — hanging (oblique, high, incomplete, inverted-V with a suspension peak) vs ligature strangulation (transverse, low, complete) — with the Adam's apple marked as the reference line on both.



Diagnosis of brainstem death

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2020 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Brainstem death** is the permanent, irreversible loss of all brainstem functions.
- ▶ The brainstem holds the respiratory centre and the ascending reticular activating system (the network that maintains wakefulness) — so its death means the patient can never breathe on their own or regain consciousness again.
- ▶ The heart may still beat on a ventilator, but India (like most countries) treats brainstem death as legal death — the basis for switching off a ventilator and for taking organs from a "beating-heart donor".
- ▶ The diagnosis is purely **clinical**, made at the bedside — no scan or blood test is mandatory.
- ▶ Three things must be shown: the cause is known and irreversible, all reversible mimics are excluded, and every brainstem reflex plus spontaneous breathing is absent.

Three concepts of "brain death"

- ▶ **Cortical (cerebral) death:** only the cortex is destroyed and the brainstem is intact, so the patient breathes on their own but has no awareness at all — this is the **persistent vegetative state**, NOT death.
 - Caused by diffuse axonal injury or diffuse ischaemic brain damage; relevant to passive-euthanasia law (*Karen Ann Quinlan*, *Aruna Shanbaug*), not to death certification.
- ▶ **Brainstem death:** the cerebrum may be intact but is functionally cut off by a brainstem lesion — comatose and unable to breathe.
- ▶ **Whole-brain death:** permanent loss of function of the entire brain including the brainstem, used in the United States and most of Europe.
- ▶ **Why the brainstem is the decisive structure** (the brainstem concept, 1971):
 - **Resistance to anoxia:** medullary neurons are the most anoxia-resistant in the brain, so their death means the rest of the brain is safely presumed dead too.
 - **Vital centres:** the brainstem houses the respiratory and cardiovascular control centres.
 - **Gateway:** almost all motor and sensory pathways (except vision and smell) pass through the brainstem, so a dead brainstem means every pathway is dead.

Historical diagnostic criteria

Feature	Harvard (1968)	Philadelphia (1969)	Minnesota (1971)
Basis	Whole-brain death	Whole-brain death	Brainstem death
Apnoea test	3 minutes	3 minutes	4 minutes
EEG	Mandatory	Mandatory	Not mandatory
Repeat testing	After 24 hours	After 2 hours	After 12 hours

Working protocol for diagnosis

A. Preconditions — all must be met before testing starts:

- ▶ Patient is deeply comatose and on a ventilator (apnoeic).
- ▶ The cause of the coma is known.
- ▶ Clinical or imaging findings confirm an acute, irreversible brain catastrophe.

B. Exclude reversible mimics first:

- ▶ **Drugs:** rule out sedatives, anaesthetics, or an overdose/poisoning.
- ▶ **Hypothermia:** core temperature must be confirmed above 35°C before testing.
- ▶ **Metabolic or endocrine causes:** diabetic coma, severe electrolyte or acid-base disturbance, liver or kidney failure, very low blood phosphate.
- ▶ **Circulatory / drug causes:** hypoxia, hypotension, shock, or a neuromuscular-blocker (muscle relaxant) effect.

C. Demonstrate three cardinal findings:

- ▶ **Coma:** no motor response to pain in any limb, no grimace to pressure on the nail bed or supra-orbital ridge.
- ▶ **Absent brainstem reflexes** — each reflex tests a specific pair of cranial nerves:
 - **Pupillary light reflex** absent — pupils fixed, mid to dilated, non-reactive to light (II, III).
 - **Corneal reflex** absent (V, VII).
 - **Vestibulo-ocular reflex** absent — no eye movement on ice-cold water in each ear (cold-caloric test), no doll's-eye response (III, VI, VIII).
 - **Gag and cough reflexes** absent — no response to pharyngeal stimulation or a tracheal suction catheter (IX, X).
 - **Facial grimace** absent on painful stimulation.
- ▶ **Apnoea test:** pre-oxygenate, disconnect the ventilator, give passive oxygen, and watch for breathing effort as CO₂ rises.
 - **Positive** (confirms apnoea) when there is no respiratory movement even though PaCO₂ rises above about 60 mmHg — the maximal stimulus to breathe, yet nothing happens.

D. Who tests, and how often:

- ▶ Two registered medical practitioners, both experts, at least one of consultant status — junior doctors may not certify, and neither may belong to the transplant team (conflict of interest).
- ▶ Each doctor performs the full set of tests twice, not within 24 hours of the injury, and repeats after a minimum interval to rule out observer error.
- ▶ If both doctors, on both rounds, again find no reflex activity, the patient is pronounced dead and a death certificate is issued.

E. Spinal reflexes: deep tendon, plantar, abdominal, and limb-withdrawal reflexes may persist for about 24 hours after brain death (they run through the spinal cord, not the brainstem) and do **not** rule out the diagnosis.

Confirmatory investigations (supportive only, not a substitute for clinical testing)

- ▶ **EEG:** a flat/iso-electric tracing has confirmatory value only — mandatory under Harvard/Philadelphia, not under the Minnesota (brainstem) concept, since some cortical activity can persist despite brainstem death.
- ▶ **Cerebral angiography:** a bilateral study of the carotid and vertebral arteries — no intracranial filling for more than 15 minutes confirms death; somatosensory evoked potentials and cerebral blood-flow studies are other supportive tests.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Section 2(d), Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 1994** defines brain-stem death as the stage when all brain-stem functions have permanently and irreversibly ceased — the Act sets no clinical criteria.
- ▶ **Section 3(6):** before an organ is removed after brain-stem death, death must be certified by a Board of four experts — the doctor in charge of the hospital, an independent specialist, a neurologist/neurosurgeon, and the treating doctor; **Section 3(5)** requires the doctor to confirm either that life is extinct or that this certification has been done.
- ▶ **Section 46, Indian Penal Code 1860 (now Section 2(6), Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita 2023)** simply defines "death" as death of a human being, with no medical criterion.
- ▶ **Legal moment of death:** brainstem death IS legal death in India, and the moment of death is when the diagnosis is completed, not when the ventilator is later switched off.
 - This defeats the defence argument that "the doctors killed the victim" — relevant to murder/culpable-homicide charges under IPC §§299/300/302/304 (**now Sections 100/101/103/105, Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita 2023**) in assault victims on ventilators.
- ▶ **Organ transplantation:** a correctly certified diagnosis is the legal gateway to cadaveric "beating-heart" donation of the heart, liver, kidneys, lungs, pancreas, and intestine.
 - Removal without proper certification is punishable under **Section 18** — imprisonment, fine, and erasure from the medical register.
- ▶ **Conditions that mimic death but are not death:** persistent vegetative state, deep barbiturate or hypothermic coma, locked-in syndrome, and akinetic mutism (coma vigil) — none has medullary failure, so none is legally dead.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Labelled mid-sagittal view of the brainstem with cranial-nerve reflex arcs** — label cortex, thalamus, midbrain, pons, medulla, the ascending reticular activating system, and respiratory centre.
 - Mark II & III → pupillary reflex; V & VII → corneal reflex; III/VI/VIII → vestibulo-ocular reflex; IX & X → gag/cough reflex; spinal cord (reflexes may persist).
- ▶ **Flowchart — "Diagnosis of brainstem death"**: deep coma on ventilator, cause known & irreversible → exclude confounders (drugs, hypothermia, metabolic/endocrine, hypotension, relaxants) → coma + absent reflexes + positive apnoea test → two doctors (one consultant, no transplant surgeon) each test twice, repeat after interval → pronounce death → if for donation, certify under Section 3(6).



Discuss anaesthetics and its medico-legal importance at autopsy

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ An **anaesthetic death** happens in the operating room, or before full recovery from anaesthesia (within about **24 hours**).
- ▶ The anaesthetic technique or agent is suspected to have caused or contributed to the death.
- ▶ The term "anaesthetic death" is itself **inappropriate** — it pre-judges the anaesthetist before any investigation.
- ▶ Better neutral terms are "death associated with anaesthesia" or "intra-operative death."
- ▶ An **operative (surgical) death** is caused by the surgery itself, not the anaesthetic.
- ▶ These deaths are **rare** — about **1 in 10,000** anaesthetics in healthy patients, now down to **5–6 per million** with modern monitoring.
- ▶ Such deaths are medico-legally sensitive, raising negligence and consent disputes, and every one must be reported to the police and autopsied.

Classification of anaesthetic / operative deaths

- ▶ **Not due to anaesthesia**: the underlying disease or injury needing surgery was itself fatal.
 - Example: unrecognised **valvular heart disease** or **coronary atherosclerosis**.
 - **Surgical shock and exhaustion** from a poor pre-operative state or long operation.
 - A surgical accident, such as injury to a large vessel.
- ▶ **Direct result of the anaesthetic**:
 - Respiratory failure or hypovolaemia.
 - **Vagal inhibition** — a sudden reflex slowing of the heart.
 - Drug overdose, arrhythmia, or **malignant hyperthermia** (detailed below).

- Explosion.
- **Due to the surgical operation itself:**
 - Injury to a vital organ.
 - **Air embolism** — in CNS surgery done sitting, or in laminectomy.
 - Massive haemorrhage from a slipped ligature.
 - Perforation of a viscus, or hospital-acquired infection.
- **Due to disease:** in most cases death is from the natural disease that needed surgery, or from an unrelated disease such as ischaemic heart disease or phaeochromocytoma.
 - Once the patient has fully recovered from anaesthesia, death is no longer attributed to it.

Classification of agents

Class	Examples
Local anaesthetics	Lignocaine, bupivacaine, procaine, cocaine
General — inhaled gases	Nitrous oxide, xenon
General — volatile liquids	Halothane, ether, chloroform, isoflurane, sevoflurane
General — IV agents	Thiopentone, propofol, etomidate, ketamine, opioids (fentanyl, morphine)
Muscle relaxants	Succinylcholine (depolarizing); vecuronium, atracurium, pancuronium (non-depolarizing)
Reversal agents	Naloxone, flumazenil, neostigmine, sugammadex

Causes and mechanisms of death

- **Human error is the commonest cause.**
 - Inadequate depth of anaesthesia can trigger **vagal inhibition** during intubation.
 - Errors include oesophageal intubation, a kinked or disconnected tube, and aspiration of vomit.
 - Excessive airway pressure can rupture the lung and cause a **tension pneumothorax**.
- **Respiratory failure** — from depression of the respiratory centre, or airway obstruction (laryngospasm, aspiration, the tongue falling back).
- **Cardiovascular causes** — vagal inhibition, arrhythmia, or a fall in blood pressure.
 - Halogenated agents (halothane, cyclopropane) sensitise the heart to **adrenaline**, causing irritability.
 - Chloroform can trigger ventricular fibrillation.
- **Hypovolaemia** — from unrecognised pre-operative blood loss, vasodilatation, or inadequate fluid replacement.
- **Technical mishaps** — wrong blood group, wrong drug/fluid given, or a mislabelled/empty gas cylinder.

- ▶ **Explosion or fire** — ignition of a flammable anaesthetic vapour by a diathermy spark (now rare with modern agents).
- ▶ **Drug toxicity** — chloroform and halothane are **hepatotoxic**; methoxyflurane is **nephrotoxic**; thiopentone overdose causes cardiorespiratory failure.
- ▶ ***Mendelson's syndrome*** — aspiration pneumonitis, classically in emergency obstetric anaesthesia.
- ▶ **Spinal/local complications** — hypotension, vagally-mediated cardiac arrest, post-dural-puncture headache, and **paraplegia** from a contaminated syringe.

Malignant hyperthermia

- ▶ A rare **autosomal dominant** disorder of the **RYR1 (ryanodine receptor)** gene.
- ▶ It causes uncontrolled calcium release from the sarcoplasmic reticulum.
- ▶ **Triggered** by volatile anaesthetics (especially **halothane**) and by **succinylcholine**.
- ▶ **Features**: rapid rise in body temperature (to 40–45°C), muscle rigidity, hypercapnia, tachycardia, and rhabdomyolysis.
- ▶ **Incidence** is about 1 in 14,000–15,000 anaesthetics.
- ▶ **Mortality** was historically 60–80%, now about 10% with **dantrolene sodium**, stopping the trigger, oxygen and cooling.

Investigation of the death — autopsy protocol

- ▶ **Team**: ideally include an independent anaesthetist and surgeon from a different hospital.
- ▶ Obtain the hospital chart — agent used, dose, duration, and any events during surgery.
- ▶ Visit the operating room and check the equipment and gas supply.
- ▶ **Before opening the body**: photograph it, note dressing soakage, and describe the surgical wounds.
- ▶ Test for **air embolism** and **pneumothorax** before making any incision.
- ▶ **Do not remove** tubes, cannulae or drains before autopsy — open the cavities with them still in place.
- ▶ **At the operation site**: inspect every suture line for leakage or slippage.
- ▶ Look for a wrongly ligated vessel, ureter or bile duct, or retained swabs/instruments.
- ▶ **Look for the cause of death** — air or fat embolism, aspiration, internal haemorrhage, peritonitis, or anaphylaxis.
- ▶ Purely functional causes — vagal inhibition, a fall in blood pressure, arrhythmia, laryngeal spasm — leave no autopsy trace and must be inferred by **exclusion and reasoning**.
- ▶ **Brain**: fix and section it; hypoxic damage shows in **Sommer's area (CA1 of Ammon's horn)** and the cerebellar Purkinje cells.
- ▶ **Samples**: blood for grouping, cross-matching, culture; tissue from all organs for histopathology.
- ▶ **Gas/volatile agents are easily lost** — collect alveolar air and trapped cavity gases (technique in diagram below).
- ▶ Keep all specimens air-tight, fully filled, and refrigerated or frozen.

Fatal blood concentrations

- ▶ Chloroform: 40–60 mg%.
- ▶ Diethyl ether: 180 mg%.
- ▶ Halothane: 20 mg%.
- ▶ Trichloroethylene: 50 mg%.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Flowchart of the investigation** — history and hospital chart → inspect the operating room and equipment → external examination and photographs → tests for air embolism/pneumothorax before opening → devices left in situ → operation site and sutures → internal organs and brain (Sommer's area) → samples (blood, histopathology, alveolar air, cavity gases) → opinion by exclusion and reasoning.
- ▶ **Gas/alveolar-air collection** — lung tied off, needle-and-syringe sample of alveolar air taken under water, rubber dam over a water-filled cavity to trap cavity gases, sealed fully-filled container kept refrigerated.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Every anaesthetic/operative death is an **unnatural death**.
- ▶ The operating surgeon **must not issue a death certificate**; the police must be informed for a medico-legal autopsy.
- ▶ A police inquest is held under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ A magistrate's inquest may follow under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Gross professional negligence can attract **Section 304A IPC 1860 (now Section 106 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ A rash act amounting to culpable homicide falls under **Sections 299/304 IPC (now Sections 100/105 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ Operating or anaesthetising without valid informed consent can amount to assault — as in *Moss vs Rishworth*, where a child died under anaesthesia given without parental consent and no true emergency.
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon gives expert evidence under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ An anaesthetist must **refuse to give anaesthesia for an illegal procedure**; doing so anyway makes them a party to the crime.
- ▶ The autopsy must decide whether death was from the natural disease, the operation, or the anaesthetic.
- ▶ It must also ask whether the procedure was necessary, whether technique was defective, and whether consent was properly taken.
- ▶ This distinguishes **misadventure** (an unforeseeable accident) from **negligence** (failure of due care), protecting the innocent practitioner while informing civil and criminal proceedings.

♦ ♦ ♦

Disposal of hazardous materials in the mortuary

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2016 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ The mortuary and autopsy suite generate **hazardous materials**: infected body fluids and tissues, sharps, chemical fixatives, occasional radioactive cadavers, implanted devices, and general biomedical waste.
- ▶ Every autopsy is treated as potentially infectious under the principle of **Universal Precautions**.
- ▶ Safe segregation, decontamination and disposal protect the prosecutor, the mortuary attendant, other staff, the public and the environment.
- ▶ The governing law in India is the **Bio-Medical Waste Management Rules, 2016**, framed under the **Environment (Protection) Act, 1986**.

Categories of hazardous material in the mortuary

- ▶ **Infectious (biological) waste**: body fluids (blood, semen, vaginal secretions, cerebrospinal fluid, pleural/peritoneal/pericardial fluids), soiled dressings, catheters, and contaminated protective gear.
- ▶ **Anatomical/pathological waste**: fresh tissue slices, organ fragments, and retained organs not returned to the body.
- ▶ **Sharps**: scalpel blades, needles, microtome blades, broken glassware.
- ▶ **Chemical waste**: formaldehyde, phenol, glutaraldehyde, disinfectants, corrosives, and pesticides recovered from poisoning cases.
- ▶ **Radioactive waste**: fluids and organs from a cadaver containing therapeutic or diagnostic radionuclides (e.g. iodine-131, strontium-89, gold-198, phosphorus-32).
- ▶ **Implanted devices**: cardiac pacemakers and defibrillators, whose batteries can explode if incinerated.
- ▶ **Discarded medicines**: cytotoxic/chemotherapy agents and expired chemicals generated incidentally.

Colour-coded segregation under the BMW Rules, 2016

- ▶ Segregation happens **at the point of generation**, into colour-coded, leak-proof bins — this is the cornerstone of safe disposal.

Colour	Mortuary waste	Disposal
Yellow	Anatomical/soiled waste, chemical waste, expired medicines	Incineration / deep burial
Red	Contaminated plastics — tubing, catheters, gloves, IV sets	Autoclave, then shred and recycle
White	Sharps — blades, needles, broken glass	Autoclave, then encapsulate
Blue	Glassware, non-contaminated metal implants	Disinfect, then recycle

Decontamination and disposal of infectious waste

- ▶ An infected body is wrapped in a **double-layer plastic bag** carrying a red "**Biologically hazardous**" tag with the name, age, sex and registration number.
- ▶ The autopsy room is disinfected daily, with **weekly fumigation**.
- ▶ Surfaces and instruments are cleaned with **phenol, savlon, or 2% glutaraldehyde**, or with **10% sodium hypochlorite** (1 part household bleach to 9 parts water).
- ▶ Dissection tables are decontaminated after every autopsy — soapy water first, then bleach.
- ▶ Used instruments are dipped in disinfectant, washed in hot soapy water, immersed in 10% bleach, and dried.
- ▶ Any instrument that cannot be reliably decontaminated is labelled "**CONTAMINATED**" before it leaves the suite.
- ▶ Laboratory specimens are fixed in **10% formalin**, labelled, and handled with gloves to avoid mucocutaneous contact and aerosol inhalation.
- ▶ Body-cavity fluids are flushed with copious running water; pleural and peritoneal fluid may be flushed directly into the **sewer**.
- ▶ Fresh tissue that is not retained goes into **red biohazard bags** for incineration.
- ▶ Reusable cotton scrub suits go to the **hospital laundry**, not the waste stream.

Disposal of sharps

- ▶ Scalpels and needles go into **rigid, puncture-proof sharps containers**.
- ▶ Needles are **never recapped or hand-passed**.
- ▶ A sharps container is closed and discarded into a red biohazard bag once it is **three-fourths full** — this avoids the dangerous habit of forcing blades into an overfull box.
- ▶ Broken glassware is never picked up by hand — it is lifted with a dustpan or cardboard pusher.
- ▶ Scalpel blades are mounted and removed only with forceps, tip pointed away from people.
- ▶ Penetrating injury is the **commonest route of pathogen transmission** at autopsy.

Disposal of chemical and anatomical waste

- ▶ A small formalin spill is soaked up with paper or cloth towels, which are sealed in a biohazard bag; the floor is then wet-mopped.
- ▶ A large spill means personnel leave the area and the institutional spill protocol is invoked.
- ▶ Organs and parts removed at autopsy are normally **returned to the body for burial**.
- ▶ Organs retained for study or as evidence are kept only for the stipulated period, then bagged and **incinerated**.
- ▶ Retaining organs without next-of-kin consent can expose the doctor to a civil suit.

Disposal in special / high-risk cadavers

- ▶ **HIV / hepatitis B / hepatitis C**: managed under strict Universal Precautions.
 - *Rokitansky's in-situ technique* (organs dissected and inspected in place, not removed) limits handling and aerosol generation.

- Double gloving, waterproof apron, gumboots, face shield, and a particulate respirator are used.
- ▶ **COVID-19 (biological risk group 3):**
 - Invasive procedures and aerosol generation are minimised — avoid oscillating saws, use a chisel/hammer or a vacuum shroud.
 - No viscera are preserved in suspected-positive cases.
 - The body is packed in a bag, and the bag is disinfected with **1% hypochlorite** from outside.
 - Surfaces, instruments and trolleys get **1% hypochlorite for at least 10 minutes**.
 - Adequate room ventilation is required.
- ▶ **Radioactive corpse:**
 - Heavy rubber gloves, plastic apron, shoe covers and **long-handled instruments** are used.
 - The most radioactive organs are removed first, into covered, labelled jars.
 - Pleural/peritoneal fluid is flushed directly into the sewer.
 - Contaminated clothing is stored for radioactive decay before laundering.
 - Work proceeds only under the **radiation safety officer's** direction, with dosimetry and time-limited rotations.
- ▶ **Implanted devices:** pacemakers and defibrillators are **never incinerated or cremated** with the body, because their (mercury) batteries can explode. They are removed intact, cleaned, and returned to the manufacturer.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Colour-coded segregation chart:** four bins — Yellow (anatomical/soiled/chemical → incineration), Red (contaminated plastics → autoclave + recycle), White (sharps → autoclave + encapsulation), Blue (glass/metal implants → disinfect + recycle) — with an arrow from the autopsy table showing segregation at source.
- ▶ **Disposal workflow:** autopsy table → segregate at source → colour-coded bins → on-site disinfection → labelled "Biologically hazardous" transport → treatment facility (incinerator/autoclave/sharps pit) → final disposal, with side-branches for the radioactive corpse (radiation safety officer) and the pacemaker (return to manufacturer).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ The autopsy surgeon must ensure waste is disinfected and disposed of under the **Bio-Medical Waste Management Rules, 2016**; failure can amount to professional misconduct and a public-health/environmental offence.
- ▶ Organs, viscera and trace evidence needed for chemical analysis or trial must **not** be discarded — they are sealed, labelled, and handed to the police, and returned for burial or incineration only once the evidentiary need is over.
- ▶ Careless or disrespectful disposal of body parts can attract **Section 301, Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita (BNS) 2023** — the re-enactment of the former **Section 297, Indian Penal Code (IPC) 1860** (indignity to a human corpse).

- ▶ Retaining organs or tissue without next-of-kin consent can found a civil suit — this is why anatomical waste is normally returned to the body.
- ▶ A needle-stick or splash injury must be reported, and the source blood checked for HIV; staff immunisation against tetanus, tuberculosis and hepatitis B is mandatory.
- ▶ A radioactive cadaver requires the radiation safety officer; a COVID-19/risk-group-3 death follows ICMR disposal norms.



Discuss in detail the autopsy procedure, investigations and Medicolegal problems encountered in case of surgical death

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2020 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ An **anaesthetic and operative (surgical) death** is a death occurring during, or shortly after, anaesthesia or surgery — whether or not anaesthesia/surgery actually caused it.
- ▶ These deaths are rare, roughly **1 in 10,000** anaesthetics, but medico-legally sensitive since they almost always raise the question of negligence.
- ▶ Every such death is **unnatural**, requiring a police **inquest** under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Most are **physiological**, not structural, and leave **no visible lesion** — the task is to **reconstruct the chain of events** from the autopsy, records, and multidisciplinary discussion.

Classification of anaesthetic and operative deaths

Category	Cause	Examples
A — during anaesthesia, not due to it	Disease or the operation kills; anaesthesia only coincides	Pre-existing disease, undiagnosed coronary disease, surgical shock/exhaustion, surgical accident
B — direct result of the anaesthetic	The anaesthetic agent or technique kills	Respiratory failure, hypovolaemia, vagal inhibition, overdose, arrhythmia, malignant hyperthermia
C — surgical/operative complication	The operation or post-operative course kills	Wound infection, haemorrhage, embolism, retained foreign body, prosthesis failure

- ▶ **Inexperience** is the commonest thread — intubation mishaps, circuit disconnection, inadequate depth of anaesthesia.
- ▶ **Respiratory failure:**
 - **Centre depression:** overdose, over-premedication, relaxants like curare.
 - **Obstruction:** laryngeal spasm, aspiration, an impacted swab/denture, the tongue falling back.
- ▶ **Hypovolaemia** follows an uncorrected pre-operative deficit, inadequate blood replacement, or dilutional coagulopathy after massive transfusion.

- ▶ **Cardiac:** vagal inhibition at induction (from inadequate premedication), or arrhythmia from disease, drug reaction, or catecholamines.
- ▶ **Malignant hyperthermia:**
 - A rare **autosomal dominant** trait, triggered by **halothane and succinylcholine**.
 - Temperature rises suddenly to **40–45°C** with severe muscle rigidity.
 - Occurs in about **1:14,000** general anaesthetics, with **60–80% mortality**.
 - Creatine phosphokinase and aldolase are raised in 70% of carriers.

Autopsy procedure

- ▶ It is a **modified complete autopsy** — every routine step, plus extra steps to catch iatrogenic findings and gases an ordinary autopsy destroys.
- ▶ **Before opening the body:**
 - Photograph the whole body with all dressings and devices still in place.
 - Test for **air embolism and pneumothorax** — lost as evidence once the body is opened.
 - Open under water, or fill the cavity with water, and seal a **rubber dam** over the site to trap escaping gas for analysis.
 - Note blood/pus/fluid soaking each dressing before removing it, then describe every surgical wound.
- ▶ **On opening the body:**
 - Trace each drainage tube to its internal end before removing it.
 - Examine all cavities **in situ**, preserving any blood or fluid found.
 - Photograph and describe the surgical site in situ.
 - Inspect **every suture and ligature** for leakage, oozing, or slippage.
 - Look for a slipped ligature, retained sponge/pack/instrument, adjacent-organ injury (e.g., parathyroid during thyroidectomy), or fat embolism.
- ▶ **Organ examination:**
 - Dissect all organs and inspect every suture line; expect *engorgement of dependent viscera* after prolonged anaesthesia.
 - Examine the airway (regurgitated contents, foreign bodies, intubation injury, glottic oedema) and lungs (oedema, emphysema, collapse, embolism).
 - Check for ligation/perforation of a vessel, ureter, or bile duct, and examine the thyroid/suprarenal glands.
 - Confirm every device — airway, IV cannula, drain, chest tube — is correctly placed and patent.
 - Exclude occult cardiovascular disease such as myocarditis, and grade the disease operated on.
- ▶ **Postmortem autolysis can mimic an intra-operative defect** — a "broken-down" suture line may simply be autolysis.

Investigations and special sample collection

- ▶ **History review is the single most important step** — an independent consulting anaesthesiologist reads the records better than the pathologist can.
 - Record health at admission and induction, pre-anaesthetic medication, timing, untoward events, and whether **informed consent** was taken.
 - Note known allergies and diseases — ischaemic heart disease, diabetes, thyrotoxicosis, Addison's disease, Cushing syndrome.
- ▶ **Equipment/theatre check** — valves, connections, flowmeters, gas supply, and every device, for misconnection, leak, or wrong substance.
- ▶ **Histopathology** — sample widely to exclude occult disease and grade the surgical disease.
- ▶ **Toxicology and gas sampling:**
 - Collect all body fluids and solid tissue.
 - If anaesthetic was given near the spinal canal, take spinal fluid above the injection site into a **fluoride tube**.
 - For volatile anaesthetics, seal specimens with **minimal head-space** and freeze immediately, or the gas is lost.
 - Collect **alveolar air** under water with a needle/syringe, puncturing the lung before the chest is opened.
- ▶ **Fatal blood levels** (to judge overdose): chloroform 40–60 mg%, diethyl ether 180 mg%, divinyl ether 50 mg%, halothane 20 mg%.
- ▶ **Limitations:** a negative toxicology result does not exclude the drug — many agents are not demonstrable postmortem. The autopsy's chief value is excluding natural disease and mechanical airway blockage.

Determining the cause of death

- ▶ Most of these deaths leave no anatomical trace — the opinion is reached **by exclusion and reasoning**, answering:
 - Was death due to the disease operated on, or to the surgery/anaesthetic itself?
 - Would the patient have died without it, and was it essential to save life?
 - Was there a defect in technique, or a predisposing condition?
 - Was the patient such a poor risk that only urgency justified surgery?
- ▶ **Functional lapses** — a fall in blood pressure, arrhythmia, laryngeal/coronary spasm, vagal inhibition — **cannot be demonstrated at autopsy**; the opinion rests on the records and consultation with the surgeon and anaesthetist.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Every anaesthetic/operative death needs a police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**; a magisterial inquest applies for custodial or suspicious deaths under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The autopsy must verify **valid informed consent** existed — operating without it, or beyond its scope, is trespass or negligence regardless of surgical skill.

- ▶ **Professional negligence** means the absence of reasonable care and skill, or wilful negligence, by a practitioner that causes injury or death.
- ▶ A death from a rash or negligent act, not amounting to culpable homicide, is punishable under **Section 304A IPC 1860 (now Section 106 BNS 2023)**; expert medical opinion at trial is given under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ It must separate three possibilities:
 - **Negligence:** retained swab/instrument, slipped ligature, wrong drug, wrong-site surgery, transfusion misadventure.
 - **Therapeutic misadventure:** an unforeseeable reaction — e.g., spinal-anaesthetic paraplegia — held to be misadventure, not negligence.
 - **Natural disease** independent of the procedure.
- ▶ *Res ipsa loquitur* ("the thing speaks for itself") applies when the injury would not normally occur without negligence and the doctor had exclusive control — classic examples are a retained swab and a transfusion misadventure.
- ▶ Photographs, preserved fluids, and a recorded discussion between pathologist, surgeon, and anaesthetist protect all parties.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Flowchart — classification of anaesthetic/operative deaths.** Top box: *death during/after anaesthesia or surgery*, branching to (A) during but not due to anaesthesia, (B) direct result of anaesthetic, (C) surgical complication. Final box: *verdict — natural disease vs misadventure vs negligence*.
- ▶ **Labelled autopsy-sequence diagram.** Numbered steps on a body outline: photograph with devices in place; air-embolism/pneumothorax test under water with rubber dam; in-situ cavity exam, trace drains; inspect every suture/ligature; sample alveolar air before opening the chest; toxicology with minimal head-space, frozen.



Discuss post-mortem chemistry of blood

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ **Post-mortem chemistry** (also called **thanatochemistry**) is the study of endogenous body chemicals after death — electrolytes, glucose, waste products, enzymes, hormones.
- ▶ It has two goals: estimate the **post-mortem interval (PMI)**, and reconstruct ante-mortem disease such as diabetic ketoacidosis, uraemia or dehydration.
- ▶ It differs from **toxicology**, which looks for exogenous substances — drugs and poisons.
- ▶ *J.L. Coe* pioneered the field and showed that **vitreous humour** is the best specimen for most post-mortem chemical tests.
- ▶ Blood chemistry changes fast and unpredictably after death, so vitreous, CSF, pericardial and synovial fluid are often preferred instead.

General principles

- ▶ After circulation stops, cell membranes lose their ionic gradients.
- ▶ Intracellular substances (potassium, enzymes, phosphate) leak out, while extracellular substances (sodium, chloride) shift into the cells.
- ▶ **Autolysis** (self-digestion by released enzymes) and **bacterial putrefaction** progressively distort the chemistry.
- ▶ Once decomposition is established, chemical values become uninterpretable.
- ▶ All changes are **temperature dependent** — faster in heat, slower in cold; published rates need caution in hot Indian conditions.
- ▶ Analytes fall into two groups:
 - **Stable** analytes still reflect the ante-mortem value — cholesterol, creatinine, cholinesterase, urea nitrogen.
 - **Predictably changing** analytes can be used to estimate PMI — vitreous potassium, lactic acid, hypoxanthine.
- ▶ Chemical methods are the **least reliable** of all PMI methods.
- ▶ Use them to support, not replace, the physical signs — cooling, lividity, rigor, decomposition.

Post-mortem chemistry of blood

- ▶ Blood chemistry deteriorates fastest of all the body fluids after death.
- ▶ **Glucose**: liver glycogenolysis floods the right heart with glucose after death.
 - This produces a falsely **high** right-heart glucose that can mimic diabetes.
 - Blood glucose is therefore **not** a reliable PMI marker.
- ▶ **Lactic acid**: rises from about 1 mEq/L in life to 20 mEq/L by 1 hour.
 - It climbs further to 50–75 mEq/L by 12–24 hours.
 - This reflects anaerobic glycolysis but is too non-specific for PMI.
- ▶ **Potassium**: rises fast, to about 18 mEq/L within 1 hour, as cells release it — even in banked blood.
 - The rise is too rapid and early to be useful for PMI.
- ▶ **Sodium and chloride** fall steadily, at about 0.9 and 0.97 mEq/L per hour.
 - Vitreous is the better sample for these two electrolytes.
- ▶ **Bilirubin** rises slightly after death; best measured in vitreous when jaundice is in question.
- ▶ **Cholesterol and lipoproteins** are the most **stable** blood analytes — cholesterol is unchanged for up to about 90 hours.
- ▶ **Enzymes** (acid phosphatase, alkaline phosphatase, amylase, LDH, SGOT) all rise after death, often erratically, making post-mortem diagnosis of organ disease unreliable.
- ▶ **Cortisol** stays constant for about 18 hours.
 - Insulin and adrenaline, by contrast, are unstable after death.
- ▶ **Special diagnostic uses of blood**:
 - Haemoglobin S — sickling.

- Cholinesterase — organophosphate/carbamate poisoning.
- Hormone assays; newborn screening for inborn errors of metabolism.
- ▶ Blood can substitute for vitreous for creatinine, urea nitrogen and bilirubin if vitreous was not collected.
- ▶ For **glucose, vitreous is superior** — post-mortem blood is partly haemolysed and right-heart glucose is artefactually high.

Vitreous humour — the specimen of choice

- ▶ The eye is protected by the orbit, so vitreous survives head trauma, resists putrefaction, has almost no red cells, and is not contaminated by drug/alcohol diffusion from the stomach.
- ▶ **Potassium (K^+)** is the single most useful PMI marker in vitreous.
 - In life it is low, about 5–8 mmol/L.
 - After death it rises almost linearly, at about 0.17–0.238 mmol/L per hour.
 - The rise continues up to about 120 hours.
 - The two eyes can differ by up to 10%, so both are sampled and averaged.
- ▶ **Hypoxanthine**, a product of hypoxic breakdown of AMP, also rises linearly up to 120 hours and correlates with vitreous K^+ .
- ▶ **Glucose** falls after death, reaching zero within about 4–5 hours in a non-diabetic.
 - A vitreous glucose above 11.1 mmol/L (200 mg/dL) suggests diabetic ketoacidosis.
 - A vitreous glucose below 1.4 mmol/L supports hypoglycaemia.
- ▶ **Sodium, chloride, calcium and magnesium** change too slowly to date death, but are diagnostically useful:
 - **Dehydration pattern:** high sodium (>155 mEq/L), high chloride (>135 mEq/L), raised urea.
 - **Uraemia pattern:** markedly raised urea and creatinine, near-normal sodium/chloride.
 - **Decomposition pattern:** low sodium/chloride, high potassium (>20 mEq/L).
- ▶ Urea and creatinine are stable and reliably reflect ante-mortem renal function.

Estimating PMI from vitreous potassium

- ▶ Three regression formulae convert vitreous K^+ (mmol/L) into PMI in hours:
 - **Sturner's formula:** $PMI = 7.14 \times K^+ - 39.1$.
 - **Madea's formula:** $PMI = 5.26 \times K^+ - 30.9$ (95% CI $\approx \pm 20$ hours, up to 100 hours).
 - **James' formula:** $PMI = 4.32 \times K^+ - 18.35$.
- ▶ Hypoxanthine gives a wider 95% confidence interval of about ± 32 hours.
- ▶ These wide error bands mean vitreous chemistry gives a *range* for time since death, not a precise figure.

Other body fluids

- ▶ **CSF:** potassium rises at a constant, temperature-related rate for about 20 hours; it is the specimen of choice when the eyes must be preserved for histology, as in suspected child abuse.
- ▶ **Pericardial fluid:** larger in volume than vitreous, but not useful for PMI.

- ▶ **Synovial fluid:** behaves much like vitreous; potassium more than doubles within 2 days — a useful alternative when vitreous is unavailable.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Graph:** vitreous K^+ (mmol/L) on the y-axis against time since death (hours, 0–120) on the x-axis.
 - Plot a near-straight rising line starting at ~5–8 mmol/L, slope ≈ 0.17 – 0.238 mmol/L/h.
 - Shade the 95% CI band (± 20 hours) and box the Sturner and Madea formulae alongside.
- ▶ **Labelled eye cross-section:** cornea, limbus, sclera, pars plana, ciliary body, lens, retina, choroid, vitreous body.
 - Show the needle entering 5 mm lateral to the limbus through the pars plana, aspirating 1–2 mL from each eye.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Vitreous K^+ (with hypoxanthine) is the most reliable chemical PMI estimator, most valuable when physical signs — cooling, rigor, lividity — are equivocal or the body is early-decomposed.
- ▶ Results are reported as a range with stated confidence limits, not a single point estimate.
- ▶ Vitreous glucose/ketones can confirm diabetic ketoacidosis; the insulin-to-C-peptide ratio in blood helps diagnose exogenous insulin overdose.
- ▶ The dehydration pattern can support homicidal deprivation of food and water; the uraemia pattern documents renal failure as a contributing cause.
- ▶ Depressed serum cholinesterase confirms organophosphate or carbamate poisoning.
- ▶ **Specimen collection is the doctor's duty:** aspirate 1–2 mL of vitreous from each eye separately, through the pars plana about 5 mm lateral to the limbus, avoiding forceful suction, which pulls in retinal cells and falsely raises the K^+ result.
- ▶ Draw blood from a peripheral or femoral vessel, not the heart, and record the exact time sampling began.
- ▶ Vitreous should be collected routinely in every medico-legal or sudden death.
- ▶ The medico-legal autopsy proceeds on police requisition under the inquest provisions — **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)** for police inquest, **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)** for magistrate's inquest.
- ▶ The doctor's chemical findings and PMI opinion are tendered as **expert opinion under Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Discuss the aetiopathology of vascular thrombosis. Discuss thrombosis in various sites of body as cause of death

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Thrombosis** is the formation of a solid or semi-solid mass — a **thrombus** — from the constituents of flowing blood.
- ▶ It forms **within the lumen of an intact heart or blood vessel, during life** — an **intravascular, antemortem (vital) process**, unlike a postmortem clot.
- ▶ A thrombus may stay put and occlude the vessel, or break loose and travel as an **embolus**.
- ▶ By obstructing the coronary, cerebral or pulmonary circulation, it is a common natural cause of **sudden, unexpected death**.
- ▶ It is a recurring medico-legal issue when death follows trauma, surgery or restraint.
- ▶ The pathologist must prove the thrombus is **antemortem**, show it caused death, and judge whether prior injury or negligence contributed.

Aetiopathology — Virchow's triad

- ▶ Thrombosis is classically explained by three interacting factors — **Virchow's triad**.
- ▶ All three may act together; any one may dominate at a given site.
- ▶ (1) **Endothelial/endocardial injury**:
 - Loss of the protective intimal lining exposes sub-endothelial collagen and tissue factor.
 - This triggers platelet adhesion and activates the coagulation cascade.
 - Causes: atherosclerotic plaque rupture, direct vessel trauma, stab/bullet injury to the carotid intima, indwelling catheters, and valvulitis/endocarditis.
- ▶ (2) **Altered blood flow — stasis or turbulence**:
 - Stagnant blood lets platelets settle against the endothelium and stops washout of activated clotting factors.
 - Turbulent (swirling) flow injures the endothelium directly.
 - Causes: immobilisation/bed rest, long-bone or pelvic fracture, the post-operative state, cardiac failure, atrial fibrillation, and varicose veins.
- ▶ (3) **Hypercoagulability of blood**:
 - Increased platelet stickiness or coagulation factors, or reduced natural anticoagulants and fibrinolysis (clot breakdown).
 - Causes: trauma and major surgery, malignancy, pregnancy and the puerperium, oral contraceptives, dehydration, and inherited thrombophilias (e.g., factor V Leiden).

Arterial vs venous thrombi

- ▶ **Arterial thrombi** are platelet-rich, pale, firm and laminated.
- ▶ The alternating pale platelet/fibrin and dark red-cell layers are called the **lines of Zahn**.
- ▶ They grow against the bloodstream from a point of endothelial damage, usually a ruptured atheromatous plaque.

- ▶ They cause ischaemia and infarction downstream.
- ▶ **Venous thrombi** form chiefly where flow is slow.
- ▶ They are red, soft, gelatinous and cohesive, and propagate in the direction of flow.
- ▶ They are the usual source of **pulmonary thromboembolism**.
- ▶ A thrombus's natural fate: propagation, embolisation, dissolution (fibrinolysis), or organisation (replaced by fibrous tissue) with recanalisation or calcification.
- ▶ Forensically, it is embolisation and occlusion that actually kill.

Antemortem thrombus vs postmortem clot

- ▶ Proving a mass is a true **antemortem thrombus**, not a postmortem clot, is the key step before certifying thrombosis as cause of death.

Feature	Antemortem thrombus	Postmortem clot
Consistency	Firm, dry, granular, friable; laminated (lines of Zahn)	Gelatinous, soft, rubbery, moist
Colour	Greyish/pale, mixed layers	Lower dark-red " black-currant-jelly " layer, upper pale " chicken-fat " layer
Shape	Variable, not a perfect cast	Perfect cast of the vessel lumen/bifurcation
Wall attachment	Adheres firmly	Weakly adherent, lifts out easily
On cutting	Stays attached, does not pour out	Pours out of the cut vessel

- ▶ Two mimics that are **not** fatal thrombi:
 - **Agonal thrombus**: a terminal, dying-phase, tree-like cast in the right heart and pulmonary outflow, mirroring right-heart anatomy.
 - **Cardiac polyp**: a postmortem fibrinous, pedunculated clot in the heart.

Thrombosis at various sites — cause of death

- ▶ Death from thrombosis follows one of two routes: **local occlusion causing infarction**, or **embolisation to a distant critical vessel**.
- ▶ **Coronary arteries (heart)**:
 - The commonest lethal site — a ruptured atheromatous plaque triggers an occlusive coronary thrombus.
 - This causes acute **myocardial infarction**, fatal arrhythmia, or cardiac rupture.
 - Cardiovascular disease accounts for roughly **45–50%** of sudden natural deaths.
 - Many sudden coronary deaths show **no** demonstrable fresh thrombus — absence of a thrombus does not exclude coronary death.
 - A **mural thrombus** over an infarct, or on a diseased valve, is an additional source.
- ▶ **Cerebral and carotid vessels (brain)**:
 - Cerebral thrombosis/embolism and carotid thrombosis are recognised causes of sudden death.

- A bullet or stab wound of the carotid can injure the intima, form a thrombus, and embolise to occlude the **middle cerebral artery**.
- ▶ **Cerebral venous (dural) sinuses:**
 - An antemortem thrombus in the superior sagittal sinus raises back-pressure in the bridging veins.
 - This can produce **subdural haemorrhage** and raised intracranial pressure — a natural mimic of trauma.
- ▶ **Deep leg/pelvic veins, source of pulmonary thromboembolism (lungs):**
 - The most important embolic killer — a thrombus in a femoral/deep leg vein (after limb injury, surgery, or immobilisation) detaches and lodges in the pulmonary arteries.
 - A large **saddle embolus** straddling the pulmonary artery bifurcation causes instant death — a classic "lesion incompatible with life."
- ▶ **Mesenteric vessels (gut):**
 - Thrombosis/embolism of the mesenteric arteries or veins causes intestinal infarction, gangrene, perforation and peritonitis.
- ▶ **Other sites:** aortic mural thrombus, renal vessel thrombosis, and prosthetic-valve or atrial-fibrillation thrombus causing systemic embolism.

Autopsy demonstration

- ▶ Examine vessels **in situ**, then open the heart, great vessels, pulmonary arteries and the superior sagittal sinus, looking for thrombus or embolus.
- ▶ Serial coronary cross-sections show plaque, stenosis, rupture and an occluding thrombus.
- ▶ For suspected pulmonary embolism, incise the leg veins and open the pulmonary arteries to recover the embolus.
- ▶ For suspected air embolism, use the in-water/heart-puncture technique to exclude a **spurious air embolism** (air sucked in during autopsy).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Thrombotic coronary, cerebral and pulmonary deaths are leading causes of **sudden, unexpected death** — a common subject of medico-legal autopsy to exclude foul play.
- ▶ **Trauma–thrombosis causation** is a frequent litigation point: a leg/pelvic injury immobilises the patient, leading to deep vein thrombosis and fatal pulmonary embolism.
- ▶ Carotid trauma can likewise give an intimal thrombus and fatal cerebral embolism.
- ▶ Here a natural mechanism is the **immediate** cause, but **trauma is the underlying/proximate cause** — this can establish criminal or civil liability, so cause-of-death sequencing on the certificate is essential.
- ▶ Thromboembolism after surgery or hospitalisation likewise raises questions of negligence.
- ▶ Never certify thrombosis as cause of death without excluding a postmortem clot, an agonal thrombus, a cardiac polyp, or autopsy-induced (spurious) air embolism.
- ▶ A patient on **anticoagulants** has an altered bleeding tendency, relevant when interpreting haemorrhage at autopsy.

- ▶ An unnatural/sudden/suspicious death needs a police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973** (now **Section 194 BNSS 2023**), with magistrate's inquest in custodial/special cases under **Section 176 CrPC 1973** (now **Section 196 BNSS 2023**).
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon's expert opinion on whether the thrombosis was antemortem and caused death is admissible under **Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872** (now **Section 39 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam, BSA 2023**).

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Virchow's triad triangle:** three vertices labelled **Endothelial injury**, **Stasis/turbulent flow**, and **Hypercoagulability**, with **THROMBOSIS** in the centre; add one example beside each vertex (plaque rupture / immobilisation / pregnancy-malignancy).
- ▶ **Antemortem thrombus vs postmortem clot:** two side-by-side vessel cross-sections — left labelled *Antemortem thrombus* (laminated lines of Zahn, firmly adherent, dry granular); right labelled *Postmortem clot* with "chicken-fat" (upper pale) over "black-currant-jelly" (lower dark), lying free in the lumen.



Discuss the cerebrovascular lesions resulting in death and its medicolegal importance

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ A **cerebrovascular lesion** is any disease process of the brain's blood vessels that causes fatal brain injury.
- ▶ The three basic mechanisms are **haemorrhage** (bleeding), **thrombosis** (a clot forming inside a vessel), and **embolism** (a travelling clot lodging in a vessel).
- ▶ When death follows natural disease — hypertension, atherosclerosis, or a ruptured aneurysm — the layman calls it "**apoplexy**" or "**stroke**."
- ▶ The **cerebrovascular accident (CVA)** is one of the commonest causes of sudden natural death, and collapse is often wrongly blamed on assault, a fall, or poisoning.
- ▶ The central forensic task is to **distinguish a natural cerebrovascular death from a traumatic one**.

Classification of fatal cerebrovascular lesions

- ▶ **Haemorrhagic:**
 - Spontaneous hypertensive **intracerebral haemorrhage** — rupture of a lenticulostriate branch of the middle cerebral artery, from Charcot-Bouchard micro-aneurysms.
 - Non-traumatic **subarachnoid haemorrhage (SAH)** — rupture of a berry aneurysm or an arteriovenous malformation.
 - Intraventricular, cerebellar, or pontine haemorrhage — usually an extension of an intracerebral bleed.
- ▶ **Ischaemic / occlusive:**

- **Cerebral thrombosis** on an atherosclerotic plaque, leading to infarction.
- **Cerebral embolism** from a cardiac mural thrombus, a valvular vegetation, or a fat/air embolus.
- Carotid or vertebral artery thrombosis from atheroma or dissection.
- ▶ The CNS accounts for about **10–18% of all sudden natural deaths**.

Hypertensive intracerebral haemorrhage ("apoplexy")

- ▶ The usual source is **rupture of a lenticulostriate branch of the middle cerebral artery**, bleeding into the basal ganglia.
- ▶ It is common in **middle-aged and elderly hypertensives**.
- ▶ The bleed follows rupture of **Charcot–Bouchard micro-aneurysms** — tiny aneurysms at the bifurcations of small intracerebral arteries.
- ▶ These micro-aneurysms increase in number with **age and duration of hypertension**.
- ▶ **Major sites of hypertensive haemorrhage:**
 - **Putamen** — 55%, the commonest site.
 - Lobar white matter — 15%.
 - **Thalamus** — 10%.
 - **Pons** — 10%.
 - **Cerebellar cortex** — 10%.
- ▶ A **single, deep-seated** brain haemorrhage is usually due to disease, not trauma.
- ▶ Death may be rapid, or delayed for several days if blood extends into the ventricles.

Subarachnoid haemorrhage and berry aneurysm

- ▶ Non-traumatic SAH is a leading CNS cause of sudden death.
- ▶ With continued bleeding, blood tracks along the fissures into the major cisterns and the fourth ventricle.
- ▶ **Causes of spontaneous SAH:**
 - Most commonly, rupture of a **berry (saccular) aneurysm**.
 - Next, rupture of an **arteriovenous malformation**.
 - Uncommonly, blood dyscrasias, infective endocarditis, anticoagulant overuse, sickle-cell disease, sunstroke, or tumours.
- ▶ **Berry aneurysm — key facts:**
 - Arises from a **developmental weakness in the media** of the vessel wall that enlarges over life.
 - Causes **more than 50% of spontaneous subarachnoid haemorrhage**.
 - Found in about **90% of cases at the circle of Willis**, chiefly at the middle cerebral, anterior cerebral (the commonest), and posterior communicating bifurcations.
 - **Least common** on the vertebral artery.
 - **Risk factors:** hypertension, alcohol abuse, and smoking.
- ▶ **Mechanism of death:** the resulting clot triggers widespread cerebral **vasospasm**, causing ischaemic brain injury and rapid cardiorespiratory failure.

- ▶ The victim typically has a severe **"thunderclap" headache**, neck stiffness, and vomiting.
- ▶ **Forensic relevance:** rupture may follow a sudden rise in blood pressure during a quarrel, sudden exertion, or intercourse.
- ▶ The collapse itself can then cause a fight, a fall, or a road accident.
- ▶ So a trivial injury found at the scene may be the **consequence, not the cause**, of death.

Ischaemic (occlusive) lesions

- ▶ **Cerebral thrombosis, embolism, and carotid artery thrombosis** are recognised CNS causes of sudden death.
- ▶ Thrombosis usually develops on an **atherosclerotic plaque** of a cerebral or cervical vessel.
- ▶ Embolism arises from a cardiac mural thrombus, a valvular vegetation, or a fat/air embolus.
- ▶ Occlusion produces **cerebral infarction**, ischaemic softening in the affected territory.
- ▶ An ischaemic infarct must be distinguished from an infarct lying beneath a traumatic subdural haematoma.
- ▶ Evidence of severe carotid atheroma or a cardiac embolic source favours a natural occlusive stroke over a trauma-related cause.

Natural haemorrhage versus traumatic haemorrhage

This is the heart of the medico-legal problem: if a person with diseased cerebral vessels falls and sustains a scalp wound before death, the bleed may wrongly look traumatic.

Trait	Post-traumatic haemorrhage	Apoplexy (spontaneous)
Cause	Head injury (coup–contrecoup)	Hypertension, atherosclerosis, aneurysm
Age	Young	Adults past middle age
Onset	Interval between injury and symptoms	Sudden
Head position	In motion at impact	Any position
Region	White matter (temporo-occipital/frontal)	Ganglionic region (basal ganglia)
Contrecoup bleed	May be present	Absent
Concussion	May be seen; lucid interval possible	Absent
Coma	Variable; may be lucid first	Deep, from onset

- ▶ Two practical autopsy rules: **subdural blood washes off** under gently running water, but **subarachnoid blood stains the brain red** and does not wash off.
- ▶ **Age of effused blood:** bright red when recent, chocolate/brown after a few days, pale brownish-yellow by 12–25 days.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ CVA can strike without warning, even at the wheel or at machine controls, explaining some traffic and industrial accidents.
- ▶ The doctor must decide whether death was **natural, accelerated by trauma or emotion**, or truly **traumatic**.
- ▶ At autopsy, examine the **scalp and skull for injury** and the **whole cerebral vascular system for disease** before forming an opinion.
- ▶ **Demonstrating an aneurysm**: examine it **before formalin fixation**, running a stream of water over the base of the brain while dissecting blunt with a forceps or scalpel handle.
- ▶ **Never restrict a cranial autopsy** — a ruptured berry aneurysm can be missed if the skull is not opened.
- ▶ **Cause-of-death certification** (MCCD, international format) enters the direct cause at Part I(a) and the underlying disease below it — for example, asphyxia from vomitus caused by a cerebellar haemorrhage on a background of hypertension.
- ▶ A **massive intracerebral haemorrhage** is a recognised natural lesion "incompatible with life."
- ▶ A negative autopsy needs full **neuropathology, histology, and exclusion of poisoning/trauma** before it is accepted as natural.
- ▶ A sudden, unnatural, or suspicious death requires a **police inquest** under **Section 194, BNSS 2023** (formerly Section 174, CrPC 1973).
- ▶ Custodial death, dowry death, and death within seven years of marriage need a **magistrate's inquest** under **Section 196, BNSS 2023** (formerly Section 176, CrPC 1973).
- ▶ The forensic doctor's autopsy opinion is **expert evidence** under **Section 39, BSA 2023** (formerly Section 45, IEA 1872).
- ▶ A victim's own statement about the cause of collapse, made before death, may be a **dying declaration** under **Section 26, BSA 2023** (formerly Section 32, IEA 1872).

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Circle of Willis with berry-aneurysm sites**: label the anterior communicating, anterior cerebral, internal carotid, middle cerebral (bifurcation), posterior communicating, basilar, and vertebral arteries; mark the anterior/middle cerebral and posterior communicating bifurcations as the high-incidence (~90%) sites.
- ▶ **Coronal brain section in hypertensive haemorrhage**: label the putamen (55%), thalamus (10%), external capsule, basal ganglia, pons (10%), cerebellum (10%), and the lateral ventricle with intraventricular extension; show the ruptured lenticulostriate artery.

♦ ♦ ♦

Discuss the medicolegal aspects of death on operation table

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

- ▶ "Death on the operation table" means death in the operating theatre, or before the patient fully recovers from anaesthesia.
- ▶ Full recovery is conventionally taken as within about **24 hours**.
- ▶ The correct term is "**death associated with anaesthesia and surgery**".
- ▶ "Anaesthetic death" is avoided because it wrongly presumes the anaesthetist is at fault before any inquiry.
- ▶ Incidence was historically about **1 in 10,000** anaesthetics; with modern monitoring it has fallen to about **5–6 per million**.
- ▶ These deaths matter medico-legally because they are sudden, unexpected, occur under direct medical care, and often trigger allegations of **medical negligence**.
- ▶ Every such death is treated as an **unnatural / medico-legal death**.

Classification — categories of death on the operation table

Category	Mechanism	Example
(A) During anaesthesia, not due to it	Disease or the surgery itself kills	Occult coronary artery disease
(B) Direct result of anaesthetic	The anaesthetic agent/administration kills	Vagal inhibition, malignant hyperthermia
(C) Due to the surgical operation	A surgical act or complication kills	Slipped ligature, air embolism
(D) Due to disease	A natural condition kills, related or unrelated to surgery	Pulmonary embolism, pheochromocytoma

- ▶ **Rule of thumb:** once the patient has fully regained consciousness and returned to the pre-anaesthetic state, anaesthesia is generally not blamed for a later death.

Causes — anaesthesia, surgery and disease

Anaesthetic causes:

- ▶ **Inexperience and failure of precaution** is the single commonest contributor.
- ▶ **Oesophageal intubation** — the tube is mistakenly passed into the food pipe instead of the windpipe — plus breathing-circuit disconnection.
- ▶ **Respiratory failure:**
 - From depression of the respiratory centre — anaesthetic overdose or muscle relaxants.
 - From airway obstruction — laryngeal spasm, aspiration of gastric contents, or the tongue falling back.
- ▶ **Cardiac causes:**
 - **Vagal inhibition** — the commonest cause of sudden death under general anaesthesia; reflex cardiac arrest in an under-anaesthetised patient.

- **Arrhythmia** — halogenated agents (halothane, cyclopropane, trichloroethylene) sensitise the heart to adrenaline.
- **Circulatory collapse** — thiopentone in elderly patients with hardened, narrowed arteries.
- ▶ **Hypovolaemia** (low circulating blood volume):
 - May be unrecognised before surgery, or inadequately replaced during it.
 - Massive transfusion can dilute clotting factors and cause coagulopathy.
- ▶ **Drug-specific reactions:**
 - Chloroform — hepatotoxic, rare ventricular fibrillation.
 - Suxamethonium given without atropine — fatal bradycardia.
 - Latex or dextran — fatal anaphylaxis.
- ▶ **Fatal blood levels (mg%):** halothane 20, chloroform 40–60, divinyl ether 50, trichloroethylene 50, diethyl ether 180.
- ▶ **Technical mishaps:**
 - Wrong blood group transfused, or wrong drug/fluid infused — e.g. sodium citrate mistaken for saline.
 - Mislabelled oxygen/anaesthetic cylinders.
 - Explosion from an inflammable anaesthetic-oxygen mixture ignited by a diathermy spark or static electricity.

Malignant hyperthermia (malignant hyperpyrexia):

- ▶ A rare, **autosomal dominant** reaction — one abnormal gene copy from either parent is enough to cause it.
- ▶ Triggered by volatile anaesthetics (classically halothane) and **succinylcholine**.
- ▶ Caused by defective calcium handling in muscle cells.
- ▶ Body temperature rises suddenly to **40–45°C** with muscle rigidity and a fast heart rate.
- ▶ Incidence is about **1 in 14,000** general anaesthetics.
- ▶ Mortality was historically **60–80%**, now about **10%** with **dantrolene sodium**.

Specific anaesthesia types and their hazards:

- ▶ **Spinal anaesthesia:** hypotension from sympathetic paralysis and cardiac standstill from vagal stimulation — both dangerous in elderly or cardiac patients.
- ▶ **Obstetric anaesthesia: Mendelson's syndrome** — chemical pneumonitis from aspiration — is common because these cases are often unprepared emergencies.
- ▶ **Local/dental anaesthesia:** overdose, accidental intravascular injection, or adrenaline-induced arrhythmia.

Surgical causes:

- ▶ Slipped ligature with massive haemorrhage.
- ▶ Accidental perforation of a viscus.
- ▶ Air embolism — especially in neurosurgery done in the sitting position.
- ▶ Nosocomial (hospital-acquired) infection.

Autopsy — special protocol

- ▶ Routine autopsy technique can destroy crucial evidence in an operative death, so a special protocol is followed.
- ▶ **Before autopsy:** photograph the whole body, record blood/pus soaking of dressings, and describe all surgical wounds.
- ▶ **Devices must stay in place** — the endotracheal tube, cannulae, catheters and drains must NOT be removed by the surgeon or nurse.
- ▶ The pathologist opens the body with all devices *in situ* to confirm correct placement.
- ▶ **Before opening the body:** test for **air embolism** and **pneumothorax** — trapped gas is confirmed by filling the cavity with water and using a rubber dam before cutting.
- ▶ **At the operation site:** inspect every surgical suture for leakage, and look for a slipped ligature, a wrongly tied vessel/ureter/bile duct, or a retained swab or instrument.
- ▶ **Organs:** examine the heart to exclude occult disease such as myocarditis, and the airway for regurgitated contents or intubation injury.
- ▶ The brain shows hypoxic change in the hippocampus and cerebellum — classically the **Sommer sector (CA1)** — with loss of Purkinje cells.
- ▶ **Beware artefacts:** engorgement of dependent viscera is not proof of prolonged anaesthesia — it may just be post-mortem gravitation.
- ▶ **Samples:** blood for grouping/culture, tissue from all organs for histopathology, both lungs tied off for toxicology.
- ▶ Volatile anaesthetics are lost quickly, so alveolar air must be collected under water before the chest is opened, sealed, and refrigerated at once.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Every death on the operation table is treated as unnatural — the surgeon must **not** issue a death certificate, must **inform the police**, and a **medico-legal autopsy** is mandatory.
- ▶ Inquest is governed by **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**; a magistrate's inquest applies instead where an institutional death is alleged, under **Section 176 CrPC (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ **Consent** is central — the team must confirm valid informed consent was taken for both the operation and the anaesthetic; its absence is itself negligence and can convert a lawful act into assault.
- ▶ Expert medical opinion in court is admissible under **Section 45 Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ **Investigation should be multidisciplinary** — an independent anaesthetist and surgeon from another hospital should be involved.
- ▶ Many fatal mechanisms (vagal inhibition, arrhythmia, a sudden fall in blood pressure) leave **no visible trace** at autopsy, so the final opinion rests on **exclusion and reasoning**.
- ▶ **Key questions to answer:**
 - Was the operation or anaesthetic necessary and life-saving, and was consent valid?
 - Was the patient properly assessed and fit, with qualified staff and sound equipment in place?

- Was there a defect in surgical or anaesthetic technique, and would the patient have died anyway without it?
- ▶ **Negligence vs misadventure:** an accepted operative risk carries no liability; a breach of the duty of care (wrong drug, oesophageal intubation, mismatched transfusion) does.
- ▶ Criminal liability needs gross or rash negligence under **Section 304A IPC (now Section 106 BNS 2023)** — the *Jacob Mathew* standard; civil liability can also follow under the Consumer Protection Act and the law of tort.
- ▶ The **anaesthetist has independent duties** — to refuse anaesthesia for an illegal procedure (e.g. an illegal termination of pregnancy) and to report it.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Flowchart — classification of deaths on the operation table:** central box "Death on operation table" branching into four boxes — (A) **During anaesthesia, not due to it**, (B) **Direct anaesthetic cause**, (C) **Surgical cause**, (D) **Disease**.
- ▶ **Labelled box — special autopsy protocol:** *Photograph body → Devices in situ → Test for air embolism/pneumothorax before opening → Inspect every suture → Examine operation site → Brain: Sommer sector hypoxia → Tie both lungs → Alveolar air in sealed, refrigerated container.*



Discuss the procedure to conduct an autopsy on the body of a AIDS victim and outline its medico legal significance

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction — An autopsy (necropsy / post-mortem examination) is the systematic examination of a dead body to determine the cause, mode, mechanism and time of death, establish identity, and recover medico-legal evidence. An AIDS victim has died with Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome, the end stage of HIV infection. Such a body is a high-risk autopsy — it can transmit HIV, and often co-existing hepatitis B/C and tuberculosis, through needle-prick, cuts, splash or contact with broken skin. It must still be a complete autopsy, done with strict universal precautions, a modified dissection technique, and confidentiality — an incomplete autopsy is worse than none, risking a miscarriage of justice.

General principles and pre-autopsy requirements

- ▶ Conduct the autopsy only on official requisition from police or magistrate, after an inquest.
- ▶ An unnatural, suspicious, unidentified or custodial death needs a medico-legal autopsy under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**; magisterial inquiry into death, including custodial/dowry death, falls under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ A purely AIDS-related natural death under medical care is non-medico-legal, and the treating doctor can certify it.
- ▶ Review the hospital case sheet first — it flags infectious status and separates therapeutic marks from true injuries.

- ▶ Work in a well-ventilated, well-lit mortuary, never a private room, and never embalm the body — embalming distorts wounds.
- ▶ Label the body on arrival, identified by the accompanying constable and relatives; wrap an infected body in a double-layer plastic bag bearing a red "**Biologically hazardous**" tag.
- ▶ Limit the team to the prosecutor, the diener and one "clean" assistant for paperwork; no unauthorised person is allowed, though the investigating officer may attend.
- ▶ Staff with exudative skin lesions, weeping dermatitis or open wounds must not handle the body; the team should be immunised against tetanus, hepatitis B and tuberculosis (no HIV vaccine exists, so barrier protection is the mainstay).

Protective equipment and universal precautions

Every body is treated as potentially infective.

- ▶ **Body cover:** full-sleeved waterproof overalls, plastic apron, head cap, face mask, sleeve covers, and knee-length waterproof gumboots with shoe covers.
- ▶ **Eyes:** goggles or a plastic visor to block splash.
- ▶ **Hands:** double gloves, ideally with a cut-resistant steel-mesh layer between them.
- ▶ **Airway:** a HEPA or powered air-purifying respirator, needed since tuberculosis may co-exist and most critical during cranial-vault opening.
- ▶ **Sharps safety is the single most important precaution.**
 - Use scalpels only when necessary, and keep knives sharp and scissors blunt-tipped.
 - Cover cut rib ends with cloth to prevent puncture, and let only one operator handle a blade at a time.
 - After a glove cut or needle injury, change gloves at once and report it immediately.
- ▶ Open the skull with a saw enclosed in a plastic bag, or fitted with a vacuum shroud, to control aerosols.

Dissection technique of choice

- ▶ Every cavity is still opened and every organ examined, but evisceration is chosen to cut handling and splash.
- ▶ ****Rokitansky's technique is preferred**** for HIV and hepatitis B: it combines in-situ dissection with en-bloc removal, so organs are examined largely within the body.

Technique	Method	Note
Rokitansky	In-situ dissection + en-bloc removal	Preferred for HIV/hepatitis B — least handling/splash
Virchow	Organs removed one by one	Loses anatomico-pathological relations
Ghon	Removed as organ-blocks (cervico-thoracic, abdominal, urogenital, CNS)	More handling of separated blocks
Letulle	All thoraco-abdomino-pelvic organs removed <i>en masse</i>	Bulky to handle

- ▶ A standard I-, Y- or modified-Y-shaped skin incision is used.

Sequence of examination

▶ External examination:

- Note build, nutrition, skin marks and stains, and examine for injuries and defence wounds, taking nail scrapings and swabs where indicated.
- Estimate time since death from rectal temperature, rigor mortis, lividity and putrefaction.
- Look for AIDS stigmata: wasting, oral candidiasis, generalised lymphadenopathy, Kaposi's sarcoma, signs of opportunistic infection.

▶ Internal examination:

- Open all three cavities and the cranium, noting systemic HIV effects — pulmonary infection (*Pneumocystis*, tuberculosis), CNS involvement, lymphoid changes.
- HIV concentrates mainly in lymphoid tissue and brain, and also in colon and lungs — examine these with care.

▶ Sample collection:

- Draw blood for grouping/DNA from the femoral vessels (preferred) or subclavian/jugular veins, never from the body cavities or heart.
- Take histology in 10% formalin, and collect bacteriological, virological and toxicological samples under sterile, airtight conditions.
- Inform the chemical examiner in writing that the viscera are infectious (HIV/hepatitis B).

▶ Documentation and handover:

- Record all positive and relevant negative findings verbatim; nothing is erased, and any correction is initialled.
- Issue the post-mortem report to the police, with certified copies going only to authorised persons, and list all articles removed before handing them, with the body, to the police.

Disposal, decontamination and waste management

- ▶ Dip used instruments in disinfectant — 2% glutaraldehyde, phenol or savlon — before cleaning, and disinfect the autopsy room daily, with weekly fumigation.
- ▶ Discard contaminated gear, gloves and sharps into red biohazard bags/sharps containers for incineration, per the **Bio-Medical Waste Management Rules 2016**.
- ▶ Disinfect the body bag from outside, e.g. with hypochlorite, before release, and avoid soiling floors, walls and instruments.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Evisceration-techniques chart:** four boxes — Rokitansky (in-situ, preferred for HIV/hepatitis), Virchow (organ-by-organ), Ghon (organ-block), Letulle (en-masse) — arrow marks Rokitansky as the choice for transmissible disease.
- ▶ **PPE figure:** labelled outline of the prosector — HEPA/PAPR respirator, goggles/visor, head cap and mask, waterproof overall and apron, double gloves with cut-resistant inner layer, sleeve covers, gumboots, and a body bag with a red "Biologically hazardous" tag.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ About **0.3–0.5%** of workers seroconvert after a percutaneous (needle-prick) exposure.
- ▶ Hepatitis transmits **10–30 times more readily** than HIV from a contaminated needle-prick.
- ▶ HIV stays viable for about **three weeks** in tissue and about **two months** in liquid blood — the body remains infectious well after death.
- ▶ HIV and hepatitis are not airborne; *prosector's wart* (inoculation tuberculosis of the skin) is a separate occupational hazard.
- ▶ **Scope:** universal precautions cover blood, semen, vaginal secretions, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), and synovial, pleural, peritoneal, pericardial and amniotic fluid — but not faeces, nasal secretions, sputum, sweat, tears, urine or vomit unless visibly blood-stained.
- ▶ Following the guidelines correctly leaves autopsy staff at no added risk from AIDS patients.
- ▶ **Confidentiality:** HIV status is never disclosed to unauthorised persons; this duty survives death, reinforced by the **HIV and AIDS (Prevention and Control) Act 2017** (bars discrimination) and **Section 8(1)(j), RTI Act 2005**.
- ▶ **Post-exposure protocol:** report any sharps injury or splash, wash the wound, test source and worker, and start post-exposure prophylaxis per NACO protocol.
- ▶ **Establishing cause and manner:**
 - Decides whether death was natural (AIDS/opportunistic disease) or unnatural (homicide, suicide, accident, custodial).
 - Corroborates or refutes the police inquest findings and recovers trace evidence.
 - Supports the doctor's expert opinion in court under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ A criminal finding here, e.g. murder under Section 302 IPC, is now cited as **Section 103 BNS 2023**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Discuss the role of digestive system in determining the time since death

Asked in: Paper I Dec 2023 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ The **postmortem interval (PMI)**, or **time since death (TSD)**, is the interval between death and examination of the body.
- ▶ No method fixes an *exact* time of death — only an approximate *range*.
- ▶ The **digestive system** helps estimate this range in two ways.
- ▶ **First:** the quantity and digestive state of stomach contents.
- ▶ **Second:** how far the food residue has travelled along the bowel.
- ▶ Both findings are useless without a **reliable history of the last meal** — its timing, nature, and quantity.
- ▶ The method is only **corroborative** and quite **variable** — never use it alone.

Why the gut acts as a biological clock

- ▶ Stomach emptying is an **active antemortem process** driven by peristalsis — the rhythmic muscular churning that mixes food with gastric acid and enzymes and pushes it onward.
- ▶ **Digestion does not meaningfully continue after death** — acid and enzymes remain present, but the churning movements stop.
- ▶ The stomach **does not empty into the duodenum after death**, and small-intestinal contents likewise stop passing into the large intestine.
- ▶ The food therefore "freezes" at whatever stage of digestion and transit it had reached at death.
- ▶ Digestion may still continue slowly for some time after death, so "the clock stops at death" is a useful working rule, not an absolute one.
- ▶ Because emptying is timed to the **last meal**, estimating TSD needs a known **when, what, and how much** the person last ate.

Gastric emptying — key time frames

- ▶ Stomach **full of recognisable, undigested food** → death within **2–4 hours** of eating.
- ▶ Food **digested / indistinguishable** → more than **4 hours** since eating.
- ▶ Contents **identifiable by naked eye** → meal eaten within the preceding **~2 hours**.
- ▶ An average, medium-sized meal empties in about **3 hours** — roughly when hunger returns.
- ▶ The stomach **starts emptying within about 10 minutes** of the first mouthful, and the bulk of a meal leaves within 2 hours.

Emptying time by meal size:

- ▶ **Light meal:** 1–2 hours.
- ▶ **Medium meal:** 3–4 hours.
- ▶ **Heavy meal:** 5–8 hours.

Emptying order by food type:

- ▶ **Carbohydrates leave first** — rapidly reduced to a semi-fluid state.
- ▶ **Proteins leave next.**
- ▶ **Fats leave last** — a high-fat meal slows the whole process.
- ▶ **Fluids and semi-fluids** leave very rapidly, within about 2 hours; **milk** leaves fast too despite being fatty, because it is liquid.
- ▶ **Meat and pulses are retained longer** than most other foods.

Intestinal transit — extending the estimate

- ▶ Once the leading edge of the meal passes the **pylorus** (the valve from stomach to duodenum), the level it has reached in the bowel extends the TSD estimate.
- ▶ **Hepatic (right colic) flexure:** reached in about **6 hours** (range 6–8 h).
- ▶ **Splenic (left colic) flexure:** about **9–12 hours**.
- ▶ **Pelvic colon:** about **12–18 hours**, with residue then sitting there as faeces for up to a further ~12 hours.
- ▶ **Bladder urine volume** can help too — urine is passed at roughly 1 mL per minute, so a measured volume can be back-calculated against the last known voiding time.
- ▶ These bowel and bladder findings mainly support the **longer** end of the postmortem interval.

Factors that make this method unreliable

- ▶ Gastric emptying varies widely between individuals, and even in the same person from day to day, so every estimate carries a large error.
- ▶ **Quantity of food:** larger meals empty more slowly.
- ▶ **Solid-to-liquid ratio and carbohydrate/fat content** of the meal alter emptying speed.
- ▶ **Emotional stress** can either delay emptying for hours or speed it up by causing hypermotility.
- ▶ **Sleep and coma delay digestion.**
- ▶ **Strong alcohol** (concentration above 40%) irritates the gastric mucosa and causes **pyloric spasm**, which delays emptying.
- ▶ **Parasympathomimetic drugs and insulin speed up emptying; atropine and sympathomimetics** (adrenaline, benzedrine) delay it.
- ▶ **Head injury, physical or mental shock, and severe stress** may completely inhibit gastric motility and pyloric opening.
- ▶ This can leave **undigested food in the stomach for more than 24 hours** after the last meal — a major pitfall to remember.
- ▶ **Any illness** prolongs gastric emptying time.

Naked-eye identification of stomach contents

- ▶ The **nature of the recognisable food** can confirm or refute a witness's account of the last meal, especially in **sudden death**.
- ▶ Gastric contents not needed for toxicology can be **strained and rinsed** to help identify the food matter.
- ▶ **Carbohydrate foods** such as potato and bread dissolve quickly from swallowed salivary amylase.

- ▶ **Mushrooms resist gastric juices the longest**; vegetable matter and meat stay recognisable for a few hours.
- ▶ Example: an intact **potato fragment** in the stomach (potatoes digest quickly) placed death within **under 1 hour** of the last meal, fixing the timeline against a suspect.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Estimating TSD narrows the time an offence was committed and gives police an investigative starting point.
- ▶ It can help **confirm or exclude an alibi** and may exclude suspects; in civil matters it can decide inheritance or whether an insurance policy was in force.
- ▶ Identifiable gastric food can corroborate or contradict a witness's account, particularly in sudden or homicidal death.
- ▶ An unnatural or suspicious death triggers a police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Custodial or otherwise specified deaths require a magistrate's inquest under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon's TSD estimate is given as **expert medical opinion**, admissible under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ This method is always **adjunctive** — combine it with **algor mortis** (body cooling), **livor mortis** (postmortem staining), **rigor mortis** (muscle stiffening), putrefaction, entomology, and thanatochemistry.
- ▶ Always give a **range, never a single point estimate** — the longer the interval, the wider the range should be.
- ▶ At autopsy, record the **quantity, nature, and digestive state** of stomach contents, plus the level of intestinal residue and bladder urine volume.
- ▶ Preserve the **stomach with its contents** and the **upper ~30 cm of small intestine** in suspected poisoning — these serve both toxicology and TSD estimation.
- ▶ Document the assumed last-meal history on which the estimate rests before presenting it as expert opinion.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Labelled GI-tract timeline:** stomach → duodenum → jejunum/ileum → caecum → ascending colon → **hepatic flexure (~6 h)** → transverse colon → **splenic flexure (~9–12 h)** → descending colon → **pelvic/sigmoid colon (~12–18 h)** → rectum.
- ▶ Label the **pylorus** as "does not open after death."
- ▶ Annotate stomach emptying times: **light meal 1–2 h, medium 3–4 h, heavy 5–8 h.**
- ▶ **Emptying-order chart:** Carbohydrate (fastest) → Protein → Fat (slowest); note fluids/semi-fluids under 2 h, milk fast, meat and pulses retained longer.

♦ ♦ ♦

Discuss the value of chemical analysis of spinal fluid in ascertaining the time since death

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Time since death (TSD)**, also called the **postmortem interval (PMI)**, is the interval between death and examination of the body.
- ▶ **Postmortem chemistry (thanatochemistry)** studies how chemical levels in body fluids change after death.
- ▶ It supplements the classical physical signs — cooling, lividity, rigor, and decomposition.
- ▶ **Chemical analysis of spinal fluid** means measuring postmortem changes in **cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)**, chiefly the rise in potassium and lactic acid, to estimate PMI.
- ▶ CSF chemistry is best judged by comparing it with the true fluid of choice for this purpose, **vitreous humour** of the eye.

Why body-fluid chemistry is used

- ▶ Classical signs — algor mortis, lividity, rigor, putrefaction — are reliable only for a limited window and become nearly useless after about 24 hours.
- ▶ After death, hypoxia disables the **sodium–potassium pump**, so cells can no longer hold their normal ionic gradients.
- ▶ **Potassium leaks out of cells** at a measurable, time-related rate, while glucose is consumed and **lactic acid builds up**.
- ▶ These shifts give an apparently objective, numerical estimate of PMI, unlike a subjective physical impression.
- ▶ **Sequestered fluids** — vitreous humour, CSF, synovial fluid, pericardial fluid — are preferred over blood for this purpose.
- ▶ They are anatomically protected and less contaminated by putrefaction, so their changes are more orderly than the erratic changes seen in blood.

Sampling and mechanism of CSF change

- ▶ The CSF sample used for TSD work is **cisternal fluid**.
- ▶ CSF is obtained by:
 - **Lumbar puncture** on the intact body before autopsy.
 - Needling the **cisterna magna**, through the atlanto-occipital membrane below the occiput.
 - **Direct aspiration** from the lateral or third ventricle after the brain is removed.
- ▶ About **15 mL** can be withdrawn — more than the 1–2 mL available from each eye's vitreous.
- ▶ The postmortem change is driven by **hypoxic damage to the choroid plexus**, the structure that normally secretes and regulates CSF.
- ▶ Once the choroid plexus and the **ependyma** (the ventricle lining) fail, potassium from dying cells equilibrates into the CSF.

- ▶ Glucose is exhausted by continuing anaerobic glycolysis, and lactic acid and nitrogenous breakdown products accumulate.

Chemical changes in CSF after death

- ▶ **Potassium:** the single most useful CSF constituent. Rises at a constant rate for the first ~20 hours, then as the **logarithm of time** up to about 70 hours.
- ▶ **Glucose:** falls very rapidly after death; of little timing value.
- ▶ **Lactic acid:** rises sharply up to ~10 hours, then more slowly; used as a variable in Schourup's formula.
- ▶ **Inositol:** rises steadily after death, up to about ~72 mg%, but is rarely used in practice.
- ▶ **Non-protein nitrogen and amino acids:** rise progressively after death; also used as variables in Schourup's formula.
- ▶ **Inorganic sulphate:** stays stable for about 3 days — a stability control, not a timing marker.
- ▶ **Sodium, calcium and magnesium:** show **no relationship to time since death**.
- ▶ **Schourup's formula** combined CSF lactic acid, non-protein nitrogen, amino acids and axillary temperature to estimate PMI — historically important, but **now obsolete**.

CSF versus vitreous humour — the fluid of choice

CSF chemistry, though theoretically attractive, is **inferior** to vitreous chemistry for estimating TSD.

Feature	CSF	Vitreous humour
Protection from contamination	Communicates with brain tissue; affected by autolysis, head injury, and choroid-plexus failure	Encased in the avascular eye; well protected from putrefaction
Potassium rise	Linear only for ~20 h, then logarithmic to ~70 h	Essentially linear up to ~120 hours
Working formula	Schourup's — obsolete	Sturner, Madea/Henssge, James formulae (still used)
Reproducibility	Less reproducible	More reproducible (inter-eye variation ~10%)
Overall rank	Secondary / largely historical	Specimen of choice

- ▶ Vitreous potassium is **5–8 mmol/L at death**, rising linearly by about **0.2 mmol/L per hour** up to **120 hours** (95% confidence limits $\approx \pm 20$ hours up to 100 hours).
- ▶ Vitreous **hypoxanthine**, a purine breakdown product, also rises linearly up to 120 hours.
- ▶ **Working formulae for vitreous potassium:**
 - *Sturner*: $\text{TSD (h)} = 7.14 \times [\text{K}^+] - 39.1$.
 - *Madea/Henssge*: $\text{TSD (h)} = 5.26 \times [\text{K}^+] - 30.9$.
 - *James*: $\text{TSD (h)} = 4.32 \times [\text{K}^+] - 18.35$.
- ▶ **Synovial** and **pericardial fluid** behave broadly like vitreous and can substitute when it is unavailable — again, ahead of CSF.

Limitations of CSF chemistry

- ▶ All postmortem biochemical changes are **strongly temperature-dependent**, so accurate ambient and body temperature must always be recorded.
- ▶ Published figures come from cold and temperate climates, limiting their direct use in tropical settings such as India.
- ▶ CSF potassium is **not truly linear** beyond the first 20 hours, so back-calculation stays imprecise.
- ▶ CSF lies in continuity with brain tissue, so it is easily distorted by head injury, meningitis, intracranial haemorrhage, and decomposition.
- ▶ Agonal and antemortem factors — electrolyte imbalance, uraemia, hypoxia, the cause and mode of death — also shift the baseline.
- ▶ Chemical methods overall are considered the **least reliable and least practicable** of all TSD methods.
- ▶ CSF chemistry is therefore best used as a **corroborative, second-line tool** — the specimen of choice when the eyes are unavailable (severe ocular trauma, enucleation), and the **preferred specimen in suspected child-abuse deaths**.
- ▶ The vitreous must not be aspirated in such cases: traumatic sampling damages the retina and gives a falsely high potassium reading.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — Routes of CSF and vitreous sampling.** A sagittal head-and-neck outline labelling the lumbar puncture site, the cisterna magna (needle below the occiput), and the ventricle route after brain removal; inset eye showing a needle entering through the pars plana into the vitreous body.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — Comparative time-course graph.** X-axis = hours since death (0–120 h); Y-axis = potassium concentration (mmol/L). Plot a near-straight line for vitreous K^+ (linear to ~120 h) against a curved/log line for CSF K^+ (linear only to ~20 h, then logarithmic to ~70 h).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Estimating TSD is a **routine medico-legal duty** at every autopsy.
- ▶ It is required for the police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)** and the magistrate's inquest under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ TSD helps **fix the period of death**, corroborate or refute alibis, narrow the circle of suspects, and link or exclude the accused.
- ▶ The forensic expert may have to defend this opinion in court under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ The doctor must record body and ambient temperature and the time of examination, since every chemical figure is temperature-corrected.
- ▶ Results must be stated as a **range with confidence limits**, never as a single exact time.
- ▶ Samples must be collected before putrefaction sets in, clearly labelled, and stored at about 4°C before assay (vitreous aspirate stays stable up to ~48 hours).

- ▶ A traumatic aspiration must always be noted, since it spuriously raises the potassium reading.



Entomology of cadaver and its medico legal importance

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Entomology** is the study of insects.
- ▶ **Forensic entomology** applies insect biology to law and criminal investigation.
- ▶ A dead body is a food resource that insects colonise in a predictable, temperature-dependent sequence.
- ▶ This colonisation pattern lets a pathologist estimate the **time since death**, also called the **postmortem interval (PMI)**.
- ▶ Entomology is most valuable once classical postmortem changes (cooling, lividity, rigor) have lapsed.
- ▶ **Myiasis** is a related but different term: fly maggots infesting *living* tissue, not a cadaver.

Why entomology matters for PMI

- ▶ Body cooling, lividity and rigor are reliable for only the first 24–48 hours after death.
- ▶ Beyond that window, **insect activity becomes the most useful PMI indicator**, and is often the **only** method once a body is decomposed or skeletonised.
- ▶ Two clocks are used together:
 - **Maggot age** — the age of the oldest larvae gives the *minimum* PMI.
 - **Insect succession** — the community present changes as decomposition advances, dating a body over weeks to years.
- ▶ PMI is always given as a **range**, never a single figure, since environment strongly affects both clocks.

Method 1 — Life cycle of the fly

- ▶ Flies are the first and most important colonisers — chiefly the housefly *Musca domestica* and blow flies (*Calliphora*, bluebottle).
- ▶ Their complete metamorphosis — egg to larva (maggot) to pupa to adult — is the basis of PMI estimation.
- ▶ **Egg laying:**
 - On an exposed body, flies lay eggs within **minutes** of death, on body orifices and on wound margins.
 - About **120–150 pearly-white eggs**, **~1 mm long**, are laid in one sitting.
 - An indoor body delays egg-laying by 2–3 days.
- ▶ **Larval (maggot) stage:**
 - Maggots are white and segmented, **1–2 mm at hatching**, growing to **~12 mm** fully grown.

- They secrete proteolytic enzymes, lipases and collagenases that digest soft tissue; their mouth-hooks add mechanical damage too.
 - Their burrowed tunnels admit air and bacteria, which **hastens putrefaction**.
 - An **instar** is the stage between two moults (**ecdyses**).
 - A housefly maggot moults twice, becoming 1st, 2nd and then 3rd instar (~12 mm).
 - Counting moults and larval size gives its age.
- **Pupal stage:** fully-fed maggots crawl away from the body and form a dark-brown, barrel-shaped cocoon, the **puparium**.
 - Pupae are found at a distance, so a careful **scene search** is essential.
 - **Adult fly:** emerges from the puparium; the empty case left behind is itself dateable evidence.

Housefly life-cycle timing:

Step	Summer	Winter
Eggs laid	minutes	hours
Egg → 1st instar	8 hours	1 day
1st → 2nd instar	1 day	4 days
2nd → 3rd instar	1 day	4 days
3rd instar → pupa	3 days	8 days
Pupa → adult	5 days	5 days
Total cycle	10–11 days	22 days

Method 2 — Waves of insect succession (Mégnin)

- A corpse is colonised by **successive waves** of insects, each attracted by the chemical state of decomposition at that time.
- *Mégnin* (1894) described **8 waves on exposed bodies** and **2 waves on buried bodies**; the wave present dates a body over months to years.
- **The eight waves on exposed bodies:**
 - **Wave 1 (1st week):** decomposition starts — housefly, blow fly.
 - **Wave 2 (1 wk–3 mo):** advanced decomposition, foul odour — greenbottle, flesh fly.
 - **Wave 3 (3–4 mo):** fatty acids form — larder beetles, small moths.
 - **Wave 4 (4–6 mo):** butyric fermentation of fat — cheese fly, beetles.
 - **Wave 5 (6–8 mo):** ammoniacal fermentation, black liquefaction — mixed flies, beetles.
 - **Wave 6 (8–12 mo):** desiccation — mites.
 - **Wave 7 (1–3 yr):** extreme desiccation — clothes moths, carpet beetles.
 - **Wave 8 (>3 yr):** debris — darkling and spider beetles.
- **Buried bodies:** only two waves — blow flies before burial, a distinct soil fauna after.

Factors affecting insect activity

- ▶ **Temperature/season** is the dominant variable — development is far faster in summer.
- ▶ Warm, humid conditions can skeletonise a body within days.
- ▶ **Open bodies** are colonised within minutes.
- ▶ **Indoor bodies** are delayed by 2–3 days.
- ▶ **Buried bodies** show only the two slow waves.
- ▶ **Water vs land** changes the colonising fauna entirely.
- ▶ **Open wounds** attract extra egg-laying; a disproportionate maggot mass over one area may mark a wound present before death.

Brief history (high-yield)

- ▶ **1247 — Song Ci (China):** *Washing Away of Wrongs*, earliest recorded use of insect evidence — flies on a sickle identified a murderer.
- ▶ **1855 — Bergeret (France):** first real-case use, dating a mummified infant by its insects.
- ▶ **1894 — Mégnin:** described the classical 8-wave succession scheme.
- ▶ **1935 — Ruxton case (UK):** first successful use of entomological evidence in an investigation — blow-fly pupae/maggots aged 12–14 days dated the remains and matched the victims' disappearance; Buck Ruxton was convicted and hanged.

Forensic entomotoxicology

- ▶ **Entomotoxicology** is the study of drugs and poisons found in insects (maggots, pupae, beetles) feeding on a corpse.
- ▶ It is especially valuable when a body is decomposed and viscera are unavailable, revealing the cause of death, drugs of abuse, PMI, or environmental pollutants.
- ▶ Larvae, pupae, empty puparial cases and beetle faecal pellets are homogenised and processed like human tissue.
- ▶ Drugs reported include antidepressants, barbiturates, benzodiazepines, cocaine and opiates.
- ▶ Drugs in larvae can also alter their growth rate, which can distort PMI estimates.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Life cycle of Musca domestica (circular diagram):** label adult fly, eggs, three larval instars (~12 mm), and pupa (puparium); annotate arrows with summer/winter timing.
- ▶ **Mégnin's waves of insect succession (timeline bar):** a horizontal axis from death to beyond 3 years, with the eight waves marked as blocks labelled by their insects and corpse state.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Estimating time since death** is entomology's main use, especially in decomposed, skeletonised, mummified or concealed bodies where cooling, lividity and rigor are useless.
- ▶ It gives a **minimum PMI** from larval age, and a broader range from the succession wave present.

- ▶ **Investigative value:** fixes when the crime happened, gives police a starting point, and can exclude a suspect or confirm/disprove an alibi.
- ▶ **Detecting movement of a body:** insects inconsistent with the recovery site suggest the body was moved after death.
- ▶ **Locating antemortem wounds:** a disproportionate maggot mass over one site can mark a wound that bled before death.
- ▶ **Avoiding artefact pitfalls:** maggot feeding causes small round holes that can resemble gunshot wounds, and tunnelling that can mimic or hide real injuries.
- ▶ **The doctor's duty at autopsy:**
 - Collect specimens correctly — live larvae for rearing, plus a preserved sample.
 - Record the scene temperature and conditions, and search the soil for pupae.
 - Refer to a forensic entomologist when indicated.
 - Document, seal and forward all specimens with the chain of custody intact.



Exhumation

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Exhumation** is the lawful digging out of an already-buried body from its grave.
- ▶ The Latin roots are *ex* (out of) and *humus* (ground); synonym *disinterment*.
- ▶ The opposite process, burial, is called *inhumation*.
- ▶ It allows a post-mortem examination, confirms identity, or establishes the cause and manner of death.
- ▶ It is done only on the written order of a competent Magistrate — never on a doctor's or a police officer's own authority.
- ▶ Exhumation is rare in India because most communities cremate rather than bury.

Terminology and time limit

- ▶ There is **no statutory time limit in India** for ordering exhumation — it can be done any number of years, even decades, after burial.
- ▶ Some countries fix a limit: France about 10 years, Germany about 30 years.
- ▶ **Three patterns relative to the post-mortem:**
 - **No post-mortem at all** — rare; only to relocate a graveyard or re-inter remains.
 - **First post-mortem** — no suspicion arose at death, so the body is exhumed later, once suspicion arises, for its first autopsy.
 - **Repeat post-mortem** — an earlier autopsy's findings are later doubted, so a second (or third) post-mortem follows.
- ▶ Jewish and Islamic law generally forbid exhumation except in specific circumstances, so religious sensitivities must be respected.

Indications for exhumation

Category	Examples
Criminal	Suspected homicide disguised as natural, accidental or suicidal death; suspicious poisoning, criminal abortion, criminal negligence; recovering evidence such as a bullet or poison.
Civil	Disputed identity, survivorship/inheritance claims, insurance and compensation claims, civil negligence claims.
Administrative	Relocating a graveyard, completing an incomplete autopsy, identifying the deceased, recovering a lost object.
Historical	Studying disease/nutrition of earlier generations, re-establishing a historical cause of death.

Authorisation — who may order it

- ▶ In India, exhumation needs a written order of an Executive or Judicial Magistrate, under **Section 196(4), Bharatiya Nagarik Suraksha Sanhita (BNSS) 2023** (former **Section 176(3), CrPC 1973**).
- ▶ A police officer cannot order exhumation.
- ▶ The wider inquest framework: a police inquest is held under **Section 174 CrPC 1973** (now **Section 194 BNSS 2023**).
- ▶ The Magistrate's inquiry into cause of death, under which exhumation falls, is held under **Section 176 CrPC 1973** (now **Section 196 BNSS 2023**).

Procedure

- ▶ **Preliminary step:** gather the deceased's particulars, burial clothes, inquest papers and prior records.
- ▶ **Persons present:** the Magistrate supervises, with a medical officer and a police officer present; relatives are informed where practicable and allowed to attend, under **Section 196(5), BNSS 2023** (former **Section 176(4), CrPC 1973**).
- ▶ **Identify the grave positively** by its plot location, headstone and marker, and record its distance from a permanent landmark such as a tree or fence.
- ▶ **Timing:** best done early in the morning in natural light, so exhumation, autopsy and re-burial finish the same day; screen off the area if a crowd gathers.
- ▶ **Removing earth:** dig in layers of 10–15 cm, noting soil condition, water content and vegetation; open the pit up to 30 cm on all sides.
- ▶ Measure the depth from the surface to the skull and to the feet — this shows the body's inclination.
- ▶ **Before recovery:** photograph the body in situ, brush the surface clean, photograph again, and sketch the grave and body with measurements.
- ▶ **Recovering the body:** lift the coffin, noting whether it is worm-eaten, sodden or water-filled, onto a plank or a strong PVC/canvas sheet; preserve any coffin fluid for toxicology.

- ▶ If there is no coffin and decomposition is early, gently lift the body onto the plank/sheet.
- ▶ If decomposition is advanced or the body is skeletonised, dig beside and beneath it, insert a board to lift it intact, and sift the surrounding soil through a fine mesh for small bones (carpals, tarsals, phalanges, teeth, growth ends of long bones) and objects such as bullets or prostheses.
- ▶ **Identification** is done by relatives and friends, from body features, clothing, personal effects or the coffin.
- ▶ **If poisoning is suspected:** collect personal effects, clothing, hair, nails and bones, plus soil (about ½–1 kg) from above, below and each side of the body.
- ▶ Also take a control soil sample well away from the grave, plus portions of the burial clothes and coffin, to exclude external contamination.

Autopsy on the exhumed body

- ▶ **Never sprinkle disinfectants or pesticides** on the body — they can interfere with later detection of poison.
- ▶ If the body was buried recently, the autopsy proceeds as usual, but artefacts caused by burial and exhumation must be interpreted carefully.
- ▶ In a much-putrefied body, focus on establishing identity and preserve all viscera for chemical analysis; if the body is skeletonised, examine the bones.
- ▶ **Before a second (repeat) autopsy:** obtain the first autopsy report, scene and autopsy photographs, inquest papers, hospital and police records, and X-rays; recall the first pathologist and videograph the second autopsy.
- ▶ Interpretation is difficult because of ongoing decomposition, burial/exhumation artefacts, and changes made during the first dissection — contusions, for instance, may become more visible once blood drains from tissue, but decomposition can blur their pattern.
- ▶ Document every finding in detail, whether it confirms or contradicts the earlier autopsy.
- ▶ **Watch for post-mortem imbibition of arsenic** — the passive, after-death soaking of a substance into nearby tissue.
- ▶ Arsenic and other heavy metals can diffuse from the stomach into neighbouring organs, or be absorbed from the surrounding soil.
- ▶ Keratin (hair, nails) can also pick up arsenic from outside, giving a falsely high reading — which is why control soil and clothing/coffin samples are mandatory.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Labelled cross-section of the exhumation site:** grave outline, headstone/marker, coffin in situ, earth opened 30 cm on all sides, soil-sample jars (above, below, each side, plus control), depth measured surface-to-skull and surface-to-feet, and a reference landmark with its measured distance.
- ▶ **Flowchart of the process:** Magistrate's order (Section 196(4) BNSS) → assemble Magistrate, medical officer, police and relatives (Section 196(5)) → identify the grave → remove earth in 10–15 cm layers → photograph and sketch in situ → recover the body → identify by relatives → collect viscera/soil/clothing/coffin if poisoning is suspected → autopsy or second autopsy → re-burial.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Exhumation is a **Magistrate-ordered procedure** under **Section 196(4) BNSS 2023** (former **Section 176(3) CrPC 1973**); the doctor acts only on that order, and police cannot authorise it.
- ▶ Relatives are informed under **Section 196(5) BNSS 2023** (former **Section 176(4) CrPC 1973**).
- ▶ It is the principal way to **detect a homicide disguised as natural, accidental or suicidal death**, and it confirms suspected poisoning.
- ▶ It also resolves identity, inheritance, insurance and negligence disputes; even a negative finding settles a civil claim and lays public rumours to rest.
- ▶ **Chain of custody and contamination control are paramount:** control soil samples, preserved clothing/coffin, no disinfectants, and detailed documentation guard against post-mortem heavy-metal imbibition, notably arsenic.
- ▶ It connects to the wider inquest framework — police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973** (now **Section 194 BNSS 2023**), magisterial inquiry under **Section 176 CrPC 1973** (now **Section 196 BNSS 2023**).
- ▶ A second autopsy always requires correlation with all prior records.



Indications and methods of Embalming

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Embalming** (also called **thanatopraxia**) is treating a dead body with antiseptics, preservatives and other chemicals to arrest putrefaction.
- ▶ The word comes from "balm" — the medicated balsams once used to preserve the dead.
- ▶ Three goals: **sanitization, presentation and preservation (restoration)**.
- ▶ Ancient Egyptians embalmed bodies about 5000 years ago to make mummies.
- ▶ The *father of modern embalming* is *Frederick Ruysch* (1638–1731), who first used arterial injection for preservation.

- ▶ Embalming produces a permanent **chemical stiffening** resembling rigor mortis; true rigor mortis does not develop afterwards.

Indications

- ▶ **Transport of the body to a distant place** by road, rail or air — the commonest indication.
- ▶ A **police No-Objection Certificate (NOC)** is required before any dead body is transported.
- ▶ **Delayed funeral or public viewing** (e.g. relatives arriving from abroad) — cosmetic goals outweigh sanitary ones here (**funeral embalming**).
- ▶ **Preservation of cadavers for dissection and teaching (anatomical embalming)** — sanitary goals dominate, cosmetic steps are minimal.
- ▶ **Sanitization / infection control**, to make a body safe for handling.
- ▶ **Long-term preservation** of bodies of religious, historical or sentimental value.

Contraindications

- ▶ **Medico-legal cases before autopsy is complete** — embalming alters the body and destroys evidence; autopsy and sampling must come first.
- ▶ **Suspected cyanide poisoning** — formaldehyde rapidly destroys cyanide, wiping out the evidence.
- ▶ **Certain infectious deaths**, e.g. hospital COVID-19 deaths (non-medicolegal) — embalming should be avoided.

Effects on the body and timing

- ▶ Proteins coagulate, tissues fix, organs bleach and harden, and blood turns into a brownish mass.
- ▶ These changes make interpreting injury or disease difficult after embalming.
- ▶ Best done within about **6 hours of death** — early embalming inhibits decomposition for months.
- ▶ If started after putrefaction has begun, the body shows a mix of decomposition and mummification and breaks down sooner.
- ▶ **Fluid quantity**: about **15% of body weight**, containing roughly **2% formaldehyde** — a 70 kg body needs about **10–10.5 L**.
- ▶ About 10% of injected fluid is lost to drainage/purging, so total fluid needed is nearer **12 L**.

Classification of methods

Method	Route	Notes
Arterial (capillary)	Fluid forced through an artery, diffuses via capillaries into tissue	Routine, most important method
Cavity	Aspiration of cavity contents + injection of cavity fluid via a trocar	Supplements arterial method; sole method if body is badly mutilated
Hypodermic	Fluid injected with needle and syringe	For areas an arterial injection missed

Method	Route	Notes
Surface	Fluid applied on the skin	For accident damage, decomposition, skin-donation sites

- ▶ **Anatomical embalming** (for dissection): sanitary need dominates over cosmetic.
 - No venous drainage; orifices left unplugged.
 - Cavity embalming skipped, except to preserve the brain.
- ▶ **Funeral embalming** (for delayed viewing): cosmetic need dominates over sanitary.
 - Venous drainage is essential — at least 3/5 of total blood drained.
 - Cavity embalming done as a routine.

Embalming fluid

- ▶ Standard arterial fluid is made up to about 10 L.
- ▶ **Formalin and methanol** are the main preservatives.
- ▶ **Phenol** is the germicide.
- ▶ **Borax and sodium chloride** act as buffers.
- ▶ **Sodium citrate** is the anticoagulant.
- ▶ **Glycerin** is the wetting agent; **eosin** gives the cosmetic pink-red colour.
- ▶ **Cavity fluid is more concentrated** — roughly 60% formalin and 25% methanol, plus phenol and other disinfectants.

Procedure — arterial embalming

- ▶ **Preparation:** rigor mortis is broken by bending and massaging; body washed and placed supine.
- ▶ Nostrils, cheeks and eyelids are packed with cotton soaked in solution, and the mouth is closed.
- ▶ Anus and vagina are plugged with cotton soaked in cavity fluid.
- ▶ Head is elevated 8–10 cm and feet raised to aid drainage.
- ▶ **Vessel choice:** arteries nearer the heart give the best result — common carotid, axillary or femoral, with the paired vein used for drainage.
- ▶ **Six-point injection** (both carotids, axillaries and femorals) is used in traumatic deaths, autopsied bodies and mutilated remains, where some vessels are damaged.
- ▶ Injection uses **high pressure, low flow** — about 1 L in 5 minutes; each artery is ligated after use.
- ▶ **Best injection regimen: discontinuous injection and drainage** — small doses at ~2-hourly intervals with the drain opened around each dose.
- ▶ **Least satisfactory regimen: continuous injection with the drain kept open** throughout — poor saturation.
- ▶ **Cavity embalming** is done after ½–1 hour, once the viscera have hardened.
- ▶ A **30 cm trocar** enters through a small incision **5–6 cm above the umbilicus** in the midline.
- ▶ Aspiration order: stomach, right side of the heart, both pleural sacs, small intestine/caecum/colon, then bladder/rectum.
- ▶ About **1 L of cavity fluid** is then injected into the abdomen and **1 L** into the thorax.

- ▶ *Open-cavity* technique (via a median incision) also allows the cranial cavity to be embalmed through the cribriform plate.
- ▶ **After embalming:** stagnant blood in trunk vessels is aspirated, and the body is wrapped and packed with sawdust before transport.

Apparatus

- ▶ **Gravity injector** — simplest and safest but slowest; fluid raised on a pulley.
- ▶ **Motorized injector** — faster, higher pressure; can deliver ~10 L in 10–12 minutes.
- ▶ **Bulb syringe** — a manual pump with valves.

Disadvantages / medico-legal limitations

- ▶ Injury and disease become hard to interpret once tissue is fixed and bleached.
- ▶ Embalming can create artefacts: false tracks, trocar wounds mimicking stab wounds, and intensified bruising.
- ▶ **Cyanide and alcohol are destroyed completely;** other poisons and alkaloids become very difficult to detect.
- ▶ **Blood grouping becomes impossible; DNA extraction becomes difficult.**
- ▶ **Thrombi and emboli are dislodged and washed away.**
- ▶ Any chemical present in the embalming fluid itself (e.g. alcohol), if later found in the body, has **no legal value.**

Special situations

- ▶ **Jaundiced bodies:** formalin reacts with bilirubin, causing green discolouration — use glutaraldehyde-based fluid instead.
- ▶ **Radiation-exposed bodies:** washed for hours to reduce radioactivity; hypodermic embalming is preferred.
- ▶ **Cyanide-suspected or certain infectious deaths:** embalming is avoided (see Contraindications).

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Arterial embalming set-up:** body supine, head raised 8–10 cm, feet elevated.
 - Carotid artery cannulated for injection; jugular vein cannulated for drainage.
 - Gravity bottle on a pulley, orifices plugged.
- ▶ **Cavity embalming:** trocar entering 5–6 cm above the umbilicus in the midline.
 - Arrows showing aspiration order — stomach, right heart, pleural sacs, intestine, bladder/rectum.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Sequence rule:** in any medico-legal death, autopsy and viscera/sample collection must precede embalming.
- ▶ If an embalmed body must still be examined, samples are taken from **vitreous humour or skeletal muscle**, which are less affected by the fluid.

- ▶ **Informed consent** from relatives must be taken in writing before embalming, to prevent allegations of unauthorized interference.
- ▶ An **embalming report form** is completed after the procedure.
- ▶ A **police NOC** is required before transporting a dead body — the main lawful reason for embalming.
- ▶ For inter-jurisdictional transport, the medical officer certifies the body is non-hazardous; embalming supports this public-health assurance.



Pathophysiology of death

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2024 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Thanatology** is the science of death — the changes that occur with and after it.
- ▶ **Death** is the irreversible and permanent stoppage of the vital functions of the body.
- ▶ Death is **not a single instant** — it is a process: cells and tissues die in sequence over minutes to hours ("we die in bits and pieces").
- ▶ A lethal cause shuts down the three interdependent vital systems — nervous, circulatory, respiratory — after which individual cells die from lack of oxygen.
- ▶ This underlies certifying death, fixing the moment of death for transplantation, and interpreting autopsy findings.

The tripod of life and the two stages of death

- ▶ **Bichat's tripod of life:** life rests on three interdependent legs — **brain** (nervous system), **heart** (circulatory system) and **lungs** (respiratory system).
- ▶ If any one leg fails, the other two follow within minutes and the tripod collapses — death results.
- ▶ **Atria mortis:** each system is a "gateway of death"; whichever fails first decides the **mode of death**.
- ▶ Death occurs in **two pathophysiological stages**:
 - **Somatic (systemic) death** — death of the organism *as a whole*: complete, irreversible stoppage of circulation, respiration and brain function; by current concept this coincides with **brainstem death**. The person is legally dead, though many cells are still alive.
 - **Molecular (cellular) death** — death of individual cells and tissues, occurring piecemeal over roughly **1–3 hours** after somatic death.
- ▶ At somatic death, muscle still responds to a stimulus and death may be certified and organs harvested; at molecular death there is no response, only rigor mortis, algor mortis, staining and putrefaction.

Supravital reactions and tissue viability

- ▶ After somatic death, tissues stay alive for different lengths of time on their own residual oxygen — this window is the **supravital period** ("intermediary life").
- ▶ **Nervous tissue is most vulnerable** — brain vital centres die in about **5 minutes**.

- ▶ **Skeletal muscle survives longest** — up to 1–2 hours, still responding to stimulation.
- ▶ ****Zsako's phenomenon** (tendon reaction): a **mechanical stimulus (back of a knife)** makes the whole muscle (e.g. quadriceps) **contract**; seen for about 2–3 hours**.
- ▶ **Localised idiomuscular contraction**: a reversible bulge appears only **at the spot struck** (e.g. biceps), later than Zsako's phenomenon — strong at 4–5 h, weaker to 24 h. Do not confuse the two.
- ▶ **Pupillary drug response**: mydriatics (e.g. atropine) or miotics (e.g. pilocarpine) instilled soon after death still work.
- ▶ Other reactions persisting for hours: peristalsis, ciliary movement, leucocyte phagocytosis, motile spermatozoa.
- ▶ **Resuscitation period**: the ischaemic interval beyond which recovery is impossible (ATP <60%, rising lactic acid) — **3–4 minutes** for the heart.
- ▶ Organ retrieval windows: cornea within **6 h**, skin within **24 h**, bone within **48 h** of death.

Modes of death — the system that fails first

The **mode of death** is *which one* of the three vital systems fails first — a mode of dying, not the underlying cause.

Mode	System failing first	Typical causes	Autopsy clue
Coma	Brain	Head injury; brain haemorrhage/tumour; drugs (opium, alcohol, cyanide, CO)	Congested lungs, brain, meninges; visceral pooling
Asphyxia	Lungs	Airway obstruction — hanging, strangulation, drowning; respiratory-centre paralysis	Cyanosis; Tardieu petechiae ; congestion; fluid dark blood
Syncope	Heart	Anaemia; asthenia (weak/damaged heart); vagal inhibition; cardiotoxic poisons	Heart contracted, empty chambers; pale organs

- ▶ **Coma** is unarousable unconsciousness with no response to stimuli — a **clinical symptom, not a cause of death**.
- ▶ **Vagal inhibition** (a form of syncope) is medico-legally vital: a light blow on the neck or sudden cold-water immersion excites carotid-sinus baroreceptors.
- ▶ The signal reaches the medulla via Hering's nerve and the glossopharyngeal nerve and stimulates the vagus — reflex bradycardia, vasodilatation and falling blood pressure, with cardiac arrest within seconds.
- ▶ "Vagal inhibition" is a misnomer: the **vagus is stimulated**; it is the **heart** that is inhibited.
- ▶ **Asphyxia** progresses through a self-worsening cycle: airway compression lowers blood oxygen, dilating capillaries and causing stasis and congestion, which reduces venous return and worsens the oxygen lack.

- ▶ The terminal **stage of exhaustion** (3–5 minutes) brings a paralysed respiratory centre, flaccid muscles, dilated pupils and gasping breathing; respiration stops before the heart.

Cellular pathophysiology — tissue anoxia (Gordon's classification)

- ▶ Whatever the remote cause, death ultimately happens through **tissue anoxia** — oxygen failure to, or in, the cells — leading to lactic acidosis, membrane-pump failure and cell death.
- ▶ Anoxia has **four types**, all ending in cardiac failure and death:
 - **Anoxic (hypoxic) anoxia:** blood not adequately oxygenated in the lungs — low ambient oxygen, or airway obstruction (hanging, drowning).
 - **Anaemic anoxia:** reduced oxygen-carrying capacity — massive haemorrhage, or carbon monoxide poisoning.
 - **Stagnant anoxia:** impaired circulation — heart failure, embolism, shock.
 - **Histotoxic anoxia:** tissue cannot *use* delivered oxygen — cyanide, hydrogen sulphide, anaesthetic overdose.
- ▶ Brain death has **three grades**:
 - **Cortical/cerebral death** with an intact brainstem gives a *persistent vegetative state* — breathing continues, but awareness is lost.
 - **Brainstem death** — cerebrum may be intact but functionally cut off; irreversibly comatose and apnoeic.
 - **Whole brain death** — permanent loss of all brain function.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Bichat's tripod of life:** a triangle/tripod with legs labelled **Brain, Heart and Lungs**; centre labelled "Life"; each leg is an *atrium mortis*. Show collapse of any one leg bringing the whole tripod down.
- ▶ **Timeline of somatic vs molecular death:** a horizontal arrow: **A = Somatic death (brainstem death)** → **supravital period (~1–3 h)** → **B = Molecular death**. Label the "organ-harvesting window" between A and B, and postmortem changes (cooling, rigor mortis) beginning from B onward.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Death may be **certified on somatic death** (brainstem death) — molecular death need not be awaited.
- ▶ The **mode of death**, read from autopsy findings (congested vs pale viscera, contracted vs full heart chambers, asphyxial signs), shows which system failed first.
- ▶ **Cause, mechanism and manner** of death are distinct:
 - **Cause** — the disease/injury that starts the lethal sequence.
 - **Mechanism** — the derangement incompatible with life (e.g. ventricular fibrillation, shock).
 - **Manner** — natural, accidental, suicidal, homicidal or undetermined.
- ▶ The **agonal period** is the interval between the lethal event and death.

- ▶ The Indian Penal Code does not define death clinically: **Section 46 IPC 1860 (now Section 2(6) Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita 2023)** only says "death" means the death of a human being.
- ▶ India's **only statutory clinical criterion** for irreversible death is **brainstem death**, defined under **Section 2(d) THOTA (Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act 1994)**, certified by a **Board of medical experts** under **Section 3(6) THOTA** before organ removal.
- ▶ The supravital period is the retrieval window for **transplantation**; a ventilated **beating-heart donor** (after certified brainstem death) gives better-oxygenated organs.
- ▶ **Suspended animation (apparent death)**: vital functions so depressed (drowning, electrocution, hypothermia, narcosis, vagal phenomena) they seem absent yet are recoverable — not true somatic death.
- ▶ **Negative/obscure autopsy**: vagal inhibition, laryngeal spasm, status epilepticus, channelopathies and early infarction can leave no anatomical findings.
- ▶ Medico-legal **inquest** into the cause and manner of death is conducted under **Section 174/176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194/196 BNSS 2023)**.



Embalming Artefacts

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2020 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ An **artefact** is any postmortem change that mimics a genuine antemortem finding.
- ▶ It can mislead the examiner into a wrong medico-legal conclusion.
- ▶ **Embalming** (*thanatopraxia*) treats a dead body with antiseptics and preservatives.
- ▶ Its three classical goals are **sanitisation, presentation/restoration, and preservation**.
- ▶ **Embalming artefacts** are spurious changes caused by the embalming chemicals, the injection pressure, and the trocar.
- ▶ They can simulate real injury or disease and can destroy trace evidence.
- ▶ Misreading an embalming artefact as a genuine finding risks a **miscarriage of justice**.

Why embalming matters before the autopsy

- ▶ It alters the appearance of tissues and organs, making injury or disease hard to interpret.
- ▶ It produces a **chemical stiffening resembling rigor mortis**, called *embalming rigidity*.
- ▶ If embalming is done before true rigor develops, normal rigor never appears.
- ▶ This chemical rigidity is **permanent**, so time since death cannot be estimated from it.
- ▶ The fluid **coagulates proteins, hardens tissue, bleaches organs, and turns blood brownish**.
- ▶ It **destroys cyanide, alcohol, and many other poisons**.
- ▶ **Blood grouping cannot be done, and DNA extraction becomes difficult**.
- ▶ **Thrombi and emboli are dislodged and washed away** — a fatal pulmonary embolism can become unprovable.
- ▶ **Embalming fluid typically contains:**

- **Formalin/formaldehyde and methanol** — the preservatives.
- **Phenol** — the germicide.
- **Sodium borate** — a buffer.
- **Sodium citrate/oxalate** — an anticoagulant.
- **Glycerin** — a wetting agent.
- **Eosin** — a cosmetic dye.
- Cavity fluid is much stronger — about 60% formalin, with mercuric chloride added.

The embalming artefacts

Group them by cause — the trocar, the chemicals, and the injection pressure.

Artefact	May be mistaken for
Trocar wound (puncture ~5–6 cm above umbilicus)	A stab wound
Embalming button (plastic plug sealing the hole)	A gunshot entry wound
Enlarged or trocar-tracked wound	A false weapon track
Transparent skin	Significant bruising
Pressed-out blood	Antemortem haemorrhage
Accentuated bruises (pigment + pressure)	Worse antemortem violence
Embalming rigidity	Rigor mortis
Pulmonary clots from fluid injection	Antemortem thromboembolism
Loss of thrombi/emboli	A real embolic death becomes unprovable
Greenish discoloration (formalin + bilirubin)	Spurious jaundice-related change

- **Trocar wound:** a long (~30 cm) trocar is passed through a small midline incision to aspirate cavities and inject fluid.
 - The resulting puncture closely resembles a stab wound.
 - The embalming button sealing it can resemble a firearm entry.
 - Always correlate the site and appearance with the embalmer's record.
- **Distorted genuine wounds:** the embalmer may enlarge a stab wound to cannulate an artery.
 - Or may pass the trocar along an existing gunshot track.
 - Both create **false tracks** and change the wound's true dimensions.
 - This is the single most dangerous embalming artefact in a homicide case.
- **Prominent bruises** in embalmed bodies happen for three reasons:
 - Embalming fluid forms a dark pigment complex with blood.
 - Injection pressure drives blood through damaged areas.
 - Increased skin transparency makes bruising more visible.
 - An unaware examiner may overstate the degree of antemortem violence.

Toxicology and trace-evidence artefacts

- ▶ Cyanide and alcohol are completely destroyed by the embalming fluid.
- ▶ Alkaloids and organic poisons become hard to extract because fixation binds them.
- ▶ The fluid itself adds **formaldehyde and methanol** to the tissues.
- ▶ So a methanol level found at autopsy may simply reflect the embalming fluid, not poisoning.
- ▶ **EDTA, heparin, formalin, and methenamine** can each give a **false-positive methanol test**.
- ▶ Fixation abolishes **ABO blood grouping**.
- ▶ Fixation also impairs **DNA extraction**.
- ▶ In an embalmed body, sample the **vitreous humour** and **skeletal muscle (thigh)** instead of blood.
- ▶ These two sites are relatively protected from the embalming fluid.

Differentiating related artefacts

- ▶ **Chemical (embalming) stiffening** is permanent, has no true rigor, and is caused by protein coagulation.
- ▶ **Heat stiffening** (the pugilistic attitude seen in burns) is a separate, non-chemical cause of rigidity.
- ▶ **Cold/freezing stiffening** is another separate, non-chemical cause of rigidity.
- ▶ **Cadaveric spasm** is instantaneous and antemortem in origin — it is not an embalming effect.
- ▶ **Interment/exhumation artefacts** are a different family:
 - Fungal growth at a wound, once removed at exhumation, can leave behind a **pseudo-bruise**.
 - Soil can add **arsenic or heavy metals** to the body by imbibition, misleading toxicology.
 - Careless handling by grave-diggers can cause postmortem abrasions, bruises, or fractures.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Labelled diagram of the embalmed body — show:**
 - Trocar entry point (5–6 cm above umbilicus, midline).
 - Embalming button sealing the trocar hole.
 - Arterial cannulation site (carotid or femoral artery).
 - Venous drainage site (internal jugular vein).
 - Enlarged stab wound used to reach an artery.
 - False trocar track passed through a gunshot wound.
- ▶ **Comparison sketch — trocar/button versus true wounds:**
 - Trocar puncture / embalming button: regular margins.
 - Stab wound: definite margins, depth greater than length.
 - Gunshot entry: inverted margins, with an abrasion collar.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Misreading a trocar wound as a stab wound risks a wrong conclusion.
- ▶ Misreading an embalming button as a gunshot entry risks the same.

- ▶ Misreading pressed-out blood as antemortem haemorrhage, or chemical rigidity as rigor mortis, does too.
- ▶ Always take the **embalmer's history and report** before interpreting any such finding.
- ▶ An unnatural or suspicious death requires a police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ A death in custody, or other special deaths, need a magisterial inquiry under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon's opinion on these artefacts is expert evidence under **Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ Time since death **cannot be estimated from rigor** in an embalmed body.
- ▶ Always sample **vitreous humour and thigh muscle**, not blood, in an embalmed body.
- ▶ Always tell the chemical examiner that the body was embalmed, so false-positive methanol results are not misread.
- ▶ Avoid embalming before autopsy in suspected **cyanide poisoning**, or when alcohol/drug analysis is needed.
- ▶ Ideally, embalming should follow the medico-legal autopsy and sampling, not precede it.
- ▶ Get **informed consent** from relatives and complete an embalming report.
- ▶ This protects both the embalmer and the autopsy surgeon.
- ▶ Under cross-examination, a well-informed lawyer may exploit an unrecognised embalming artefact to discredit the doctor's testimony.

♦ ♦ ♦

Write in detail about theory of causation, autopsy appearances and histopathological findings in a case of Cot death

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2020 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Cot death** (also called **Sudden Infant Death Syndrome, SIDS**, or **crib death**) is the sudden, unexpected death of an apparently healthy infant under one year of age.
- ▶ The death stays unexplained even after a complete case investigation, death-scene examination, history review, and full autopsy.
- ▶ Autopsy is supplemented by serology, toxicology, histopathology, and microbiology.
- ▶ It is a **diagnosis of exclusion** — use the label only when no cause is found, or only a trivial finding is present.

Epidemiological features

- ▶ **Incidence:** about 0.6 per 1000 live births.
- ▶ **Age:** 2 weeks to 2 years; most deaths at 1–7 months, peak at 2–4 months.
- ▶ **Sex:** slight male predominance.

- ▶ **Timing:** death always occurs during sleep, with a modest rise in early morning hours.
- ▶ **Twins/multiples:** roughly threefold higher risk, mainly due to prematurity and low birth weight.
- ▶ **Prematurity and low birth weight** also independently raise risk.
- ▶ **Social factors:** commoner in low-socioeconomic families, in winter, and at higher latitudes.
- ▶ **Maternal factors:** smoking, drug abuse, young maternal age, alcohol use, and poor prenatal care all raise risk.
- ▶ **Sleep environment:** prone sleeping, soft bedding, head covering, and bed-sharing/co-sleeping are recognised associations.
- ▶ The infant is typically well (or has only a minor cold or gastrointestinal upset) at bedtime, and is found dead without warning.

Theories of causation

- ▶ No single theory explains every case.
- ▶ Death results from several factors converging on one common pathway — cardiorespiratory failure — during a vulnerable developmental period.
- ▶ This convergence is formalised as the **triple-risk model**: a vulnerable infant, a critical developmental period, and an exogenous stressor.
- ▶ **Genetic/brainstem theory:**
 - A defect in the brainstem **serotonergic system** impairs respiratory and autonomic control.
 - **Cardiac channelopathies** — faulty ion-channel genes causing long-QT syndrome, short-QT syndrome, Brugada syndrome, and catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia.
 - Faulty **IL-1 receptor antagonist** gene, left-ventricular hypertrabeculation ("spongy" myocardium), and MAO-A gene variants.
- ▶ **Respiratory/airway theory:**
 - Prolonged sleep apnoea leading to hypoxia.
 - **Critical diaphragm failure** — undeveloped respiratory muscles plus a minor infection, prone position, and REM sleep acting together.
 - Upper-airway obstruction from nasal swelling, excess mucus, or a flaccid pharynx.
- ▶ **Prone sleep position:**
 - Carries a roughly threefold increased risk.
 - Mechanisms include airway compression, rebreathing of exhaled carbon dioxide, impaired heat loss with hyperthermia, and impaired cardiorespiratory regulation.
- ▶ **Infective/inflammatory theory:** respiratory infection (bacterial, especially *Staphylococcus aureus*, or viral); a subset show a "cytokine storm" (very high IL-1 β , IL-6, TNF- α).
- ▶ **Cardiac/conduction theory:** sleep-induced arrhythmias and conduction-system anomalies.
- ▶ **Nutritional/metabolic/hormonal theory:**
 - Deficiencies of antibodies, biotin, calcium/magnesium/selenium, or vitamins B/C/D/E.
 - Gastro-oesophageal reflux causing bradycardia; adrenal or parathyroid insufficiency.
- ▶ **Allergic theory:** cow's-milk-protein allergy; house-mite allergy.

- ▶ **Toxic (mattress) theory:** fire-retardant phosphorus, arsenic, or antimony compounds in the mattress are acted on by fungi, generating toxic phosphine, arsine, or stibine gas.
- ▶ **Antenatal/environmental theory:** maternal cocaine use damages the fetal brainstem so the medulla cannot control breathing; cigarette-smoke exposure in utero or after birth also contributes.
- ▶ **Historical theories (still asked):** Kopp's "thymic asthma" (enlarged thymus pressing on the trachea) and Paltauf's *status thymico-lymphaticus* (lymphatic enlargement).
 - Both are discredited: the "large" thymus is simply the normal infant thymus, and apparent shrinkage elsewhere reflects stress-induced involution.

Autopsy appearances

- ▶ The autopsy is, by definition, negative or near-negative.
- ▶ Findings below are non-specific, and not all are present in any single case.
- ▶ **Petechial haemorrhages** on the serosal surfaces of the heart, lungs, and thymus are the **only constant finding**, seen in about 70–75% of cases.
 - They are **agonal**, from terminal inspiratory efforts against a closed glottis.
- ▶ **Lungs:** purplish discoloration, firm, congested, oedematous, with patchy alveolar collapse and increased weight.
- ▶ **Face:** pallor.
 - **No facial or eye petechiae in true SIDS** — their presence should raise suspicion of smothering or strangulation.
- ▶ **Froth:** milky or blood-stained froth at the mouth and nostrils in about half the cases, plus froth in the air passages.
- ▶ **Airways:** a small amount of milky vomit in the trachea and main bronchi.
- ▶ **Hands:** often clenched, sometimes around bedclothes fibres.
- ▶ In about 15% of cases a definite cause is found (pneumonia, congenital heart disease, Down's syndrome, tracheobronchitis).
 - Once a real cause is found, the case is **no longer SIDS**, and the term must not appear in the report.
- ▶ In true SIDS, blood in the heart chambers tends to stay fluid, and the thymus may show accelerated (stress) involution.

Histopathological findings

- ▶ Cot death is as much a **histological** diagnosis as a gross one.
- ▶ Standardised sampling of all major organs, the brainstem, conduction system, and middle ears is mandatory.
- ▶ **Lungs/airways:**
 - Peribronchiolar cellular infiltration and thickened alveolar walls.
 - Intracapillary platelet, neutrophil, lymphocyte, and monocyte aggregates (early inflammation); bronchopneumonia in about a fifth of cases.
 - Capillary thrombosis causing ischaemia during life.

- ▶ **Brainstem:** bilateral **hypoplasia of the arcuate nucleus** — the key correlate of the serotonergic defect.
 - Astroglial proliferation and, in some cases, retarded myelination of the brainstem.
- ▶ **Heart:** resorptive degeneration of the conduction system.
- ▶ **Thymus:** petechial haemorrhages with accelerated involution.
- ▶ **Carotid bodies:** hypoplasia (occasionally hyperplastic).
- ▶ **Ancillary tests:** raised cytokines (IL-1 β , IL-6, TNF- α) in blood and cerebrospinal fluid; samples routinely taken for toxicology, microbiology, metabolic screening, and genetic testing to exclude channelopathies and metabolic disease.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Triple-risk model:** three overlapping circles labelled "Vulnerable infant (brainstem serotonergic defect)", "Critical developmental period (2–4 months)", and "Exogenous stressor (prone position / bed-sharing / overheating / infection)", with the central overlap labelled "SIDS / cot death".
- ▶ **Infant body schematic of autopsy findings:** label facial pallor, blood-stained froth at mouth/nostrils, clenched hands with bedclothes fibres, petechiae on the serosal surface of the heart, petechiae on the lung surface, petechiae on the thymus, and purplish firm congested lungs.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Distinguishing SIDS from infanticide/smothering is the cardinal medico-legal duty** — both can masquerade as SIDS.
- ▶ Suspect foul play with facial or conjunctival petechiae, retinal haemorrhages (shaken baby syndrome), unexplained bruises or fractures, blood at the mouth, or a repeated family pattern.
- ▶ **Meadow's dictum:** "one sudden infant death is a tragedy, two is suspicious and three is murder, until proved otherwise" — modern practice cautions against over-reliance on this, since rare familial channelopathies or metabolic disease can recur.
- ▶ Scene examination is part of the autopsy — record sleeping position, bedding, co-sleeping, ambient temperature, and body temperature as close to death as possible, and photograph the scene.
- ▶ An unnatural or unexplained infant death requires a police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ A **Magistrate's inquest** under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)** applies where death is suspicious, custodial, or of a woman within 7 years of marriage — also the route for **exhumation** if an earlier SIDS certification is later doubted.
- ▶ Support bereaved parents, avoid premature accusation, and certify honestly — civil and criminal cases based purely on a SIDS label have generally failed, since courts accept it as a natural phenomenon.
- ▶ SIDS infants were once feared unsuitable as organ donors, but their organs (including hearts) have been shown to be safely transplantable.

Forensic traumatology

Dating of wounds by histology and histochemistry

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Dating (ageing) of a wound** means estimating how long ago it was inflicted, using the body's predictable healing response.
- ▶ **Gross (naked-eye) signs** — scab colour, bruise colour, crusting — give only a rough estimate.
- ▶ **Histology** (the microscopic cellular inflammatory-reparative response) gives far greater precision, especially in the first hours after injury.
- ▶ **Histochemistry** (enzymes, vasoactive amines, and proteins in the tissue) is even more precise and can date a wound before any cell is seen to move.
- ▶ The purpose is twofold: **corroborate or refute the alleged time of assault**, and decide whether a wound is **antemortem** (inflicted during life, vital reaction present) or **postmortem** (inflicted after death, vital reaction absent).

Principles of dating

- ▶ Wound healing follows a fixed, time-ordered sequence, so the histological picture works like a biological clock.
- ▶ **Primary intention**: clean, re-approximated edges (e.g. a sutured wound); minimal granulation tissue and little scarring.
- ▶ **Secondary intention**: an open wound with a gap; heals by abundant **granulation tissue**, wound contraction, and more scarring.
- ▶ **Third intention (delayed primary)**: a heavily contaminated wound left open for about 3 days, then closed.
- ▶ **Order of precision**: histochemical changes appear first (minutes), then histological changes (hours to days), then gross changes (days to weeks).
- ▶ Healing rate varies with **age** (fast in children, slow in the elderly), **vascularity of the site**, **general health/nutrition**, and **infection** (which intensifies inflammation and granulation).
- ▶ Always report a wound as "**recent**" or "**old**" — never give a falsely precise figure.

Histological timeline of wound ageing

This is the core sequence for an uninfected wound healing by first intention.

Time since injury	Finding
15–30 min	Neutrophils appear at the wound edge
2–3 hours	Macrophages appear

Time since injury	Finding
15 hours	Mitoses appear in fibroblasts
24 hours	Macrophages outnumber neutrophils; epithelium starts growing at the edges
1.5 days	Fibroblast proliferation begins
3 days	New capillaries, hemosiderin, and granulation tissue appear
5 days	Collagen begins to form; re-epithelialisation complete
8 days	Hematoidin appears
> 2 weeks	Collagen and elastin increase; a scar forms and becomes avascular

- ▶ An **incised wound** follows a faster version of the same clock: reactive change within minutes, mitoses by 16 hours, vascularised granulation tissue by 72 hours, new collagen by 4–5 days, and scar formation by about 1 week if the wound is small.
- ▶ Memorise the order: **neutrophils** → **macrophages** → **fibroblasts** → **new capillaries/granulation tissue** → **collagen** → **scar**.

Histology of specific injury types

- ▶ **Abrasions** heal from the periphery by new epithelium.
 - Perivascular cellular infiltration appears at **4–6 hours**.
 - By **12 hours**, three zones form: surface fibrin/red cells, then polymorphs, then abnormally-staining collagen.
 - Reticulin fibres appear by **8 days**, collagen by **9–12 days**.
 - Scab colour ages from bright red (fresh) to reddish-brown (2–3 days) to dark brown/black (4–7 days), then dries and falls off after 7 days.
- ▶ **Contusions (bruises)**: extravasated red cells haemolyse, and haemoglobin breaks down into hemosiderin, hematoidin, and bilirubin.
 - Ground-substance **mucopolysaccharide** decreases and is absent by **1 hour**, reappearing only after several days (shown with Alcian blue or the dialysed-iron stain).
 - **Iron pigment (hemosiderin)** in the bruise or nearby lymph nodes means about **12 hours** have elapsed.
 - Bruise colour sequence: **red** (fresh) → **blue** (few hours to 3 days) → **bluish-black/brown** (hemosiderin, 4–5 days) → **green** (biliverdin, 5–6 days) → **yellow** (bilirubin, 7–12 days) → normal by about 2 weeks.
 - Colour change starts at the **periphery** and moves inward.
 - **Exceptions**: a subconjunctival haemorrhage skips straight from red to yellow, because oxygen diffuses through the conjunctiva; a carbon-monoxide bruise stays bright cherry-red.
- ▶ **Lacerations**: ageing is difficult unless clear healing signs — fibroblasts, granulation tissue, organising infiltrate — are present.

- ▶ **Cerebral contusions:** capillary proliferation starts at 5 days and peaks at 10–12 days; a pale or golden-yellow, depressed scar forms by about 2 months.

Histochemistry and immunohistochemistry

- ▶ **Enzyme histochemistry** detects enzymes before any histological change is visible, making it the best tool for dating **very fresh wounds**.
- ▶ Tissue must be **frozen, never formalin-fixed**, because formalin destroys enzyme activity.
- ▶ Landmarks: **serotonin at 10 minutes** (the earliest marker of all), **histamine at 30 minutes**, ATPase/esterase at 1 hour, aminopeptidase at 2 hours, acid phosphatase at 4 hours, alkaline phosphatase at 8 hours.
- ▶ At least **2 g of skin free of subcutaneous fat** is needed, along with an obligatory **control sample of uninjured skin** — damaged skin should show histamine about 50% higher and serotonin about 100% higher.
- ▶ **Postmortem wounds show no enzyme reaction**; antemortem wounds keep reacting for a few days after death if the body is refrigerated to prevent autolysis.
- ▶ **Immunohistochemistry (IHC)** uses antibodies to detect specific proteins, extending precision into the first minutes: **P-selectin (5 min) → fibronectin (10–20 min) → E-selectin (1 hour) → ICAM-1 (1.5 hours) → tenascin (2 days) → collagen III/V/VI (3 days) → collagen I (5 days)**.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Timeline ladder of wound ageing** — a horizontal time axis (minutes → hours → days → weeks) with labelled bands for vasoconstriction, neutrophils, macrophages, fibroblast mitoses, granulation tissue, collagen, and scar.
- ▶ **Cross-section of a fresh wound** showing the epidermis, dermis, and the two histochemical zones — a central zone (0.2–0.5 mm, high enzyme activity) and a peripheral zone (0.1–0.3 mm).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Matching a wound's histological or colour age to the alleged time of assault can expose a **false complaint or fabrication**.
- ▶ A vital inflammatory response, raised wound-margin histamine/serotonin, and a positive enzyme reaction all point to a wound inflicted **during life**; their absence suggests it was inflicted after death.
- ▶ Wounds inflicted **just before or just after death cannot be distinguished even microscopically**.
- ▶ **Hurt** is legally defined as causing bodily pain, disease, or infirmity (**Section 114 BNS 2023**, formerly **Section 319 IPC 1860**), and a wound is graded as **simple hurt** or **grievous hurt** (**Section 116 BNS 2023**, formerly **Section 320 IPC 1860**).
- ▶ The corresponding offences are **voluntarily causing hurt** (**Section 115 BNS 2023**, formerly **Section 321 IPC 1860**) and **voluntarily causing grievous hurt** (**Section 117 BNS 2023**, formerly **Section 322 IPC 1860**); accurate dating supports the prosecution's timeline for these charges.
- ▶ At autopsy, take the **wound margin with a control sample of normal skin**, freeze tissue meant for enzyme histochemistry, and refrigerate the body to preserve enzyme activity.

- ▶ Never overstate precision — report a wound as **recent or old**, given the wide biological variability in healing.



Discuss about intra-cranial hemorrhages

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition and classification

- ▶ **Intracranial haemorrhage (ICH)** is bleeding inside the skull, either around the brain (in the meninges) or within the brain substance.
- ▶ A small, thin-layered collection is called a **haemorrhage**; a large, space-occupying one is a **haematoma**.
- ▶ ICH is the single most important cause of death in head injury.
- ▶ Separating **traumatic** from **spontaneous** ("apoplectic") bleeds decides homicide, accident, or natural death.
- ▶ **Paradox of force**: a moderate blow can cause severe ICH, while a heavier blow may cause none — force and bleeding are not linearly related.
- ▶ ICH can occur **without any skull fracture or scalp wound** — 20% of fatal head injuries show no fracture at all.
- ▶ **Anatomical types**:
 - **Extradural (epidural)**: skull-dura space, arterial bleed with a classic lucid interval.
 - **Subdural**: dura-arachnoid space, venous bleed typical at extremes of age.
 - **Subarachnoid**: arachnoid-pia space, the commonest traumatic ICH.
 - **Intracerebral**: within brain substance, hypertensive if spontaneous, coup-contrecoup if traumatic.
 - **Intraventricular**: within the ventricles, from choroid plexus/septal veins or extension of a bleed.

Extradural (epidural) haemorrhage — EDH

- ▶ Blood collects between the inner skull table and the dura, stripping it off the bone.
- ▶ **Almost always traumatic** — the skull moves against the dura at impact and tears a vessel.
- ▶ **Vessel torn depends on the site of the blow**:
 - **Lateral convexity/pterion** (thin junction of four skull bones) tears the **middle meningeal artery** — the classic, commonest source.
 - **Forehead** tears the anterior ethmoidal artery.
 - **Occiput/behind the ear** tears the transverse-sigmoid sinus.
 - **Vertex** tears the superior sagittal sinus.
 - **Venous EDH** (from diploic veins, with an occipital fracture) stays small.
- ▶ Least common meningeal bleed (1–3%); rare under 2 years, commonest at **20–40 years**.

- ▶ **Clot:** oval/circular, rubbery, reddish-purple, 10–20 cm across, 30–300 g, limited at the suture lines. About 100 mL is the usual fatal minimum.
- ▶ **Lucid interval** (medico-legally crucial): brief unconsciousness (absent in ~25%), a normal-feeling gap of hours to about a week, then confusion, drowsiness and coma — but a true lucid interval is seen in only 30–40% of cases.
- ▶ **Clinical progression:** weakness opposite the injury, then a fixed dilated pupil on the side of the clot, then both pupils fixed, then decerebrate rigidity, then death from brainstem compression.

Subdural haemorrhage — SDH

- ▶ Blood collects in the subdural space, crossed by the **bridging veins** draining into the venous sinuses.
- ▶ **Commoner than EDH.**
- ▶ **Sources of bleeding:**
 - **Parasagittal bridging veins** near the superior sagittal sinus — the commonest cause.
 - Cortical veins sheared by brain movement.
 - Rupture of an aneurysm or vascular malformation.
 - Tumours, blood disorders, or **anticoagulants** (warfarin, heparin) — sometimes with no trauma at all.
- ▶ **Mechanism:** shearing of bridging veins as the brain accelerates and decelerates — can occur with **no fracture and no visible brain injury**.
- ▶ Typical in **alcoholics, the elderly** (brain atrophy stretches the veins), **and infants**.
- ▶ **Acute:** symptoms rapid, up to ~150 mL, causes brain shift and transtentorial herniation.
- ▶ **Subacute:** symptoms over days to 2–3 weeks; dark fluid clot, thin membrane.
- ▶ **Chronic:** follows trivial trauma, presents 3–6 weeks later; common in the elderly and alcoholics.
- ▶ **Dating a subdural clot:**
 - Fibrin deposits on the dura — 24 hours.
 - Red cells lose their shape — 4 days.
 - Haemosiderin-laden macrophages appear — 5–10 days.
 - A membrane forms — 2–4 weeks.
 - Complete liquefaction, gold-coloured membrane — 4–5 weeks to 3 months.

Subarachnoid haemorrhage — SAH

- ▶ Bleeding fills the true subarachnoid space between arachnoid and pia, which normally holds CSF and the cerebral vessels.
- ▶ **The commonest form of traumatic ICH** — some degree is present in almost every significant head injury.
- ▶ **Traumatic SAH** comes from a torn internal carotid, vertebral, or basal artery; more than 30 mL is immediately fatal.
- ▶ **Spontaneous SAH** is usually from a ruptured **berry (saccular) aneurysm** (over half of all cases).

- ▶ Berry aneurysms sit (~90%) at circle-of-Willis bifurcations, commonest on the anterior cerebral/communicating artery, and present with **thunderclap headache**, neck stiffness, and vomiting.
- ▶ Spontaneous hypertensive bleeds instead arise from tiny **Charcot–Bouchard microaneurysms** on small penetrating brain arteries.
- ▶ **Autopsy test:** subdural blood **washes away** under running water; subarachnoid blood **stains the brain red and does not wash off**.
- ▶ **Artefactual SAH** can be produced during brain removal or by decomposition — do not mistake it for antemortem trauma.

Intracerebral and intraventricular haemorrhage

- ▶ **Intracerebral:** bleeding within the brain substance itself.
- ▶ **Traumatic** bleeds lie near the surface, mostly fronto-temporal, from a **coup-contrecoup** mechanism (injury both at the impact site and at the opposite pole as the brain rebounds).
- ▶ **Spontaneous (hypertensive)** bleeds follow rupture of the **lenticulostriate branch of the middle cerebral artery** into the basal ganglia.
- ▶ Commonest hypertensive sites: **putamen 55%**, lobar white matter 15%, thalamus 10%, pons 10%, cerebellum 10%.
- ▶ **Intraventricular:** from the choroid plexus or septal veins after a fall, or by extension of an intracerebral bleed; death may be rapid or delayed.

Traumatic haemorrhage versus apoplexy (spontaneous)

This table is the medico-legal heart of the topic.

Trait	Post-traumatic	Apoplexy (spontaneous)
Cause	Head injury	Hypertension, atherosclerosis, aneurysm
Age	Younger individuals	Adults past middle age
Onset	Interval (minutes–hours) after violence	Sudden
Region	White matter (temporo-occipital/frontal)	Ganglionic region
Contrecoup injury	May be present	Absent
Concussion	May be seen	Absent

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Coronal section of the head:** skull, dura, arachnoid, pia, extradural haematoma (biconvex, limited by sutures), subdural haematoma (crescentic, crossing sutures), subarachnoid haemorrhage in the sulci, intracerebral haematoma, bridging vein, and middle meningeal artery.
- ▶ **Circle of Willis:** internal carotid, anterior and middle cerebral, anterior and posterior communicating, basilar and vertebral arteries — mark the common berry-aneurysm bifurcation sites.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Trauma versus natural disease is the central question** — weighed using the apoplexy table, age, bleed site/extent, and evidence of vascular disease; a natural bleed can make a person collapse and mimic trauma.
- ▶ **The lucid interval is forensically vital** — an assaulted person may seem normal for hours before dying, still tracing the fatal bleed to the original assault.
- ▶ **Heat haematoma** (a post-mortem burn artefact from expanded diploic veins) is diffuse, honeycombed, friable, chocolate/pink, with no brain injury beneath — unlike a **traumatic EDH**, localized at the coup site, rubbery, reddish-purple, over an antemortem fracture with brain injury beneath.
- ▶ Raised intracranial pressure causes transtentorial/tonsillar **herniation** ("coning"), compressing the brainstem and causing death by respiratory failure, with secondary **Duret's haemorrhages** and a **Kernohan's notch** opposite the mass lesion.
- ▶ Suspected traumatic ICH needs police inquest under **Section 194 BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 174 CrPC 1973)**, with magistrate inquest, where ordered, under **Section 196 BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 176 CrPC 1973)**.
- ▶ An assault death is examined as **culpable homicide/murder** under **Section 100 BNS 2023 (formerly Section 299 IPC 1860)** and **Section 101 BNS 2023 (formerly Section 300 IPC 1860)**.
- ▶ At autopsy, dissect the cerebral vasculature and circle of Willis under running water before fixation.

♦ ♦ ♦

Discuss Hypothermia and medicolegal importance*Asked in: Paper I Oct 2017 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine***Definition**

- ▶ **Hypothermia** is a fall of core (rectal) body temperature below **35.0 °C (95.0 °F)**.
- ▶ Below this level the body cannot sustain normal metabolism and organ function.
- ▶ It is one of the two thermal deaths, the other being death from heat.
- ▶ No single finding is diagnostic; it is confirmed from a constellation of external, internal, and biochemical findings read with the scene.

- ▶ Two unusual terminal behaviours — **paradoxical undressing** and the **hide-and-die syndrome** — can make a hypothermic death look like a sexual assault or a robbery-homicide.

Mechanism

- ▶ Hypothermia sets in once heat loss (by radiation, conduction, convection, and evaporation) exceeds heat production.
- ▶ The body first defends itself with **peripheral vasoconstriction** (conserving core heat) and **shivering** (generating heat).
- ▶ Shivering stops once the core temperature falls below 32 °C.
- ▶ Below 30 °C the hypothalamus loses its ability to regulate temperature.
- ▶ The body then becomes **poikilothermic** — it simply cools to match its surroundings.
- ▶ At very low temperatures the oxygen–haemoglobin dissociation curve shifts to the left, so oxyhaemoglobin cannot release oxygen to the tissues — this contributes to death.

Stages of hypothermia

Stage	Core temperature	Key features
Mild	35–32 °C	Feels cold, shivering (stops below 32 °C), tachycardia then bradycardia
Moderate	32–26 °C	Hypothalamic control lost below 30 °C (poikilothermic); drowsy, stiff muscles, drunk-like gait; falling vitals; Osborn (J) wave on ECG in ~80%
Severe	< 26 °C	Stupor progressing to coma; death if this level is maintained for about 24 hours

- ▶ **Osborn (J) wave:** convex "camel-hump" deflection at the QRS–ST junction, the classic ECG marker of moderate hypothermia.
- ▶ **Cause of death:** failure of vital centres from anoxia, and cardiac arrest from atrial/ventricular fibrillation.
- ▶ The cold, irritable myocardium fibrillates easily, so rough handling during rescue can itself be fatal.

Types and predisposing factors

- ▶ **By mechanism:**
 - *Primary* hypothermia: extreme cold overwhelms a normal person.
 - *Secondary* hypothermia: milder cold acts on someone with impaired thermoregulation — alcoholism, diabetes, infection, malnutrition, stroke, thyroid disease, or drugs/poisons.
- ▶ **By environment:** dry-cold versus immersion hypothermia; immersion is more dangerous, since water conducts heat away faster.

- **Vulnerable groups:** infants, the elderly, the intoxicated, mountaineers, shipwreck and snow-drift victims, and the socially neglected.

Local effects of cold

- **Without freezing of tissue:**
 - **Chilblains (pernio):** redness and inflammation with acral ulcers on fingers and toes; no swelling.
 - **Trench foot (immersion foot):** from prolonged exposure to damp, cold (~5–8 °C) conditions; the whole foot goes numb, blue or red, and swollen, with blisters and sores.
 - Untreated, it can progress to gangrene needing amputation.
- **With freezing of tissue:**
 - **Frostnip:** earliest, reversible stage — numb, tingling, white/waxy skin, no real tissue damage.
 - ***Frostbite (congelatio):*** true freezing of tissue below 0 °C; ice crystals form inside cells and draw water out, causing swelling and cell death.
 - The skin becomes numb and purple with haemorrhagic blisters, feeling hard "like a block of ice."
 - It progresses to necrosis and dry gangrene; skin turns hard and black in about two weeks.

Postmortem appearances

- Postmortem staining is **pink or bright red** (the leftward-shifted oxygen curve keeps oxyhaemoglobin in the blood), and can appear over non-dependent areas like the knees, elbows, and hips.
- **Frost erythema** (red-purple spots over the shoulders, knees, or elbows) can be mistaken for bruises or hypostasis.
- Generalised oedema of the ears, hands, and face occurs from cold-damaged, leaking capillaries.
- **Cold stiffening (cold rigor):** frozen body fluids/fat give a rigid posture mimicking rigor mortis.
 - The body feels icy, not just cold.
 - Forcible flexion produces a **crackling** sound from ice in the joints.
 - On thawing, the stiffness disappears, and **true rigor mortis then develops**.
 - In infants, frozen subcutaneous fat can mimic a ligature mark — a **pseudo-ligature mark**.
- **Blood** is bright red, with intravascular haemolysis and ice crystals in the vessels and heart.
- **Stomach:** **Wischnewski spots** — brown-black mucosal erosions — the classic gastric finding, from stress and impaired mucosal blood flow.
- **Pancreas:** fat necrosis is the **most constant internal finding**, with aseptic pancreatitis.
- **Lungs:** congested, with haemorrhages, bronchopneumonia, and pulmonary oedema.
- **Postmortem chemistry** is valuable since morphology alone is non-specific.
 - Blood/vitreous glucose and vitreous carbon dioxide are raised, and both vary inversely with body temperature.
 - **Urinary catecholamines, histamine, and serotonin are markedly raised** — a valuable diagnostic pointer.

Two key behavioural phenomena

► Paradoxical (reciprocal) undressing:

- A hypothermic person, usually elderly, removes clothing just before death and is found naked amid scattered clothes in a freezing environment.
- Thermoregulation fails, and warm core blood floods the skin, creating a false, intense feeling of warmth — worsened by terminal confusion and hallucination.
- It commonly raises a false suspicion of **sexual assault**.

► Hide-and-die syndrome (terminal burrowing behaviour):

- The disoriented, dying victim crawls into a corner, cupboard, or under furniture, or burrows into snow or bushes.
- The scene looks disturbed only at low level (furniture overturned, drawers emptied), while table-tops remain undisturbed.
- This pattern is easily mistaken for a **robbery-homicide**.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- **Diagram 1** — ECG strip showing the Osborn (J) wave. Label: *P wave, QRS complex, J point, J (Osborn) wave, ST segment, T wave.*
- **Diagram 2** — Stages of frostbite of a digit. Label: *(A) Normal skin, (B) Frostnip, (C) Superficial frostbite, (D) Deep frostbite, with a line of inflammatory demarcation.*

Medico-legal significance

- **Manner of death** is usually **accidental** — drunkenness, immersion/shipwreck, mountaineering, or being lost in snow.
- Hypothermia can also be used for **infanticide**, by exposing a newborn to cold.
- In adults, homicide is chiefly through **neglect of the elderly or a dependent person**.
 - This attracts criminal-negligence and culpable-homicide law: **IPC 299/304 (now BNS 100/105, 2023)**.
 - Deliberate exposure causing death can amount to murder: **IPC 300/302 (now BNS 101/103, 2023)**.
- **Neonatal cold injury (sclerema neonatorum)**: newborns are uniquely vulnerable, from a high surface-area-to-mass ratio and immature heat regulation.
 - Signs in the first week: rectal temperature below 32 °C, bradycardia, cold skin, and **red face/hands/feet** (the most constant sign).
 - Also pitting oedema, skin hardening, and a bleeding tendency mimicking haemorrhagic pneumonia.
 - It is a **recognised method of killing illegitimate or unwanted infants** — an important infanticide differential.
- **Apparent death (suspended animation)**: profound hypothermia can mimic death, with no detectable pulse or breathing.
 - The medico-legal rule is "**no one is dead until warm and dead.**"

- Resuscitation must continue through rewarming; death should not be certified on a cold body.
- Survival has been recorded from core temperatures as low as ~13–14 °C.
- ▶ An unnatural or suspicious cold death requires a police inquest under **Section 174/176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194/196 BNSS 2023)**, which the doctor must report and assist.
- ▶ **Doctor's duties:**
 - Collect blood, urine, and vitreous for postmortem chemistry.
 - Document local cold injuries and the behavioural findings.
 - Actively exclude sexual assault or robbery suggested by a paradoxical-undressing or hide-and-die scene.
 - Give expert opinion under **Section 45 Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam, BSA 2023)**.



Discuss the Pathophysiology of Head Injuries. Add a note on its medicolegal importance

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ A **head injury** is any trauma to the **scalp, skull or brain**, ranging from trivial to fatal; brain involvement is called **traumatic brain injury (TBI)**.
- ▶ Head injury is a **two-phase process**: an irreversible **primary injury** at impact, followed by an evolving **secondary injury** that is the main treatment target.
- ▶ Every head injury should be hospitalised and observed for 24–36 hours, since silent bleeding may declare itself only later.

Classification of head injury

- ▶ **By time-course**: **primary injury** (immediate) versus **secondary injury** (evolving over minutes to days).
- ▶ **By mechanism**: **closed (blunt)** predominates in civilian practice; **penetrating (missile)** in military practice.
- ▶ **By distribution**: **focal lesions** (contusions) follow a direct blow; **diffuse lesions (DAI)** follow rotational acceleration–deceleration.
- ▶ **By severity — Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS)**:
 - **Mild**: GCS 13–15.
 - **Moderate**: GCS 9–12.
 - **Severe**: GCS ≤8.

Biomechanics — how force injures the brain

- ▶ The brain is incompressible but easily distorted; injury depends on how fast velocity changes, not on raw force.

- ▶ A blow causes **linear acceleration** (harmless compression waves) and/or **rotational (angular) acceleration**, which causes the most serious diffuse injury by making brain layers slide over each other.
- ▶ **Shear strain** (Holbourn, 1943): tissue sliding along its plane of contact; injury occurs when particles are pulled apart and fail to rejoin.
- ▶ The **falx and tentorium** (dural folds partitioning the skull) restrain brain movement, concentrating damage at the cerebral base, corpus callosum and brainstem.
- ▶ Severe injury occurs mainly with **coronal (side-to-side)** motion; **sagittal (front-to-back)** motion causes milder injury.

Primary injuries — scalp, skull and brain

- ▶ **Scalp layers (S-C-A-L-P)**: Skin, Connective tissue, Aponeurosis (galea), Loose areolar tissue, Pericranium.
- ▶ Scalp wounds indicate **blunt force**; lacerations can **bleed fatally** because the tightly bound temporal vessels cannot retract.
- ▶ **Skull vault thickness**: 6–10 mm over the frontal/parietal bones, up to ~15 mm at the occiput; the temporal squama is thinnest.
- ▶ The **outer table** is about twice as thick as the inner table, which tends to fracture first.
- ▶ There is **no fixed relationship between fracture extent and brain damage** — 20% of fatal head injuries show no fracture, and fractures are essentially harmless; the brain damage kills.
- ▶ **Fracture patterns**: fissured (linear), depressed/comminuted, gutter, pond, ring, hinge (base-of-skull).
- ▶ **Cerebral contusion** is bruising of cortex/white matter from ruptured small vessels under shear, with the pia-arachnoid intact; in **laceration** the pia-arachnoid and tissue are actually torn; both are commonest at the crests of gyri of the **frontal and temporal lobes**.
- ▶ **Coup** lesions lie beneath the point of impact — a **moving object strikes a supported, stationary head**, i.e. a blow.
- ▶ **Contrecoup** lesions lie diametrically opposite — a **moving head strikes a fixed surface**, i.e. a fall (unsupported head).
- ▶ Contrecoup arises from shear strain, brain lag, and a vacuum effect on the far side; **virtually never occipital**, rare before age 3.
- ▶ **Concussion** is transient loss of consciousness from temporary paralysis of cerebral function — immediate onset, always followed by amnesia, spontaneous recovery.
- ▶ **Diffuse axonal injury (DAI)**: diffuse shearing of axons causing immediate coma lasting more than 6 hours.
 - **Mild**: coma 6–24 hours.
 - **Moderate**: coma >24 hours, no brainstem signs.
 - **Severe**: coma >24 hours, with brainstem signs.
- ▶ About 90% of DAI follows road traffic accidents; autopsy may look normal or show scattered petechiae at the grey–white junction.

- Microscopy is normal for ~12 hours; β -amyloid precursor protein (β APP) appears from about 1 hour, and axonal retraction balls appear later.

Intracranial haemorrhage

Type	Usual source	Key features
Extradural	Middle meningeal artery torn with a squamous temporal fracture	Arterial, rapid; classic lucid interval (in only ~30–40%); rare under age 2; clot ≥ 100 mL usually fatal
Subdural	Bridging veins torn as the brain slides	Venous, slower; commoner than extradural; frequent in alcoholics, elderly and infants; may occur without a fracture
Subarachnoid	Surface vessels, basal/vertebral artery tears, ruptured berry aneurysm	The most common traumatic intracranial bleed
Intracerebral	Deep vessel tears, coup–contrecoup	Usually fronto-temporal; may be delayed in onset

Secondary injury and cause of death

- **Cerebral oedema** raises intracranial pressure (ICP); massive swelling can start within ~20 minutes, flattening gyri and obliterating CSF spaces.
- **Raised ICP causes herniation:**
 - The uncus/medial temporal lobe is forced through the tentorial hiatus (uncal herniation), grooving a peduncle — **Kernohan's notch**.
 - The **cerebellar tonsils** cone into the foramen magnum, compressing the brainstem.
 - Stretched perforating vessels cause fatal secondary (**Duret**) **brainstem haemorrhages**.
- **Causes of death in head injury:**
 - Damage to vital centres in the posterior hypothalamus, midbrain and medulla — respiratory failure then cardiac arrest.
 - Raised ICP from haematoma, contusion, infarction or swelling.
 - Diffuse axonal injury.
 - Ischaemic brain damage.
 - Fat embolism.
 - Infection — meningitis or abscess — in survivors.

Medico-legal significance

- **Blow versus fall:** coup contusions suggest a blow to a supported head; contrecoup contusions suggest a fall on a moving head.
- A **skull fracture is grievous hurt** under Section 320 IPC 1860 (now Section 116 BNS 2023), as are facial-bone and tooth fractures from a blow.

- ▶ A **lucid interval** in extradural haemorrhage explains the "talk-and-die" pattern — a victim who talked after injury later collapses and dies, relevant to negligence and homicide allegations.
- ▶ Death from head injury is unnatural and requires a **police inquest** under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**; the autopsy findings are **expert evidence** under **Section 45 Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ If death is alleged homicidal, **culpable homicide/murder** is charged under **Sections 299/300 IPC (now Sections 100/101 BNS 2023)**, punishable under **Sections 302/304 IPC (now Sections 103/105 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ **Preserve scalp hair** near the wound for weapon matching, and document lacerations and blood spatter to infer the number and direction of blows.
- ▶ **Differentiate trauma from natural disease**: post-traumatic haemorrhage favours a younger patient, moving head, delayed symptoms; **apoplexy** (spontaneous, non-traumatic haemorrhage) favours an older, hypertensive patient — check the vasculature before blaming trauma.
- ▶ Beware **head injury simulating drunkenness** — a confused, ataxic head-injured person may be wrongly jailed as "drunk" and die; hospitalise, do not detain.
- ▶ **Survivor issues affecting testimony**:
 - Retrograde amnesia — memory loss before the injury.
 - Anterograde amnesia — trouble forming new memories post-injury.
 - Post-traumatic automatism — acting without awareness or recollection.
- ▶ Avoid leading questions and defer interrogation until confusion clears, to prevent implanting false memory.
- ▶ **Special homicidal patterns**: subdural haemorrhage from shaking, no external marks (shaken baby syndrome/child abuse), and concealed fatal concussion with no demonstrable injury.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — Coup and contrecoup mechanism**: skull/brain outline, arrow for force direction; label the point of impact (coup contusion), the opposite-pole contrecoup contusion, the shear-strain zone, the cavitation/vacuum effect, the falx cerebri and tentorium cerebelli.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — Coronal section of the meninges**: label scalp, skull, dura, arachnoid and pia mater; show extradural (skull–dura), subdural (dura–arachnoid) and subarachnoid (arachnoid–pia) haemorrhage, plus the middle meningeal artery and bridging veins.



Hypothermia. Discuss the systematic and localized effects of Hypothermia

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Hypothermia** = core (rectal) temperature below 35°C (95°F), the minimum needed for normal metabolism.

- ▶ A **thermal death** — the cold counterpart of heat deaths such as heat stroke.
- ▶ Progressive cooling depresses every organ system, ending in death.
- ▶ **Localised cold injury** (frostbite, frostnip, trench foot, chilblains) affects exposed parts, with or without systemic hypothermia.

Mechanism and predisposing factors

- ▶ Heat loss exceeds heat production through radiation, conduction, convection and evaporation.
- ▶ **Wet/immersion cold is far more dangerous than dry cold**, because water conducts heat away much faster.
- ▶ Below about 30°C the **hypothalamus loses control of body temperature**, and the body cools passively with its surroundings (**poikilothermia**).
- ▶ **Primary hypothermia**: extreme cold with normal regulation — mountaineers, persons lost in snow, immersion in icy water, shipwreck.
- ▶ **Secondary hypothermia**: regulation itself is disturbed, so even mild cold becomes dangerous — factors include extremes of age, alcoholism, diabetes, hypothyroidism, malnutrition/exhaustion, infection, stroke, sedative/opioid/phenothiazine drugs.

Classification

- ▶ **By regulation**: primary (extreme cold, normal regulation) vs secondary (mild cold, disturbed regulation).
- ▶ **By onset**:
 - **Acute/immersion**: rapid loss, e.g. a fall into cold water.
 - **Chronic**: slow loss, e.g. an elderly person in a poorly heated house.
 - **Exhaustion**: intermediate — body can no longer generate heat.
- ▶ **By environment**: dry-cold vs immersion (faster, more dangerous).
- ▶ **By intent**: natural/accidental vs **therapeutic hypothermia** — deliberately induced to reduce ischaemic injury (e.g. cardiac arrest, neonatal encephalopathy, open-heart surgery).

Systemic effects — three stages

- ▶ **Stage I — Mild (35°C to 32°C)**: victim feels cold; **shivering** generates heat; shivering stops at or below 32°C.
- ▶ **Stage II — Moderate (32°C to 26°C)**:
 - Below 30°C the hypothalamus loses temperature control; the patient becomes poikilothermic.
 - Patient is depressed, lethargic, drowsy, and passes into stupor/coma.
 - Muscles stiffen; gait resembles that of a drunk person.
 - Heart rate, respiration and blood pressure all fall; pulse slow; breathing shallow and irregular.
 - Red patches on skin, with oedema (swelling) of the face.
 - **ECG shows the Osborn (J) wave** in about 80% of cases — a camel-hump deflection at the J-junction of the QRS complex, with bradycardia and prolonged cardiac intervals.

- ▶ **Stage III — Severe (below 26–27°C):** stupor progresses to coma; if maintained for about 24 hours, it is fatal.
- ▶ **Cause of death:** failure of the vital centres from anoxia, and cessation of cardiac function from ventricular fibrillation — the cold, irritable heart muscle fibrillates easily, especially with rough handling or rewarming.
- ▶ **Paradox of survival:** deep cooling lowers oxygen demand (about 11% fall per °C), so victims have occasionally been revived after prolonged cardiac arrest at very low core temperatures.

Localised effects of cold

- ▶ **Sequence of local cold injury:**
 - First, **blanching/pallor** from spasm of the blood vessels.
 - Then **erythema, oedema and swelling** as the vessels dilate and become leaky.
 - Then **blister formation**, involving skin, subcutaneous tissue, muscle and nerve.
 - Finally, tissue freezes, hardens and becomes necrotic — from direct freezing, or from vascular blockage, clot formation and secondary infection.
- ▶ **Frostnip:** earliest stage, no true tissue injury; numbness, tingling; skin white/waxy or grey-mottled.
- ▶ ***Frostbite (congelatio):*** true freezing below 0°C.
 - Ice crystals draw water out of cells by osmosis, causing swelling and cell damage.
 - Skin numb, purple/blue-black, with haemorrhagic blisters; feels like a block of ice.
 - Affects fingers, toes, ears, nose, cheeks; leads to necrosis, demarcation and gangrene.
- ▶ **Trench foot (immersion foot):** no freezing; prolonged exposure to damp, cold, unsanitary conditions (World War I trench warfare).
 - Foot numb, cyanotic or red, swollen, with blisters and sores; untreated, progresses to gangrene and amputation.
- ▶ ***Chilblains (pernio):*** no freezing; redness with acral ulcers on fingers and toes; no swelling.
- ▶ **Note:** rapid vaporisation of liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) on skin contact can cause similar severe local cold injury.

Postmortem appearances

- ▶ **Postmortem staining is bright pink/violet, with blurred margins**, even over non-dependent areas such as knees and elbows — because cold shifts the oxyhaemoglobin dissociation curve left, keeping it bright red.
 - Some bodies appear completely white ("white death").
- ▶ **Generalised oedema** of the ears, hands and face, from cold-damaged, leaking capillaries.
- ▶ **Cold stiffening (cold rigor):** body fluids and fat freeze solid, simulating a posture; frozen fat, especially in infants, can crease the skin into a false ligature mark.
 - Must be distinguished from rigor mortis:

Feature	Cold stiffening	Rigor mortis
Cause	Freezing below 0°C	ATP depletion

Feature	Cold stiffening	Rigor mortis
Touch	Icy	Warm to cold, but not icy
Consistency	Stony-hard	Fleshy, "bouncy"
Flexing joints	Crackles (ice in synovial fluid)	No crackling
On thawing	Stiffness disappears, then true rigor develops	Once passed, does not recur

- ▶ **Internal findings (suggestive, not diagnostic alone):**
 - Blood bright red, with ice crystals in the vessels and heart.
 - **Wischnewski spots:** brown-black erosions/ulcers in the stomach mucosa.
 - **Pancreatic fat necrosis** — the single most constant internal finding, in about half of cases.
 - Heart shows right-sided dilation; lungs show congestion, oedema, haemorrhages; brain shows cytotoxic oedema.
- ▶ **Postmortem chemistry:** raised vitreous glucose, blood glucose and CO₂; raised urinary catecholamines, histamine and serotonin.

Neonatal cold injury

- ▶ Neonates are especially prone, from a large surface-area-to-mass ratio, undeveloped vasomotor reflexes, and inability to shiver.
- ▶ Features (first week): rectal temperature below 32°C, slow heart rate, absent peripheral pulses, cold skin.
- ▶ **Red face, hands and feet** is the most striking and constant sign.
- ▶ Pitting oedema of eyelids/hands/feet; localised skin hardening starting distally (historically *sclerema neonatorum*).
- ▶ Haemorrhagic tendency (gastrointestinal, petechial, pulmonary), lethargy.
- ▶ **Medico-legal importance:** a recognised method of killing illegitimate or unwanted infants by cold exposure (infanticide).

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **ECG strip showing the Osborn (J) wave:** label P, QRS, J-junction, J-wave/Osborn wave (camel-hump), ST segment, T, baseline; note " ~80%, core temp 32–26°C".
- ▶ **Frostbite stages of a digit/foot:** (A) normal skin, (B) frostnip (white/waxy, numb), (C) superficial frostbite (swollen, blistered), (D) deep frostbite (blue-black, gangrene, demarcation line).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Manner of death:** usually accidental (drunkenness, immersion in icy water, mountaineering, persons lost in snow).
 - Also infanticide (exposure of newborns) and homicide by neglect of the elderly/infirm; suicide is rare.

- ▶ **Paradoxical undressing:** a hypothermic person removes clothing shortly before death and is found naked in a cold place, raising false suspicion of sexual assault.
 - Caused by terminal paralysis of temperature control, which dilates skin vessels and gives a false sensation of warmth, with terminal confusion and hallucinations.
- ▶ **Hide-and-die syndrome:** the dying, disoriented victim hides in cupboards, under furniture, or burrows into snow — the scene is disturbed only at low levels, simulating homicide or robbery.
- ▶ **Diagnosis is by exclusion,** supported by the scene findings, reddish non-dependent lividity, Wischniewski erosions and pancreatic fat necrosis on autopsy.
- ▶ **Inquest:** an unnatural/unexplained death requires police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**, or a magistrate's inquiry under **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)** where warranted.
- ▶ The autopsy surgeon gives expert opinion under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ Death from neglect of an elderly/infirm person or neonate may attract charges under **Sections 299/304 IPC (now Sections 100/105 BNS 2023)** and **Sections 300/302 IPC (now Sections 101/103 BNS 2023)**.



Utility of radiographs in forensic traumatology

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ **Forensic traumatology** is the medico-legal study of mechanical injury — its cause, pattern, age (time since infliction), and manner (accident, suicide, or homicide).
- ▶ A **radiograph** (plain X-ray, and by extension CT) is a non-invasive image showing radio-dense structures — bone, metal, gas, foreign bodies — one of the most valuable tools for the forensic physician and autopsy surgeon.
- ▶ Used **clinically** on the living, injured person — documents fractures and retained missiles, and ages skeletal injury for the wound certificate.
- ▶ Used at **autopsy** too — locates projectiles, shows wound tracks, screens for hidden bony trauma, and aids identification.
- ▶ The casualty officer has a legal duty to X-ray significant trauma; failing to do so is negligence.

Why radiographs are indispensable

- ▶ **Non-destructive and repeatable:** the body and the exhibit — the bullet, the bone — are not altered, so films can be re-read by a second expert and produced in court.
- ▶ **Show the otherwise invisible:** deep fractures, an embedded missile, surgical or interstitial gas, and old healed injuries with no external mark.
- ▶ **Permanent, court-admissible record:** in a medico-legal case, the films are handed to the police, not to the patient.

- ▶ **Cheap and quick:** plain radiography is available even in modest mortuaries; CT and the emerging "virtopsy" (virtual autopsy) add cross-sectional and 3-D detail where available.
- ▶ **Guides the autopsy:** pre-autopsy imaging tells the prosecutor where the bullet lies and which bones to examine.
- ▶ Radiography is **mandatory before autopsy in deaths from police firing.**

Utility in firearm and explosive injury (highest-yield)

- ▶ **Locate the missile:** finds the bullet, pellets, fragments, or jacket — the single most important exhibit for ballistic matching.
- ▶ **Trace the wound track and direction of fire:** *internal ricochet* — the bullet rebounding off the inner table of the skull to cut a second track — can be shown radiologically.
- ▶ **Identify ammunition type:** the bullet's break-up pattern on X-ray can point to the type of ammunition used.
- ▶ **Detect complications:** shows bony defects, **bullet embolism** (a missile carried away in the blood-stream), and **air embolism** from large-vessel damage.
- ▶ **Avoid a classic trap:** scattered lead fragments from a single bullet in the head can mimic a shotgun injury on X-ray; careful reading prevents this error.
- ▶ **Estimate range in shotgun wounds:** the radiographic spread of pellets reflects how far the shot travelled before impact.
 - This works even in **decomposed or burnt bodies**, where the skin pattern is already lost.
- ▶ A metal/lead ring around an entrance wound may also show up radiologically.
- ▶ In **bomb/explosion deaths**, a complete whole-body X-ray identifies fragments of the device itself — especially the metallic detonating mechanism — plus other embedded debris.

Utility in blunt and regional trauma

- ▶ **Fractures:** radiography is the definitive test, including occult, hairline, depressed, and skull-base fractures, and fracture/dislocation of teeth and the alveolar margin.
 - A confirmed fracture upgrades the injury to **grievous hurt**, so the film directly underpins the medico-legal opinion.
- ▶ **Age of injury:** callus (new bone laid down during healing) and periosteal reaction let the doctor estimate how old a skeletal injury is.
 - This distinguishes a fresh fracture from an old one, and can expose repeated abuse.
- ▶ **Road-traffic injury:** X-rays record the pattern of skeletal injury, helping reconstruct the accident — for example, bumper height or a run-over.
- ▶ **Foreign bodies and weapon tracks:** radio-dense foreign bodies such as glass or metal are localised.
 - For a stab wound, injecting radio-opaque dye into the track shows its course on X-ray.
- ▶ **Air and gas:** X-rays detect pneumothorax, air or amniotic-fluid embolism, and surgical/interstitial gas.
 - This is also relevant in alleged **medical negligence** — a wrongly placed endotracheal tube, a retained instrument, or embolism.

- ▶ **Limitation:** a plain X-ray may miss **bone contusion** (bruising); CT or MRI is then superior.

Utility in child abuse (battered baby syndrome)

Radiology is diagnostic here, and a whole-body skeletal survey is mandatory.

- ▶ **Multiple fractures of different ages**, in different stages of healing, is the radiological hallmark of repeated non-accidental injury.
- ▶ **Metaphyseal and epiphyseal lesions:** avulsion or chipping at the growth-plate or joint end of a bone, seen as small isolated fragments.
 - These metaphyseal lesions are considered **specific to battered baby syndrome**.
- ▶ **Periosteal new bone:** sub-periosteal bleeding calcifies and appears as an extra line of opacity running alongside the bone.
- ▶ **Healing rib fractures:** after 1–2 weeks, callus produces a "string of beads" appearance in the paravertebral gutter — called **NOBBING fractures**.
- ▶ A whole-body X-ray must be taken before autopsy of a suspected battered child, to find old fractures and metaphyseal/epiphyseal injury at different healing stages.
- ▶ Radiology also helps exclude mimics of abuse: scurvy, congenital syphilis, osteomyelitis, leukaemia, rickets, juvenile osteoporosis, infantile cortical hyperostosis, and osteogenesis imperfecta.

Utility in identification and age estimation

- ▶ **Identification:** establishes sex, age, and superimposition; identifies old fractures, surgical plates, nails, screws, prostheses, disease, and congenital bony changes.
 - The **frontal sinuses** are unique even in identical twins — absent in about 5%, unilateral in about 1%.
 - Mastoid air cells, the sella turcica, vascular grooves, and trabecular bone pattern also allow comparison of ante-mortem with post-mortem films.
 - Invaluable in mutilated, burnt, drowned, or decomposed bodies, and in mass-disaster identification.
- ▶ **Age estimation:** radiography of ossification-centre appearance and epiphyseal union is a core medico-legal age tool.
 - Elbow and wrist union: 6–12 years. Elbow and pelvis union: 13–16 years.
 - The **epiphyseal scar** — a faint line left after fusion — marks recent union.
- ▶ **Body packing:** X-rays detect drugs smuggled in sealed packets in body cavities, the gut, or genitalia.
- ▶ **Decomposed or charred remains:** radiology distinguishes ante-mortem injury and assists identification once soft tissue is lost.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Radiographic proof of a fracture decides the legal grading of injury, and therefore which section is charged.
 - *Hurt* is defined under **Section 319 IPC 1860 (now Section 114 BNS 2023)**.

- *Grievous hurt* — which includes fracture or dislocation of a bone or tooth — is defined under **Section 320 IPC 1860 (now Section 116 BNS 2023)**.
- Homicide and culpable-homicide opinions draw on **Sections 300/299 IPC (now Sections 101/100 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ A radiograph produced as evidence is an expert's opinion-bearing record under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ Failing to X-ray significant trauma, or misreading the film, is actionable negligence — a casualty officer who missed a broken neck after a traffic accident was held negligent for it.
- ▶ Examination of an arrested accused, including radiographs of injuries, is authorised under **Section 53 CrPC 1973 (now Section 51 BNSS 2023)**; an arrested woman must be examined by, or under supervision of, a female registered medical practitioner.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Labelled skull/chest radiograph of a gunshot victim:** entry defect in bone, retained bullet (metallic density), lead-fragment trail ("lead snowstorm"), internal-ricochet second track, wound-track axis showing direction of fire, pneumothorax/air shadow.
- ▶ **Skeletal survey in battered baby syndrome:** metaphyseal corner/avulsion fragment, subperiosteal new bone (extra line of opacity), healing rib fractures ("string of beads"/NOBBING in the paravertebral gutter), fractures of differing ages (callus versus fresh).

♦ ♦ ♦

Personal identification

♦ ♦ ♦

Age changes at pubic Symphysis

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Pubic symphysis:** the cartilaginous joint joining the two pubic bones at the front of the pelvis.
- ▶ Its bony joint surface is called the **symphyseal face**.
- ▶ Once growth stops and the long-bone epiphyses have fused, this face keeps changing in an orderly, age-related way.
- ▶ These changes can be read like a clock, making the pubic symphysis the **single best skeletal marker for adult age**, roughly from the third to the fifth decade.
- ▶ It is used in forensic osteology to identify skeletonised, mutilated, exhumed or otherwise unknown bodies.

Why it matters for adult ageing

- ▶ **Up to the mid-20s:** age is read from ossification centres, epiphyseal union, and teeth.

- ▶ **After about 25 years:** these markers are exhausted, and the pubic symphysis becomes the chief indicator.
- ▶ **Bone must be cartilage-free:** any adherent cartilage or soft tissue must be removed to see the true bony face.
- ▶ **Poor preservation blurs the surface:** drying, weathering, or damage erode the detail and limit accuracy.
- ▶ **Sex must be fixed first:** the female pubis matures about 10 years later than the male.
- ▶ Applying male standards to a female bone **under-estimates her age by about 10 years.**
- ▶ Report age as a **range with a stated error**, never a single number, and interpret it alongside other criteria (epiphyseal union, cranial sutures, sternal rib ends, auricular surface).

The six-stage sequence (Todd-type, mainly male)

Age (years)	Appearance of the symphyseal surface
Before 20	Compact bone near the surface; still rugged.
~20	Markedly irregular surface; transverse ridges (billows) with grooves between them.
24–36	Ridges fade; surface turns granular; the ventral (front) and dorsal (back) margins become well defined.
~40–45	Oval, smooth face with raised upper and lower ends; a narrow beaded rim starts to form.
~51–60	Erosion begins; the ventral margin starts breaking down.
~61–70	Surface becomes irregularly eroded and porous.

- ▶ Overall pattern: a young, ridged and grooved surface smooths out, gains a rim by about age 35, then progressively erodes with advancing age.
- ▶ Ridges/billows form earliest; the rim and ventral rampart (a raised, wall-like ridge on the front margin) form later; breakdown is the terminal change.

Standardised scoring systems

- ▶ **Todd (1920):** studied 306 males of known age; the first systematic study; described billowing, ridging, ossific nodules and surface texture; ten phases from 18 to 50+ years.
- ▶ **Brooks (1955):** modified and refined Todd's ten-phase system.
- ▶ **McKern & Stewart (1957):** studied 349 males who died in the Korean War, ages known from military records.
 - Split the face into a **dorsal demiface** (back half) and a **ventral demiface** (front half), plus a third component, the **symphyseal rim**.
 - Each of the three components is scored 0–5, and the scores are summed to estimate age.
 - Drawback: the three components do not vary independently of each other, and the method is unduly complex.

- ▶ **Suchey–Brooks (Katz & Suchey, 1986):** a modification of Brooks 1955, based on a large modern autopsy sample of both sexes.
 - **Currently the most widely accepted system**, using six phases.
 - Comes with **physical casts** — 12 models, an early and a late pattern for each phase — for direct comparison with the unknown bone, rather than relying on photographs.

Limitations

- ▶ Age ranges produced can be **too wide** to be forensically useful.
- ▶ **Precision is lost after about 40 years** in every method — Todd, McKern & Stewart, and Suchey–Brooks alike.
- ▶ Poorly understood environmental and genetic factors cause **wide individual variation**.
- ▶ Reading the surface is **subjective**, with real inter-observer disagreement.
- ▶ Most original standards came from **all-male samples**, so sex must be confirmed before choosing the standard.

The female symphysis — scars of parturition

- ▶ In women who have borne children, the **dorsal border of the symphysis becomes irregular or pitted**, thought to result from trauma during childbirth.
- ▶ These pits are called the **scars of parturition**.
- ▶ They indicate sex and obstetric history, not age, and are read on the same bone.
- ▶ The female pubis matures about a decade later than the male's, so this must be factored into any age estimate.

Other skeletal markers used alongside

- ▶ **Sternal end of the 4th rib:** changes similarly with age — a billowy adolescent surface becomes a sharp, cup-shaped pit in middle age, then irregular and porous with bony projections in old age; scored on three components (pit depth, pit shape, rim configuration), each 0–5.
- ▶ **Auricular surface of the ilium:** harder to read than the symphysis, but survives better in old or damaged bone and stays interpretable well past age 50, where the symphysis usually fails.
- ▶ **Cranial suture closure, bony lipping/osteophytes, and calcification of laryngeal/costal cartilages** are additional supporting markers.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — age changes in the symphyseal face** (3–4 small panels): label the symphyseal face, transverse ridges/billows (~20 y), grooves, granular surface (24–36 y), ventral and dorsal margins, raised upper/lower ends with beaded rim (~40–50 y), and eroded/broken-down surface (50–70 y).
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — McKern & Stewart's three components**: label the dorsal demiface, ventral demiface, and symphyseal rim, and note that each is scored 0–5 and summed.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Central to **identification of the dead** — estimating age at death of skeletonised, decomposed, mutilated, burnt or exhumed remains, alongside sex, stature and race.
- ▶ **Method depends on age band**: dentition and ossification/epiphyseal union for the young; pubic symphysis (with auricular surface, sternal ribs, sutures) for adults beyond 25 years.
- ▶ Report age as a **range with a stated error**, name the method/standard used (e.g. Suchey–Brooks phase), record that sex was determined first, and note the method's limitations.
- ▶ This opinion may be tested in court as **expert evidence under Section 45, Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39, Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ Age estimation feeds the **inquest** conducted under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194, Bharatiya Nagarik Suraksha Sanhita 2023)**, and any **exhumation under Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196, BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The same bone yields the **scars of parturition**, adding obstetric history to a female skeleton's biological profile.

**Aspartic acid racemization**

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ **Aspartic acid racemization (AAR)** is a biochemical method of **age estimation**.
- ▶ It measures the slow, temperature-dependent conversion of natural **L-aspartic acid** into its mirror-image **D-form** inside long-lived, stable body proteins.
- ▶ The conversion runs at a near-constant rate from the moment the tissue is formed.
- ▶ So the amount of D-aspartic acid built up is directly proportional to the person's chronological age.
- ▶ In forensic odontology it is the **most reliable destructive method of dental age estimation**, accurate to about ± 3 years.

Biochemical basis

- ▶ **Chirality**: every amino acid except glycine exists as two mirror-image forms called *enantiomers* — L and D.

- ▶ L and D describe the fixed **spatial (absolute) configuration** around the alpha carbon, assigned relative to the reference sugar glyceraldehyde.
- ▶ They do **NOT** indicate the direction of optical rotation (levo-/dextro-); an L-amino acid can rotate light either way.
- ▶ What AAR actually measures is the **configurational D/L ratio**, not optical rotation.
- ▶ **Living tissue is "L-only"**: proteins made by a living body are built almost entirely from L-amino acids.
- ▶ **Racemization** is the slow drift of L toward D, heading over very long periods toward an equal 50:50 mixture.
- ▶ Within one human lifespan this drift is so slow and one-sided that it behaves as effectively **one-way, L into D**.
- ▶ Memory aid: "**LD50**" — here read only as "L converts to D," not the pharmacology term for median lethal dose.
- ▶ The conversion happens **in vivo**, inside the living person, not just after death.
- ▶ **Why aspartic acid is chosen**: it is one of the **fastest-racemizing amino acids**, so it builds up a measurable amount of D-form within a lifetime.
- ▶ It follows **first-order kinetics** — its rate depends only on how much L-form remains, so it slows in a predictable way.
- ▶ It is also strongly **temperature-dependent**; a fairly constant body temperature helps the method work reliably.
- ▶ **A metabolically inert protein is required**: the tissue must be laid down early and never turned over, so the D-form simply accumulates.
- ▶ **Dentine** (and enamel) fits this perfectly — once formed, dentine collagen stays stable for life, which is why teeth are the preferred substrate.

Sites where racemization can be measured

- ▶ **Tooth enamel and dentine** — the primary site, for chronological age of the living or the dead.
- ▶ **Bloodstains** — to estimate the **time since deposition** of a stain at a crime scene.
- ▶ **Brain** — age estimation from soft-tissue protein.
- ▶ **Eye lens (crystallins)** — long-lived lens proteins accumulate D-aspartate with age.
- ▶ **Intervertebral discs** — age-related accumulation in disc collagen.

Technique

- ▶ A tooth is sampled and the **enamel or dentine** is taken — this is a **destructive** method (the tooth is consumed/sectioned).
- ▶ The protein is hydrolysed and the **L- and D-aspartic acid** amounts are measured.
- ▶ The standard platform is **HPLC coupled with mass spectrometry**, which separates and quantifies the two enantiomers.
- ▶ The measured **D/L ratio** is fed into an age-regression equation (built from known-age samples) to read off the estimated age.
- ▶ **Accuracy: about ± 3 years** — better than most other dental methods.

- This is why AAR is called the **most reliable destructive method** of dental age estimation.

Place among dental age-estimation methods

Aspartic acid racemization is the benchmark *destructive* chemical method for dental age. It is compared against other destructive methods and against the non-destructive radiographic approach.

Method	Type	Key feature
Aspartic acid racemization	Destructive, chemical	D/L ratio in dentine/enamel; most reliable destructive method; ± 3 years
Gustafson's method	Destructive, histological	Ground section scoring wear/resorption/transparency; error $\pm 4-7$ years
Miles' method	Destructive	Age read from the pattern of tooth wear (attrition)
Radiocarbon dating of enamel	Destructive, chemical	Uses atmospheric "bomb-pulse" radiocarbon level fixed at tooth formation
Tooth Development Stages (Demirjian)	Non-destructive, radiographic	Scores mineralization on a dental panoramic X-ray; useful up to ~ 21 years

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- **Mirror-image (enantiomer) diagram:** two tetrahedral carbon atoms drawn as mirror images across a vertical dashed line.
 - Label each: *central (alpha) carbon*, $-NH_2$, $-COOH$, $-H$, *side chain (R)*.
 - Label the left structure **L-aspartic acid (living tissue)** and the right **D-aspartic acid (accumulates with age)**.
 - Central arrow labelled **racemization** — *in vivo*, temperature-dependent, L to D over time.
- **Tooth cross-section with sampling site:** longitudinal tooth outline labelled *enamel*, *dentine (sampling site for AAR — metabolically inert)*, *pulp cavity*, *cementum*, *root*.
 - Side note: "measure D/L aspartic-acid ratio by HPLC–mass spectrometry to estimate age (± 3 years)."

Medico-legal significance

- **Identification of unknown remains:** where teeth survive (mass disasters, decomposed or skeletonised bodies), AAR gives a chronological age estimate to support **personal identification**.
- **Legal age cut-offs:** age is pivotal for criminal responsibility, juvenility, consent, marriage and employment, and a precise dental method strengthens the expert opinion on these.
- **Dating a bloodstain:** AAR of bloodstain protein estimates the **time since deposition** of a stain, which can help reconstruct the sequence of events at a scene.

- ▶ **Expert evidence:** the result is presented as **expert opinion** under Section 45 Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023).
- ▶ Age should always be reported as a **range** (here $\approx \pm 3$ years), never a single exact figure, so the opinion withstands cross-examination.
- ▶ **Corroboration:** best used alongside other age criteria — dental eruption/calcification, ossification, Gustafson's method, radiology — since multiple criteria are more defensible than any one method alone.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ AAR estimates age from the slow **in-vivo conversion of L-aspartic acid to D-aspartic acid**; mnemonic "LD50" (L to D, not median lethal dose).
- ▶ L and D denote absolute spatial configuration relative to glyceraldehyde — NOT levo-/dextro-rotation.
- ▶ **Most reliable destructive method of dental age estimation**; accuracy ± 3 years.
- ▶ Measured in **enamel/dentine** by HPLC + mass spectrometry as the **D/L ratio**.
- ▶ Works because **dentine is metabolically inert** — protein is not turned over, so the D-form simply accumulates.
- ▶ Also demonstrable in **bloodstains, brain, eye lens and vertebral discs**; used to estimate the age of a bloodstain.
- ▶ Contrast destructive methods (Gustafson's, Miles', radiocarbon of enamel) with the non-destructive radiographic **Demirjian/TDS**.
- ▶ Report as a **range**, corroborate with other age criteria, and present as **expert opinion** (IEA §45 → BSA §39).



Demirjian's method

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Demirjian's method** is a radiographic, non-destructive technique for dental age estimation in living children.
- ▶ It grades the developmental stage of the seven (or eight) lower-left permanent mandibular teeth on a dental panoramic tomograph (OPG).
- ▶ Each tooth's stage is converted to a numerical score.
- ▶ The scores are summed into a single **dental maturity score**.
- ▶ This score is read against a standard table or graph to give the dental age.
- ▶ It grades tooth formation, not tooth eruption, so it can be used in the living.
- ▶ It is more accurate than Gustafson's method in children.
- ▶ It is the most widely used of the **Tooth Development Stages (TDS)** systems.

Where it fits among dental age methods

- ▶ Age from teeth is estimated by three broad approaches.
- ▶ **Eruption / clinical:** based on timing of eruption and number of teeth present; works in the living and the dead.
- ▶ **Developmental / radiographic (non-destructive):** based on mineralisation stages on a radiograph; includes Demirjian, Cameriere's open-apices method, and third-molar staging; used in living children/adolescents.
- ▶ **Secondary-change (largely destructive):** based on age changes in an extracted tooth; includes Gustafson's, Boyde's, and Stack's methods; mainly used in the dead.
- ▶ Among non-destructive options, staging mineralisation on radiographs is more reliable than counting erupted teeth.

Principle

- ▶ Mineralisation is graded, not eruption.
- ▶ Tooth crowns and roots calcify in a fixed sequence: crown first, then neck, then root.
- ▶ Root formation continues even after the tooth erupts, until the apex (root tip) closes.
- ▶ Mineralisation is relatively independent of nutrition, hormones, and local factors that can delay eruption.
- ▶ Each tooth passes through graded morphological stages, lettered **A to H**.
- ▶ Stage A is first mineralisation of the cusp tip; stage H is closure of the root apex.
- ▶ Demirjian's is one of several TDS systems (others: Gleiser-Hunt, Gustafson-Koch, Harris-Nortje, Kullman) but is the most accurate and widely used.

Teeth used and the radiograph

- ▶ **Teeth scored:** the seven permanent teeth of the lower-left (mandibular) quadrant.
- ▶ These are the central incisor, lateral incisor, canine, first premolar, second premolar, first molar, and second molar.
- ▶ An eight-tooth version adds the third molar.
- ▶ The lower-left side is used because all teeth are clearly seen together on one film.
- ▶ The opposite (right) jaw is assumed to be symmetrical.
- ▶ **Imaging:** a dental panoramic tomograph / orthopantomogram (OPG) — a single film showing all teeth and their developmental status.
- ▶ **Age range:** applicable in children and adolescents, up to about 21 years, while permanent teeth are still forming.

Procedure

- ▶ **Step 1:** obtain an OPG of the subject.
- ▶ **Step 2:** stage each of the seven (or eight) lower-left mandibular teeth from A to H, using standard radiographic criteria.
- ▶ **Step 3:** convert each stage to a score using Demirjian's sex-specific weighting scale.
- ▶ **Step 4:** sum the scores of all assessed teeth to get a single dental maturity score, out of 100.

- **Step 5:** read the dental age from the standard sex-specific conversion table or maturity curve.
- In short: stage the teeth, score them, sum the scores, then convert to age.

Advantages and limitations

Advantages	Limitations
Non-destructive; usable in living children	Reliable only while roots are still forming (up to ~21 years)
Based on mineralisation, more stable than eruption timing	Original scores are from a French-Canadian population; tend to overestimate age in Indians
Standardised A–H staging with good inter-observer agreement	Accuracy depends on OPG film quality and observer training
More accurate than Gustafson's method in children	Gives only a probable range, not an exact age
Single OPG images the whole quadrant; quick and inexpensive	Sex must be known, since scoring is sex-specific

Related dental methods (for contrast)

- **Gustafson's method:** destructive; studies a ground section of an extracted tooth.
- It grades six regressive changes: attrition, periodontosis, secondary dentin, cementum apposition, root resorption, and root transparency.
- Used in adults/dead persons (about 25–60 years); error ± 4 –7 years, improved by Johanson's modification.
- **Cameriere's open-apices method:** radiological and non-destructive, using the same seven left mandibular teeth.
- It measures open root apices and tooth-axis length rather than staging shape — a quantitative counterpart to Demirjian.
- **Third-molar staging:** used from 14–20 years, based on the developmental stage of the third molar; error about ± 3 years.
- **Boyde's method** (enamel cross-striations from the neonatal line) and **Stack's method** (weight/height of erupting teeth) cover dead infants, not the child–adolescent range Demirjian addresses.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ Orthopantomogram schematic of the lower-left quadrant with all seven teeth labelled (central incisor to second molar, plus third molar if used).
- ▶ Mark each tooth's developmental stage, A to H.
- ▶ Show the progression: cusp-tip mineralisation → crown completion → root elongation → apex closure.
- ▶ Add a flow box: OPG → stage each tooth (A–H) → sex-specific score → sum to maturity score (/100) → read dental age from chart.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Dental age helps decide criminal responsibility: whether a person is below 7 years, 7–12 years, or below 18 years.
- ▶ A child under 7 cannot commit an offence; 7–12 depends on maturity of understanding; below 18 is treated as a juvenile.
- ▶ It is used for living-age estimation in undocumented persons — for marriage (18 years for girls), consent, employment, and disputed-age cases.
- ▶ Being non-destructive, Demirjian's method suits all these living-subject situations.
- ▶ Staging on an OPG is demonstrable, reproducible evidence that a doctor can defend in court.
- ▶ Age must be reported as a probable range with the method named, never as a single exact figure.
- ▶ The doctor's opinion on age is expert evidence under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ The estimate should be corroborated with ossification/epiphyseal fusion and secondary sexual characters.
- ▶ Because the original scoring can over- or under-estimate outside its reference population, population-specific calibration should be noted.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ Radiographic, non-destructive method of dental age estimation in children, done on an OPG.
- ▶ Scores the seven lower-left permanent mandibular teeth (eight if third molar included); each staged A–H.
- ▶ Stage each tooth, apply a sex-specific score, sum to a maturity score, then read the dental age from a chart.
- ▶ Most accurate and widely used of the TDS methods (others: Gleiser-Hunt, Gustafson-Koch, Harris-Nortje, Kullman).
- ▶ Usable up to about 21 years; grades mineralisation, not eruption.
- ▶ More accurate than Gustafson's method, which is destructive and used in adults/dead persons (~25–60 years).
- ▶ Original scores are from a French-Canadian sample, so they overestimate age in Indians; needs population calibration.

- ▶ Compare with Cameriere's open-apices method (quantitative, same seven teeth) and third-molar staging (14–20 years, ± 3 years).
- ▶ Reported as a probable age range; relevant to juvenility, criminal responsibility, marriage, consent, and disputed-age cases.



Describe the forensic odontology. Add a note on medico legal importance of Bite Marks

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Forensic odontology** (forensic dentistry) applies dental knowledge to law and the administration of justice; the wider term **forensic odonto-stomatology** also covers other oral structures (lips, palate) and secretions (saliva).
- ▶ Its two pillars are **dental identification of the dead** — the **second most reliable** identification method after fingerprints — and **bite-mark analysis** of the living and the dead.
- ▶ Teeth are the hardest, most durable tissues in the body, resisting fire, putrefaction, trauma and most chemicals — invaluable when soft tissue has failed, as in burnt, decomposed, skeletonised and mass-disaster victims.
- ▶ **Father of forensic odontology: Dr. Oscar Amoedo**, who did the first mass dental identification at the Bazaar de la Charité fire, Paris, 1897.

Scope of work

- ▶ **Identifying unknown, burnt, mutilated, decomposed or skeletonised bodies, and mass-disaster victims** (fires, air crashes, earthquakes), by comparing antemortem dental records with postmortem findings.
- ▶ **Age estimation** of the living and the dead from tooth eruption, calcification and degenerative change (e.g. *Gustafson's method*, 1950).
- ▶ **Bite-mark work** — recording bite marks on victims, comparing them with a suspect's dentition, testifying as an expert, and identifying bite marks on foodstuffs or materials left at a scene.
- ▶ **Determining race, sex, occupation and habits, and DNA identification** from pulp and buccal/salivary cells.

Basis of dental identification

- ▶ No two people have identical dentitions — position, root pattern, bone trabeculation and restorative work together give a near-unique record; **restorative work** (fillings, crowns, bridges) is the single most reliable feature.
- ▶ **Absent teeth** — note the number, site, and whether the loss was antemortem or postmortem.
- ▶ **Arrangement peculiarities** — crowding, malposition, rotation, *prognathism* (prominent lower jaw).
- ▶ **General condition** — caries, attrition, staining; a marked denture is especially useful.

- ▶ **Radiology** compares root shape, pulp-canal shape, fillings and bone pattern between antemortem and postmortem films — the more recent the antemortem record, the more reliable the match.
- ▶ **Special markers** — *pink teeth* (postmortem staining near the gum), *Hutchinson's teeth* (congenital syphilis), *Carabelli's cusp*, and shovel-shaped incisors.

Sex, race and other clues from teeth

- ▶ **Sex** — Y-chromatin persists in pulp cells for 3–5 months after death; DNA analysis confirms sex; the female lower first molar has four cusps.
- ▶ **Race** — *Carabelli's cusp* is common in Caucasians; shovel-shaped incisors and an absent third molar are common in Mongoloids; large multi-cusped molars occur in Negroids.
- ▶ **Blood group** can be typed from pulp cells, and chronic metallic poisoning also leaves detectable evidence in teeth because they resist putrefaction.

Charting systems

- ▶ **Palmer notation (1870)** — quadrant grid; permanent teeth numbered 1–8, deciduous teeth lettered A–E.
- ▶ **Universal/Cunningham system (1883)** — permanent teeth numbered continuously 1–32.
- ▶ **Haderup system (1902)** — like Palmer's, but uses + for upper and – for lower teeth.
- ▶ **FDI two-digit system** — first digit is the quadrant, second is the tooth (e.g. lower-right canine = 43); the international standard.

Bite marks — appearance and types

- ▶ A **bite mark (odontoglyph)** is a patterned injury — contusion, abrasion, laceration, or a mix — produced when teeth are forced into a softer object.
- ▶ Human bites are semicircular, made by the incisors and canines, forming **two opposed crescentic arches** with concavities facing each other and a gap at each end.
- ▶ Suction over the centre produces confluent **petechial haemorrhages**; faint marks show up under **ultraviolet light** in a dark room, and in the living remain visible from **1 to 24 hours** after infliction.
- ▶ **Offensive/aggressive bites** — seen in assaults, on hands, forearms, nose and ears.
- ▶ **Defensive bites** — inflicted by the victim on the attacker.
- ▶ **Sexual/love bites** — on breast, neck, abdomen or genitalia; suction often leaves petechiae without clear tooth marks.
- ▶ **Self-inflicted bites** — usually on the shoulders and arms.
- ▶ **Child-abuse bites** — can appear anywhere on the body, and strongly suggest abuse.

Bite-mark severity classification

Class	Features	Value
I	Diffuse bruised ring, no individual tooth marks (e.g. a love bite)	Useful mainly for saliva/DNA
II	Arches identifiable, some individual teeth seen	Better for exclusion than inclusion
III	Excellent tooth morphology in at least one arch	Gives a dental profile; useful for inclusion and exclusion
IV	Tissue incision/excision, permanent disfigurement	Profiling difficult; DNA may be contaminated

Human vs animal bites

- ▶ Inter-canine distance helps tell the biter apart — 25–40 mm in an adult, under 25 mm in a child.
- ▶ Dogs cause most animal bites — a narrow squarish arch with deep, stab-like punctures.
- ▶ Cats leave a small rounded arch with canine punctures plus claw scratches.
- ▶ Rodents gnaw shallow craters or grooves, usually after death.

Recording and preserving bite marks

- ▶ Swab the mark immediately with a sterile-water-moistened swab, plus a **control swab** from adjacent skin and a **swab of the victim's saliva**; air-dry and refrigerate if there is a delay.
- ▶ Saliva can reveal the assailant's **blood group** (in secretors) and **DNA**.
- ▶ Excise the bitten skin and preserve it in **formalin**, after fixing a ring to prevent shrinkage.
- ▶ **Photograph** the mark at full scale with **two scales set at right angles**.
- ▶ Take **casts and tracings** of the suspect's dentition to compare with the mark; digital 3-D imaging gives a more precise comparison.
- ▶ **Exclusion is easier and more reliable than a positive match**, because skin and food do not reproduce tooth detail exactly.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Fracture or dislocation of a tooth is **grievous hurt** — Section 320 IPC 1860 (now Section 116 BNS 2023), punishable under Section 117 BNS 2023.
- ▶ Dental and bite-mark testimony is admitted as **expert opinion** — Section 45 Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023).
- ▶ Describing marks of injury, including bite marks, at a medico-legal examination is mandatory — Section 164A CrPC 1973 (now Section 184 BNSS 2023).
- ▶ **Bite marks identify the assailant** — saliva/DNA and arch-pattern comparison link a suspect to the victim or crime scene; bite marks on foodstuffs left at a scene have convicted offenders in the past.

- ▶ **Defensive bite marks** point to a struggle or sexual assault, and bites found anywhere on a child's body strongly suggest **child abuse**.
- ▶ **The doctor's duties** — examine, measure, describe and swab the mark with a proper chain of custody, then refer it to a forensic odontologist and testify as an expert.
- ▶ **Caution** — bite-mark *matching* is now recognised as scientifically weak; **DNA exonerations** have overturned convictions based on faulty bite-mark identification, so modern practice favours **exclusion** and **DNA/saliva evidence** over pattern-matching.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Human bite mark on skin** — two opposed crescentic arches (upper and lower), concavities facing each other; label the maxillary and mandibular arches, the central suction (petechial) zone, the gap at each angle, individual tooth marks, and two scales at right angles.
- ▶ **Bite-mark photographic recording** — the bite mark with an L-shaped scale; label the horizontal and vertical scales, the control swab site, the victim saliva swab, and the excised skin in formalin.



Describe the normal structure of tooth. Discuss Gustafson's method of age determination from teeth

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ A **tooth** is a calcified structure set in the sockets (alveoli) of the maxilla and mandible.
- ▶ Its job is mastication, but in forensic odontology it is a reliable indicator of **identity, age and sex**.
- ▶ Teeth resist putrefaction, fire, burial and most chemicals, so they often survive when soft tissue is destroyed.
- ▶ This makes dental evidence vital in mass disasters and in charred, mutilated or skeletonised remains.
- ▶ **Gustafson's method** is an objective, regression-based, microscopic technique for estimating adult age from a single extracted tooth.
- ▶ It uses six age-related changes, applied once eruption and calcification are complete — roughly beyond age 21.

Normal structure of a tooth

- ▶ Each tooth has three anatomical parts and three hard tissues enclosing one soft tissue.
- ▶ **Crown**: above the gum, covered by enamel.
- ▶ **Neck (cervix)**: the junction between crown and root, at the gum margin.
- ▶ **Root (fang)**: the tapering part in the socket; single or multiple.
- ▶ The root ends at the **apical foramen**, where nerves and vessels enter the pulp.

The three hard tissues and the pulp:

- ▶ **Enamel:** hardest, most mineralised tissue in the body; caps the crown; records the **neonatal line** (basis of Boyde's method).
- ▶ **Dentin:** forms the bulk of the tooth and encloses the pulp; laid down as **secondary dentin** with age — a Gustafson criterion.
- ▶ **Cementum:** bone-like tissue covering the root; added in layers throughout life — a Gustafson criterion.
- ▶ **Dental pulp:** soft tissue with nerves and vessels in the pulp cavity; progressively replaced by secondary dentin with age.
- ▶ Cementum is anchored to the **alveolar bone** by the **periodontal membrane**.

Four tooth types:

- ▶ **Incisors:** chisel-shaped, single-rooted, for cutting.
- ▶ **Canines:** longest, single-rooted, pointed crown.
- ▶ **Premolars:** smaller than canines, two cusps, usually single-rooted.
- ▶ **Molars:** largest, multiple cusps, two to three roots, for grinding.

Two dentitions:

- ▶ **Deciduous (milk) teeth:** 20 in all — per jaw 4 incisors, 2 canines, 4 molars, no premolars.
- ▶ **Permanent teeth:** 32 in all — per jaw 4 incisors, 2 canines, 4 premolars, 6 molars.
- ▶ Permanent molars are **superadded** (no deciduous predecessor, 6 per jaw); the rest are **successional**, replacing deciduous teeth (10 per jaw).

Age estimation from teeth

- ▶ **Developmental status** — calcification and eruption — is reliable up to about 21–25 years.
- ▶ **Secondary (regressive) changes** are used in adults beyond ~21 years, once development is complete — this is where Gustafson's method fits.
- ▶ Calcification of permanent teeth begins at birth (first molar) and finishes by 18–25 years (third molar).
- ▶ Full eruption of the **third molar indicates age above 17 years**.
- ▶ Between 14 and 20 years, dental age rests on third-molar development, accurate to about ± 3 years.
- ▶ Once eruption and calcification are complete, only the slow changes of ageing remain — these are what Gustafson measures.

Gustafson's six criteria

- ▶ Gustafson identified **six** age-related changes in a tooth, each graded 0–3, and the points are summed.
- ▶ Mnemonic **APSRTC** — Attrition, Periodontosis, Secondary dentin, Root resorption, Transparency, Cementum apposition.

Criterion	What happens	Scoring 0–3
Attrition (A)	Biting surface wears down, enamel → dentin → pulp	0 none, 1 enamel, 2 dentin, 3 pulp
Periodontosis (P)	Gum recedes, exposing neck and root	0 none, 1 $< \frac{1}{3}$, 2 $\frac{1}{3}$ – $\frac{2}{3}$, 3 $> \frac{2}{3}$ exposed
Secondary dentin (S)	New dentin fills the pulp cavity from the top	0 none, 1 upper part, 2 half-filled, 3 mostly/fully filled
Cementum apposition (C)	New cementum layers thicken the root	0 normal, 1 slight, 2 great, 3 heavy layer
Root resorption (R)	Starts at the apex, spreads upward	0 none, 1 spots, 2 large area, 3 great areas
Transparency of root (T)	Apical canals mineralise, root turns transparent	0 none, 1 apical region, 2 apical $\frac{1}{3}$, 3 apical $\frac{2}{3}$

- ▶ **Transparency of the root** is the single most reliable, most objective criterion — the transparent zone is measurable directly under the microscope.
- ▶ **Secondary dentin** formation is the next most reliable criterion; **root resorption** is the least reliable.
- ▶ These regressive changes are essentially **absent before ~15 years** of age.

Technique and calculation

- ▶ **Tooth selection:** single-rooted anterior incisors are best; canines and premolars are less suitable; third molars are unsuitable.
- ▶ **Step 1:** assess periodontosis *in situ*, before extraction — it cannot be judged afterward.
- ▶ **Step 2:** extract, clean and disinfect (e.g. 3% hydrogen peroxide), dry, embed in resin, and grind perpendicular to the long axis.
- ▶ **Step 3:** at about **1 mm** thickness, assess root transparency.
- ▶ **Step 4:** grind further to about **0.25 mm** and score the remaining criteria microscopically.
- ▶ **Step 5:** grade each criterion 0–3 and sum. **Minimum = 0** (average up to ~15 years); **maximum = 18**.
- ▶ **Step 6:** plot the score on a **regression line** built from teeth of known age, and read off the age, corrected for standard deviation.
- ▶ **Accuracy:** error is about ± 4 – 7 years, widening above 50 years of age.
- ▶ ***Johanson's modification*** — a refined multiple-regression formula with seven-point grading — is more accurate and widely preferred.

Related dental age methods

- ▶ **Boyde's method:** counts daily enamel cross-striations outward from the **neonatal line**; gives age in days; useful for a dead infant.
- ▶ **Stack's method:** uses the weight and height of erupting teeth to estimate age in infants and children.
- ▶ **Demirjian and Nolla methods:** stage tooth maturity, mainly in children.

- ▶ **Aspartic acid racemisation:** measures the L-/D-aspartic acid ratio in dentin/enamel; destructive but accurate in adults ($\sim \pm 3$ years).

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Longitudinal section of a tooth (incisor):** label Crown, Neck, Root, Enamel, Dentin, Cementum, Pulp cavity (chamber and root canal), Apical foramen, Gingiva, Periodontal membrane, Alveolar bone.
- ▶ **Gustafson's six criteria:** a row of tooth sections showing grades 0–3 for each of A, P, S, C, R and T.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Teeth establish age, sex and identity from charred, decomposed, skeletonised or fragmentary remains; dental records and bite-marks aid individualisation.
- ▶ Their durability makes teeth a primary tool in mass-disaster victim identification — fires, air crashes, explosions.
- ▶ A doctor may be summoned as expert witness on age under **Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ Age determination matters for criminal responsibility, juvenility, consent, marriageability, employment and identification of the dead.
- ▶ Dental charting is part of identification at autopsy, conducted on police requisition under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)** and **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ **Limitations:** the method is destructive, needs a suitable single-rooted tooth, and its error (± 4 – 7 years) widens after 50; caries, periodontosis and occupation also accelerate the changes, so age should be given as a **range**, not one figure.



Describe the normal structure of tooth. Discuss Gustafson's method of determination age from the teeth

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ A **tooth** is a calcified organ of mastication set in the alveolus (socket) of the jaw.
- ▶ It has three hard tissues — **enamel**, **dentine** and **cementum** — surrounding a soft **dental pulp**.
- ▶ Dental tissues form, calcify, erupt and then change with age in a very orderly way.
- ▶ This makes teeth one of the most reliable structures for **personal identification** and **age estimation**.
- ▶ **Gustafson's method** (1950) is the classical objective technique for estimating adult age from a single ground tooth section.
- ▶ It scores six progressive age-related changes and reads age off a **regression line** built from known-age cases.

Structure of a tooth

- ▶ **Crown:** the part projecting above the gum, covered by enamel.
- ▶ **Neck (cervix):** the constricted junction between crown and root, at the gum margin.
- ▶ **Root (fang):** the tapering part embedded in the alveolus.
- ▶ **Root pattern:**
 - Incisors and canines — single-rooted.
 - Premolars — usually single-rooted.
 - Molars — multiple roots.
- ▶ **Enamel:** the hardest tissue in the body — an acellular, avascular cap covering only the crown.
 - Its growth lines are fine daily **cross-striations** and coarser periodic **striae of Retzius**.
- ▶ **Dentine:** forms the bulk of the tooth, under the enamel in the crown and under the cementum in the root.
 - It surrounds the pulp and keeps being laid down throughout life as **secondary dentine**.
- ▶ **Cementum:** a bone-like layer covering the root.
 - Partly cellular (living), deposited continuously in incremental layers throughout life.
 - Anchors the tooth to the alveolar bone through the periodontal ligament.
- ▶ **Dental pulp:** loose connective tissue with nerves and vessels, filling the pulp cavity (crown) and root canal (root).
 - The root canal opens at the **apical foramen**, where the neurovascular bundle enters.
- ▶ The **periodontal ligament** holds the root in its socket, and the **gingiva (gum)** covers the alveolar margins.

Development and dentitions

- ▶ Calcification proceeds **crown first, then neck, then root**, and a well-formed **neonatal line** marks birth in the enamel.
- ▶ **Deciduous (milk) teeth — 20 total:** 4 incisors, 2 canines, 4 molars per jaw, no premolars.
 - Smaller and china-white, with divergent molar roots.
- ▶ **Permanent teeth — 32 total:** 4 incisors, 2 canines, 4 premolars, 6 molars per jaw.
 - Larger, ivory-white and stronger.
- ▶ **Successional teeth (10/jaw)** replace the shed deciduous incisors, canines and premolars; **superadded teeth (6/jaw)** are the three molars per side, with no deciduous predecessor.

Age estimation from teeth — overview

- ▶ In children and adolescents, age is read from **eruption and calcification**, well-documented progressive changes.
- ▶ A fully erupted third molar suggests age above about 17 years; between 14 and 20 years the developing third molar guides the estimate, accurate to about ± 3 years.
- ▶ After about 21 years, eruption is complete, so age must instead be read from **regressive (degenerative) changes** — the basis of Gustafson's method.

Gustafson's six criteria

- ▶ Six age-related changes are scored, remembered by the mnemonic **APSRTC**.
- ▶ Each criterion is scored from **0 (no change)** to **3 (maximum change)**.

Criterion	What happens with age
Attrition (A)	Occlusal wear spreads from enamel to dentine to pulp
Periodontosis (P)	Gum recedes, exposing more of the root
Secondary dentine (S)	New dentine fills the pulp cavity from above downward
Cementum apposition (C)	New cementum layers build up on the root
Root resorption (R)	Cementum and dentine resorb from the apex upward
Root transparency (T)	Root canal fills with mineral and turns transparent, from apex upward

- ▶ Each criterion is scored 0–3, so the total ranges from **0** (very young) to **18** (maximal change).
- ▶ **Root transparency** is the single most reliable criterion — directly measurable under the microscope.
- ▶ **Secondary dentine** is the next most reliable; **root resorption** is the least reliable.
- ▶ These regressive changes are essentially **absent below 15 years**, and root transparency itself is not seen until about **30 years** — the method's practical lower limit.

Gustafson's method — procedure

- ▶ **Tooth choice:** an anterior tooth (incisor) is best, canines and premolars next-best, and the **third molar unsuitable**; only one tooth is needed.
- ▶ **Step 1 — periodontosis:** scored first, while the tooth is still in its socket — it cannot be judged after extraction.
- ▶ **Step 2 — extraction:** the tooth is extracted, washed, disinfected and dried.
- ▶ **Step 3 — grinding:** the tooth is embedded in resin and ground down from both sides on glass slabs.
- ▶ **Step 4 — transparency:** once the section reaches about **1 mm**, root transparency is estimated.
- ▶ **Step 5 — microscopy:** the section is ground thinner still to assess the remaining four criteria (attrition, secondary dentine, cementum apposition, root resorption).
 - Sources differ slightly on this final thickness, giving figures from about **0.25 mm down to about 100 micrometres**.
- ▶ **Step 6 — scoring:** the six scores (0–3 each) are summed to a total out of 18.
- ▶ The total is read against a **regression line/formula** built from known-age cases, corrected for standard deviation, to give the estimated age.
- ▶ **Accuracy:** about **±4 to 7 years**, with the error increasing above age 50.

- ▶ **Johanson's modification** of the method is considered more accurate; **Maples' modification** is another recognised refinement.

Other dental methods of age estimation

- ▶ **Boyde's method:** counts daily **cross-striations** in enamel outward from the neonatal line, giving age in days — used mainly in a dead infant or young child.
- ▶ **Stack's method:** estimates an infant's age from the weight and height of an erupting tooth.
- ▶ **Aspartic acid racemisation:** ratio of L- to D-aspartic acid in enamel or dentine, measured by HPLC with mass spectrometry — accurate to about ± 3 years, but **destructive**.
- ▶ **Demirjian's method:** dental age from radiographic maturity of the lower-left permanent teeth in children — non-destructive.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Longitudinal section of a tooth:** label crown, neck and root; enamel, dentine and cementum; the pulp cavity, root canal and apical foramen; the gingiva, periodontal ligament and alveolar bone.
- ▶ **Gustafson's six criteria chart:** a tooth section showing the six progressive changes with their scoring subscripts — A0–A3, P0–P3, S0–S3, C0–C3, R0–R3, T0–T3.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Teeth are the hardest, most indestructible tissues and survive fire, decomposition and putrefaction.
- ▶ Dental charting compared with ante-mortem records is central to **identifying the dead**, including in mass-disaster victim identification.
- ▶ **Age estimation** bears on criminal responsibility (a child below the threshold age cannot commit an offence), juvenility under the **Juvenile Justice Act 2015**, attainment of majority under the **Indian Majority Act**, and eligibility for marriage, employment and consent.
- ▶ The examining doctor records the dental findings, an orthopantomogram X-ray, the method used, and an opinion with its recognised error margin.
- ▶ The forensic odontologist or medical officer deposes as an **expert witness**, and such opinion evidence is admissible under **Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ Other dental findings of forensic value: **pink teeth** (protoporphyrin deposition in decomposed bodies), **mottled teeth** (chronic fluorosis), **Hutchinson's teeth** (congenital syphilis), and bite marks.



Describe the structure and medico-legal importance of human hair

Asked in: Paper I Dec 2023 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ Hair is a keratinised, thread-like appendage of the skin.
- ▶ It has two parts: the **root** (with a **bulb** embedded in the follicle) and the **shaft** (projecting above the skin).
- ▶ The study of hair is called **trichology**.
- ▶ Its application to law and justice is called **forensic trichology**.
- ▶ Hair resists putrefaction and stays identifiable long after a crime.
- ▶ It is often the only trace link between an assailant, a victim and the scene.

Composition and growth

- ▶ **Chemical composition:** proteins 65–90%, water 15–35%, lipids 1–9%.
- ▶ **Keratin** is the main structural protein and is why burnt hair chars with an acrid odour.
- ▶ **Growth rate:** scalp hair grows about **0.4 mm/day**, roughly **1 cm/month**.
- ▶ Beard hair grows slightly faster; nails grow much slower (0.1 mm/day).
- ▶ The growth rate lets you estimate how long ago a dye was applied.
- ▶ **Growth cycle — three phases:**
 - **Anagen:** active growing phase, lasts 2–7 years on the scalp.
 - **Catagen:** short involuting phase that ends active growth, lasts 2–3 weeks.
 - **Telogen:** resting phase in which hair sheds, lasts about 3 months on the scalp.
 - Diffuse shedding of resting-phase hairs is called *telogen effluvium*.
- ▶ About **50–100 scalp hairs** shed per day normally.
- ▶ Only growing (**anagen**) or forcibly plucked hairs carry live follicular cells with nuclear DNA.

Structure of hair

- ▶ **Gross structure — three parts:**
 - **Shaft:** the part above the skin, tapering to a naturally pointed, non-medullated tip.
 - **Root:** the part within the skin.
 - **Bulb:** the expanded base of the root inside the follicle, containing the actively dividing matrix.
- ▶ **Microscopic structure — three concentric layers, outside to inside:**
 - **Cuticle:** outermost, thin, non-pigmented, flat overlapping scales; protects the cortex.
 - **Cortex:** the main bulk of the hair; longitudinal cells carrying fibrils and pigment granules that give hair its colour.
 - **Medulla:** innermost, keratinised cell remnants and air sacs; narrow in humans, and may be continuous, fragmented or absent.

- ▶ **Cuticular scale patterns** help identify species: **coronal** scales encircle the shaft completely, **imbricate** scales do not.

Human versus animal hair

- ▶ The **medullary index** is the single most useful discriminator: **diameter of medulla ÷ diameter of whole shaft**.
- ▶ **Human hair: less than 0.3. Animal hair: more than 0.5.**
- ▶ The index also varies with body region, so it can suggest the site of origin.

Trait	Human hair	Animal hair
Cuticle	Short, thin scales	Large, step-like/wavy scales
Cortex	Thick, 4–10× the medulla	Thin, rarely more than 2× the medulla
Medulla	Narrow; discontinuous or absent	Wide and continuous
Medullary index	< 0.3	> 0.5
Pigment	Evenly distributed	Concentrated near the medulla

- ▶ Hair is also distinguished from **textile fibres**, which lack this three-layered structure.

What examination of hair can tell you

- ▶ **Region of body:**
 - Scalp hair is long, soft and tapers gradually.
 - Beard/moustache hair is the thickest of all.
 - Eyebrow, eyelash and nostril hair is stiff, thick and pointed.
 - Chest, axillary and pubic hair is short, curly, often split-ended.
- ▶ **Sex:** hard to tell except from beard/moustache hair (male hair is coarser, thicker, darker).
- ▶ If follicular cells are present, sex is confirmed by **Barr bodies** (X-chromatin): about **29±5% in females** versus **6±2% in males**.
- ▶ Definitive sexing uses the **amelogenin gene** on a DNA profile.
- ▶ **Age:** only broad estimates are possible.
- ▶ **Lanugo** hair (fine, soft, non-pigmented) is seen in newborns.
- ▶ Hair roots from children dissolve rapidly in caustic potash (KOH); older people's hair resists it.
- ▶ Greying typically starts after **40 years**.
- ▶ **Dyeing, bleaching or disease:** bleached hair is brittle and straw-yellow; dyed hair shows non-uniform colour and **fluoresces under UV light**.
- ▶ Disease and poisons can also change hair colour, e.g. greenish in copper smelters.
- ▶ **Forcibly plucked hair:** bulb is large and irregular, root sheath is ruptured.
- ▶ **Naturally shed hair:** bulb is small and atrophied, root sheath is absent.
- ▶ **Nature of injury to the hair:** a sharp weapon gives a clean cut; a blunt weapon crushes and frays the shaft.

- ▶ **Ageing of a cut end:**
 - Freshly cut: sharp edge.
 - About a week: square, smooth edge.
 - Later: rounded, blunt edge.
- ▶ **Singed hair** is swollen, blackened, twisted, carries carbon deposits and a peculiar odour.

Special forensic tests

- ▶ **Blood group:** the ABO group can be determined from a single hair if the bulb is present, using absorption–elution or mixed agglutination.
- ▶ **DNA:** plucked hairs carry live follicular cells suitable for **nuclear DNA (STR)** profiling.
- ▶ Cut hair or naturally shed (telogen) hair lack live cells, so **mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA)** sequencing is used instead.
- ▶ **Trace elements:** chronic heavy-metal poisoning — especially **arsenic**, also antimony, lead, thallium, mercury — leaves metal detectable in hair long after exposure.
- ▶ The level along the shaft gives a rough timeline of exposure.
- ▶ **Neutron Activation Analysis (NAA)** gives a quantitative trace-element profile.
- ▶ **Stains on hair:**
 - *Blood* suggests trauma.
 - *Semen* suggests sexual assault.
 - *Saliva* suggests an asphyxial (suffocation-type) death.
 - *Mud, grass or sand* suggests a struggle.
 - *Carbon* suggests burns or a firearm discharge.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Hair recovered from clothing, the body, weapons or a vehicle links the accused, the victim and the scene, and survives long after the crime.
- ▶ It contributes to personal identification — age, sex, region of origin, blood group, DNA identity, and any peculiarity such as dyeing.
- ▶ In **rape and sodomy**, the pubic hair of the accused may be found on the victim, or vice versa.
- ▶ Medical examination of an accused is done under **Section 53/53A CrPC 1973 (now Sections 51/52 BNSS 2023)**, and of a rape victim under **Section 164A CrPC 1973 (now Section 184 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Rape itself is defined under **Section 375/376 IPC (now Sections 63/64 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ In **bestiality**, animal hair on the accused, or his pubic hair on the animal, is corroborative evidence.
- ▶ Differentiating human from animal hair also matters when a protected animal is killed, under the **Wildlife (Protection) Act, 1972**.
- ▶ Injury to the shaft and bulb helps infer the weapon used — sharp, blunt or fire.
- ▶ **Scalp avulsion** (forcible tearing of the scalp) with hair loss indicates great violence and feeds into the injury opinion under **Sections 319/320 IPC (now Sections 114/116 BNS 2023)**.

- ▶ Detecting arsenic and other heavy metals in hair establishes chronic poisoning.
- ▶ Hair needs **no preservative** for toxicological analysis, unlike most other samples.
- ▶ Findings are given as expert evidence under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Longitudinal section of a hair:** label the tip, shaft, root, bulb, hair follicle, epidermis and dermis.
- ▶ **Cross-section of the hair shaft:** label the concentric layers from outside in — cuticle (overlapping scales), cortex (fibrils and pigment granules), medulla (with air sacs).
- ▶ Annotate the medullary index formula on the cross-section diagram.



Discuss in detail about intersex

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2017 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ **Intersex** means one individual shows physical, gonadal, hormonal and behavioural characters of both sexes, in varying degree.
- ▶ It results from a defect in embryonic sexual development.
- ▶ The modern, less stigmatising term is **Disorders of Sexual Development (DSD)**, replacing "hermaphrodite".
- ▶ The forensic importance lies in **determination of true sex**.
- ▶ This decides marriage, divorce, legitimacy, inheritance, criminal liability, and eligibility for competitive sport.

Six components of sex

- ▶ Normal development needs harmony across six levels of sex.
- ▶ Disharmony at any one level produces an intersex state.
- ▶ **Chromosomal (genetic) sex:** 46,XX or 46,XY.
- ▶ **Gonadal sex:** ovaries or testes.
- ▶ **Hormonal sex:** oestrogens or androgens.
- ▶ **Internal genital sex:** uterus/tubes versus prostate/seminal vesicles.
- ▶ **External genital (phenotypic) sex:** vulva/vagina versus penis/scrotum.
- ▶ **Psychological (gender) sex:** self-identity and direction of attraction.
- ▶ When components conflict, **chromosomal and gonadal sex are the most reliable anchors**.
- ▶ External genital and psychological sex are the least reliable.
- ▶ Incidence is about **0.018%** excluding Klinefelter's and Turner's syndromes.
- ▶ It rises to about **1.7%** when Klinefelter's and Turner's are included.

Classification — Davidson's four groups

This remains the standard exam framework, grouping intersex by gonadal status.

Group	Gonadal status	Type
1	Gonads entirely absent	Gonadal agenesis
2	Gonads present but fail to develop at puberty (streak gonads)	Gonadal dysgenesis (Klinefelter, Turner)
3	Gonads of both sexes present	True hermaphroditism (ovotesticular DSD)
4	Gonad of one sex, external characters of the opposite sex	Pseudohermaphroditism (male / female)

A complementary scheme groups DSD by the **level of failure** — chromosomal, gonadal, or phenotypic sex.

1. Gonadal agenesis

- ▶ Both testes and ovaries fail to develop entirely.
- ▶ Nuclear (chromatin) sex is negative.
- ▶ Karyotype is typically **46,XY**.
- ▶ May be accompanied by penile agenesis.
- ▶ Such individuals are often raised as females, though the psychological sex frequently remains male.

2. Gonadal dysgenesis

- ▶ External sexual structures are present, but the gonads fail to develop at puberty.
- ▶ Gonads are reduced to fibrous **streak gonads** — thin bands of scar-like tissue with no functioning eggs or sperm.
- ▶ Two classic syndromes fall here: Klinefelter's and Turner's.

Klinefelter's syndrome (47,XXY)

- ▶ The **commonest sex-chromosome disorder**.
- ▶ Anatomically male, but nuclear sexing is female — a false-positive Barr body.
- ▶ Incidence about **1 in 500–600 males**.
- ▶ Usually diagnosed because of delayed puberty, behavioural disorder, or mental retardation.
- ▶ **Features:** tall stature, gynaecomastia, small firm testes.
- ▶ **Fertility:** azoospermia and sterility — the commonest genetic cause of male infertility.
- ▶ Also: sparse body hair, eunuchoid build, diabetes.
- ▶ **Hormones:** hypergonadotropic hypogonadism — low testosterone with raised FSH/LH.
- ▶ **Histology:** testicular atrophy with hyalinisation of the seminiferous tubules.

Turner's syndrome (45,XO)

- ▶ The **commonest sex-chromosome abnormality in females**.
- ▶ Anatomically female, but nuclear sexing is male — a false-negative Barr body.

- ▶ Incidence about **1 in 2500 newborn girls**.
- ▶ Recognisable at birth by low birth weight, oedema of the hands/feet, and a webbed neck.
- ▶ **Features:** short stature (the commonest feature), primary amenorrhoea, sterility, streak ovaries.
- ▶ Also: shield chest with widely spaced nipples, cubitus valgus, coarctation of aorta.
- ▶ **Intelligence is usually normal** — a key contrast with Klinefelter's.

3. True hermaphroditism (ovotesticular DSD)

- ▶ Very rare; the individual has both ovarian and testicular tissue.
- ▶ Either a separate ovary and testis, or, more commonly, a fused **ovotestis**.
- ▶ Neither gonad is fully functional.
- ▶ External genitalia are ambiguous; a uterus may be present.
- ▶ Karyotype is usually mosaic — 46,XX/46,XY or 46,XX/47,XXY.

4. Pseudohermaphroditism

- ▶ The gonads belong to one sex, but the external genitalia resemble the opposite sex.

Male pseudohermaphroditism (46,XY DSD) — testes present, but external/internal genitalia are female.

- ▶ **Androgen insensitivity syndrome (AIS):** X-linked recessive; cells fail to respond to androgens.
- ▶ Testes are present, but the uterus is absent — its absence is required for this diagnosis.
- ▶ Phenotype is female with normal breasts, but primary amenorrhoea and a short blind-ending vagina.
- ▶ **5-alpha-reductase deficiency:** autosomal recessive; testosterone cannot convert to dihydrotestosterone (DHT).
- ▶ The genetic male is born with ambiguous genitalia and may virilise at puberty.

Female pseudohermaphroditism (46,XX DSD) — ovaries present, but external genitalia are masculinised.

- ▶ Chief cause is **congenital adrenal hyperplasia (CAH)**, most often 21-hydroxylase deficiency.
- ▶ Low cortisol drives up ACTH, causing adrenal hyperplasia with androgen excess.
- ▶ The excess androgen virilises the XX fetus.

Detection of true sex

- ▶ The correct modern term is "**sex verification testing**", not "gender" or "femininity" testing.
- ▶ **Physical examination:** build, larynx, breasts, hair pattern, genitalia — unreliable alone in intersex.
- ▶ **Barr body (nuclear sexing):** condensed inactive X seen on buccal smear; positive in most females, rare in males.
- ▶ **Davidson body:** neutrophil "drumstick"; present in a small percentage of female neutrophils, absent in males.
- ▶ **Quinacrine Y-staining (F-body):** fluoresces in most males, rare in females.
- ▶ **Karyotyping:** the most definitive test.

- ▶ **Gene testing:** PCR for the SRY gene and the DYZ1 region confirms male genetic sex.
- ▶ **Hormone assay:** serum testosterone and gonadotrophins.
- ▶ **Gonadal biopsy:** confirmatory.

Related conditions (not true intersex)

- ▶ **Concealed sex:** deliberately hiding one's true sex by cross-dressing, usually to evade detection.
- ▶ Resolved by physical exam, nuclear sexing, or, in decomposed bodies, the putrefaction-resistant uterus/prostate.
- ▶ **Transvestism:** wearing opposite-gender clothes from psychological compulsion, not to evade detection.
- ▶ **Transgender/transsexual:** self-identity does not match the assigned sex.
- ▶ This is a gender-identity state, not anatomical intersex.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ Two labelled syndrome figures, side by side.
- ▶ **Klinefelter's (47,XXY):** tall stature, gynaecomastia, reduced beard/body hair, absent frontal baldness, triangular pubic hair pattern, small atrophic testes.
- ▶ **Turner's (45,XO):** short stature, webbed neck, low-set ears with ptosis, shield chest with widely spaced nipples, cubitus valgus, coarctation of aorta, streak ovaries.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Civil matters:** marriage, nullity, divorce, legitimacy, heirship, inheritance, and impotence disputes.
- ▶ Impotence — inability to perform intercourse — is a recognised consequence of intersex.
- ▶ **Impotence (not mere sterility) is a ground for a voidable marriage** under Section 12, Hindu Marriage Act 1955.
- ▶ A marriage is **void** if a party was impotent and the impotence incurable, under Section 24, Special Marriage Act 1954.
- ▶ **Criminal matters:** sexual offences turn on the true sex of the victim or accused.
- ▶ Concealed sex is unmasked by nuclear sexing.
- ▶ A criminal medical exam ordered to settle disputed sex proceeds under **Section 53/53A CrPC 1973 (now Section 51/52 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The sex-determination opinion is tendered as expert evidence under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ **Identification of the dead:** sexing dismembered parts, skeletal remains, teeth, and hair.
- ▶ In decomposition, the uterus/prostate and Barr body/Y-chromosome survive in hair roots, bone marrow, and dental pulp.
- ▶ **Competitive sport:** eligibility hinges on long-term endogenous androgen exposure, decided by sex-verification testing.
- ▶ **Doctor's duties:** examine only with valid informed consent.

- ▶ Base the opinion on the most reliable components — chromosomal and gonadal sex.
- ▶ Document objectively and respect the examinee's dignity and confidentiality.



Discuss teeth bite marks and medicolegal importance

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

- ▶ A **bite mark** (*odontoglyphic mark*) is a patterned injury made when teeth are pressed forcibly into skin, food, or another soft object.
- ▶ It records, in reverse (negative), the size, shape, and arrangement of the biter's dental arches.
- ▶ Human dentition is believed to be virtually unique, so a recovered bite mark can be compared with a suspect's teeth.
- ▶ Such comparison is used mainly for **exclusion** (easier and more reliable) rather than firm **inclusion**.
- ▶ Bite marks are seen chiefly in sexual assault, child abuse, homicide with a struggle, and in food or material left behind by an offender.

Appearance and morphology of a human bite mark

- ▶ **Shape:** semicircular or crescentic (elliptical), made by the incisors and canines.
- ▶ Two opposed "bows" (arches) face each other, with a **gap at each end** where the jaws separated.
- ▶ **Tissue reaction:** may be an abrasion, a contusion (bruise), a laceration, or a mix of these.
- ▶ **Suction effect:** the sucking action of a forcible bite lowers pressure over the mark and ruptures small vessels.
 - This produces multiple **petechiae** (pinpoint bleeding spots) at the centre.
 - With greater force, the petechiae merge into a frank contusion.
- ▶ **Distortion:** on a curved or irregular body part, only part of the arch touches the skin, so the mark is incomplete.
 - Stretching of the skin during the bite distorts the pattern further.
 - Rarely the mark is linear, from the upper incisors scraping the skin.
- ▶ Faint marks become visible under **ultraviolet light** in a darkened room.
- ▶ In a living victim, a bite mark becomes apparent **1–24 hours** after infliction.

Classification of bite marks (severity-based)

Class	Tissue features	Evidentiary value
I	No individual tooth marks; just a diffuse bruise ring (e.g. a love bite/hickey)	Little value for matching teeth; useful for saliva and DNA
II	Class plus some individual characteristics; both arches identifiable	Better for exclusion than for inclusion

Class	Tissue features	Evidentiary value
III	Excellent tooth morphology in at least one arch; may show a 3-D indentation	Can give a full dental profile of the biter (e.g. the <i>Ted Bundy</i> case)
IV	Incision or excision of tissue (e.g. a nipple bitten off)	Tooth profile often lost; DNA may be contaminated

- ▶ **Class characteristics** are the arch size and overall tooth arrangement.
- ▶ **Individual characteristics** are chips, fractures, rotations, and other peculiarities of specific teeth.

Bite marks in special contexts

- ▶ **Sexual ("love") bites:** the teeth grip while sucking, producing central petechiae and reddening, often without clear tooth marks.
 - Common sites are the breast, neck, cheek, abdomen, arms, thighs, and genitalia.
 - A bite on the breast or nipple can change shape once the sucked-in tissue is released.
- ▶ **Child abuse:** bite marks may appear anywhere on the body and corroborate physical abuse.
- ▶ **Self-inflicted bites:** usually on the shoulders and arms, within the person's own reach.
- ▶ **Defence bites:** a struggling victim may bite the attacker, leaving marks on the assailant's hands or forearms.

Recording, reproducing and matching bite marks

- ▶ **Photography:** photograph the mark with two scales placed at right angles.
 - Photograph the suspect's teeth using mirrors that capture a full arch in one frame.
- ▶ **Casts and tracings:** make a positive cast of the suspect's teeth.
 - Ink the front teeth's cutting edges and trace them onto a transparent overlay.
 - Superimpose this tracing on a photograph of the bite mark.
 - Exclusion is easier than a firm positive match, since skin and food do not reproduce teeth exactly.
- ▶ **Digital 3-D imaging:** the bite can be captured as a measurable 3-D data set for comparison.
- ▶ **Caution:** several wrongful convictions based on bite-mark "matching" have since been overturned by DNA evidence.
 - Bite-mark identification should now be corroborated with DNA (usually from saliva) wherever possible.

Evidence collection from a bite mark

- ▶ Swab the mark immediately with a swab moistened in sterile water (the **double-swab technique**).
- ▶ Also take a swab of an adjacent control area and of the victim's own saliva.
- ▶ Saliva can reveal the assailant's **blood group** (in secretors) and yield **DNA** from shed cheek-lining cells.
- ▶ If dispatch is delayed, keep the swabs in a refrigerator's freezer compartment.
- ▶ The bitten skin may be excised and preserved in formalin.

Differentiating human from animal bites

- ▶ **Human:** semicircular/crescentic arch; inter-canine distance is 25–40 mm in adults and under 25 mm in children.
- ▶ **Dog:** the most common animal bite; narrow squarish arch with deep punctures that can mimic stab wounds.
- ▶ **Cat:** small rounded arch with canine punctures, usually alongside claw scratch marks.
- ▶ **Rodent:** very small, round bites; tissue is gnawed away, leaving shallow craters and grooves — almost always postmortem.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — Human bite mark on skin.** Label the upper and lower arches, the two opposed bows with their concavities facing each other, the gap at each end, the central zone of confluent petechiae, and the individual incisor/canine marks.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — Human vs dog vs cat dental arch.** Label the human's broad semicircular arch (25–40 mm inter-canine distance), the dog's narrow squarish arch with deep punctures, and the cat's small rounded arch with canine punctures plus claw scratches.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ A bite mark, especially a Class III mark, can be compared with a suspect's teeth for inclusion or exclusion.
- ▶ Saliva left on the mark gives the assailant's blood group and DNA.
- ▶ Bites in foodstuffs left at a scene (cheese, bread, fruit) can also be matched to a person's teeth.
- ▶ The site of a bite suggests the nature of the crime.
 - Bites on the breast or genitalia suggest sexual assault.
 - Bites anywhere on a child suggest child abuse.
 - Bites on the assailant's own hands or forearms suggest a struggle (a defence injury).
- ▶ **Loss, fracture, or dislocation of a tooth is grievous hurt** under clause (g) of **Section 116 Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita (BNS) 2023** (formerly clause "Seventhly" of **Section 320 IPC 1860**).
 - The BNS shortened the qualifying period in the "severe bodily pain" clause from twenty days (IPC) to fifteen days.
 - The tooth must not have been previously loose for the injury to count as a genuine fracture or dislocation.
 - Voluntarily causing such an injury is punishable under **Section 117 BNS 2023** (formerly **Section 322/325 IPC 1860**).
- ▶ In rape cases, the accused should be examined for bite marks and fingertip bruises, ideally by the same doctor who examined the victim.
 - Medical examination of the accused is done under **Section 51/52 BNSS 2023** (formerly **Section 53/53A CrPC 1973**).
 - Examination of the victim is done under **Section 184 BNSS 2023** (formerly **Section 164A CrPC 1973**).

- ▶ At autopsy, bite marks on the sides of the **tongue**, with submucosal haemorrhage under intact mucosa, point to death during a seizure or epileptic fit.
- ▶ Duties of the examining doctor: photograph with scales, swab by the double-swab technique, preserve excised skin in formalin, document the mark's site/size/shape/age, and refer to a forensic odontologist for arch comparison.



Discuss the chronology of eruption of temporary dentition and permanent dentition

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Eruption:** the top of a developing tooth's crown appears level with the alveolar bone surface.
- ▶ Humans are **diphyodont** — two successive sets of teeth erupt in a lifetime.
- ▶ **Temporary (deciduous/milk) dentition:** 20 teeth, later shed.
- ▶ **Permanent dentition:** 32 teeth.
- ▶ Eruption timing is fixed and predictable, so teeth are the single best tool for age estimation from **6 months to about 25 years**.

Tooth development — before eruption

- ▶ **Alveolar cavities** (bony sockets) start forming at the **3rd–4th month of intrauterine life**, from a tooth germ shaped like the future crown.
- ▶ Teeth calcify in a fixed order: **crown first, then neck, then roots**.
- ▶ **At birth**, the rudiments of all temporary teeth and of the first permanent molars are already present in the jaws, with a **neonatal line** marking the stress of birth.
- ▶ **Root formation** begins only after the crown is complete.
- ▶ Eruption starts once about **three-quarters of the root** has formed; the growing root pushes the crown through the bone.
- ▶ When a permanent tooth erupts, it presses on the root of the milk tooth above it.
- ▶ That root **resorbs** (is broken down) until only the crown is left, which then falls out — this is physiological shedding.
- ▶ Eruption age is influenced by **heredity, environment, nutrition, and endocrine status**.

Chronology of temporary (deciduous) dentition

- ▶ **Formula:** 20 teeth — 4 incisors, 2 canines, 4 molars per jaw.
- ▶ Dental formula **2102** per quadrant; there are **no premolars** in the milk set.
- ▶ **Onset:** eruption starts at **6–7 months** after birth.
- ▶ **Completion:** all 20 milk teeth are present by about **2½–3 years**.
- ▶ **Lower teeth erupt before upper teeth**, except the **lateral incisor**, which appears earlier in the upper jaw.
- ▶ Eruption proceeds **medial to lateral** — central incisor first, then lateral incisor.

- ▶ Deciduous eruption is **more regular and symmetrical** than permanent eruption.
- ▶ **Delayed dentition:** malnutrition, rickets, hypothyroidism (cretinism).
- ▶ **Premature dentition:** congenital syphilis — teeth may even be present at birth.
- ▶ **Spacing** develops between milk teeth by about **4 years**, making room for the bigger permanent teeth.

Chronology of permanent dentition

- ▶ **Formula:** 32 teeth — 4 incisors, 2 canines, 4 premolars, 6 molars per jaw.
- ▶ Dental formula 2123 per quadrant.
- ▶ **Superadded teeth** have no deciduous predecessor, erupt behind the milk teeth, and increase the total tooth count.
 - All permanent molars (1st, 2nd, 3rd) are superadded — 6 per jaw, 12 in all.
- ▶ **Successional teeth** erupt in place of a milk tooth and do not change the total count.
 - Incisors and canines replace their like-named milk teeth.
 - Premolars replace the deciduous molars.
 - There are **10 successional teeth per jaw**.
- ▶ The **first permanent molar** ("6-year molar") is the **first permanent tooth to erupt**, at **6–7 years**, while all milk teeth are still present — this starts the **mixed dentition** period.
- ▶ Lower incisors, premolars, and molars erupt about **one year before** the corresponding upper teeth.
- ▶ **Third molars (wisdom teeth)** erupt first in the lower jaw, usually left before right, and **not always symmetrically**.
- ▶ Eruption is generally **earlier in females**.
 - In males, dental age and skeletal age correspond closely.
 - In females, skeletal age runs about one year ahead of dental age.

Table — eruption ages, deciduous vs permanent

Tooth	Deciduous eruption	Permanent eruption
Central incisor	6–8 months	6–8 years
Lateral incisor	7–12 months	7–9 years
Canine	17–18 months	11–12 years
First premolar	—	9–11 years
Second premolar	—	10–12 years
First molar	12–14 months	6–7 years
Second molar	20–30 months	12–14 years
Third molar	—	17–25 years

Mixed dentition and tooth counts by age

- ▶ **Mixed dentition** means both temporary and permanent teeth are present together.
- ▶ It runs from the first permanent molar's eruption (~6 years) until the last milk tooth is shed — usually the canine.
- ▶ This period spans roughly **6 to 11 years**.
- ▶ Between **7 and 12 years the total tooth count stays fixed at 24** — each erupting permanent tooth simply replaces a milk tooth.
- ▶ **Rule of thumb:** permanent teeth $\approx (\text{age in years} - 5) \times 4$.
- ▶ Key landmarks by age:
 - 6 months — 2 teeth.
 - 1 year — 8 teeth.
 - 2½–5 years — 20 teeth (all deciduous).
 - 6 years — 24 teeth (20 deciduous + 4 first molars).
 - 11 years — 24 teeth (all permanent).
 - 12 years — 28 teeth (second molars erupt).
 - 17–25 years — 32 teeth (third molars erupt).

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Deciduous eruption clock (months):** one lower-jaw quadrant, medial to lateral — central incisor 6, lateral incisor 12, first molar 14, canine 18, second molar 24.
- ▶ **Permanent eruption chart (years):** one quadrant — first molar 6, central incisor 7, lateral incisor 8, first premolar 9, second premolar 10, canine 11, second molar 12, third molar 17–25.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Dental eruption/calcification is the **best single age indicator from 6 months to about 13 years**.
- ▶ **Beyond the eruptive phase, other age methods apply:**
 - **Gustafson's method:** six regressive changes — attrition, periodontosis, secondary dentine, root resorption, root transparency, cementum apposition; error ± 4 –7 years.
 - **Boyde's method:** counts cross-striations from the neonatal line; useful in infants.
 - **Stack's method:** based on weight/height of the erupting tooth.
 - **Aspartic-acid racemisation.**
- ▶ **A child under seven years cannot commit an offence (*doli incapax*) — Section 20 BNS 2023 (Section 82 IPC 1860).**
- ▶ **A child aged 7–12 years is presumed capable of an offence only if he has sufficient maturity to understand the nature and consequences of his conduct — Section 21 BNS 2023 (Section 83 IPC 1860).**
- ▶ **A child under 12 years cannot give valid consent to an act done in good faith for their benefit — Section 27 BNS 2023 (Section 89 IPC 1860).**

- ▶ A person above 18 years can consent to harm not intended or known to cause death or grievous hurt — Section 25 BNS 2023 (Section 87 IPC 1860).
- ▶ Dental age also fixes **juvenility** — below 18 years, Juvenile Justice Act 2015; heinous offenders aged 16–18 may be tried as adults.
- ▶ It fixes consent/liability under the POCSO Act 2012 — erupted third molars suggest an age over 17–18 years.
- ▶ It fixes witness competence — a child under 12 need not be sworn — and **majority** at 18 years, Section 3 Indian Majority Act 1875.
- ▶ Teeth resist heat and decomposition and survive when soft tissue is destroyed, so they are valuable for identifying unknown bodies and mass-disaster victims.
- ▶ Record findings on a tooth chart (Palmer, Universal/Cunningham, Haderup, or FDI two-digit system) with radiographs (OPG) showing unerupted teeth and root completion.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ Temporary set = **20 teeth** (2102); permanent set = **32 teeth** (2123); humans are **diphyodont**.
- ▶ **Superadded teeth** = all molars (12 total), no predecessor, increase the count; **successional teeth** = 10 per jaw, replace milk teeth.
- ▶ Fully erupted third molars indicate age over 17–18 years; an edentulous jaw indicates age over 70 years.
- ▶ Delayed dentition: rickets, hypothyroidism, malnutrition, Down's syndrome; premature: congenital syphilis.



Discuss the features of the human bone/s with best reliability to estimate sex, as per Krogman's gradings, including subjective and objective criteria

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ Sexing of skeletal remains means determining biological sex from bone.
- ▶ It is one of the "big four" parameters of personal identity, along with age, stature, and race.
- ▶ Bones show **sexual dimorphism**, a size/shape difference between the sexes that usually appears only after puberty.
- ▶ The **pelvis is the exception** — its dimorphism is present from fetal life, making it the single most reliable bone.
- ▶ The highest confidence comes from a **mix of subjective (visual) and objective (measured) criteria**, not any one feature alone.

Krogman's gradings — accuracy of sexing from skeletal remains

Accuracy rises with the amount and type of bone available.

S.No	Bone(s) available	Accuracy
1	Entire skeleton	100%
2	Pelvis + skull together	98%
3	Pelvis alone	95%
4	Skull alone	90%
5	Long bones alone	80%

- ▶ The hierarchy is **pelvis > skull > long bones**.
- ▶ The pelvis is most reliable because it is adapted for child-bearing, making its dimorphism the most pronounced and earliest to appear.
- ▶ These figures are best-case; routine practice gives lower accuracy.
- ▶ With the pelvis present, real-world accuracy is closer to **75–80%**.
- ▶ Without the pelvis, accuracy falls to about **50%** — no better than chance.

Subjective versus objective criteria

- ▶ **Two methods** exist for sexing a skeleton: subjective and objective.
- ▶ **Subjective (morphologic)**: a visual assessment of shape, roughness, and muscle markings — mainly used for the **skull**.
- ▶ **Objective (metric)**: measurements converted into ratios or indices — mainly used for the **femur** and other long bones.
- ▶ In practice both methods are combined for best accuracy.
- ▶ A measurement may fall within an **identification point**, a range that overlaps between sexes.
- ▶ Or it may cross a **demarking point**, a value beyond which the bone is certainly one sex, giving a clear answer.

Pelvis — the bone of best reliability

The pelvis (innominate bones + sacrum) gives the highest accuracy of any single bone.

- ▶ **Subpubic angle**: V-shaped and sharp (70–75°) in the male; U-shaped, rounded, and broad (90–100°) in the female.
- ▶ **Greater sciatic notch**: narrow, deep, and more acute in the male; broad, shallow, and wider in the female.
- ▶ **Pelvic inlet**: heart-shaped in the male; circular or elliptical, and more spacious, in the female.
- ▶ **Obturator foramen**: large and oval in the male; small and triangular in the female.
- ▶ **Acetabulum**: about 52 mm across and directed laterally in the male; about 46 mm and directed anterolaterally in the female.
- ▶ **Preauricular sulcus**: infrequent and shallow in the male; frequent, broad, and deep in the female.

Phenice criteria (visual signs on the pubic bone):

- ▶ **Ventral arc**: a raised ridge on the ventral pubis, present in females and absent in males.
- ▶ **Subpubic concavity**: a concave subpubic contour in females; straight in males.

- ▶ **Medial aspect of the ischiopubic ramus:** sharp and well-defined in males, narrower and less distinct in females.

Signs of previous child-birth (parturition scars):

- ▶ Dorsal pitting of the pubis.
- ▶ Scarring of the preauricular groove.
- ▶ Scarring of the interosseous (sacroiliac) groove.
- ▶ The **greater sciatic notch is the best feature to sex a child**, since pelvic dimorphism exists even before birth.

Objective pelvic indices:

- ▶ The **ischiopubic (Washburn) index** is the single best metric index — lower in males (73–94), higher in females (91–115).
- ▶ The **sciatic notch index** runs higher in females, since their notch is wide and shallow.
- ▶ Other indices used include the sacral index, the chiotic line index, and Kimura's base-wing (alar) index.

Skull — the second-best bone

Skull sexing is mostly visual and gives about 90% accuracy alone.

- ▶ Old female skulls can "masculinise," which reduces reliability with age.
- ▶ **Size:** larger and heavier in the male (1500–1550 mL capacity); smaller and lighter in the female (1350–1400 mL).
- ▶ **Forehead:** sloping and receding in the male; vertical, round, and full in the female.
- ▶ **Glabella and brow ridges:** prominent in the male; smooth or absent in the female.
- ▶ **Orbits:** square with rounded margins in the male; rounded with sharp margins in the female.
- ▶ **Mastoid process:** large, round, and blunt in the male; small and pointed in the female.
- ▶ **Mandible:** square chin, gonial angle under 125°, in the male; rounded chin, a more obtuse and inverted angle, in the female.

Long bones — least reliable

Long bones give only about 80% accuracy and rely mainly on measurement.

- ▶ **Femur:** head vertical diameter over 47 mm in males, under 45 mm in females; the male head forms about two-thirds of a sphere.
- ▶ **Sternum** (Hyrtl's law / Ashley's rule): in males the sternal body is more than twice the manubrium's length, and total length exceeds 149 mm.
- ▶ Among hand bones, the **2nd metacarpal is best** for sexing; the 3rd is the worst.
- ▶ **Patellar volume:** over 15 cc in males, under 11 cc in females.
- ▶ The **medullary index** (marrow-cavity diameter ÷ whole-bone diameter) has largely failed as a sexing tool.
- ▶ Female skeletal measurements average about **94% of male** measurements in the same race.

Modern objective method — DNA / amelogenin

- ▶ The **amelogenin gene** in tooth enamel differs by chromosome: **AMELX** (X chromosome) is ~106 base pairs, **AMELY** (Y chromosome) is ~112 base pairs.
- ▶ On gel electrophoresis, **males show two bands and females show one band**.
- ▶ Being **PCR-based**, the test works even on degraded DNA, from as little as ~20 picograms.
- ▶ It works even on bones with little visible dimorphism, such as metacarpals and metatarsals — the most objective method of all.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Male vs female pelvis, anterior view, side by side** — label the subpubic angle, greater sciatic notch, pelvic inlet, obturator foramen, and body of pubis for each sex.
- ▶ **Innominate bone showing the sciatic notch angle** — label the sharper male angle versus the wider, more obtuse female angle, and the auricular surface (raised in male, flat in female).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Sex is the first of the "big four" identity parameters, halving the search pool in unknown, skeletonised, or mutilated bodies, mass disasters, and exhumations.
- ▶ Sex determination is medico-legally required in cases of concealed or disputed sex.
- ▶ It is also required in inheritance and succession disputes, and in divorce or employment disputes over sex.
- ▶ It is needed to assess impotence allegations, rape allegations, and the outcome after sex-reassignment surgery.
- ▶ In advanced putrefaction, soft-tissue sexing relies on the **uterus or prostate**, which resist decay the longest.
- ▶ In fully skeletal remains, the pelvis, skull, and amelogenin DNA testing are used instead.
- ▶ Expert evidence on identification may be needed under **Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam, BSA, 2023)**.
- ▶ Skeletal identification is often part of an inquest under **Section 174/176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194/196 of the Bharatiya Nagarik Suraksha Sanhita, BNSS, 2023)**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Discuss the morphological changes occurring over symphyseal surface of pubis and its relevance in determining age by Todd's method. Add a note on Mc Kern and Stewart's modifications for the same

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ The **pubic symphysis** is the cartilaginous joint joining the right and left pubic bones in the front midline of the pelvis.

- ▶ The **symphyseal surface** is the flat articular face of each pubic bone that forms this joint.
- ▶ It is the **best single criterion for adult age from the third to the fifth decade**, and the best criterion after 25 years.
- ▶ Reliable markers before 25 years — dental eruption, epiphyseal union, cranial sutures — are exhausted by then, so the symphysis takes over.
- ▶ **Todd (1920)** first described the age changes as **ten phases**.
- ▶ **McKern and Stewart (1957)** later reworked this into a **three-component scoring system**.

Why the pubic symphysis is used for adult age

- ▶ Dental eruption, epiphyseal union, and cranial-suture activity are reliable only up to about 25 years.
- ▶ After that, age must be read from slower degenerative and remodelling changes instead.
- ▶ The symphyseal surface remodels steadily from the late teens into old age.
- ▶ This makes it the most useful single marker for ages **18–50 years**.
- ▶ The bone must be **defleshed and free of cartilage** before it is examined.
- ▶ Post-mortem erosion or drying damage blurs the surface, so it must be intact and well preserved.
- ▶ The method is **sex-specific**: the female pubis matures about **ten years later** than the male.
- ▶ Applying male criteria to a female **under-estimates her age by about ten years**.
- ▶ All the classic phase systems — Todd, McKern–Stewart, Suchey–Brooks — were built from **all-male** samples.

Morphological changes over the symphyseal surface with age

- ▶ The young-adult face is rugged, crossed by transverse ridges (billows) with grooves between them.
- ▶ With age the ridges disappear, the face becomes granular, then smooth, then rimmed, and finally erodes.

Age (approx.)	Appearance of the symphyseal surface
Before 20 y	Compact bone lies near/over the surface
~20 y	Markedly irregular, uneven; transverse ridges present
25–40 y	Ridges disappear; surface turns granular; ventral and dorsal margins become defined
40–45 y	Oval, smooth surface with raised upper and lower ends
45–50 y	A narrow, beaded rim develops on the margins
50–60 y	Erosion begins; the ventral margin breaks down
60–70 y	Surface is irregularly eroded

- ▶ In women who have previously given birth, the dorsal border may show irregular pits called **scars of parturition**.

- ▶ These reflect childbirth, not chronological age, and must not be mistaken for an ageing change.

Todd's method (1920)

- ▶ Todd studied a documented series of **306 males of known age**.
- ▶ He identified **billowing** (wave-like ridges), **ridging**, and **ossific nodules** on the face.
- ▶ He tracked the build-up of the **ventral rampart** and the formation of the dorsal, superior, and inferior margins.
- ▶ From these landmarks he defined **ten phases**, spanning **18 to 50+ years**.
- ▶ The unknown specimen is matched against these phase descriptions, and Todd's casts or photographs, to read off an age range.
- ▶ Todd's system became the **foundation for every later pubic-symphysis ageing method**.
- ▶ **Limitation — sample:** derived from an all-male series only.
- ▶ **Limitation — specimen:** needs a clean, cartilage-free, undamaged surface.
- ▶ **Limitation — precision:** accuracy falls after about 40 years.
- ▶ **Limitation — scoring:** reading the whole face as a single phase makes scoring somewhat subjective.

McKern and Stewart's modification (1957)

- ▶ Based on **349 male Korean-War dead**, whose ages were documented from military records.
- ▶ Instead of reading the whole face as one phase, they scored **three components separately**.
- ▶ **Dorsal demiface:** the inner half of the symphyseal face.
- ▶ **Ventral demiface:** the outer half, where the ventral rampart builds up.
- ▶ **Symphyseal rim:** the third component.
- ▶ Each component is graded into **six stages, scored 0–5**.
- ▶ The three component scores are **added together**, then converted to an age estimate using their tables.
- ▶ Like Todd's, this reference sample was **all-male**.
- ▶ **Drawback 1:** the three components do not vary independently of one another.
- ▶ **Drawback 2:** the system is unduly complex to apply in practice.
- ▶ These drawbacks pushed the field toward newer systems.
- ▶ **Brooks (1955)** had already modified Todd's method.
- ▶ **Katz and Suchey (1986)** then revised Brooks's work into the **Suchey–Brooks system**.
- ▶ Suchey–Brooks is now the **most widely accepted method**.
- ▶ It uses **six phases** and a set of **12 physical casts** for direct comparison.

Limitations of pubic-symphysis ageing (all methods)

- ▶ All methods give **wide age ranges**, often too imprecise for individual identification.
- ▶ Precision **falls sharply after about 40 years** — true of Todd, McKern–Stewart, and Suchey–Brooks alike.
- ▶ Environmental and genetic factors cause wide, poorly understood population variation.

- ▶ Reading the surface is **highly subjective**, with real inter-observer disagreement.
- ▶ It should only be attempted by an experienced examiner.

Recent advances

- ▶ **Transition Analysis** is a multifactorial statistical method for skeletal age estimation.
- ▶ It combines several correlated traits: **pubic symphysis, iliac auricular surface, and cranial sutures**.
- ▶ It produces one age estimate with a **95% prediction interval**.
- ▶ It models the probability of transitioning between successive ageing stages.
- ▶ It can be applied even to **partial skeletons**, a common forensic reality.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — age sequence of the symphyseal surface:** label transverse ridges (billows), grooves, ventral margin/rampart, dorsal margin, superior and inferior extremities, symphyseal rim, and the eroded old-age surface.
- ▶ Draw it as a row: ridged young-adult face → granular face with formed margins → smooth oval rimmed face → eroded face.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — McKern–Stewart's three components:** outline the symphyseal face split into a *ventral demiface* and *dorsal demiface*, with the *symphyseal rim* marked as the third component, each scored in six stages (0–5).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Age estimation from bone is part of establishing **identity** in unknown, decomposed, or skeletonised bodies, mass disasters, and exhumed remains.
- ▶ Along with age, the expert also reports **sex, stature, and other identifying features**.
- ▶ Age helps resolve legal questions such as **minor versus adult** status and criminal responsibility.
- ▶ It helps confirm or exclude a suspected identity in homicide and missing-person cases.
- ▶ The expert must give an **age range, not a single year**, and flag the wide error after 40 years.
- ▶ The correct **sex-specific criteria** must be applied, remembering the roughly ten-year female lag.
- ▶ The doctor's opinion on age and identity is **expert evidence**, admissible under **Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam, BSA, 2023)**.
- ▶ Investigation of skeletal or decomposed remains starts with the police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Magistrate's inquest is governed by **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ **Exhumation** of buried remains needs a written **magistrate's order** under **Section 176(3) CrPC 1973 (now within Section 196 BNSS 2023)** — the police cannot order it themselves.

♦ ♦ ♦

Forensic gynaecology & sexual offences

♦ ♦ ♦

Changes in umbilicus and umbilical cord after birth

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2024 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

- ▶ The **umbilical cord** (*funis*) connects the placenta to the fetus.
- ▶ At full term it is **50–55 cm long and about 1 cm thick**.
- ▶ It contains two umbilical arteries, one umbilical vein, and protective **Wharton's jelly**.
- ▶ After birth, the cord stump and umbilicus go through a fixed, time-bound sequence of changes.
- ▶ This sequence is a key forensic indicator of **duration of survival after birth**.
- ▶ It is central to **infanticide, livebirth-versus-stillbirth, and legitimacy** disputes.
- ▶ **Caution:** drying and mummification of the cord can happen even in a stillborn child.
- ▶ These early changes track exposure to air, not necessarily life.

Normal anatomy at full term

- ▶ **Length:** 50–55 cm; **thickness:** about 1 cm.
- ▶ **Vessels:** two umbilical arteries (deoxygenated blood, fetus to placenta) and one umbilical vein (oxygenated blood, to fetus).
- ▶ **Wharton's jelly:** protective mucoid tissue that prevents kinking or compression of the vessels.
- ▶ **Umbilicus position:** midway between the pubis and the xiphisternum at full term.
- ▶ In a premature infant the umbilicus lies nearer the pubis — a sign of immaturity.
- ▶ **Funic souffle:** a soft blowing murmur synchronous with fetal heart sounds, heard antenatally — a positive sign of a live fetus.

Time-bound changes in the cord stump (the key sequence)

- ▶ Memory aid: 1, 2, 3 — then 5–6 — then 10–12.
- ▶ **~2 hours:** blood clots in the cut end of the cord.
- ▶ **12–24 hours:** cord **shrinks and dries**; vessels start closing by 24 hours.
 - This step is *not* proof of life — it happens in a stillborn cord too.
- ▶ **36–48 hours:** an **inflammatory ring** (line of demarcation) forms at the base of the stump.
 - This step *does* suggest the child lived, because inflammation needs a circulation.
- ▶ **2nd–3rd day:** cord **mummifies** — dries, shrivels, turns brown-black.
 - Mummification also happens after death if the body is exposed to air.
 - It does NOT occur if the child is submerged in water right after birth.
- ▶ **5th–6th day:** cord **separates and falls off**, leaving a small ulcer.
- ▶ **10th–12th day:** the ulcer **heals into a scar** — the permanent umbilical cicatrix.
- ▶ **Bottom line:** only the inflammatory ring and a healed scar prove life — drying and mummification alone do not.

Closure of the fetal circulatory shunts

- ▶ **Umbilical arteries:** start contracting by ~10 hours, fully closed by the **3rd day**.
- ▶ **Umbilical vein and ductus venosus:** close by about the **4th day**.
- ▶ **Ductus arteriosus:** closes by about the **10th day**.

- ▶ **Foramen ovale:** closes by the 2nd–3rd month.
- ▶ Closed umbilical arteries become the **medial umbilical ligaments**.
- ▶ The closed umbilical vein becomes the **ligamentum teres** of the liver.
- ▶ The ductus venosus becomes the **ligamentum venosum**.
- ▶ The ductus arteriosus becomes the **ligamentum arteriosum**.
- ▶ The foramen ovale leaves behind the **fossa ovalis**.
- ▶ **Patent foramen ovale:** stays probe-patent in about 30% of adults — a normal variant, not disease by itself.

Examining the cord at infant autopsy

- ▶ Record the **length** of the remaining cord and whether it is still attached to the placenta.
- ▶ Note whether the cord was **cut, torn, or ligatured**.
- ▶ Look for **abnormal twists or knots**.
- ▶ Examine the umbilicus for **signs of inflammation**.
- ▶ A **ligature** on the cord generally means an attended birth, supporting **live birth**.
- ▶ A **clean cut** (scissors) suggests a skilled, attended delivery.
- ▶ A **ragged, torn** end suggests self-delivery or unattended, precipitate labour.
- ▶ In precipitate labour the cord may **snap** under the baby's weight, more often at the fetal end — a recognised cause of neonatal death from haemorrhage.
- ▶ A **macerated (dead-born) cord** is red, smooth, thickened and soft — unlike the dry, shrivelled cord of a child who lived.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ The cord-change timeline, read with shunt closure, estimates **duration of survival after birth**.
- ▶ This is central to **infanticide/neonaticide** charges — killing a child within 24 hours of birth.
- ▶ There is **no separate infanticide statute in India**.
- ▶ It is tried as ordinary **culpable homicide or murder**.
- ▶ Murder: **Section 300/302 IPC 1860 (now Section 101/103 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ Culpable homicide: **Section 299/304 IPC 1860 (now Section 100/105 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ Inquest on the body: **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**, and where ordered, **Section 176 CrPC 1973 (now Section 196 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The autopsy report is tendered as **expert opinion under Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ A present **inflammatory ring** or a **healed umbilical scar** is positive evidence the child was born alive.
- ▶ A **red, smooth, thickened, soft cord** points to maceration and dead birth.
- ▶ **Homicidal strangulation with the cord** must always be considered when a cord is found around a newborn's neck — distinguish it from accidental intrauterine/intravaginal entanglement.
- ▶ **Cord prolapse or compression** (for example in a breech delivery) can cause death by asphyxia during birth.

- Umbilical changes, with other maturity signs, help fix how recently a child was born — relevant in legitimacy/identity disputes.

Homicidal versus accidental cord strangulation

Feature	Homicidal	Accidental (cord entanglement)
Neck tissue injury	More	Less
Knot	Complicated	Simple (e.g., reef knot)
Wharton's jelly	May show rough handling	Undamaged
Lungs	Fully expanded (born alive)	Incompletely expanded (died in utero/intra-partum)

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- **Cross-section of the umbilical cord** — label the outer amniotic epithelium, Wharton's jelly, two umbilical arteries, and one umbilical vein.
- **Timeline bar of post-birth changes:** 2 h – clot; 12–24 h – shrinks & dries; 36–48 h – inflammatory ring; 2–3 d – mummifies; 5–6 d – falls off; 10–12 d – scar.
- Optional parallel bar for shunt closure: arteries by ~3 d, vein/ductus venosus by ~4 d, ductus arteriosus by ~10 d, foramen ovale by 2–3 months.

High-yield exam pointers

- Full-term cord: 50–55 cm × ~1 cm; umbilicus midway between pubis and xiphoid.
- Sequence: clot 2 h → dries 12–24 h → inflammatory ring 36–48 h → mummifies 2–3 d → falls off 5–6 d → scar 10–12 d.
- Only the **inflammatory ring** and **healed scar** prove life; drying/mummification alone do not.
- Mummification does **not** occur if the body is submerged in water right after birth.
- Shunt closure: arteries ~3 d, vein/ductus venosus ~4 d, ductus arteriosus ~10 d, foramen ovale 2–3 months.
- **PFO persists in ~30%** of adults as a normal variant.
- Cord remnants: arteries → medial umbilical ligaments; vein → ligamentum teres; ductus venosus → ligamentum venosum; ductus arteriosus → ligamentum arteriosum.
- At autopsy record: length, cut/torn/ligatured, knots, inflammation.
- Ligature or clean cut suggests an attended live birth; torn ragged end suggests unattended delivery.
- Macerated cord = red, smooth, thickened, soft — opposite of a liveborn child's dry cord.
- Infanticide is tried under general law: IPC 300/302 (now BNS 101/103), IPC 299/304 (now BNS 100/105); inquest under CrPC 174 (now BNSS 194).

♦ ♦ ♦

Describe Fetal Circulation giving its medico-legal importance

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Fetal circulation** is the blood-flow pattern of the unborn child.
- ▶ The **placenta**, not the lungs, handles gas exchange, nutrition and excretion.
- ▶ Fetal lungs are collapsed and non-functioning before birth.
- ▶ Three **shunts** bypass the lungs and liver: ductus venosus, foramen ovale, ductus arteriosus.
- ▶ **One umbilical vein** carries oxygenated blood in; **two umbilical arteries** carry deoxygenated blood out.
- ▶ The best-oxygenated blood is routed to the brain and heart first.
- ▶ At birth, the first breath and cord clamping convert this to adult circulation, closing the shunts in sequence.
- ▶ This sequence distinguishes **stillbirth** from **live birth**, and estimates **survival time after birth** — key in infanticide, feticide, concealment of birth and criminal abortion.

Anatomy and pathway

- ▶ The fetal heart's two sides work **in parallel**, not in series like the adult's.
- ▶ **Placenta**: the fetal lung, gut and kidney, exchanging oxygen, nutrients and waste with maternal blood.
- ▶ **Umbilical vein (one)**: carries the most oxygenated blood (~80% saturated) to the fetus.
- ▶ **Ductus venosus**: bypasses the liver, taking this blood into the inferior vena cava.
- ▶ **Foramen ovale**: shunts oxygen-rich blood right atrium → left atrium → aorta, supplying the **brain and coronaries** first.
- ▶ **Ductus arteriosus**: connects the pulmonary artery to the aorta, diverting blood away from the collapsed lungs.
- ▶ **Umbilical arteries (two)**: from the internal iliac arteries, return deoxygenated blood to the placenta.
- ▶ Net effect: only a trickle of blood reaches the lungs.
- ▶ The brain and heart get the best oxygen; the placenta does the lungs' job.

Changes at birth

- ▶ **First breath** expands the lungs, raising pulmonary flow; **cord clamping** removes the placenta, raising systemic resistance.
- ▶ The **umbilical vessels and ductus venosus** lose flow once the cord is occluded.
- ▶ Rising left-atrial pressure closes the **foramen ovale**; rising oxygen closes the **ductus arteriosus**.
- ▶ Remnants in the adult:
 - Umbilical vein → *ligamentum teres*.
 - Ductus venosus → *ligamentum venosum*.
 - Foramen ovale → *fossa ovalis*.

- Ductus arteriosus → *ligamentum arteriosum*.
- Umbilical arteries → *medial umbilical ligaments*.

Time-table of closure (key forensic fact)

This sequence lets the autopsy surgeon estimate how long a live-born child survived.

Structure	Closure
Umbilical arteries	Starts ~10 hours; complete by the 3rd day
Umbilical vein	By the 4th day
Ductus venosus	By the 4th day
Ductus arteriosus	By the 10th day
Foramen ovale	By the 2nd–3rd month

- ▶ A **patent foramen ovale** persists for life in ~30% of people; alone, it does not prove failure to live.
- ▶ Closure timing is read together with other post-birth changes.
- ▶ **Cord**: clots by 2 hours, dries by 24 hours, ring at the base by 36–48 hours.
- ▶ Then mummifies by day 2–3, falls off day 5–6, scar heals by day 10–12.
- ▶ **Blood**: nucleated red cells vanish by 24 hours; fetal haemoglobin falls from ~80–90% at birth to 7–8% by 3 months.
- ▶ **Gut air**: stomach ~15 minutes, small intestine 1–2 hours, colon 5–6 hours, rectum ~12 hours.

Live birth vs stillbirth vs dead birth

- ▶ **Live birth**: the child showed signs of life while only part of it was delivered, even without full breathing.
- ▶ Causing the death of a live-born child is **homicide**.
- ▶ Signs of live birth: respiration plus progressive shunt closure.
- ▶ **Stillbirth**: born after 28 weeks, showing no sign of life after complete delivery — alive in utero, died during birth.
- ▶ **Dead birth (intra-uterine death)**: the child died in the womb before delivery began.
- ▶ Sign: **rigor mortis present at delivery**.
- ▶ Or **maceration** — skin slippage, reddish-brown discoloration from ~12 hours; *Robert's sign* = gas in great vessels.
- ▶ Or **mummification** — amniotic fluid scanty, no air enters the tissues.
- ▶ In stillborn/dead-born infants the fetal pattern persists; shunts never close.
- ▶ **Five autopsy questions**: viable? stillborn or dead-born? born alive? survival time? cause of death?
- ▶ **Legal presumption**: a newborn found dead is presumed born dead unless proved otherwise.
- ▶ **Viability**: 28 weeks of intra-uterine life or more.

Evidence of respiration

- ▶ Because fetal lungs are collapsed before birth, aeration proves the child breathed.

- ▶ **Lung changes:** lungs enlarge to cover the heart, turning soft, spongy and crepitant.
- ▶ Rounded margins, mottled look; weight rises from $\sim 1/70$ to $1/35$ of body weight.
- ▶ Abundant frothy blood exudes on cutting.
- ▶ **Hydrostatic (Raygat's) test:** specific gravity falls from ~ 1.040 – 1.050 before respiration to ~ 0.940 after it.
- ▶ Lungs **float** once respired; a piece of liver is used as control.
- ▶ **Fallacies:** a respired lung may *sink* (disease, atelectasis, post-mortem absorption); an unrespired lung may *float* (putrefaction, artificial inflation).
- ▶ So floatation alone is **not** proof of separate live birth — a child can breathe in the uterus (*vagitus uterinus*) or vagina (*vagitus vaginalis*).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Live birth vs stillbirth, and survival time, are read from respiration, shunt closure, and cord/blood/gut-air findings.
- ▶ At autopsy, record the cord (cut/torn/ligated suggests live birth), note the placenta, and document lung floatation with fallacies.
- ▶ **If never born alive**, the offences are against the unborn, or concealment of birth:
 - **Causing miscarriage:** Section 88 BNS 2023 (= Section 312 IPC 1860) — graver if the woman is "*quick with child*."
 - **Preventing live birth, or causing death after birth:** Section 91 BNS 2023 (= Section 315 IPC 1860).
 - **Causing death of a quick unborn child, amounting to culpable homicide:** Section 92 BNS 2023 (= Section 316 IPC 1860).
 - **Exposure/abandonment of a child under 12 years:** Section 93 BNS 2023 (= Section 317 IPC 1860).
 - **Concealment of birth by secret disposal of the body:** Section 94 BNS 2023 (= Section 318 IPC 1860).
- ▶ **If born alive and then killed**, it is culpable homicide or murder:
 - **Murder:** Section 101 BNS 2023 (= Section 300 IPC), punishable under Section 103 BNS 2023 (= Section 302 IPC).
 - **Culpable homicide:** Section 100 BNS 2023 (= Section 299 IPC), punishable under Section 105 BNS 2023 (= Section 304 IPC).
- ▶ India has **no separate infanticide statute** — a newborn's killing is tried as any other homicide.
- ▶ **Feticide** = killing before birth; **neonaticide** = killing within 24 hours of birth; **filicide** = killing by a parent.
- ▶ **Inquest:** police inquest Section 194 BNSS 2023 (= Section 174 CrPC 1973); magistrate's inquest Section 196 BNSS 2023 (= Section 176 CrPC 1973).
- ▶ Always examine the alleged mother for signs of recent delivery and her mental state.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Schematic:** placenta → umbilical vein (oxygenated) → ductus venosus → IVC → right atrium → foramen ovale → left atrium → left ventricle → aorta → head and coronaries.
- ▶ **Bypass path:** right ventricle → pulmonary artery → ductus arteriosus → descending aorta, with lungs bypassed.
- ▶ **Return loop:** internal iliac arteries → two umbilical arteries (deoxygenated) → placenta.
- ▶ **Colour-code:** red = oxygenated, blue = deoxygenated, purple = mixed.
- ▶ **Closure time-line bar:** umbilical arteries (≤ 3 days) → umbilical vein/ductus venosus (4th day) → ductus arteriosus (10th day) → foramen ovale (2nd–3rd month) — label "used to estimate survival."



Describe Foetal circulation and discuss the cause of death in criminal abortion

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Foetal circulation** is the pattern of blood flow in the unborn child; the **placenta**, not the lungs, does gas exchange and nutrition.
- ▶ Three shunts — **ductus venosus**, **foramen ovale** and **ductus arteriosus** — divert oxygenated blood past the liver and lungs to the brain and heart.
- ▶ Their fixed closure timetable helps estimate a newborn's survival time in **infanticide** cases and live-birth disputes.
- ▶ The same placental venous bed is the route by which **air embolism** kills in criminal abortion.

Foetal circulation: the pathway

- ▶ Foetal lungs are collapsed with high resistance, so blood bypasses them; the liver is largely bypassed too, and the **placenta** does respiration, nutrition and excretion.
- ▶ **Umbilical vein:** carries the most oxygenated blood (~80% saturated) from the placenta to the foetus.
- ▶ **Ductus venosus:** about half this blood bypasses the liver into the **inferior vena cava (IVC)**.
- ▶ **IVC to right atrium:** the *crista dividens* directs most IVC blood through the **foramen ovale** into the **left atrium**, then **left ventricle** and **aorta** — so the best-oxygenated blood reaches the **coronary arteries**, **head** and **upper limbs** first.
- ▶ **SVC to right ventricle:** deoxygenated blood from the **superior vena cava** crosses to the **right ventricle** and out into the **pulmonary trunk**.
- ▶ **Ductus arteriosus:** only a small fraction reaches the lungs; most is shunted into the **descending aorta**, supplying the trunk, abdomen and lower limbs at lower saturation.
- ▶ **Umbilical arteries:** two vessels (from the internal iliac arteries) return deoxygenated blood to the placenta.

- ▶ **At birth:** the first breath expands the lungs and pulmonary flow rises; the cord is clamped, ending placental flow, and rising left-atrial pressure closes the **foramen ovale**.
- ▶ **Fibrous remnants after closure:**
 - Umbilical vein → *ligamentum teres*.
 - Ductus venosus → *ligamentum venosum*.
 - Ductus arteriosus → *ligamentum arteriosum*.
 - Umbilical arteries → medial umbilical ligaments.
 - Foramen ovale → *fossa ovalis*.

Closure timetable (medico-legal importance)

Foetal structure	Closes by
Umbilical arteries	Begin contracting ~10 h; closed by day 3
Umbilical vein	Day 4–5
Ductus venosus	Day 4–5
Ductus arteriosus	~7–10 days
Foramen ovale	2–3 months

- ▶ A **patent foramen ovale** persists in about 30% of people, so a small persistent opening at autopsy is not abnormal; if large enough to cause cyanosis, it is termed *morbus caeruleus*.

Criminal abortion: definition and methods

- ▶ **Criminal abortion** is the induced destruction and expulsion of the foetus from the womb, done unlawfully with no therapeutic indication and outside the MTP Act.
- ▶ Mostly done by widows and unmarried women, usually before the third month, and comes to light mainly when the woman dies or is reported.
- ▶ **Abortifacient drugs:** ecbolics such as ergot; irritants such as turpentine oil, cantharides (Spanish fly), potassium permanganate.
- ▶ **General violence:** abdominal pressure, kicks, jumping, cupping.
- ▶ **Local/instrumental violence:** syringing fluid into the uterus, rupturing membranes with a sound/wire/stick, aspiration, electricity, curettage, irritant pastes (*Utus, Foetex*).
- ▶ Death may be **immediate, delayed or remote** — this timing helps the examiner judge when the interference occurred.

Causes of death — immediate (sudden)

- ▶ **Vagal inhibition:** reflex cardiac arrest from rough/rapid cervical instrumentation or very cold/hot fluid, worsened by fear ("cervical shock"); causes instant death, a diagnosis of exclusion.
- ▶ **Air embolism:** the classic mechanism, from syringing — air and fluid under pressure detach the placenta, and trapped air enters the uterine sinusoids and systemic veins once separation opens the venous sinuses.

- ▶ About **100 mL of air** is enough to be fatal, and risk rises as pregnancy advances; collapse occurs by about **2 minutes**, death by about **10 minutes** (delay possible if air is briefly locked in a resting uterus, then embolises on movement).
- ▶ **Haemorrhage**: from uterine/cervical perforation or retained products, causing hypovolaemic shock over some hours.
- ▶ **Amniotic fluid embolism**: *liquor amnii* enters the circulation through opened placental-bed sinuses, triggering an *anaphylactoid syndrome of pregnancy* (pulmonary vasospasm, right-heart failure, DIC) — ~50% die in the first hour, ~80% overall mortality.
- ▶ **Fat embolism** may also occur; **poisoning** (rare) results from absorbed abortifacients, e.g. lead (diachylon pills), potassium permanganate, irritant plant pastes.

Causes of death — delayed (usually 48–72 hours)

- ▶ **Septicaemia and pyaemia** from unsterile instrumentation — organisms include *Clostridium welchii* (*perfringens*), *E. coli*, *Streptococcus pyogenes*, *S. aureus*, anaerobic streptococci.
- ▶ *Cl. welchii* can cause fulminating septicaemia within 18–24 hours, with a bronze, mottled "raindrop" skin discolouration.
- ▶ Also seen: local infection/toxaemia, diffuse peritonitis, tetanus, gas gangrene of the uterus.

Causes of death — remote

- ▶ Jaundice and renal failure, including bilateral renal cortical necrosis.
- ▶ Bacterial endocarditis.
- ▶ Pulmonary embolism from pelvic vein thrombosis.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Autopsy search for air embolism**: open the chest under water, or examine the great veins/right heart/IVC/pelvic veins for a beaded, crepitant, foamy-blood-filled right heart; gas bubbles in the placental-bed wall confirm the route.
- ▶ **Distinguish from artefact**: air in cerebral veins from removing the calvarium, or neck-vein air from skin reflection, is post-mortem — not embolism.
- ▶ **Doctor's duties in a criminal-abortion case**:
 - Maintain secrecy, consult a colleague, and take a statement only if she is willing.
 - If serious, arrange a **dying declaration** under **Section 32, Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 26, Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
 - If she dies, do not issue a cause-of-death certificate — inform police for an inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**; exhumation may follow if abortion is suspected after burial.
- ▶ **Criminal-law sections (BNS 2023 replaced IPC 1860 from 1 July 2024)**:
 - Voluntarily causing miscarriage — **Section 312 IPC (now Section 88 BNS 2023)**: up to 3 years before quickening, 7 years if quick with child; woman equally liable.
 - Miscarriage without consent — **Section 313 IPC (now Section 89 BNS 2023)**: up to 10 years or life.

- Death of the woman from an act intended to cause miscarriage — **Section 314 IPC (now Section 90 BNS 2023)**: up to 10 years (consent) or 10 years/life (no consent).
- Preventing a live birth, or causing death after birth — **Section 315 IPC (now Section 91 BNS 2023)**: up to 10 years.
- Death of a quick unborn child as culpable homicide — **Section 316 IPC (now Section 92 BNS 2023)**: up to 10 years.
- Acts under the MTP Act 1971 (amended 2021) are exempt; an unsuccessful attempt falls under **Section 62 BNS 2023**.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — Foetal circulation:** placenta at the bottom; umbilical vein → ductus venosus → IVC → right atrium → foramen ovale → left atrium → left ventricle → aorta → head/upper limbs; SVC → right ventricle → pulmonary trunk → ductus arteriosus → descending aorta → umbilical arteries → placenta. Colour-gradient the flow and label every structure plus liver and lungs.
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — Causes of death, criminal abortion:** uterus with an instrument/syringe at the centre; arrows to vaginal inhibition, air embolism, haemorrhage, amniotic fluid/fat embolism, septicaemia/gas gangrene, peritonitis/tetanus, and remote causes (renal failure, endocarditis, pulmonary embolism).



Describe Foetal circulation and medicolegal importance

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Foetal circulation** is the pattern of blood flow before birth, when the **placenta** — not the lungs — handles gas exchange, nutrition and excretion.
- ▶ The foetal lungs are collapsed and fluid-filled, and the liver is not yet fully working.
- ▶ Three shunts — the **ductus venosus**, **foramen ovale** and **ductus arteriosus** — divert blood away from the lungs and liver, sending the best-oxygenated blood to the brain and heart.
- ▶ At birth, the first breath and cord clamping switch the circulation to the adult pattern, and the foetal channels then close in a set time sequence.
- ▶ This closure timing is the scientific basis for deciding whether a newborn was born alive and how long it survived — central to **infanticide**, **foeticide** and **concealment-of-birth** cases.

Anatomy of the foetal circulatory pathway

- ▶ **Cord vessels:** one umbilical vein carries oxygenated blood to the fetus; two umbilical arteries carry deoxygenated blood back to the placenta.
- ▶ **Ductus venosus:** carries about half the umbilical-vein blood past the liver, straight into the inferior vena cava.

- ▶ **Foramen ovale:** a flap-valve between the right and left atrium; oxygen-rich blood from the inferior vena cava crosses here into the left atrium, then the aorta, heart and brain.
- ▶ **Ductus arteriosus:** the collapsed lungs offer high resistance, so most right-ventricle blood bypasses them and enters the descending aorta through this duct.
- ▶ **Net effect:** the brain, heart and upper body get the richest blood; the lower body and placenta get relatively desaturated blood.

Changeover at birth

- ▶ The first breath expands the lungs; pulmonary resistance falls and left-atrial pressure rises.
- ▶ Cord clamping removes the low-resistance placental bed and raises systemic resistance.
- ▶ The reversed atrial pressure closes the **foramen ovale** flap.
- ▶ Rising blood oxygen constricts the **ductus arteriosus**.
- ▶ Stopped umbilical flow collapses the cord vessels and the **ductus venosus**.
- ▶ Closure is first **functional** (minutes to hours), then **anatomical** (fibrosis, over days to months).
- ▶ Adult remnants: **fossa ovalis**, **ligamentum arteriosum**, **ligamentum venosum**, **ligamentum teres** and the **medial umbilical ligaments**.

Time sequence of closure — basis for estimating survival

Foetal structure	Adult remnant	Closure after birth
Umbilical arteries	Medial umbilical ligaments	Complete by the 3rd day
Umbilical vein	Ligamentum teres	4th day
Ductus venosus	Ligamentum venosum	4th day
Ductus arteriosus	Ligamentum arteriosum	By the 10th day
Foramen ovale	Fossa ovalis	By the 2nd–3rd month

- ▶ **Cord changes:** a clot forms in ~2 hours, the cord dries in 12–24 hours, a demarcation ring forms at 36–48 hours, and the cord falls off on the 5th–6th day.
- ▶ **Other survival clues:** nucleated red cells disappear from blood within 24 hours; foetal haemoglobin falls from ~80–90% to ~7–8% by the 3rd month.
- ▶ Air reaches the stomach in ~15 minutes and the rectum by ~12 hours; milk in the stomach proves survival after birth.

Live birth vs stillbirth

- ▶ Respiration begins only after live birth, so proving lung aeration is the key to proving live birth.
- ▶ **Live birth:** any sign of life while even partly outside the mother, even if unbreathed or not fully born; killing such a child is homicide.
- ▶ **Stillbirth:** born after the 28th week with no sign of life after complete birth.
- ▶ **Dead birth (intra-uterine death):** the child died inside the womb — shown by rigor mortis at delivery, by **maceration** (sterile autolysis, skin slippage, *Robert's sign* = gas in the great vessels by ~12 hours), or by a mummified **foetus papyraceus**.

► **Lung changes after respiration:**

- Weight rises from 1/70 to 1/35 of body weight; volume increases enough to cover the heart.
- Consistency changes from dense and non-crepitant to soft, spongy and crepitant; margins turn from sharp to rounded.
- Colour changes from uniform reddish-brown to mottled, and the cut section yields abundant frothy blood.
- Aerated lung pieces float in water instead of sinking.

► **Hydrostatic (Raygat's) test:** lung specific gravity falls from ~1.040–1.050 before respiration to ~0.940 after.

- The lungs (cut into 12–20 pieces) are floated in water; a float persisting after squeezing out air means respiration occurred.
- A piece of liver is the control — if the liver floats, the test is invalid.
- **Fallacies:** aerated lungs can sink from pneumonia or atelectasis; unaerated lungs can float from putrefactive gas or artificial resuscitation.
- So "proof of breathing is not proof of live birth" — a fetus may breathe inside the uterus (*vagitus uterinus*) or vagina and still die before being fully born.

Medico-legal significance

- The staged closure timing (see table above), read with cord and neonatal changes, lets the autopsy surgeon estimate how long the infant lived — central to **infanticide/neonaticide** enquiries.
- Because circulation stays placental until the first breath, proving lung aeration proves separate existence — this separates homicide of a live-born child from non-punishable stillbirth.
- Legal presumption: the law presumes every newborn found dead was born dead until proven otherwise.
- A patent foramen ovale persists in about one-third of adults; it allows **paradoxical air/fat embolism** and is a pitfall in the chemical/blood diagnosis of drowning.
- Cord abnormalities matter too — a true knot or a loop round the neck can cause fetal death by asphyxia.
- **Relevant offences (statute + BNS mapping):**
 - **Quickening** is the first time the mother feels fetal movements — it sets the punishment grade below.
 - Causing miscarriage: **Section 312 IPC 1860 (now Section 88 BNS 2023)** — lighter before quickening, heavier after.
 - Miscarriage without the woman's consent: **Section 313 IPC 1860 (now Section 89 BNS 2023)**.
 - Death from an act done to cause miscarriage: **Section 314 IPC 1860 (now Section 90 BNS 2023)**.
 - Act to prevent a live birth, or to cause death after birth: **Section 315 IPC 1860 (now Section 91 BNS 2023)**.

- Culpable homicide of a quick unborn child: **Section 316 IPC 1860 (now Section 92 BNS 2023)** — e.g. a gunshot to a "quick" fetus in utero.
- Killing a fetus fully inside the womb is not homicide, but becomes culpable homicide once any part is delivered, even unbreathed (explanation to **Section 299 IPC 1860, now Section 100 BNS 2023**).
- ▶ **MTP context:** lawful termination under the MTP Act 1971 (amended 2021) is the legal counterpart to criminal miscarriage; viability (~24 weeks) marks where the unborn child gains protected legal interest.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ Viability: ≥28 weeks is viable; a child born after 180 days may be viable.
- ▶ "Proof of breathing is not proof of live birth."

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Schematic of foetal circulation:** label placenta, umbilical vein, umbilical arteries, ductus venosus, liver, inferior vena cava, right atrium, foramen ovale, left atrium, right ventricle, pulmonary trunk, ductus arteriosus, descending aorta, superior vena cava, head/brain vessels and internal iliac arteries. Colour-code the oxygenated stream (placenta → IVC → foramen ovale → left atrium → aorta → brain) against the deoxygenated stream (SVC → right atrium → right ventricle → ductus arteriosus → descending aorta → umbilical arteries → placenta).
- ▶ **Foetal channel to adult remnant:** paired boxes — foramen ovale → fossa ovalis; ductus arteriosus → ligamentum arteriosum; ductus venosus → ligamentum venosum; umbilical vein → ligamentum teres; umbilical arteries → medial umbilical ligaments — each annotated with its closure time.

♦ ♦ ♦

Describe the anatomy of female genitalia and its medico legal importance

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2020 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

- ▶ Female genitalia have two parts: the **external genitalia (vulva)** at the perineum, and the **internal genitalia** — vagina, cervix, uterus, tubes and ovaries.
- ▶ This anatomy underlies virginity/defloration opinions, rape and sexual-assault cases (Section 63, Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita 2023), signs of delivery, legitimacy disputes, and accidental-vs-inflicted injury calls.

External genitalia (vulva)

- ▶ **Vulva** = mons veneris + labia majora + labia minora + clitoris + vestibule + hymen + urethral and vaginal openings.
- ▶ **Mons veneris:** fat pad in front of the pubic symphysis, bears pubic hair from puberty.

- ▶ **Labia majora:** two folds meeting at the anterior and posterior commissures; in a virgin they are thick and apposed, closing the orifice.
- ▶ **Labia minora:** thin, sensitive folds about 4 cm long, inside the labia majora.
 - Split around the clitoris to form the prepuce in front and the frenulum behind.
 - Fuse posteriorly to form the fourchette.
- ▶ **Fourchette:** posterior junction of the labia minora, classically the first structure torn at first intercourse; **fossa navicularis** is the hollow just in front of it.
- ▶ **Clitoris:** small erectile organ above the urethral opening; the female homologue of the penis.
- ▶ **Vestibule:** triangular area between clitoris and hymen, holding the urethral meatus (2.5 cm behind the clitoris) and vaginal opening.
- ▶ **Bartholin's glands:** pea-sized glands near the vaginal entrance; provide lubrication.
- ▶ **Skene's glands:** paraurethral glands around the lower urethra, the "female prostate" — main source of female PSA, relevant in sexual-assault PSA testing.
- ▶ **Perineum:** wedge-shaped area between the back of the vagina and the front of the anus.

Internal genitalia

- ▶ **Vagina:** a distensible canal, not a rigid tube, about 7.5 cm long (shorter anteriorly, longer posteriorly).
 - Upper width is 3–4 cm in a nullipara and 6–7 cm in a parous woman.
 - Mucosa is rugose (folded); walls stay approximated in a virgin.
 - After repeated intercourse (about 15–20 acts) the rugae flatten and the vagina lengthens.
- ▶ **Cervix and uterus:** the non-gravid uterus is about 7–8 cm long; its size, shape and weight change with parity — a key autopsy clue to childbirth.
- ▶ **Fallopian tubes and ovaries:** paired adnexal structures; a fresh corpus luteum signals recent ovulation/pregnancy at autopsy.

The hymen

- ▶ **Structure:** a thin (~1 mm) fold of mucous membrane at the vaginal outlet, covered by squamous epithelium on both surfaces.
- ▶ Usually annular or crescentic, broadest posteriorly, deficient anteriorly.
- ▶ **Orifice size:** ~1 mm per year of age, reaching ~10 mm before puberty and ~1.2 cm at puberty.
 - Opening over 1 cm before puberty suggests abuse.
- ▶ **Common types:**
 - Semilunar/crescentic — commonest; opening anterior, notches at 10 and 11 o'clock.
 - Annular — ring-shaped, common in children.
 - Cribriform — several small perforations.
 - Imperforate — no opening at all; causes haematocolpos at menarche.
- ▶ **Causes of rupture:**
 - First intercourse (defloration).
 - Straddle injury — fall astride a fence or similar object.

- Foreign body, gynaecological instrumentation or tampon use.
- Ulceration (e.g. diphtheria) or childhood pruritus from worm infestation.
- Riding, jumping, dancing and vigorous exercise do **NOT** rupture the hymen.
- **Healing:** torn edges never reunite — they round off into fibrosed tags, shrinking after repeated intercourse (and especially childbirth) into small fleshy tags called **carunculae myrtiformes**.

Virginity and defloration

- **Virginity** is presumed, never proved.
- It rests on three signs, which carry weight only together, never singly:
 - Intact hymen.
 - Normal fourchette and posterior commissure.
 - Narrow, rugose vagina.
- An intact hymen is a presumption, not absolute proof, of virginity.
 - A "false virgin" has an intact hymen despite sexual experience — the hymen is lax, elastic, folded, or thick and fleshy, and intact hymens have been recorded even in sex workers, sometimes after **hymenoplasty** (surgical reconstruction).
- **Defloration** = rupture of the hymen at first coitus.

Trait	Virginity	Defloration
Hymen	Intact, rigid, narrow opening	Torn, or if intact then lax with a wide opening
Labia majora	Apposed, closing the orifice	Separated, orifice visible
Vagina	Narrow, rugose	Lengthened, rugae less marked

Genital findings in rape and signs of delivery

- **Rape in a virgin:** hymen tears posteriorly, 5–7 o'clock, deepest at 6 o'clock, with bruising of both labia.
 - Penile tears reach the hymenal margin; digital or tampon tears usually do not.
 - Several lacerations suggest first intercourse.
 - Genital injury is absent in ~4/5 of cases — **absence of injury does not exclude rape**.
 - The hymen can be examined with Glaister-Keene rods, saline drops, Foley balloon transillumination, or per rectum.
- **Recent delivery — signs:**
 - Vagina partially open, walls lax.
 - Fourchette/perineum torn, lochia present.
 - Uterus enlarged, flabby, about 1,000 g.
 - External os patulous (gaping) and fissured.
- **Remote delivery — signs:**
 - Lax abdominal wall, striae and linea nigra.
 - Pendulous breasts, healed perineal scar.

- Uterus shows parous changes; hymen shows old carunculae.

► **Parous vs nulliparous uterus:**

- Heavier — 80–120 g vs 40–60 g.
- Body about twice the cervix length vs body = cervix.
- External os transverse/irregular vs small and rounded.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- Normal vulva, labelled: mons veneris, labia majora/minora, clitoris with prepuce/frenulum, vestibule, hymen, vaginal orifice, fourchette, fossa navicularis, commissures, perineum, anus; mark Bartholin's and Skene's gland openings.
- Small panel of hymen types: annular, semilunar, septate, cribriform, fimbriated, imperforate — shade the opening and show the broadest part posterior.

Medico-legal significance

- **Virginity/defloration opinion:** intact hymen is presumptive, not absolute, proof of virginity; judge the hymen, fourchette, vestibule and vagina together, never on one finding alone.
- **Rape — Section 63, Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita (BNS) 2023** (formerly Section 375 IPC 1860): penetration "to any extent" into the vagina completes the offence.
 - Explanation 1: vagina "shall also include labia majora" — so even slight labial contact amounts to rape.
 - Erection/emission are not required, so an impotent or sterile man can commit rape.
 - A girl under 18 cannot give valid consent — this also brings in the **POCSO Act 2012**.
 - **Punishment — Section 64 BNS 2023** (formerly Section 376 IPC): minimum 10 years' RI, extendable to life, plus fine.
- **Examining a rape case:** establish penetration, document injury/mechanism, distinguish penile from digital/object trauma, and collect introital/vaginal/perineal swabs for spermatozoa, semen, PSA and DNA.
- **Accidental vs inflicted injury:** straddle injuries hit the labia, periurethral tissue and mons, without the marginal bruising of penile tears — protects against false accusation, helps detect abuse.
- **Signs of pregnancy/delivery** date or refute a pregnancy or birth — relevant to infanticide, concealed birth, succession and compensation claims.
- **Legitimacy:** a child is illegitimate if born out of wedlock, or to a husband who is prepubertal, impotent/sterile, or had no sexual access — medical evidence on access, gestation and DNA settles legitimacy and posthumous-child disputes.
- **Other statutes:** expert opinion is admissible under **Section 39, Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam (BSA) 2023** (formerly Section 45 Indian Evidence Act 1872); examination of a rape victim/accused is governed by **Sections 51/52/184, Bharatiya Nagarik Suraksha Sanhita (BNSS) 2023** (formerly Sections 53/53A/164A CrPC 1973).
- **Two-finger test is abolished** — unscientific, of no forensic value (banned 2013; *Lilu @ Rajesh v. State of Haryana*, 2013).



Discuss the causes for secondary infertility and its forensic implications

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Key concepts

- ▶ Infertility is failure to conceive after **twelve months of regular, unprotected intercourse** — the preferred term over the older word *sterility*.
- ▶ **Primary infertility**: the couple has never achieved a pregnancy.
- ▶ **Secondary infertility**: the couple has conceived before (live birth, miscarriage, ectopic, or termination) but now cannot conceive again, or cannot carry a pregnancy to viability.
- ▶ Secondary infertility is therefore **acquired sterility** — a new problem appearing after fertility was already proven.
- ▶ This is why it dominates medico-legal disputes: nullity, divorce, disputed paternity, damages claims, and above all the **failed-sterilisation (wrongful conception) suit**.
- ▶ **Impotence** (inability to have intercourse, called **erectile dysfunction** in the male and **female sexual dysfunction** in the female) is different from **sterility/infertility** (inability to procreate).
- ▶ A person can be sterile without being impotent, impotent without being sterile, or both together.
- ▶ About **10–15% of married couples** are involuntarily sterile; about **50% of male-factor infertility** stays unexplained even after full work-up.
- ▶ Because a prior pregnancy is already documented in secondary infertility, the forensic question is not "was this person ever fertile" but "**what event destroyed a previously normal fertility, and who is legally answerable?**"

Causes of secondary infertility in the male

- ▶ **Post-inflammatory / infective**:
 - **Mumps orchitis** after adolescence causes testicular atrophy and sterility — the classic acquired male cause.
 - Epididymitis, prostatitis, recurrent urogenital infection, genital tuberculosis, syphilis, and gonorrhoea.
- ▶ **Surgical / iatrogenic: vasectomy** (intended), or pelvic surgery damaging the ejaculatory ducts.
- ▶ **Obstructive**: blockage of the urogenital tract following infection or surgery.
- ▶ **Vascular / testicular: varicocele**, testicular torsion, and testicular trauma.
- ▶ **Toxic / iatrogenic exogenous**:
 - **Chemotherapy and irradiation** (temporary azoospermia), and excess scrotal heat.
 - **Chronic lead poisoning** (painters, composers, lead workers), alcohol, tobacco, cannabis, steroids, and opioids.
- ▶ **Acquired endocrine causes**: hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism, hyperprolactinaemia, diabetes, thyroid disease, liver or renal failure.

- ▶ **Acquired erectile/ejaculatory problems:** new-onset ED (vascular, neurogenic, endocrine, or psychogenic), and retrograde ejaculation after prostate surgery.
- ▶ **Ageing:** fertility fades earlier than potency, because the epididymis and vas narrow with age.
- ▶ **Semen analysis is the key investigation.** WHO 2010 terms: **oligozoospermia** (under 15 million sperm/mL), **asthenozoospermia** (under 32% motile), **teratozoospermia** (under 4% normal forms), **azoospermia** (no sperm), **aspermia** (no ejaculate).
- ▶ Live sperm in the semen means the man must be presumed fertile.

Causes of secondary infertility in the female

- ▶ **Tubal / peritoneal — the commonest acquired group:**
 - **Pelvic inflammatory disease**, usually from *Chlamydia*, blocking or damaging the tubes.
 - Post-abortion or puerperal sepsis, pelvic adhesions, and **endometriosis**.
- ▶ **Uterine: Asherman's syndrome** (adhesions after curettage or sepsis), fibroids, and acquired uterine deformity.
- ▶ **Surgical / iatrogenic: tubectomy** (intended sterilisation), cervical surgery causing stenosis, or surgery that reduces ovarian reserve.
- ▶ **Ovarian:** acquired anovulation, **polycystic ovary syndrome**, diminished ovarian reserve, and premature menopause.
- ▶ **Infective / local:** gonorrhoea and genital tuberculosis of the cervix, uterus or tubes, and chronic cervicitis with acid vaginal discharge hostile to sperm.
- ▶ **Endocrine / toxic:** hyperprolactinaemia, thyroid disease, significant liver or kidney disease; alkylating chemotherapy, irradiation, chronic lead poisoning, and advancing maternal age.
- ▶ **Cervical/immunological:** antisperm antibodies and hostile cervical mucus.
- ▶ A woman is naturally fertile only **from puberty to menopause**; loss of that capacity within this window again points to an acquired cause.
- ▶ **Vaginismus** (involuntary spasm of the lower vaginal muscles) causes acquired impotence and can secondarily block conception, but the woman can still conceive if her internal organs are healthy.

Examination and investigation

- ▶ Examination for impotence or sterility is done only on the order of a **Court**, a **police officer not below sub-inspector rank**, or at the parties' own request — always with **informed written consent**.
- ▶ Reasonable force may lawfully be used on an uncooperative accused under **Section 53 CrPC 1973 (now Section 51 BNSS 2023)**, or **Section 53A CrPC 1973 (now Section 52 BNSS 2023)** if the accused is charged with rape.
- ▶ A rape victim is examined under **Section 164A CrPC 1973 (now Section 184 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ **Male examination:** sexual, medical, surgical and psychological history — **sudden** loss suggests a psychogenic cause, **gradual** loss suggests an organic one.
 - Check testicular size, Peyronie's plaque, and the **bulbocavernosus reflex** (glans squeeze causes immediate anal contraction if sacral nerves are intact).

- Investigations: **semen analysis** (the cornerstone), testosterone, FSH, LH, prolactin, blood sugar, and thyroid profile.
- **Nocturnal penile tumescence testing (RigiScan)** separates psychogenic from organic ED; also duplex Doppler and an intracavernosal papaverine test.
- ▶ **Female examination:** history, bimanual pelvic examination, **hysterosalpingography (HSG)** for tubal patency, pelvic ultrasound, and hormonal assays.
- ▶ The opinion is always framed cautiously: "**there is nothing to suggest that the person examined is incapable of performing sexual intercourse**" — because organic and psychological causes can never be wholly excluded before investigation results return.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Failed-sterilisation (wrongful conception) suits** are the leading secondary-infertility litigation: a couple sterilised by **vasectomy or tubectomy** who later conceive may sue.
 - The doctor's defence rests on documented counselling that **success is never guaranteed**.
 - **Azoospermia must be confirmed** with semen analysis showing no sperm on **two successive occasions**, after about three months.
 - **Histological confirmation** of the resected vas strengthens the defence, and compensation for failed sterilisation is well recognised in law.
- ▶ **Nullity and divorce:** secondary infertility itself is **not** a ground for nullity or divorce — only **impotence** is.
 - Under **Section 12, Hindu Marriage Act 1955**, a marriage is voidable if not consummated because of the respondent's impotence; sterility alone is not a ground (*Baxter v Baxter*, 1947).
 - Under **Section 24, Special Marriage Act 1954**, a marriage is void if a party was impotent both at marriage and the suit, and nullity is granted only if the impotence is incurable.
- ▶ **Disputed paternity:** a man who believes himself sterile may dispute paternity.
 - **Fecundatio ab extra** — semen deposited outside the vagina with sperm ascending to fertilise — can cause pregnancy without penetration, so birth of a child is not proof of consummation.
 - DNA profiling now resolves most paternity disputes.
- ▶ **Claims for damages:** loss of reproductive capacity from assault, accidents, occupational lead exposure, or negligent surgery/irradiation can found a civil claim, including under the Employees' Compensation Act.
- ▶ **Criminal cases:** the potency test of an accused is now largely irrelevant, since rape (redefined 2013) covers penetration, insertion, manipulation and application — an impotent man can still commit rape.
- ▶ **Consent for sterilisation:** the patient's own informed consent is required, spousal consent is **not** legally necessary, and compulsory sterilisation is not practised in India.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Flowchart — primary vs secondary infertility.** *Infertility (no conception after 12 months)* branches into *Primary (never conceived)* and *Secondary (conceived before, now acquired)*. Under Secondary, list **Male** causes (mumps orchitis, vasectomy, irradiation/chemotherapy, trauma, varicocele, lead) and **Female** causes (PID/tubal block, Asherman's, tubectomy, endometriosis, chemotherapy/irradiation), both converging on **Forensic outcomes:** failed-sterilisation suit, disputed paternity, nullity/divorce, claim for damages.
- ▶ **Labelled diagram — physiology of erection.** Nitric oxide from sacral parasympathetic nerves raises cGMP → smooth-muscle relaxation and arteriolar dilatation → cavernous engorgement compresses the emissary veins → pressure rises to 100–120 mmHg, producing erection. Phosphodiesterase breaks down cGMP, and this is the enzyme sildenafil inhibits.



Discuss the laboratory investigations to confirm Pregnancy. Discuss Superfoetation and Superfecundation

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ **Pregnancy** is the presence of a developing embryo or fetus in the uterus after fertilization of an ovum by a spermatozoon, most often between 14 and 45 years of age.
- ▶ Clinical signs are graded **presumptive, probable and positive**.
- ▶ The medico-legal question "is this woman truly pregnant" is settled by **laboratory investigations:** biological tests, immunological hCG tests, RIA/ELISA, and ancillary tests like Kleihauer-Betke and ultrasonography.
- ▶ **Superfecundation** is fertilization of two ova of the same cycle by separate acts of coitus.
- ▶ **Superfoetation** is fertilization of a second ovum in a woman already pregnant.
- ▶ Both bear directly on disputed paternity and adultery.

Why pregnancy must be confirmed (medico-legal contexts)

- ▶ **Court attendance:** pregnancy is not an excuse, unless delivery is imminent.
- ▶ **Capital sentence:** execution of a pregnant woman must be stayed (statute below).
- ▶ **Succession:** a posthumous child's right to inherit depends on proof of pregnancy at the relevant date.
- ▶ **Compensation/alimony:** claims in negligence, divorce, seduction and breach-of-promise suits.
- ▶ **Disputed states:** blackmail to force marriage, feigned pregnancy (pseudocyesis), nullity of marriage, infanticide, and concealment of birth.

Clinical signs — grading before lab confirmation

- ▶ **Presumptive (~25% probability):** amenorrhoea (earliest), breast changes with **Montgomery's tubercles**, morning sickness, quickening (16–20 weeks), *Chadwick's/Jacquemier's sign* (violet vulvovaginal mucosa, 4th week).
- ▶ **Probable (~50% probability):** abdominal enlargement, **Hegar's sign** (isthmic softening, 6 weeks — most valuable), **Goodell's sign** (cervical softening, 8 weeks), ballottement, and a positive biological/immunological test.
- ▶ **Positive (100%):** fetal parts and movements, fetal heart sounds from 18–20 weeks, and confirmation on ultrasonography or X-ray.

Laboratory investigations to confirm pregnancy

A. Biological (bioassay) tests — obsolete but examinable

- ▶ React to hCG in the woman's urine; positive about 6 weeks after the LMP.
- ▶ **Aschheim-Zondek (1928):** urine into immature female mice; ovaries enlarge with haemorrhagic follicles.
- ▶ **Friedman (1931):** uses a virgin female rabbit.
- ▶ **Hogben (1939):** uses the female African clawed toad.
- ▶ **Galli-Mainini (1947):** the most popular; a male frog/toad extrudes spermatozoa after urine injection.
- ▶ All give **false positives** in hydatidiform mole, choriocarcinoma and ectopic pregnancy.

B. Immunological tests — the routine modern confirmation

- ▶ Detect **hCG**, a glycoprotein secreted by the syncytiotrophoblast.
- ▶ Modern kits target hCG's unique **beta subunit** for specificity.
- ▶ Appears in maternal blood by day 7–8 and in urine by day 11 after fertilization.
- ▶ About 98% positive by the missed period.
- ▶ **Sample:** first voided morning urine, for the highest hCG concentration.
- ▶ **Latex agglutination-inhibition:** anti-hCG serum + urine, then hCG-coated latex added. **No agglutination = positive; agglutination = negative.**
- ▶ **Latex agglutination (direct):** latex-anti-hCG mixed with urine directly. **Agglutination = positive.**
- ▶ **Haemagglutination-inhibition:** same principle, using hCG-coated red cells instead of latex.

C. Highly sensitive immunoassays

- ▶ **RIA, ELISA, fluoroimmunoassay and IRMA** detect very low beta-hCG levels — useful in early/ectopic pregnancy and trophoblastic disease.
- ▶ Other fetoplacental markers (EPF, PP14, SP1) can also confirm pregnancy.

D. Ancillary laboratory and imaging tests

- ▶ **Kleihauer-Betke test:** detects fetal red cells (acid-resistant fetal haemoglobin) in maternal blood, from the 5th week onward.

- ▶ Karyotyping these cells can even reveal fetal sex; **microchimerism** (fetal cells persisting in maternal tissue for years) is a related forensic marker.
- ▶ **Ultrasonography**: gestational sac at 6 weeks, fetal heartbeat by 10 weeks, crown-rump length (8–14 weeks) for accurate dating.
- ▶ Fetal sex is 99–100% accurate by 13 weeks, but its detection/disclosure is **prohibited under the PCPNDT Act, 1994**.
- ▶ **X-ray**: fetal skeletal shadows from about 15–16 weeks; can show **Spalding's sign** of fetal death.

Important medico-legal periods of gestation

- ▶ **Average duration**: about 280 days from the LMP (~40 weeks).
- ▶ Under **Section 112 Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 116 BSA 2023)**, a child is presumed legitimate if born during a valid marriage, or within 280 days of its dissolution, provided the mother has not remarried.
- ▶ **Maximum period**: no fixed legal limit; documented up to 328–359 days, with 354 days accepted for medico-legal purposes.
- ▶ **Minimum period/viability**: a child born at or after 28 weeks (~180–196 days) is viable.

Superfecundation and Superfetation

- ▶ **Superfecundation**: fertilization of two or more ova released in the same cycle, by separate acts of coitus at short intervals.
- ▶ The acts may involve the **same man** or **different men** (heteropaternal superfecundation).
- ▶ The fetuses are of the **same age** but develop unequally, since each has its own placenta.
- ▶ Classic proof is twins of clearly different paternal race or incompatible blood groups; **DNA profiling** is definitive.
- ▶ **Superfetation**: fertilization of a second ovum in a woman already pregnant, before the decidua vera and decidua reflexa fuse — the early first trimester.
- ▶ A septate or double uterus favours it, but is not essential.
- ▶ The two fetuses are of **different ages** (1–3 months apart), and may be born together or at intervals.

Feature	Superfecundation	Superfetation
Ova/timing	≥2 ova, same cycle	Second ovum, already pregnant
Fetal age	Same	Different (1–3 months apart)
Fathers	May differ	May differ
Fetus papyraceus	Rare	Common

- ▶ **Fetus papyraceus**: an early-dying twin, compressed against the surviving fetus's sac, becomes flattened and mummified until term — more common in superfetation.
- ▶ **Vanishing twin syndrome** (Stoeckel, 1945) is its counterpart, where the dead fetus is completely resorbed.
- ▶ **Hellin's law**: twins occur in about 1 in 89 pregnancies, triplets in about 1 in 89².

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Latex agglutination-inhibition test:** two slides side by side.
- ▶ Slide 1 (positive): urine + anti-hCG (neutralised) → add latex-hCG → **no agglutination**.
- ▶ Slide 2 (negative): urine with no hCG + free anti-hCG → add latex-hCG → **agglutination (clumps)**.
- ▶ Label: maternal urine, anti-hCG antiserum, hCG-coated latex, agglutination present/absent.
- ▶ **Superfecundation vs superfetation:** one ovary + two sperm sources (Man A/Man B) → two same-age fetuses, versus an older established fetus plus a later, younger ovum in one uterus.
- ▶ Label: ovum 1, ovum 2, decidua vera, decidua reflexa, older fetus, younger fetus.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ A **positive pregnancy test** is strong corroborative evidence in abortion, infanticide, concealment of birth, and feigned-delivery cases.
- ▶ Tests turn negative within 7–10 days of delivery/abortion.
- ▶ A discordant hCG (false positive in trophoblastic disease/ectopic pregnancy) must be read alongside imaging.
- ▶ **Fetal sex must never be detected or disclosed** (USG, X-ray or Kleihauer karyotyping) under the PCPNDT Act, 1994.
- ▶ A death sentence on a pregnant woman must be **commuted to life imprisonment** — **Section 456 BNSS 2023 (Section 416 CrPC 1973)**.
- ▶ A child in the womb at an intestate's death, if born alive, inherits from the date of death — **Section 20, Hindu Succession Act 1956**.
- ▶ Concealment of birth by secret disposal of the body — **Section 94 BNS 2023 (Section 318 IPC 1860)**.
- ▶ Causing miscarriage — **Section 88 BNS 2023 (Section 312 IPC 1860)**.
- ▶ **Superfecundation** is crucial in disputed paternity and adultery allegations — twins of different paternity prove intercourse with more than one man.
- ▶ **Superfetation** explains a child apparently "born too late," bearing on legitimacy and disputed gestation periods.
- ▶ Disputed paternity/maternity now rests on DNA profiling, admissible as expert evidence under **Section 39 BSA 2023 (formerly Section 45 IEA 1872)**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Drugs causing impotence. Medico legal issues in cases of impotence

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Impotence** is the inability to perform sexual intercourse.
- ▶ In the male it is now better termed **erectile dysfunction (ED)**.
- ▶ Impotence is distinct from **sterility (infertility)**, the inability to beget or conceive.
- ▶ A person can be impotent without being sterile, or the reverse.
- ▶ Drug-induced impotence matters medico-legally because drugs are a common, usually reversible, cause the examiner must exclude.
- ▶ It is also a contested fact in civil suits (nullity, divorce, paternity) and in the criminal potency test of a rape accused.
- ▶ Examination is done only on a court or police order (not below sub-inspector), or at personal request.

Physiology of erection

- ▶ Erection is a **neurovascular event**.
- ▶ **Parasympathetic input (S2–S4, the nervi erigentes)** drives erection; **sympathetic input (T11–L2)** opposes it.
- ▶ Sexual stimulation releases **nitric oxide (NO)**, made from L-arginine by NO synthase.
- ▶ NO activates **guanylate cyclase**, raising **cyclic GMP (cGMP)** and lowering intracellular calcium.
- ▶ Falling calcium relaxes cavernosal smooth muscle and dilates the helicine arterioles.
- ▶ The sinusoids engorge and compress the emissary veins (veno-occlusion), trapping blood as an erection.
- ▶ **Phosphodiesterase type 5 (PDE-5)** degrades cGMP and ends erection — the pharmacological pivot.
- ▶ Any drug that reduces NO, blocks autonomic transmission, or lowers libido/androgens can impair erection.
- ▶ **Sildenafil**, a PDE-5 inhibitor, enhances erection by blocking this breakdown.

Drugs and chemicals causing impotence

- ▶ Most agents act by blocking autonomic nerve transmission, reducing penile blood flow, or lowering libido/androgens.
- ▶ The great majority of drug-induced impotence is **temporary and reversible on withdrawal**.

Drug class	Examples	Mechanism
Antihypertensives	Ganglion blockers, beta-blockers, thiazides	Blunt autonomic transmission, reduce penile perfusion
Psychotropics	Antidepressants, tranquillisers	Alter neurotransmitters at nerve endings

Drug class	Examples	Mechanism
Opiates	Opium, heroin	Suppress libido and erectile function
Alcohol	Chronic alcoholism	ED; testicular atrophy if long-standing
Cannabis, cocaine	Long-term recreational use	Impotence with chronic use
Anabolic steroids	Androgenic steroids	Suppress the hypothalamo-pituitary-gonadal axis
Barbiturates	Sedatives	CNS depression
Nicotine	Heavy smoking	Thrombosis of penile arteries
Anti-androgens	Cyproterone, medroxyprogesterone, LHRH agonists	Deliberately reduce libido (chemical castration)
Heavy metals	Chronic lead, arsenic	Neuropathy — impotence and sterility

- ▶ **Chemical castration** (giving anti-androgens or LHRH agonists to sex offenders) is **not** legally emasculation — the effect is reversible and no tissue is removed.

Causes of impotence — drugs in context

- ▶ Impotence is broadly **organic** or **functional/psychogenic**, and the two often overlap.
- ▶ Over half of impotence cases have an organic component.
- ▶ The mnemonic **IMPOTENCE** covers the organic causes: Inflammatory, Mechanical, Postsurgical, Occlusive/vascular, Traumatic, Endurance/systemic disease, Neurogenic, Chemicals (drug-induced), Endocrine.
- ▶ **Vasculogenic disease** — poor arterial inflow or venous leak — is the single commonest organic cause.
- ▶ A **sudden ("overnight") onset suggests a psychogenic cause**, and raises the possibility of malingering in an accused.
- ▶ A **gradual onset suggests an organic cause**.

Examination, investigations, and opinion

- ▶ **History:** smoking, alcohol, drug use, diabetes, hypertension, antihypertensive drugs, spinal or pelvic trauma, occupational lead exposure, tertiary syphilis, marital and sexual history, and speed of onset.
- ▶ **Examination:** cardiovascular and neurological systems, peripheral and femoral pulses, secondary sexual characters, gynaecomastia, the penis (size, Peyronie's plaque, chordee), testes, prostate, genital sensation, and the **bulbocavernosus reflex**.
- ▶ **Investigations:** fasting glucose, HbA1c, lipids, testosterone, LH, FSH, prolactin, thyroid profile, PSA.
- ▶ **Nocturnal penile tumescence and rigidity (NPTR/RigiScan)** separates psychogenic from organic causes.

- ▶ **Intracavernosal papaverine 15–30 mg:** an erection within 30–60 minutes indicates adequate vascular supply.
- ▶ **Duplex Doppler and cavernosometry/cavernosography** assess for venous leak.
- ▶ The **opinion is framed in double-negative form:** "*There is nothing to suggest that the person examined is incapable of performing sexual intercourse under normal circumstances,*" with a definite opinion reserved until investigations return.
- ▶ If a defect is positively found, its cause is stated (for example, ED due to penile vascular atherosclerosis).

Medico-legal issues in cases of impotence

- ▶ **Marriage and nullity:** consummation (*vera copula*) is essential to a valid marriage.
- ▶ **Impotence at the time of marriage** makes a Hindu marriage voidable (Section 12, Hindu Marriage Act 1955).
- ▶ Under Section 24, Special Marriage Act 1954 it is **void**, but only if the impotence is **incurable**.
- ▶ A Muslim woman may seek dissolution for a husband's continuing impotence under the Dissolution of Muslim Marriages Act 1939.
- ▶ **Impotence after consummation is not a ground for nullity or divorce**, though it may be pleaded as cruelty.
- ▶ **Sterility is never a ground for nullity** (*Baxter v Baxter*, 1947).
- ▶ ***Impotence quoad hoc*** is selective impotence — potent with other partners but not with the spouse — and is also a ground for nullity.
- ▶ **Fecundatio ab extra:** semen on the vulva or thighs without penetration can still cause pregnancy.
- ▶ Pregnancy therefore does **not** prove consummation (*Manjula Deshmukh v Suresh Deshmukh*, 1978).
- ▶ **Disputed paternity** is now settled by DNA profiling.
- ▶ **Civil damages**, including under the Employee's Compensation Act, may follow loss of sexual function from assault or accident.
- ▶ **Emasculation as grievous hurt:** cutting away the penis, or spinal trauma (L2–L4) damaging the nerves of erection, amounts to emasculation.
- ▶ It is the **first of the eight clauses of grievous hurt** — Section 320 IPC 1860 (now Section 116 BNS 2023) — the only clause exclusive to males.
- ▶ Voluntarily causing it is punishable under Section 322 IPC 1860 (now Section 117 BNS 2023).
- ▶ Emasculation is distinct from **castration**; removing testes, forced vasectomy, circumcision, or cutting an already-flaccid penis are **not** emasculation.
- ▶ **Potency test of a rape accused** now has limited evidentiary value, since the post-2013 rape definition is not limited to penile-vaginal penetration.
- ▶ An accused who admits potency need not be tested; one who pleads it is tested on court order.
- ▶ Examination may be done without consent, using reasonable force, under Section 52 BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 53A CrPC 1973).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Examine only on a **court or police requisition** (officer not below sub-inspector) or at personal request.
- ▶ Obtain **informed consent** — dispensable for a rape accused under **Section 52 BNSS 2023**.
- ▶ Record marks of identification and forward the report to the investigating officer.
- ▶ **Actively exclude reversible drug causes** before opining, because a reversible impotence may not meet the legal requirement of **incurable** impotence for nullity under the Special Marriage Act.
- ▶ Give the opinion in **double-negative form** and reserve a final comment until investigations are complete.
- ▶ Classify genital injury correctly: **emasculatio is grievous hurt** (**Section 116 BNS 2023**; voluntarily causing it, **Section 117 BNS 2023**), distinct from castration and from reversible chemical castration.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Physiology of erection (flow diagram):** sexual stimulation → parasympathetic nerve terminals (S2–S4) → nitric oxide (from L-arginine) → guanylate cyclase → cGMP → fall in calcium → cavernosal relaxation → helicine artery dilatation → sinusoidal engorgement → emissary-vein compression → erection.
- ▶ Mark **PDE-5 degrading cGMP** (causing detumescence), **sildenafil blocking PDE-5**, and **anti-androgens/autonomic-blocking drugs** acting upstream.
- ▶ **Sagittal section of the penis:** label the corpora cavernosa, corpus spongiosum, glans, deep (cavernosal) artery, helicine arterioles, dorsal nerve of the penis, nervi erigentes, and emissary veins.



Testicular biopsy and its medicolegal importance

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ Testicular biopsy removes a small piece of testicular tissue for histological examination.
- ▶ It can be done by open incision or by percutaneous fine-needle aspiration.
- ▶ It examines the seminiferous tubules (where sperm are made) and the Leydig cells (which make testosterone).
- ▶ **First forensic use:** find the cause of male sterility — is the testis producing sperm that are merely obstructed, or has spermatogenesis itself failed.
- ▶ **Second forensic use:** confirm true gonadal sex when external genitalia are ambiguous, by demonstrating testicular tissue.
- ▶ Sterility, potency, paternity, legitimacy, nullity of marriage, and sex identity are all issues a court may decide, so this histology carries real medicolegal weight.
- ▶ Being an invasive procedure, it also raises questions of consent.

What the biopsy shows

- ▶ **Spermatogenesis:** normal tubules show the full maturation sequence — spermatogonia, then spermatocytes, then spermatids, then mature spermatozoa.
- ▶ Their presence proves the testis is functioning normally.
- ▶ **Patterns of tubular failure in an azoospermic (sterile) male:**
 - **Active spermatogenesis, empty ducts downstream:** obstructive azoospermia — a block in the vas deferens or epididymis (vasectomy, infection, or congenital absence of the vas).
 - Sperm production itself is intact; only the passage is blocked.
 - **Maturation arrest:** sperm precursors stop developing at an early stage.
 - **Sertoli-cell-only pattern:** tubules contain only supporting Sertoli cells and no germ cells at all.
 - This means non-obstructive (primary testicular) azoospermia.
 - **Hyalinisation/fibrosis of the tubules:** tubules are scarred and shrunken.
 - This is the classic finding in Klinefelter's syndrome (47,XXY).
- ▶ **Leydig cell status:** reflects testosterone production, and so bears on virilisation and potency.
- ▶ **Gonadal sex:** true germinal/testicular tissue confirms the gonad is a testis — decisive in disorders of sexual development.

Where biopsy fits in the sterility/impotence workup

- ▶ Testicular biopsy is never a first-line test.
- ▶ It is the definitive, confirmatory step done only after the full staged workup is complete.
- ▶ **History:** habits (smoking, alcohol, cannabis), diabetes, venereal disease, trauma to head/spine/pelvis, occupational lead exposure, drugs, and full sexual history.
- ▶ **Examination:** general and systemic exam, secondary sexual characters, and a genital exam of the testes, epididymis, cord, and penis.
- ▶ **Bulbocavernosus reflex:** squeezing the glans makes the anus contract if the penile nerve supply is intact.
- ▶ **Seminal fluid analysis:** essential in every case of male sterility.
- ▶ A normal ejaculate is 1.6–5.5 mL, containing 17–192 million sperm/mL, with at least 60% motile.
- ▶ **Azoospermia** (no spermatozoa in semen) is what triggers a biopsy.
- ▶ A man with both testes present can still be sterile purely because of azoospermia.
- ▶ **Hormones and imaging:** testosterone, FSH, LH, and prolactin, plus Doppler ultrasound to exclude a vascular cause.
- ▶ A high FSH with a small testis suggests primary testicular failure.
- ▶ A normal FSH with azoospermia suggests obstruction instead.
- ▶ **Testicular biopsy comes last**, to settle whether azoospermia is obstructive (sperm are made but blocked — potentially correctable, and usable for assisted reproduction) or non-obstructive (production itself has failed).
- ▶ This distinction is the whole forensic value of the biopsy: it decides whether sterility is curable and whether the man could ever father a child.

- ▶ Removing one testis does not affect potency or fertility.
- ▶ Cryptorchid men (undescended testes) are not necessarily sterile or impotent.
- ▶ A man can be impotent without being sterile, or sterile without being impotent.
- ▶ So the biopsy speaks only to sterility/spermatogenesis — never to potency.

Biopsy in determining sex (intersex/DSD)

- ▶ The most certain evidence of sex is the possession of testes in the male and ovaries in the female.
- ▶ Gonadal biopsy, with identification of the sex chromosomes, is the confirmatory method of sex determination.
- ▶ In a fresh body, biopsy of the gonads confirms the diagnosis of concealed or ambiguous sex.
- ▶ Germinal (spermatogenic) tissue on biopsy establishes male gonadal sex.
- ▶ **Gonadal dysgenesis:** the gonads are replaced by fibrous streak gonads.
- ▶ **Klinefelter's syndrome (47,XXY):** the tubules are hyalinised/fibrosed.
- ▶ Biopsy findings are correlated with nuclear sexing:
 - **Barr body (sex chromatin):** the inactive, condensed X-chromosome.
 - Normal male: 0 Barr bodies.
 - Normal female: 1 Barr body.
 - Turner syndrome (45,X): absent.
 - Triple-X syndrome (47,XXX): two.
 - **Davidson body:** a drumstick-shaped appendage seen in female neutrophils.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Sterility vs impotence:** biopsy proves or disproves spermatogenesis, settling sterility claims independent of potency; it says nothing about the act of intercourse.
- ▶ **Nullity of marriage/divorce:** sterility is not a ground for nullity of marriage (*Baxter v Baxter*, 1947), though it can found civil claims and matters for adoption.
- ▶ Impotence, unlike sterility, is a valid ground for nullity.
- ▶ This is codified under **Section 12, Hindu Marriage Act 1955**, and **Section 24, Special Marriage Act 1954**.
- ▶ **Paternity/legitimacy disputes:** demonstrated failure of spermatogenesis supports a claim that a man could not have fathered a child.
- ▶ DNA profiling has now largely superseded this morphological inference.
- ▶ **Vasectomy/sterilisation-failure suits:** a biopsy showing intact spermatogenesis with sperm proximal to the block confirms the testis was never the cause of the failure.
- ▶ **Sex determination (intersex/DSD):** gonadal biopsy is the confirmatory test, relevant in disputes over marriage, inheritance, competitive sport, and concealed identity.
- ▶ **Compensation claims:** acquired sterility after assault, accident, or occupational injury (lead, X-ray) can be proved by biopsy to support damages.
- ▶ **Consent:** being invasive, testicular biopsy needs valid informed written consent.

- ▶ **Custodial examination:** governed by Section 51 BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 53 CrPC 1973) — examination of the accused at police request.
- ▶ **Accused of rape:** Section 52 BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 53A CrPC 1973), under which reasonable force may be used.
- ▶ **Rape victim:** examined under Section 184 BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 164A CrPC 1973).
- ▶ The histological report, when relied on in court, is expert evidence under Section 39 BSA 2023 (formerly Section 45 IEA 1872).
- ▶ **Opinion must stay guarded:** the examiner gives a cautious, often negatively-phrased opinion, because no single finding is conclusive on its own.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Seminiferous tubule cross-section:** label the basement membrane, Sertoli cell, spermatogonium, primary spermatocyte, spermatid, mature spermatozoa in the lumen, and interstitial Leydig cells.
- ▶ Draw two panels side by side.
- ▶ Panel (a): normal active spermatogenesis, showing the full maturation sequence.
- ▶ Panel (b): Sertoli-cell-only/hyalinised tubule, with no germ cells and a thickened basement membrane.
- ▶ Together they contrast obstructive with non-obstructive azoospermia.
- ▶ **Azoospermia workup flow:** semen analysis shows azoospermia, so check serum FSH and testis size.
- ▶ Normal FSH with normal testis size suggests obstruction.
- ▶ High FSH with a small testis suggests primary failure.
- ▶ Either way, testicular biopsy follows next, distinguishing obstructive (active spermatogenesis) from non-obstructive azoospermia (germ-cell aplasia, maturation arrest, or hyalinisation).



Which drugs are used to induce abortion? Which specimens are to be preserved to detect them in case of criminal abortion?

Asked in: Paper I Dec 2023 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ An **abortifacient** is any agent that induces premature expulsion of the products of conception.
- ▶ **Criminal abortion** is an unlawful termination of pregnancy not covered by the MTP Act.
- ▶ Drugs are usually tried first because they are cheap, easy to obtain, and let the woman attempt self-induction alone.
- ▶ Key exam quote: "There is no drug which when taken by the mouth causes abortion without endangering the life of the woman."

- ▶ Drugs work in one of two ways.
 - By congesting the uterine lining, which is followed by bleeding and uterine contraction.
 - By directly stimulating the **myometrium** (the uterine muscle wall).
- ▶ Because most abortifacients are themselves poisons, specimen preservation after a criminal-abortion death follows the same protocol as any poisoning autopsy, plus specimens from the genital tract.

Classification of abortifacient drugs

Group	Mechanism	Key examples
Ecbolics	Stimulate the uterine muscle directly; often fail in early pregnancy	Ergot (commonest), ergometrine/methylethergometrine, quinine, oxytocic extracts
Prostaglandins	Powerful oxytocics inducing labour and abortion	PGE ₂ and PGF ₂ α (IV, oral, or intra-amniotic)
Heavy-metal poisons	Tonic uterine contraction plus direct toxicity to the fetus	Lead (diachylon/lead oleate), arsenic, mercuric chloride
Genito-urinary irritants	Reflex uterine contraction; large doses cause nephritis	Pennyroyal, tansy, turpentine, cantharides, potassium permanganate
GI irritants	Colonic irritation causing reflex pelvic congestion	Croton oil, aloes, senna, castor oil, tartar emetic
Emmenagogues	Abort only in large, repeated doses	Savin, apiol, rue, nutmeg, borax
Local plant irritants	Direct irritation of cervix/uterus	<i>Calotropis</i> , <i>Abrus</i> (jequirity), <i>Plumbago</i> , unripe papaya

- ▶ **Lawful contrast:** mifepristone (anti-progestin) detaches the placenta; misoprostol (a PGE₁ analogue) then causes contraction and cervical softening — method of choice up to 7 weeks (90–95% success). The same prostaglandins, used outside the MTP Act, become criminal abortifacients.
- ▶ **Key exam point:** ecbolics often fail early in pregnancy, since the small fetus floats freely and the cervical os is closed; they work better as pregnancy advances, so drugs are tried in months 2–3, with mechanical methods used if they fail.
- ▶ **Ergot's** effect increases as pregnancy advances; overdose causes *ergotism* — arterial spasm and gangrene of the extremities.
- ▶ **Lead** (diachylon pills) can kill the fetus at a dose that only mildly poisons the mother — maternal lead-poisoning symptoms often appear first.
- ▶ **Potassium permanganate** vaginal tablets cause a punched-out ulcer with a black granular base and heavy arterial bleeding — a classic self-induction trap.

Specimens to preserve to detect abortifacient drugs

- ▶ **Stomach and its whole contents, plus the upper ~30 cm of small intestine:** detects swallowed ecbolics, purgatives, emetics, lead pills, and plant poisons.

- ▶ **Liver (~500 g) with gall bladder, and half of each kidney:** proves absorption (liver) and excretion (kidney).
- ▶ **Blood (~10 mL) and urine (~30–100 mL):** show systemic absorption.
 - In deaths from vaginal syringing, soap/phenol/potassium permanganate are best detected in blood from the inferior vena cava and pulmonary arteries.
- ▶ **Uterus, cervix, vagina and adnexa — the genital tract:** the specimen unique to criminal abortion.
 - Locally applied caustics (phenol, lysol, mercuric chloride, potassium permanganate, arsenic) cause erosion here and a **necrotic pseudomembrane** (a false membrane of dead tissue).
- ▶ **Vaginal fluid (removed by pipette) and any necrotic pseudomembrane:** detects locally applied pastes (soap, myrrh, thymol, potassium iodide, mercury, iodine).
- ▶ **Fluid from the vagina/uterine cavity, plus blood from both ventricles:** sent for chemical and bacteriological examination (*Clostridium welchii*, *E. coli*, streptococci, *Staph. aureus*).
- ▶ **Fluid from the cut lung surface and pulmonary blood:** for fatty-acid and phenolic-derivative estimation.
- ▶ **Expelled products of conception (fetus, placenta, clot) and retained uterine tissue:** confirm pregnancy/abortion, age the fetus, and allow **DNA profiling** to identify the accused.
- ▶ **Any drug, paste, instrument, soiled linen or container found at the scene:** compared against the poison found in the viscera.

Preservation protocol:

- ▶ **General viscera:** saturated common-salt solution, in a clean glass bottle filled only two-thirds full (room for decomposition gas). Slice liver/kidney thin so the preservative penetrates evenly.
- ▶ **Rectified spirit** is the alternative preservative, but must **not** be used when alcohol, ether, chloroform, paraldehyde, acetic acid or phosphorus is suspected — use saturated saline instead.
- ▶ **Blood:** add sodium fluoride plus potassium oxalate; add sodium citrate too for oxalic acid, ethylene glycol, or carbon monoxide.
- ▶ **Urine:** equal volume of saturated common-salt solution, or rectified spirit with thymol.
- ▶ **Containers:** clean wide-mouthed glass only, never plastic (volatile poisons diffuse through it); one bottle per organ.
- ▶ No preservative is needed if analysis is within 24 hours, viscera are refrigerated, or the sample is bone, hair, nails, or lung tissue.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Flowchart — "Abortifacient drugs by mechanism":** central box branching to Ecbolics (ergot), Prostaglandins, Heavy-metal poisons, GU irritants, GI irritants, and Emmenagogues — side note: *"No oral drug aborts without endangering the mother."*
- ▶ **Diagram — "Specimens in a criminal-abortion autopsy":** pelvis/torso outline with arrows to labelled bottles (stomach + intestine; liver + kidney; uterus/cervix/vagina; blood; urine; lung fluid). Label: *"Glass bottles only; two-thirds full; sealed — chain of custody."*

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Autopsy correlation:** check the GI tract for irritant poisoning, the GU tract for cantharides/turpentine nephritis, and the vagina/cervix for erosion, caustic ulceration and a necrotic pseudomembrane. If irritant poisoning is found, preserve the whole tract with the other organs.
- ▶ **Chain of custody:** label each bottle, seal it with red sealing wax, lock it in a viscera box, and send it to the Forensic Science Laboratory with a forwarding letter, the PM report copy, and the seal key sent separately. A broken or missing seal invites an allegation of tampering.
- ▶ **To convict the abortionist,** four facts must be proved: the woman was pregnant; the accused did the act causing the interruption; the act was done for an illegal abortion; and death resulted. Expelled placental or fetal tissue allows DNA profiling to fix identity.
- ▶ **Doctor's duties:** keep information confidential; ask the patient but do not press if she refuses; consult a colleague; treat to the best of one's ability. If serious, arrange a **dying declaration** (§32 IEA 1872, now §26 BSA 2023). If she dies, do **not** issue a cause-of-death certificate — inform the police instead.
- ▶ A criminal-abortion death is an unnatural death requiring **police inquest under §174 CrPC 1973 (now §194 BNSS 2023)**; the doctor's expert opinion is admissible under **§45 IEA 1872 (now §39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ **Causing miscarriage** is punishable under **§312 IPC (now §88 BNS 2023)** — up to 3 years, or 7 years if the woman is *quick with child*.
- ▶ **Related offences (dual-cited):**
 - Miscarriage without the woman's consent — §313 IPC (now §89 BNS 2023).
 - Death caused by an act done to cause miscarriage — §314 IPC (now §90 BNS 2023).
 - Act to prevent a child being born alive, or to cause its death after birth — §315 IPC (now §91 BNS 2023).
 - Causing the death of a quick unborn child, amounting to culpable homicide — §316 IPC (now §92 BNS 2023).
- ▶ **The doctor's protection:** an act done in good faith, for a person's benefit, with consent — §88 IPC (now §26 BNS 2023) — shields a registered medical practitioner performing a lawful MTP.
- ▶ **The MTP Act 1971 (Amendment 2021)** legalises abortion up to **20 weeks** (one registered medical practitioner) and **20–24 weeks** for specified categories (two practitioners) — the boundary separating lawful from criminal abortifacient use.



Write the anatomy of Uterus and discuss in detail about the medicolegal problems, procedure of investigation, complication and method of autopsy in case of death associated with criminal Abortion

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ The **uterus** is the pear-shaped, muscular reproductive organ where the fertilised ovum implants and the fetus develops.
- ▶ **Criminal abortion** is the unlawful induced expulsion of the fetus — no therapeutic indication, and not protected by the MTP Act.
- ▶ Most criminal abortions happen before the third month, mostly in widows and unmarried women.
- ▶ The case usually surfaces only when the woman develops a complication or dies.
- ▶ The autopsy must answer three questions: did abortion occur, how was it procured, and did it cause death.

Anatomy of the uterus

- ▶ **Size (non-gravid):** pear-shaped, about 7.5 cm long, 5 cm broad, 2.5 cm thick.
- ▶ **Nulliparous uterus:** about 7×4.5 cm, weighs 40–60 g.
- ▶ **Parous uterus:** larger, about 9×6.5 cm, weighs 80–120 g.
- ▶ **Parts (top to bottom):**
 - **Fundus** — the dome above where the fallopian tubes enter.
 - **Body (corpus)** — the main triangular cavity.
 - **Cornua** — the two upper angles where each tube opens; the autopsy incision runs cornu to cornu.
 - **Isthmus** — the narrow junctional zone; its softening on palpation is *Hegar's sign*, a sign of early pregnancy.
 - **Cervix** — the lower part into the vagina, with an internal os and an external os.
- ▶ **Wall — three coats:**
 - **Perimetrium** — the outer serosal covering.
 - **Myometrium** — the thick muscle coat that expels the fetus and clamps the vessels; abortifacient drugs act here.
 - **Endometrium** — the inner lining, becomes the decidua in pregnancy, shows the **placental site** after abortion.
- ▶ **Position:** anteverted and anteflexed, between the bladder in front and the rectum behind, supported by the broad/round/uterosacral/cardinal ligaments — so a perforating instrument can transfix the bladder, rectum, or bowel.

- ▶ **Blood supply:** the uterine arteries (from the internal iliac) plus an ovarian-artery contribution; this venous plexus at the placental bed is the route by which air or fluid causes embolism.
- ▶ **Putrefaction:** the **non-gravid uterus is the last organ to putrefy** (like the prostate), used to determine sex in advanced decomposition; the **gravid or recently-delivered uterus putrefies fast** instead.
- ▶ **In pregnancy:** the fundus reaches the umbilicus by ~20–24 weeks and the xiphisternum by ~32–36 weeks, then involutes ~1.5 cm/day after delivery. A parous fundus is convex and above the broad-ligament line; a nulliparous fundus is less convex and level with it.

Classification of abortion

- ▶ **Natural (spontaneous):** 10–15% of pregnancies, commonest in the 2nd–3rd month.
 - Causes: a retroverted/malformed/hypoplastic uterus, submucous fibroid, cervical incompetence, hypertension, diabetes, syphilis, or lead/arsenic toxicity.
 - No injuries and infection is rare here — the key contrast with the criminal case below.
- ▶ **Induced — therapeutic/legal:** under the MTP Act, for therapeutic, eugenic, humanitarian (rape), or social (contraceptive failure) grounds.
- ▶ **Induced — criminal:** any induced abortion not protected by the MTP Act, by a qualified or unqualified person.
- ▶ **Abortionists:** the qualified/expert; the **semi-skilled** (midwives, nurses, chemists, village *dais*); or the wholly **unskilled** — the last two cause most fatalities.

Methods of procuring criminal abortion

Group	Examples
Ecboics	Ergot (commonest), quinine, lead diachylon pills, oxytocic extracts, prostaglandins
Emmenagogues	Savin, apiol, rue, nutmeg, ergometrine
Genitourinary irritants	Oil of pennyroyal/tansy, turpentine, cantharides, potassium permanganate vaginal tablets
GI irritants (purgatives)	Aloes, croton oil, castor oil, colocynth, senna
General violence	Abdominal pressure, violent exercise, cupping , hot/cold hip baths
Local instruments	Syringing (soap-water/lysol), sound/catheter/knitting needle, abortion stick , laminaria tents, curettage, chemical pastes

Complications and causes of death

- ▶ **Immediate deaths:**
 - **Vagal inhibition:** instant reflex cardiac arrest from rough cervical instrumentation or hot/cold fluid; fear worsens it.
 - **Air embolism:** air enters the open placental-bed veins after separation — ~100 mL is fatal, collapse in ~2 min, death in ~10 min.

- **Haemorrhage** from perforation or placental detachment.
- **Fat embolism** and **amniotic-fluid embolism** (mortality ~80%, half within the first hour — an allergic-type reaction with sudden lung-vessel spasm).
- Rarely, poisoning by the abortifacient itself.
- ▶ **Delayed deaths (48–72 h):** septicaemia, pyaemia, local infection, peritonitis, tetanus, and **gas gangrene** (*Clostridium welchii* — kills in 18–24 h, bronze/raindrop skin).
- ▶ **Remote deaths:** jaundice, renal failure (bilateral cortical necrosis), bacterial endocarditis, pulmonary embolism.
- ▶ **Injuries:** uterine/intestinal perforation with haemorrhagic shock, cervical/vaginal laceration, and chemical peritonitis from fluid escaping via the fallopian tubes.

Procedure of investigation

- ▶ **Suspect criminal abortion when:** the deceased is pregnant and cyanosed, instruments/abortifacient drugs are at the scene, underclothing is disturbed, or blood-stained/soapy fluid is escaping from the vagina.
- ▶ **Scene evidence:** soiled linen/clothing (may smell of carbolic soap or Dettol), discarded dressings, any abortifacient drug; absence of instruments despite an instrumental death points to a second person — the abortionist.
- ▶ **In a living woman:** vaginal/cervical erosion, slight uterine enlargement, breast changes; speculum shows lacerations and vulsellum/tenaculum grip marks on the cervix.
- ▶ **Expelled material:** estimate fetal age; blood-group any clot by the precipitin test; check vaginal contents for chemicals. Placental/fetal tissue can be **DNA-profiled** to identify the man responsible.
- ▶ **To convict the abortionist, prove:** the woman was pregnant; the accused acted to interrupt the pregnancy; the act aimed at illegal abortion; and death resulted from it.

Method of autopsy

- ▶ **Before opening the body:** if embolism is suspected, check for air in the great veins and right heart before removing organs — open the heart under water.
 - The right heart, venae cavae, and pulmonary conus balloon out with foamy blood; pelvic veins look **beaded** from trapped air.
 - Air in cerebral veins after opening the skull is only an artefact.
- ▶ **Poisoning route:** examine the GI/urinary tracts for irritant effect and the vagina/cervix for chemical erosions or a necrotic pseudomembrane (phenol, lysol, mercuric chloride, KMnO₄, arsenic); preserve for analysis.
- ▶ **Pelvic dissection:** remove the external genitalia and pelvic organs *en bloc* for a bloodless field.
 - Look for punctures, ruptures, haemorrhage, and inflammation; the uterus may be **crepitant** with subserosal gas bubbles.
 - Open the uterus cornu to cornu: look for the **placental site**, retained products/chorionic villi (proof of pregnancy), endometrial scooping from curettage, and perforations (small stellate to large irregular tears).

- ▶ **Cervical wounds occur in ~50% of instrumental cases** — grooves, tenaculum marks, fissures, lacerations.
 - Note the degree of dilatation and trace any tear into the bladder, rectum, bowel, or broad ligaments.
- ▶ **Infection:** a septic uterus is swollen, spongy, discoloured, with foul purulent endometrium; check for an enlarged soft spleen and hepato-renal failure.
- ▶ **Preserve:** vaginal/uterine fluid, blood from both ventricles, uterine/ovarian tissue for histology, bacteriological swabs (including any suspect instrument), and lung fluid for fatty-acid/phenolic estimation. Photograph everything — **the uterus and its appendages are the special viscera preserved** in criminal abortion.
- ▶ **Answer after autopsy:** was she pregnant, was there abortion, was there criminal interference by instrument or drug, did death relate to it — and for instrumental cases, which instrument, when used, and how death occurred.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Sagittal section of the female pelvis with the uterus** — label fundus, body, cornu, isthmus, cervix, internal/external os, perimetrium, myometrium, endometrium, uterine cavity, fallopian tube, ovary, broad/round ligaments, vagina, bladder (anterior), rectum (posterior); show the anteverted–anteflexed position.
- ▶ **Cut-open uterus in criminal abortion** — label placental site, retained products, endometrial scooping, wall perforation, cervical tenaculum marks, subserosal gas bubbles, and any foreign body in the cavity.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Section 88 BNS 2023 (formerly §312 IPC 1860):** voluntarily causing miscarriage — up to 3 years, or 7 years if **quick with child**; both the person causing it and the consenting woman are liable.
- ▶ **Section 89 BNS 2023 (formerly §313 IPC 1860):** miscarriage **without the woman's consent** — up to 10 years or life.
- ▶ **Section 90 BNS 2023 (formerly §314 IPC 1860):** **death caused** by an act meant to cause miscarriage — up to 10 years; no defence that death was not foreseen.
- ▶ **Section 91 BNS 2023 (formerly §315 IPC 1860):** acting to prevent a live birth or to cause the child's death after birth — up to 10 years.
- ▶ **Section 92 BNS 2023 (formerly §316 IPC 1860):** causing the death of a **quick unborn child** amounting to culpable homicide — up to 10 years.
- ▶ **Section 62 BNS 2023 (formerly §511 IPC 1860):** a failed attempt — up to half the Section 88 punishment.
- ▶ A doctor acting bona fide under the **MTP (Amendment) Act 2021** is exempt from these sections.
- ▶ Inquest into an abortion death proceeds under **Sections 194/196 BNSS 2023 (formerly §174/176 CrPC 1973)**.
- ▶ **Doctor's duties when abortion is suspected:**

- Keep the information confidential.
 - Ask the patient about the induction, but do not press if she refuses.
 - Consult a professional colleague and treat her to the best of one's ability.
 - If she is dying, **record a dying declaration** — admissible under **Section 26 BSA 2023 (formerly §32 IEA 1872)**.
 - If she dies, **do not issue a death certificate — inform the police.**
- ▶ An abortionist may disguise an incomplete abortion as threatened; a woman may insert a KMnO₄ tablet for the same reason — do not be misled into completing the act.
 - ▶ **Distinguish natural from criminal abortion:** infection, marks of abdominal violence, genital injuries, foreign bodies, and toxic drug effects all point to the criminal case.
 - ▶ **Expert evidence** on autopsy findings is given under **Section 39 BSA 2023 (formerly §45 IEA 1872)**; exhumation may be ordered if the death was disguised.

♦ ♦ ♦

Forensic toxicology

♦ ♦ ♦

Death from narcotic and Hallucinogenic drugs

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ A **narcotic** is a drug that produces stupor, deep sleep and analgesia.
- ▶ The prototype narcotics are **opiates and opioids**, derived from or acting like the alkaloids of the opium poppy (*Papaver somniferum*).
- ▶ A **hallucinogen** (psychotomimetic/psychedelic) distorts cognition and sensory perception without producing true coma.
- ▶ The prototype hallucinogen is **LSD (lysergic acid diethylamide)**.
- ▶ Death may follow acute overdose, adulteration, withdrawal, or the bizarre/violent behaviour the drug provokes.
- ▶ The controlling statute is the **Narcotic Drugs and Psychotropic Substances (NDPS) Act, 1985**.

Classification

Group	Definition	Examples
Opiates	Natural alkaloids of opium and semisynthetic derivatives	Morphine, codeine, heroin
Opioids	Synthetic drugs with opiate-like action	Pethidine, methadone, fentanyl, tramadol
Hallucinogens	Alter cognition and perception	LSD, phencyclidine, mescaline, psilocybin, cannabis (high dose)

- ▶ Crude opium yields **9–14% morphine**, standardised to **10%** at the Ghazipur and Neemuch opium factories.

Death from narcotic (opioid) drugs

- ▶ Opioids act on **G-protein-coupled opioid receptors**.
- ▶ The **mu receptor** mediates analgesia, euphoria, miosis, dependence and **respiratory depression**.
- ▶ The **kappa receptor** mediates spinal analgesia, miosis and sedation.
- ▶ Death is caused by depression of the **medullary respiratory centre**.

Fatal doses

- ▶ Raw opium: **2 g**.
- ▶ Morphine: **200 mg**.
- ▶ Codeine: **800 mg**.
- ▶ Heroin: **50 mg**.
- ▶ Methadone: **100 mg**.
- ▶ **The fatal period for opium/morphine poisoning is 6–12 hours**.
- ▶ Death occurs from **respiratory failure**.
- ▶ Liver disease, myxoedema, pneumonia and Addison's disease increase susceptibility.
- ▶ **Fentanyl is about 80 times as potent as morphine**.
- ▶ Its analogues (carfentanil) can kill in microgram doses.

Three stages of opioid poisoning

- ▶ **Stage of excitement:** euphoria, restlessness, flushed face; brief or absent with a large dose.
- ▶ **Stage of stupor:** drowsiness, nausea, vomiting, itching, constricted pupils; the patient is still rousable.
- ▶ **Stage of narcosis (coma):** unrousable deep sleep.
 - **Pin-point pupils** unreactive to light — the single most important sign.
 - **Respiratory depression** — rate falls to 3–5 breaths/min, with Cheyne–Stokes breathing.
 - **Coma**.
- ▶ These three findings together form the **classical triad of opioid toxicity** (pupils dilate only terminally, once hypoxia sets in).

Heroin

- ▶ A semisynthetic ester of morphine, more potent than morphine by either route.
- ▶ Rapidly metabolised to **6-monoacetylmorphine**, then morphine.
- ▶ Blood detects these metabolites, not heroin itself.
- ▶ The most commonly abused opioid in India ("brown sugar").
- ▶ The insoluble **base** is smoked or sniffed ("chasing the dragon").
- ▶ The soluble salt (**hydrochloride**) is used intravenously.
- ▶ Intravenous use is called "**mainlining**"; subcutaneous/intramuscular use is "**skin-popping**."

Differential diagnosis of opioid coma

- ▶ Alcohol or barbiturate poisoning — pupils are dilated, not pin-point.
- ▶ **Pontine haemorrhage** — pin-point pupils, but with high fever.
- ▶ Also: diabetic/uraemic coma, carbon-monoxide poisoning, cerebral malaria.

Laboratory diagnosis

- ▶ The **Marquis test** turns purple-red then blue with morphine.
- ▶ Confirm with urine immunoassay or chromatography (TLC/HPLC/GC-MS).

Treatment

- ▶ ABC resuscitation and assisted ventilation.
- ▶ **Gastric lavage with potassium permanganate (KMnO₄)** — done even after parenteral use, because opioids re-enter the stomach via enterohepatic circulation and cause pylorospasm.
- ▶ Multiple-dose activated charcoal, plus sodium sulphate and an enema.
- ▶ **Naloxone** is the drug of choice — 1.2–2 mg IV, repeated as needed.
- ▶ Monitor at least 4 hours, since naloxone acts for only 2–3 hours and the patient may re-sedate.

Death from hallucinogenic drugs

LSD

- ▶ A synthetic ergot-alkaloid derivative, potent in **microgram** quantities.
- ▶ Usual dose 100–150 µg orally; serum half-life about 3 hours.
- ▶ Binds most **5-HT (serotonin) receptor** subtypes; the psychedelic effect comes mainly from partial agonism at 5-HT_{2A} receptors.
- ▶ Effects include visual distortion, altered time sense, **synaesthesia**, tachycardia, hypertension and dilated pupils.
- ▶ The disturbed state can last a few hours up to about **18 hours** — far beyond the drug's half-life.
- ▶ **"Bad trip"**: panic attacks and hallucinations during acute intoxication.
- ▶ **Flashback**: sudden re-experience of the drug effect weeks to months later, without re-exposure.
- ▶ **Tolerance** develops in 2–3 days of daily use and is lost again in 4–6 days; there is **no physical-withdrawal syndrome**, only psychological dependence.
- ▶ LSD is **not itself highly toxic**; death results from bizarre or suicidal behaviour during intoxication.
- ▶ **Treatment** is mainly **"talking down"** (reassurance); diazepam or haloperidol for acute agitation.

Other hallucinogens

- ▶ **Phencyclidine (PCP, "angel dust")**: a dissociative anaesthetic causing detachment, hallucinations, violence and psychosis.
- ▶ **MDMA (ecstasy)**: death from **disseminated intravascular coagulation with sagittal-sinus thrombosis**, hyperthermia, rhabdomyolysis and renal failure, or from arrhythmia.
- ▶ **Mescaline** and **psilocybin** are naturally occurring plant/fungal psychedelics.
- ▶ **Cannabis** in large doses can cause hallucinations and an acute psychotic **"run amok"** reaction with homicidal frenzy.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Three stages of opioid poisoning:** Excitement → Stupor → Narcosis/Coma (boxed triad: pin-point pupils + respiratory depression + coma) → Death from respiratory failure.
- ▶ **Opium poppy capsule:** unripe green capsule, incision/lancing lines, oozing white latex ("poppy tears"), loculi with seeds, ripe capsule ("poppy straw").

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Manner of death is usually **accidental** — overdose in addicts, hyper-purity batches, or opium given to children to make them sleep.
- ▶ Suicidal heroin death is rare because it is "painless"; homicidal poisoning is uncommon.
- ▶ LSD/PCP deaths are typically accidental or suicidal, from disordered behaviour.
- ▶ **"Death on the needle"** is sudden death of an addict during intravenous injection.
- ▶ Shared unsterile needles transmit **HIV, hepatitis B/C, tetanus and gas gangrene**.
- ▶ **Adulteration ("cutting")** adds scopolamine, strychnine, quinine, caffeine, lactose or mannitol.
- ▶ **"Speedball"** is heroin combined with cocaine or amphetamine.
- ▶ **"Sting"** is heroin combined with scopolamine.
- ▶ **Body packers ("mules")** swallow drug packets for smuggling; rupture causes acute fatal poisoning, seen on plain X-ray or CT.
- ▶ Autopsy findings are generally non-specific.
 - Needle/track marks, "skin-popping" scars, tattoos hiding puncture sites.
 - Emaciation, froth at the mouth or nostrils, cyanotic post-mortem staining.
 - A perforated nasal septum from snorting.
 - Ruptured or intact drug packets in the gut.
- ▶ Reflect the skin of the arms to expose injection sites, preserving a control sample from the opposite side.
- ▶ Preserve blood, urine (best sample for opioids), bile, gastric contents, vitreous humour, viscera and hair for chemical analysis.
- ▶ **Withdrawal (opiate) deaths** in custody or de-addiction begin at 6–8 hours and peak around 72 hours.
- ▶ Every such fatality is an unnatural death needing police inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The doctor's testimony is admitted as **expert opinion under Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ Supplying a fatal drug that leads to suicide falls under **abetment of suicide — Section 306 IPC 1860 (now Section 108 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ If supplied to a child, a person of unsound mind, or an intoxicated person — **Section 305 IPC 1860 (now Section 107 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ The NDPS Act 1985 defines a **narcotic drug** as "*coca leaf, cannabis (hemp), opium, poppy straw and includes all manufactured drugs*" — **Section 2(xiv)**.

- ▶ A **psychotropic substance** means any natural or synthetic substance listed in the Act's Schedule — Section 2(xxiii).
- ▶ The NDPS Act is a **special statute**, unaffected by the 2024 BNS/BNSS/BSA recodification.



Role of heavy metal antagonists (chelating agents) in forensic practice

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition, principle and mechanism

- ▶ **Chelating agents** (heavy metal antagonists) are specific antidotes for poisoning by arsenic, lead, mercury, copper, iron, antimony, gold, bismuth and thallium.
- ▶ The name comes from the Greek *chele* (a claw) — the molecule grips the metal atom like a claw.
- ▶ They have a greater affinity for the toxic metal than the body's own enzymes do.
- ▶ They strip the metal off the sulfhydryl (–SH) groups of the respiratory enzymes it has paralysed.
- ▶ The metal–chelator complex formed is stable, water-soluble, non-ionised, not metabolised, and excreted intact in urine.
- ▶ This lowers the total body burden of the metal.
- ▶ Chelating agents act by **inert complex formation** — the same mechanism class as dicobalt edetate for cyanide.
- ▶ Chelation only mobilises and removes metal — it does **not reverse tissue necrosis** already caused.
- ▶ It is always combined with decontamination and supportive care, and started only after diagnostic samples are secured.
- ▶ **Ideal chelator**: high affinity for the toxic metal, low affinity for essential body metals (zinc, calcium, copper), and a complex that is water-soluble for renal excretion.

The six standard chelating agents

- ▶ **BAL (British Anti-Lewisite, dimercaprol)**:
 - Chelates arsenic, mercury and lead — mnemonic **MAL**.
 - Also used for antimony, bismuth, copper, gold and thallium.
 - Given as a deep intramuscular injection, 3–4 mg/kg, 4-hourly for 2 days, then twice daily for about 10 days.
 - Avoid in hepatic damage; not used for iron or cadmium.
 - Causes haemolysis in G6PD deficiency.
 - Urine must be kept alkaline, since the BAL–metal complex dissociates in acid urine.
- ▶ **CaNa₂EDTA (calcium disodium versenate)**:
 - The calcium salt of EDTA, used almost exclusively for **lead**.
 - Given intravenously, 25–35 mg/kg in glucose/saline, twice daily for 5 days.
 - The **sodium salt must never be substituted** — it causes fatal hypocalcaemia.

- In lead encephalopathy, give BAL first, then EDTA.
- **D-penicillamine:**
 - Drug of choice for **acute copper** poisoning; also used for lead, mercury and Wilson's disease.
 - Given orally, 30 mg/kg/day for about a week.
 - A penicillin hydrolysis product — use with caution in penicillin-allergic patients.
- **DMSA (succimer):**
 - Chelates lead, mercury and arsenic; given orally.
 - Superior to EDTA for **lead** — does not redistribute lead into the brain.
 - Less nephrotoxic than EDTA and safe in G6PD deficiency.
- **DMPS (unithiol):**
 - Chelates mercury, lead and arsenic on the same regimen as DMSA.
 - A water-soluble dithiol analogue of BAL with a better therapeutic index.
- **Desferrioxamine (desferal):**
 - The only specific chelator for **acute iron** poisoning.
 - Given orally to bind gut iron, and intravenously for absorbed iron.
 - Chelates ferric iron (Fe^{3+}) to form water-soluble ferrioxamine.
- **Other agents:** N-acetyl-D-penicillamine for mercury (used in the Basra grain disaster); **Prussian blue** (potassium ferric cyanoferrate) for thallium; diethyldithiocarbamate (DDTC) for nickel.

Metal → antidote of choice (high yield)

Metal	Antidote of choice
Arsenic	BAL classical; DMSA/DMPS modern alternatives
Lead	CaNa_2EDTA ; DMSA in mild–moderate cases; BAL first in encephalopathy
Mercury (inorganic, acute)	BAL then DMSA; avoid BAL in organic mercury
Copper	D-penicillamine
Iron	Desferrioxamine
Antimony	BAL
Thallium	Prussian blue

- In **organic (methyl) mercury** poisoning, chelation is not very effective, and BAL should be avoided since it may redistribute mercury into the brain.
- No effective antidote exists for **cadmium** poisoning; chelation is generally ineffective.
- For **thallium**, Prussian blue interrupts entero-enteric recirculation, the reabsorption of excreted thallium from the gut back into the blood, and is superior to BAL or EDTA.

Contraindications and negligence pitfalls

- BAL must not be used in hepatic insufficiency, iron poisoning, or cadmium poisoning.
- BAL precipitates haemolysis in G6PD deficiency.

- ▶ BAL's arachis (peanut) oil vehicle is a caution in peanut allergy.
- ▶ Combining BAL with D-penicillamine or Ca-EDTA can increase toxicity — the only sanctioned combination is the sequenced BAL-then-EDTA regimen for lead encephalopathy.
- ▶ Sodium EDTA is not interchangeable with calcium disodium EDTA; giving the sodium salt causes fatal hypocalcaemia, a recognised negligence error.
- ▶ Chelators are not benign: nephrotoxicity, hypocalcaemia, hypersensitivity and depletion of essential trace metals can themselves cause harm from a wrong dose, salt or indication.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Chelate ring:** a central metal ion (M^{2+}/M^{3+}) held by the chelator's donor groups ($-SH / -COO^-$), forming a closed ring around it.
- ▶ Label the metal ion, the thiol/carboxyl donor groups, the chelate ring, and an arrow to "water-soluble complex → renal excretion."
- ▶ **Mechanism flow:** metal binds the enzyme's $-SH$ group → chelator competes for the metal (higher affinity) → metal transfers from enzyme to chelator → enzyme reactivated and a stable soluble complex forms → complex excreted in urine.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Choosing the correct chelator, salt, route and dose is part of the standard of care in treating a poisoning case.
- ▶ A wrong choice, such as giving BAL in iron or organic-mercury poisoning, or substituting sodium EDTA, can found a charge of **medical negligence**.
- ▶ Every person aware of certain offences, including poisoning, must inform the police or magistrate — the duty to inform under **Section 39 CrPC 1973 (now Section 33 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The treating doctor must preserve and label samples — vomitus, gastric-lavage fluid, blood, urine, viscera — **before** starting chelation.
- ▶ This matters because chelation alters the metal's tissue distribution and renal excretion, and can confound the chemical examiner's later estimation.
- ▶ Reporting/procedural provisions for poisoning offences: **Sections 33, 34 and 195 BNSS 2023 (formerly Sections 39, 40 and 175 CrPC 1973)**.
- ▶ **Substantive penal provisions:**
 - Negligent conduct with a poisonous substance — **Section 284 IPC 1860 (now Section 286 BNS 2023)**.
 - Culpable homicide — **Section 299 IPC 1860 (now Section 100 BNS 2023)**.
 - Murder — **Section 300 IPC 1860 (now Section 101 BNS 2023)**.
 - Death by a rash or negligent act — **Section 304A IPC 1860 (now Section 106(1) BNS 2023)**.
 - Voluntarily causing hurt by poison — **Section 328 IPC 1860 (now Section 123 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ Proof of metal poisoning needs the combined effort of the investigating officer, the autopsy surgeon and the **chemical examiner**, whose report is the most important evidence.

- ▶ Chelation-enhanced urinary excretion of the metal can itself serve as corroborative analytical evidence.
- ▶ The doctor's opinion on the poison, its fatal dose and the appropriateness of antidotal therapy is admissible as **expert opinion under Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ Chronic heavy-metal exposure — for example chronic mercury poisoning, called *hydrargyrism* — may be occupational, environmental or criminal.
- ▶ It supports the diagnosis pursued at inquest (**Section 174 CrPC 1973, now Section 194 BNSS 2023**).



Emmenagogues

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Emmenagogues** are drugs that increase menstrual flow.
- ▶ The name comes from Greek: *emmena* = menses, *agogos* = inducing.
- ▶ Women take them claiming to treat amenorrhoea (a missed period).
- ▶ In large, frequently repeated doses they act on the uterus and can cause abortion.
- ▶ This makes them one of three mechanisms of **criminal abortion** — abortifacient drugs, general violence, and local violence/instrumentation.
- ▶ No oral abortifacient is truly safe: the dose that reliably empties the uterus is close to the dose that poisons the mother.

How abortifacient drugs work

- ▶ They congest the uterine mucosa, causing bleeding and uterine contraction, **or**
- ▶ They directly stimulate the myometrium (uterine muscle) to contract.
- ▶ **Timing follows how far the pregnancy has advanced:**
 - Up to **1 month** (period only suspected late): violent exercise, hot baths, purgatives.
 - Up to **2 months** (suspicion becomes certainty): emmenagogues and ecbolics are used.
 - **3rd–4th month** (drugs having failed): mechanical/instrumental interference.

Classification of emmenagogues

- ▶ **Direct emmenagogues** stimulate the uterus directly.
 - Used more often for criminal abortion.
 - Classic examples: **savin, apiol, sanguinarine, laburnum, rue, nutmeg, senecio, caulophyllum, hellebore, borax, and potassium permanganate (KMnO₄)**.
- ▶ **Indirect emmenagogues** correct anaemia or pelvic congestion.
 - Used as folk treatment for amenorrhoea, not primarily as abortifacients.
 - Example: **iron** and other tonics/haematinics.

Emmenagogues vs ecbolics

Feature	Emmenagogues	Ecbolics (oxytocics)
Action	Increase menstrual flow	Increase uterine contractions
Effect on cervix	Do not reliably dilate it	Also do not relax it — foetus may not expel despite contractions
Strength	Weaker — abort only in large, repeated doses	Stronger, more direct abortifacients
Examples	Savin, apiol, rue, nutmeg, sanguinarine	Ergot, goldenseal, quinine, lead, pituitary extract, prostaglandins

- ▶ **Ergot** (from *Claviceps purpurea*) is the commonest ecboic.
- ▶ Its active alkaloids are ergometrine and methylergometrine.
- ▶ It often fails to work in early pregnancy.
- ▶ Its toxicity causes arterial spasm and gangrene of the extremities.
- ▶ *Hydrastis canadensis* (goldenseal) acts as both an oxytocic and an emmenagogue.
- ▶ It behaves as a stronger ecboic than emmenagogue.

Other drug groups used to procure abortion

- ▶ **GU-tract irritants** cause reflex uterine contraction.
 - Examples: pennyroyal oil, tansy oil, turpentine oil, cantharides, potassium permanganate.
 - KMnO_4 in the vaginal vault gives a punched-out ulcer with a granular black base, eroding small arteries and causing severe haemorrhage.
- ▶ **GIT irritants** cause reflex uterine hyperaemia and contraction.
 - Saline cathartics (e.g. magnesium sulphate) and drastic purgatives (e.g. aloes, croton oil, senna).
- ▶ **Systemic/metallic poisons** are given at sublethal maternal doses on the idea that the foetus is more susceptible.
 - Salts of antimony, copper, iron, lead, and mercury.
 - Plant irritants such as *Calotropis* (madar) juice and *Plumbago rosea* (lal chitra) bark.
- ▶ **Abortion sticks** — locally applied irritants pushed through the cervix, e.g. *Abrus precatorius*, marking-nut juice, arsenic, mercuric chloride.

Danger to the mother

- ▶ Most of these agents are irritants or systemic poisons.
- ▶ The woman typically shows ill-health and gastrointestinal disturbance first — vomiting, purging, abdominal pain — often before the uterus is even emptied.
- ▶ **Lead** (as diachylon pills) can kill the foetus at doses that spare the mother, but lead-poisoning symptoms usually appear before the abortion happens.
- ▶ **Quinine** has an uncertain direct action on the uterus, yet has still caused serious toxicity in women who used it to abort.
- ▶ **Ergot** carries the risk of ergotism — arterial spasm and gangrene.

- ▶ The unifying teaching: an oral abortifacient cannot reliably abort without risking the woman's life.
- ▶ Death from poisoning, haemorrhage, sepsis, or embolism is a recognised outcome.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Classification chart of abortifacient drugs:** branch *Abortifacient drugs* into four groups.
 - Drugs acting directly on the uterus, split into **Ecbolics** (ergot, goldenseal, quinine, lead, pituitary extract, prostaglandins) and **Emmenagogues** (Direct: savin, apiol, rue, nutmeg, sanguinarine, KMnO_4 ; Indirect: iron, tonics).
 - GU-tract irritants (cantharides, turpentine, KMnO_4).
 - GIT irritants (MgSO_4 , aloes, croton oil).
 - Systemic/metallic poisons (arsenic, lead, mercury, copper).
- ▶ **Abortion stick:** a 12–18 cm wood/bamboo stick, cotton-wool wrapped at one end, soaked in an irritant, inserted via the vagina through the cervix into the uterus.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Suspect criminal abortion when a pregnant woman shows GIT toxicity plus genital injury or bleeding.
- ▶ Also suspect it when abortifacient drugs or instruments are found at the scene.
- ▶ **In the living:** examine with a speculum/colposcope for vaginal/cervical erosions, lacerations, and bloody discharge.
- ▶ Note signs of pregnancy and of the specific drug's toxic effect.
- ▶ **At autopsy:** examine the gastrointestinal tract for irritant poisoning.
- ▶ Examine the urinary tract for inflammation from agents such as cantharides or turpentine.
- ▶ Inspect the vagina/cervix for caustic erosion.
- ▶ Preserve the whole GI tract with contents, the urinary tract, vaginal/cervical tissue, and the expelled material for chemical analysis.
- ▶ Preserve any abortifacient drug, abortion stick, syringe, or instrument recovered from the scene and hand it to the police.
- ▶ Expelled placental/foetal material is valuable for DNA profiling to identify the accused.
- ▶ **Doctor's duties:** maintain professional secrecy, arrange a dying declaration if the woman is seriously ill, and do not issue a death certificate — send the body for medico-legal autopsy.
- ▶ A dying declaration is recorded under **Section 26 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam (BSA) 2023 (formerly Section 32 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872)**.
- ▶ Causing miscarriage is an offence under **Section 88 BNS 2023 (formerly Section 312 IPC 1860)**.
- ▶ Punishment is up to 3 years' imprisonment or fine, rising to 7 years if the woman is quick with child.
- ▶ A woman who causes her own miscarriage also falls under this section.
- ▶ Causing miscarriage **without the woman's consent** falls under **Section 89 BNS 2023 (formerly Section 313 IPC)** — life imprisonment or up to 10 years, plus fine.

- ▶ If the woman dies, the offender is liable under **Section 90 BNS 2023 (formerly Section 314 IPC)**, even without intent to cause death.
- ▶ Termination under the **Medical Termination of Pregnancy (MTP) Act 1971 (amended 2021)** is lawful up to 24 weeks in defined categories.
- ▶ Any abortion outside the MTP Act is criminal abortion, whether done by a qualified or unqualified person.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ **Emmenagogue**: increases menstrual flow, aborts only in large, repeated doses.
- ▶ **Ecbolic**: increases uterine contractions — the stronger, more direct abortifacient.
- ▶ **Direct** emmenagogues stimulate the uterus (criminal abortion); **indirect** ones correct anaemia (folk amenorrhoea treatment, e.g. iron).
- ▶ Classic named emmenagogues: savin, apiol, rue, nutmeg, sanguinarine, laburnum, senecio, caulophyllum, hellebore, borax.
- ▶ **Commonest ecbolic** is ergot — often fails in early pregnancy, causes gangrene of the extremities.
- ▶ No oral abortifacient is safe — the abortive dose endangers the mother's life.
- ▶ KMnO_4 is both a direct emmenagogue and a GU-tract irritant, giving a punched-out ulcer with a granular black base.



Prevention of hypersensitivity reaction to polyvalent anti-snake venom (ASV) — autopsy findings and medico-legal problems

Asked in: Paper I Dec 2023 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

- ▶ **ASV (anti-snake venom)** is the only specific antidote for snake-bite envenomation in India.
- ▶ It is polyvalent — raised in horses hyperimmunised against the "big four": *Naja naja* (cobra), *Bungarus caeruleus* (krait), *Daboia russelii* (Russell's viper), *Echis carinatus* (saw-scaled viper).
- ▶ Being a foreign horse-serum protein, ASV can itself trigger a **hypersensitivity reaction (HSR)** — from an early anaphylactoid reaction to fatal anaphylaxis, or a delayed serum sickness.
- ▶ **Anaphylaxis**: an acute, potentially fatal, generalised immune reaction.
- ▶ **Serum sickness**: a delayed immune-complex reaction occurring about 1–2 weeks later.
- ▶ A patient may die of the remedy, not the bite — making prevention and recognition a key forensic problem.

Why ASV causes hypersensitivity

- ▶ ASV is lyophilised (freeze-dried) horse serum — a foreign protein.
- ▶ Most early reactions are non-IgE (immunoglobulin E) mediated — direct mast-cell/complement activation, not true allergy.
- ▶ The delayed reaction is a Type III immune-complex reaction (serum sickness).
- ▶ Snake venom itself releases histamine, so envenomation symptoms can overlap with HSR.

- ▶ **Early reaction (anaphylaxis/anaphylactoid), usually within 10–180 minutes of starting the infusion:**
 - Urticaria and itching.
 - Dyspnoea, bronchospasm, laryngeal oedema, angio-oedema.
 - Tachycardia and hypotension.
 - Rigors, nausea and vomiting.
- ▶ **Late reaction (serum sickness), about 1–2 weeks later:**
 - Myalgia, arthralgia, fever, chills.
 - Urticaria and lymphadenopathy.
 - Occasionally renal or neurological dysfunction.
 - Risk rises with the total dose of ASV given.

How to prevent the hypersensitivity reaction

- ▶ **Give ASV only when truly indicated.**
 - Systemic envenomation, or local swelling extending over half the bitten limb.
 - Tender regional lymph nodes or spontaneous systemic bleeding.
 - Incoagulable blood on the 20-minute whole-blood clotting test (20WBCT).
 - Hypotension/shock or neuromuscular signs.
 - A dry bite or minor swelling alone does not need ASV.
- ▶ **Never give a test dose.** It does not predict anaphylaxis and may itself pre-sensitise the patient — examiners reward this point most.
- ▶ **Route — IV only.** Never intramuscular (poor absorption) and never locally at the bite (painful, ineffective).
- ▶ **Dilution.** Reconstitute the lyophilised powder in normal saline — about 5 mL/kg, roughly 500 mL total — and infuse slowly.
- ▶ **Start slow, then escalate.** Watch closely for the first 30 minutes (greatest risk), then increase the rate to complete the dose over about one hour.
- ▶ **Doctor stays at the bedside,** with adrenaline 1:1000 already drawn up, plus antihistamine, hydrocortisone, oxygen and resuscitation equipment ready before starting.
- ▶ **Premedication** (antihistamine, corticosteroid, or low-dose adrenaline before ASV) **is adjunctive only** — evidence is debated, and it never replaces vigilance.
- ▶ **Use only properly stored ASV** within its potency period; avoid repeated unnecessary courses, since more vials raise serum-sickness risk.
- ▶ **Observe for at least one hour** after starting the infusion, and counsel the patient about possible serum sickness at 1–2 weeks.

Immediate management if a reaction occurs

- ▶ **Stop the ASV infusion immediately.**
- ▶ **Give intramuscular adrenaline 1:1000 first** — 0.5 mg in an adult, 0.01 mg/kg in a child, into the deltoid or thigh.

- ▶ Repeat the adrenaline after 10–15 minutes if there is no improvement.
- ▶ **Add adjuncts:** IV antihistamine and hydrocortisone, plus oxygen, IV fluids and airway support as needed.
- ▶ **Once controlled, restart ASV slowly** (5–10 mL/h) and gradually return to the normal rate, since venom neutralisation is still needed.
- ▶ **Treat serum sickness** with oral prednisolone 1–2 mg/kg/day, tapered over 1–2 weeks.

Autopsy findings in fatal ASV anaphylaxis

- ▶ Anaphylactic death is largely a **diagnosis of exclusion** — autopsy findings are non-specific and often scanty.
- ▶ **Laryngeal/pharyngeal oedema** — swelling of the glottis and upper airway; the most characteristic gross finding.
- ▶ **Lungs:** bulky, oedematous, congested, hyperinflated, with froth in the air passages.
- ▶ **Generalised visceral congestion** — brain, liver, kidneys; right heart and great veins engorged with fluid blood.
- ▶ **Skin:** urticarial wheals or facial angio-oedema; document the infusion site/cannula.
- ▶ **Snake-bite findings that must be separated from the reaction:**
 - Fang marks — two punctures, about 1–1.5 cm deep (elapid) or 2–2.5 cm deep (viper); may need a magnifying lens.
 - Local swelling, cellulitis and haemorrhage at the bite (viper).
 - Bowel haemorrhages, purpuric pericardial spots, pulmonary haemorrhages.
 - Renal tubular/cortical necrosis with interstitial nephritis — the leading cause of death in viper bite.
 - Swollen, congested regional lymph nodes.
- ▶ **Ancillary tests:** raised serum mast-cell tryptase, elevated IgE, and laryngeal/lung histology showing mucosal oedema and eosinophils.
- ▶ **Venom detection:** ELISA or radioimmunoassay (RIA) on blood, urine and bitten-skin tissue (preserve in normal saline) — this proves the bite was real and helps decide whether death was from the venom or the antidote.

Fatal dose and fatal period of the Indian "big four"

Snake	Type	Fatal dose (dried venom)	Fatal period
Cobra (<i>Naja naja</i>)	Elapid, neurotoxic	12 mg	½–6 hours
Common krait	Elapid, neurotoxic	6 mg	resembles cobra
Russell's viper	Viperine, vasculotoxic	15 mg	1–2 days
Saw-scaled viper	Viperine, vasculotoxic	8 mg	1–2 days

- ▶ Each vial of polyvalent ASV neutralises about 6–8 mg of venom (a per-vial capacity, not a fixed vial-count rule).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ A snake-bite death — including a death from ASV anaphylaxis — is a **medico-legal death**: it must be reported, and a medico-legal autopsy with inquest is mandatory.
- ▶ **Causation dilemma**: decide whether death was due to the envenomation itself, the ASV anaphylaxis, or inadequate/late/incorrect treatment.
- ▶ Findings overlap with envenomation, so the time-course (collapse soon after starting infusion favours anaphylaxis), tryptase and venom ELISA/RIA become decisive.
- ▶ **Possible negligence if**:
 - ASV was given without a valid indication.
 - The wrong route was used (IM or local).
 - Adrenaline was not kept ready, or there was no bedside monitoring.
 - No informed consent was taken for a serum product with known anaphylaxis risk.
- ▶ Negligence can be **civil** (compensation) or **criminal/professional** (action before the courts and the State Medical Council/National Medical Commission).
- ▶ **Negligent death during a medical procedure** is punishable under **Section 106(1) Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita (BNS) 2023**, which replaces **Section 304A Indian Penal Code (IPC) 1860** and carries a special two-year imprisonment cap for a registered medical practitioner.
- ▶ **Non-fatal negligent harm** during treatment falls under **Section 125 BNS 2023** (formerly Sections 336/337/338 IPC 1860).
- ▶ **Documentation** (indication, consent, route, dose, rate, observation) is the doctor's chief protection; preserve viscera, bite-site skin and the ASV vial/batch details.
- ▶ **Manner of death** is usually accidental, rarely homicidal or suicidal — a later ASV reaction does not change this.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Flowchart — safe administration of ASV and management of hypersensitivity.** Confirm indication (20WBCT incoagulable) → no test dose → adrenaline drawn up, doctor at bedside, IV route, dilute in saline → infuse slow, observe 30 min → no reaction: increase rate, complete over ~1 h, observe ≥1 h more; reaction (urticaria/bronchospasm/hypotension): stop infusion → IM adrenaline 0.5 mg (0.01 mg/kg child) + antihistamine + hydrocortisone + O₂/fluids → improved → restart ASV slowly → watch for serum sickness at 1–2 weeks → prednisolone.
- ▶ **Labelled autopsy diagram of fatal anaphylaxis.** Laryngeal/glottic oedema, hyperinflated congested lungs with froth, visceral congestion, engorged right heart with fluid blood, urticaria/facial angio-oedema, IV cannula site, fang marks at the bite site.

♦ ♦ ♦

Forensic psychiatry

♦ ♦ ♦

Delusion

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2022 · Paper I Apr 2021 (2×) — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ A **delusion** is a false, firm belief in something that is not a fact.
- ▶ It persists even after its falsity has been clearly demonstrated.
- ▶ It is not shared by other people of the same socio-cultural, educational and religious background.
- ▶ It is a **disorder of the content of thought**, not of perception.
- ▶ A hallucination, by contrast, is a disorder of perception.
- ▶ A delusion is never an isolated symptom — it always signals an underlying mental disorder.
- ▶ This is why it matters in deciding **criminal responsibility** and **testamentary capacity** (the legal capacity to make a valid will).

Essential features

- ▶ **Three criteria must all be met:**
 - The belief is **not a fact**.
 - It **persists despite clear proof** of its falsity — reasoning, experience or persuasion cannot correct it.
 - It is **not shared** by others of the same socio-economic, educational and religious group.
- ▶ **Cultural beliefs are excluded.** A shared superstition — e.g. that a snake will not bite someone who worships it on *Nag Panchami* — is untrue but not a delusion, since the whole community shares it.
- ▶ **Prejudices and hatreds**, however irrational, are also not insane delusions.
- ▶ A **sane person** can hold a mistaken belief but can be talked out of it.
- ▶ An **insane person's delusion** is a symptom of brain disease, driven by emotion rather than reason, and cannot be corrected.
- ▶ **Primary (autochthonous) delusion** appears suddenly, fully formed, with no preceding trigger.
- ▶ **Secondary delusion** grows out of another morbid experience, such as a mood disturbance or a hallucination.
- ▶ Delusions occur in the **psychoses** — schizophrenic, affective (depressive/manic), epileptic/organic — and in dementia.
- ▶ Delusions are **absent in neuroses** such as anxiety neurosis, where insight and contact with reality are retained.

Types of delusion

Type	Core false belief	Eponym	Typically seen in
Persecution (paranoid)	Others are conspiring to harm or kill him	Most common type	Paranoid schizophrenia, dementia, depression, mania

Type	Core false belief	Eponym	Typically seen in
Grandeur	He is rich, a king, god or great personage	—	Delirium tremens, mania, paranoid schizophrenia
Reference	Radio, TV or strangers are talking about him	—	Schizophrenia
Influence / control	His thoughts and actions are controlled by an outside agency	<i>Clérambault–Kandinsky syndrome</i>	Schizophrenia
Infidelity (jealousy)	His chaste spouse is unfaithful	<i>Othello syndrome</i>	Paranoid schizophrenia, alcoholism, cocaine addiction
Erotomania (love)	A higher-status person is in love with him/her	<i>de Clérambault's syndrome</i>	—
Nihilistic	He is dead, putrefying, or has no internal organs	<i>Cotard syndrome</i>	Schizophrenia, depression
Hypochondriacal	Something is physically wrong with a healthy body	—	Depression, schizophrenia
Self-reproach	He blames himself for trivial past failures	—	Depression

► **Delusional misidentification syndromes:**

- **Capgras syndrome:** a close relative or friend is believed replaced by an identical impostor.
- **Fregoli syndrome:** persecutors are believed to keep changing appearance to disguise themselves.

Delusion vs illusion and obsession

(Delusion and hallucination are already contrasted above — thought content vs perception.)

- **Illusion:** a real object is misinterpreted; a sane person keeps insight and can correct it — e.g. mistaking a rope for a snake in the dark.
- **Obsession:** insight is present — the patient knows the idea is irrational and resists it, though the resistance fails — e.g. repeatedly checking a bolted door all night.

Medico-legal significance

- The law presumes **every person is sane and responsible for his actions**; the defence must prove unsoundness of mind.
- India's test of criminal responsibility is the **McNaughten rule**: "Nothing is an offence which is done by a person who, at the time of doing it, by reason of unsoundness of mind, is incapable of knowing the nature of the act, or that he is doing what is either wrong or contrary to law" — **Section 22, Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita (BNS) 2023** [legacy: **Section 84, Indian Penal Code (IPC) 1860**].

- ▶ **McNaughten's delusion principle:** when a crime is committed under an insane delusion, the court presumes the delusion is TRUE, then asks whether the act would still be a crime on those assumed facts.
 - Delusion that a man is trying to kill him, so he kills first in self-defence → **not responsible**.
 - Delusion that a man is a wild animal, and he kills him → **not responsible**, because he does not know the true nature of the act.
 - Delusion that he is the State Executioner lawfully executing a condemned man → **exempt**.
 - Delusion that another has ruined his character or fortune, and he kills him in revenge → **responsible**, because revenge killing is a crime even if the injury were real.
- ▶ **Weakness of the rule:** it tests only cognitive (reasoning) capacity and ignores emotional and volitional factors, such as irresistible impulses.
- ▶ These gaps are addressed by the Irresistible Impulse test, the Durham rule and the American Law Institute (ALI) test.
- ▶ **Origin of the rule:** Daniel McNaughten (1843) had persecutory delusions with probable auditory hallucinations and shot Sir Robert Peel's secretary, Edward Drummond.
- ▶ His acquittal by reason of insanity produced these rules.
- ▶ **Testamentary capacity:** a person with an insane delusion can still make a valid will, provided the delusion has no connection with the property being disposed of or with the persons benefited or excluded.
- ▶ The certifying doctor must exclude any such delusion, or disease, pain, or drug/alcohol effect, capable of clouding a sound, disposing mind.
- ▶ **Civil acts and consent:** a delusion touching the transaction in question can invalidate a contract or a marriage.
- ▶ Consent to intercourse or a medical act is invalid if unsoundness of mind prevents understanding its nature and consequences.
- ▶ **Danger to self and others:** delusional patients carry a high risk of suicide and homicide.
- ▶ A jealousy delusion may lead to killing the spouse: **uxoricide** (husband kills wife) or **mariticide** (wife kills husband).
- ▶ A persecutory delusion may lead to killing the supposed persecutor; combined homicide–suicide can occur.
- ▶ **Section 309 IPC 1860 has no general re-enactment in the BNS 2023** (only Section 226 BNS keeps the narrow offence of attempted suicide to compel/restrain a public servant).
- ▶ **Section 115, Mental Healthcare Act 2017** presumes anyone who attempts suicide had severe stress, and protects them from trial or punishment — relevant when a nihilistic or persecutory delusion drives self-harm.
- ▶ **Feigned vs true delusion:** a genuinely insane offender shows no motive, no preparation, no accomplices, makes no attempt to hide evidence or escape, and may even report the crime himself.
- ▶ A malingerer, by contrast, over-acts, and the "delusion" is inconsistent.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ A **four-box comparison chart** — Delusion, Hallucination, Illusion, Obsession — each box labelled with external stimulus (present/absent), insight (present/absent), correctable (yes/no), category (thought-content vs perception), and one worked example.
- ▶ A **McNaughten flow diagram**: Act committed under insane delusion → presume the delusion is TRUE → was the act still a crime on those assumed facts?
 - Branch NO (e.g. self-defence, mistaking a man for an animal) → not responsible.
 - Branch YES (e.g. killing in revenge) → criminally responsible.

**Discuss Feigned mental illness and its forensic implications**

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Feigned mental illness** (older term: feigned insanity) is the deliberate, conscious imitation of a mental disorder by a person who is actually mentally sound.
- ▶ It is done for a definite motive — usually by an accused who fakes insanity after a crime to claim the legal-insanity defence and escape punishment.
- ▶ It is a specific form of **malinger**: the wilful, conscious feigning or exaggeration of any disease for some tangible gain.
- ▶ A feigner does not know how a real mental illness actually evolves, so the pretence stays inconsistent and exaggerated.
- ▶ Careful, prolonged, repeated examination exposes the deception and protects the criminal justice system.

Concept and who is examined

- ▶ **Malingering** is conscious planning and feigning of a disease for personal advantage.
- ▶ **Feigned mental illness** is malingering where the disease feigned is specifically psychiatric.
- ▶ Courts or police refer such a person to a psychiatrist to certify soundness of mind and to distinguish true from feigned insanity.
- ▶ **Who typically feigns:**
 - Accused persons or convicts, to escape a death sentence or long imprisonment through the insanity defence.
 - Soldiers and policemen, to escape punishment for neglect of duty or an unwanted posting.
 - Workmen, to claim compensation; government servants, to avoid a transfer.
 - Businessmen, to avoid honouring a contract.
 - Prisoners, to avoid hard labour or capital punishment; beggars, for public sympathy.
- ▶ Malingers may also feign amnesia, aphasia, epilepsy, paralysis, or neurasthenia (an old label for chronic nervous exhaustion), besides insanity.

True vs feigned mental illness

Feature	True mental illness	Feigned mental illness
Onset	Gradual	Sudden
Motive	Absent	Present (e.g., a crime just committed)
Signs & symptoms	Uniform, fit one recognisable disorder, present even when unobserved	Inconsistent, exaggerated, appear only when the person feels observed
Exertion / sleep	Withstands fatigue and loss of sleep for days	Breaks down quickly; sleeps soundly despite claimed insomnia
Repeated examination	Does not mind it	Resents it, fearing detection

Examination protocol and detection tests

- ▶ The suspect is kept under continuous observation, initially for about **10 days**, extendable with the Magistrate's permission up to a total of **30 days**.
- ▶ Violent or criminal suspects are observed in a prison hospital.
- ▶ History is taken from the person himself and, independently, from relatives, and checked for inconsistencies.
- ▶ A sudden onset with no past history of mental illness or treatment is suggestive of feigning.
- ▶ The person is watched **covertly**; feigned signs appear only when he believes he is being observed.
- ▶ Interviews are kept long, because a feigner cannot sustain the act indefinitely and eventually contradicts himself.
- ▶ The symptom picture is checked against known disorders — a feigner's signs are bizarre and fit no single disease.
- ▶ **Crime-scene behaviour** is a strong clue to a sound mind.
 - Hiding the weapon, wiping off fingerprints, fleeing, or destroying evidence all point to *mens rea*, a guilty and sound mind.
- ▶ Physical examination must be complete, including removal of any bandages or plaster casts before assessment.
- ▶ Anaesthesia was once used to unmask feigned paralysis or joint stiffening, since these vanish under anaesthesia in a true feigner; this method is now obsolete and ethically unacceptable.
- ▶ Standardised psychometric tests help detect feigning of symptoms or memory loss.
 - **M-FAST** — Miller Forensic Assessment of Symptoms Test.
 - **SIRS** — Structured Interview of Reported Symptoms.
 - **SIMS** — Structured Interview of Malingered Symptomatology.
 - **TOMM** — Test of Memory Malingered.
 - **VIP** — Validity Indicator Profile.
 - **PDRT** — Portland Digit Recognition Test.

Related entities to distinguish

- ▶ **Munchausen syndrome** ("factitious disorder imposed on self" in DSM-5) is a genuine psychiatric disorder where a person feigns or self-induces illness purely for attention or the sick role, with **no external gain**.
- ▶ It was named by *Richard Asher* in 1951, after the fictional *Baron Munchausen*.
- ▶ Because the motivating gain is absent, Munchausen syndrome is **not** true malingering — the person is genuinely psychiatrically ill.
- ▶ **Munchausen syndrome by proxy** (factitious disorder imposed on another) is when a carer, usually the mother, fabricates or induces illness in a dependent child to gain attention.
- ▶ It was described by *Roy Meadow* in 1977, is a form of **child abuse**, and can be fatal.
- ▶ **Malingering proper** is conscious feigning of any disease for a tangible external motive; feigned mental illness is its psychiatric subtype.
- ▶ The key discriminator across this spectrum — true illness, Munchausen/factitious disorder, and malingering — is whether an **external motive** is present.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Exposing feigned mental illness stops a sound, responsible offender from wrongly claiming the insanity exemption under **Section 22, Bharatiya Nyaya Sanhita (BNS) 2023 [formerly Section 84, Indian Penal Code (IPC) 1860]**.
- ▶ This section is the Indian embodiment of the **M'Naghten Rule (1843)** — it excuses an act only if unsoundness of mind made the person incapable of knowing its nature, or that it was wrong or against the law.
- ▶ The law presumes every person sane; the burden of proving insanity lies on the defence — the very burden a feigner tries to discharge by fraud.
- ▶ Feigning is also relevant to **fitness to stand trial**, covered under **Sections 367–378, Bharatiya Nagarik Suraksha Sanhita (BNSS) 2023 [formerly Sections 328–339, Code of Criminal Procedure (CrPC) 1973]**.
- ▶ A feigner may plead unsoundness of mind in bar of conviction, in bar of trial, or in bar of capital punishment.
- ▶ The psychiatrist's opinion on mental state **at the time of the offence** is only an inference, and it grows less reliable the longer the gap before examination.
- ▶ The opinion should rest on present clinical findings, past history from relatives and records, and conduct **before, during and after** the act.
- ▶ A truly insane offender typically has no motive, makes no preparation, takes no accomplice, and does not conceal evidence.
- ▶ A malingerer who uses a false medical certificate is liable under **Section 235, BNS 2023 [Section 198, IPC]** for using a certificate known to be false.
- ▶ A doctor who knowingly issues such a false certificate is liable under **Section 234, BNS 2023 [Section 197, IPC]**.
- ▶ Feigning for gain may also amount to **cheating under Section 318, BNS 2023 [Sections 415/417, IPC]**.

- ▶ Malingering is not perjury, since the false claim is not made under oath.
- ▶ Even a suspected feigner must not be denied care; a genuinely mentally ill person retains all rights under the Mental Healthcare Act (MHCA) 2017.
- ▶ Attempted suicide is presumed to be due to severe stress and is not punished — Section 115, MHCA 2017.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ Two-column chart, "True vs Feigned mental illness": left column *True*, right column *Feigned*; rows for Onset, Motive, Signs & symptoms, Exertion, and Repeated examination.
- ▶ Spectrum arrow of conscious control vs external motive: three boxes left to right.
 - True mental illness — no conscious production, no external gain.
 - Munchausen / factitious disorder — conscious production, no external gain.
 - Malingering / feigned mental illness — conscious production plus external gain.
 - Label the last step: "motive present = key forensic discriminator."

♦ ♦ ♦

Medical jurisprudence, ethics & law

♦ ♦ ♦

Describe AIDS and its medicolegal importance

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ AIDS (Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome) is the advanced clinical stage of infection by HIV.
- ▶ HIV is a retrovirus that infects and destroys CD4 T-helper lymphocytes.
- ▶ This wrecks cell-mediated immunity, the arm of immunity that fights intracellular infections.
- ▶ The resulting collapse allows opportunistic infections and certain cancers that define the syndrome.
- ▶ The forensic importance sits at the crossing of three duties: **confidentiality** to the patient, the **duty to warn** an identifiable third party at risk, and the duty to **protect staff** during examination and autopsy.
- ▶ This conflict was settled by the landmark case *Mr X v. Hospital Z*.

Transmission and natural history

- ▶ HIV attaches to the T-receptor on CD4 lymphocytes to infect them.
- ▶ These cells are present in **semen, saliva, tears and breast milk**.
- ▶ **Window period**: blood turns antibody-positive only after **2 to 18 months** — an infected person can test negative yet still be infectious.

- ▶ HIV stays viable in liquid blood for up to **2 months**, and about **3 weeks** outside the body if in high concentration.
- ▶ It concentrates in **lymphoid tissue and brain**, and is also found in colon and lungs.
- ▶ **Main routes:** sexual intercourse and blood transfusion.
- ▶ **No air-borne transmission occurs.**
- ▶ **Other routes:** mother-to-child (vertical) spread, sharing needles for drug injection, occupational needle-stick injury, and tattooing with a shared needle.
- ▶ An HIV-positive woman has about a **1-in-3 chance** of an infected child; breastfeeding can also transmit the virus.
- ▶ She keeps full choice to continue or terminate the pregnancy after counselling.
- ▶ **Diagnosis** rests on detecting HIV antibodies in serum plus DNA/RNA testing; screening tests cover both HIV-1 and HIV-2.

Confidentiality and the duty to warn

- ▶ **General rule:** all information from treatment is confidential and cannot be disclosed without the patient's written consent.
- ▶ Breach exposes the doctor to a **civil suit for damages**, a **criminal case for defamation**, and **disciplinary action** by the Medical Council.
- ▶ **Exception — privileged communication:** disclosure made in good faith, to a person with a genuine interest, to protect that person or society, is legally protected.
- ▶ HIV status is the classic example — if an identifiable third party is at real risk, the doctor may disclose.
- ▶ **Who may be told without consent:** (1) a healthcare worker involved in the patient's care; (2) the spouse/sexual partner, or a needle-sharing partner, who is at real risk.
- ▶ The Supreme Court has ruled that a doctor may disclose HIV-positive status to the patient's **spouse**, confidentially.
- ▶ **Good-faith protection:** if a doctor in good faith gives a patient distressing news (for example, that he may not survive) and the patient comes to harm from the shock, the doctor is still protected under **Section 93 IPC 1860 (now Section 31 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ **No therapeutic privilege for HIV** — a doctor cannot withhold an HIV diagnosis from the patient; he must be told so he can take precautions and avoid spreading the disease.

Rights of the HIV-positive person

- ▶ **Right to life and treatment under Article 21 of the Constitution** — the same as any other patient; government doctors are obliged to treat AIDS cases.
- ▶ **Right to privacy** — a hospital cannot label beds with HIV status or otherwise publicise it.
- ▶ **No isolation, quarantine or discrimination** — WHO guidelines find no public-health justification for any of these.
- ▶ **Employment rights** — under India's National Policy on HIV/AIDS and the World of Work (ILO Code of Practice), a person cannot be denied a job, discriminated against, or dismissed solely for

being HIV-positive; there must be **no mandatory pre-employment HIV testing**, and status stays confidential.

Criminal and civil liability

- ▶ **Negligent spreading:** Section 269 IPC 1860 (now Section 271 BNS 2023) punishes a negligent act likely to spread a disease dangerous to life, up to **6 months**, where the person did not realise the risk.
- ▶ **Malignant spreading:** Section 270 IPC 1860 (now Section 272 BNS 2023) punishes the same act done knowingly, up to **2 years**.
- ▶ No offence arises if the person had disclosed his status, or honestly believed the partner already knew.
- ▶ **Civil — divorce:** under Section 13(1), Hindu Marriage Act 1955, a communicable venereal disease is a valid ground for divorce; a spouse may seek divorce on learning the partner is HIV-positive.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Flowchart — "HIV diagnosis: confidentiality vs duty to warn."** HIV-positive result → counsel patient (must be told, must take precautions) → branch A: no identifiable third party at risk → maintain professional secrecy; branch B: identifiable spouse/partner at risk → counsel patient to disclose → if he refuses → privileged communication: disclose to that partner (*Mr X v. Hospital Z*) and to the healthcare/mortuary staff involved. Side box: Section 269 IPC/271 BNS (negligent) and Section 270 IPC/272 BNS (malignant).
- ▶ **Labelled diagram — autopsy barrier precautions for an HIV-positive body.** Head cap, goggles/plastic visor, mask/respirator, double gloves (heavy glove over surgical glove), waterproof overall and apron, gumboots with shoe covers; body double-bagged in tough plastic with a red "**Biologically hazardous**" tag.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Testing:** individual HIV testing needs informed consent and counselling, but screening of **blood, semen, organ and tissue donors** is mandatory.
- ▶ Every unit of blood collected in India must test negative for **HIV-1 and HIV-2** before release for transfusion.
- ▶ **Donor confidentiality:** a positive donor need not be told his result, to spare him needless distress; the unit is discarded and the sample is tracked only by a **code number**.
- ▶ The doctor must warn the **paramedical staff, mortuary staff, pathologist and crematorium staff** who will handle infected material.
- ▶ **Autopsy risk** comes from needle-stick injury, mucosal splash of blood/body fluid, and skin contact through an existing wound.
- ▶ Seroconversion risk after a percutaneous exposure to HIV-positive blood is about **0.3–0.5%** — roughly **10–30 times lower** than the risk with hepatitis B.
- ▶ **Rokitansky's technique** (in-situ dissection, minimal organ removal) is preferred for HIV/hepatitis B autopsies.

- ▶ **Universal precautions** apply to blood, semen, vaginal secretions, and CSF/synovial/pleural/peritoneal/pericardial/amniotic fluid — not to faeces, sputum, sweat, tears, urine or vomitus unless visibly blood-stained.
- ▶ Staff with weeping dermatitis or an open wound should not handle the body; with precautions followed, there is **no risk** to autopsy staff.
- ▶ **Mr X v. Hospital Z, (1998) 8 SCC 296 (Supreme Court of India)**: a doctor's HIV-positive status, found on blood donation, was disclosed by the hospital to his fiancée, and the marriage was called off; he sued for breach of confidentiality.
- ▶ Held: the disclosure did **not** violate confidentiality, because it saved the life of the prospective bride — the **duty to warn an identifiable endangered person can override the right to confidentiality**.
- ▶ The Court also observed a duty on HIV-positive persons not to marry, and that a communicable venereal disease present at the time of marriage makes it not a lawful marriage.
- ▶ **HIV and AIDS (Prevention and Control) Act, 2017** bars discrimination in employment, healthcare, education, housing, public office and insurance.
- ▶ It requires **informed consent for HIV testing**, protects confidentiality, and backs the "**Test and Treat**" policy — antiretroviral therapy offered to every HIV-positive person regardless of CD4 count.



Informed consent

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2021 · Paper III Apr 2019 (2×) — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Consent** is a voluntary agreement or permission — accepting the consequences of an act done on oneself.
- ▶ It is valid only after the person understands its purpose and its risks.
- ▶ **Informed consent**: the doctor discloses the condition, the treatment, its risks, benefits and alternatives before the patient decides.
- ▶ It rests on patient **autonomy** — the right of self-determination.
- ▶ It is the opposite of **paternalism**, where the doctor decides for the patient.

Kinds of consent

Basis	Type	Meaning
Information disclosed	Uninformed	Information withheld — illegal unless therapeutic privilege
	Informed	Full information given before consent
Manner of communication	Implied	Inferred from behaviour — only for general examination

Basis	Type	Meaning
	Express	Patient states it, orally or in writing
Special	Proxy	Relative/guardian consents when patient cannot
	Blanket	One "authorise anything" form — invalid in law
	Loco parentis	Person in charge of a child consents in an emergency

- ▶ Implied consent covers only a general examination.
- ▶ Sensitive examinations — breast, per-vaginal, per-rectal — always need express consent, even with a signed OPD card.
- ▶ Express written consent, taken before the act, is required for biopsy, lumbar puncture, transfusion, tapping, anaesthesia and all operations.

Components of informed consent

- ▶ **Disclosure:** the condition, the proposed treatment and its likelihood of success, the alternatives with their risks and cost, and the material risks of the procedure.
- ▶ **Disclosure** also covers the risk of *not* being treated — the basis of informed refusal.
- ▶ **Comprehension:** explained in the patient's own language, using an interpreter if needed.
- ▶ **Voluntariness:** no influence on the decision from the doctor, staff or relatives.
- ▶ **Competence:** the patient must be of proper age, mentally sound, and not under alcohol or drugs.
- ▶ **Actual consent:** reduced to writing, signed by the patient and by independent witnesses.

Rules of consent

- ▶ Oral consent is taken before a disinterested third party, such as a nurse.
- ▶ Written consent must name one specific procedure.
- ▶ Written consent must separately cover general anaesthesia.
- ▶ Written consent must confirm the procedure was explained before signing.
- ▶ Written consent must be witnessed by another person present at signing.
- ▶ Consent must be free, voluntary, informed, direct and personal, with no fraud, undue influence or threat.
- ▶ Contraceptive sterilisation needs consent from both husband and wife.
- ▶ One spouse's consent is not needed for the other's own treatment.
- ▶ A husband cannot refuse consent to surgery protecting his wife's health.
- ▶ Consent to an illegal act, such as criminal abortion, is invalid.
- ▶ Consent is no defence to professional negligence.

Consent in special situations

- ▶ **Age:** a person over 18 years, of sound mind, can consent to harm not intended or not known to be likely to cause death or grievous hurt (**Section 25 BNS 2023 / Section 87 IPC 1860**).
- ▶ A guardian consents for a child under 12 years or a person of unsound mind, for acts done in good faith for their benefit (**Section 27 BNS 2023 / Section 89 IPC 1860**).
- ▶ In practice: 12 years for an independent general examination, 18 years for an operation.
- ▶ **Emergency:** if the patient cannot consent and no guardian is available in time, good-faith treatment for their benefit is not an offence (**Section 30 BNS 2023 / Section 92 IPC 1860**).
- ▶ Consent is implied for a comatose or intoxicated patient with no guardian available.
- ▶ The **extension doctrine** lets a surgeon extend a consented operation for an unanticipated life-threatening finding, but never for a non-essential procedure or to cause death.
- ▶ **Mental illness / intoxication:** consent from someone unable to understand the act, due to unsoundness of mind or intoxication, is invalid (**Section 28 BNS 2023 / Section 90 IPC 1860**).
- ▶ **Drunkenness:** a person must not be examined, and blood, urine or breath samples must not be collected, without written consent.
- ▶ If incapable, examination can proceed with a guardian's consent, or on a sub-inspector's request.
- ▶ **Criminal cases:** a victim cannot be examined without consent, and a court cannot compel examination against a person's will.
- ▶ In rape, and in medico-legal pregnancy, delivery or abortion cases, the woman must not be examined without her written consent.

Therapeutic privilege, informed refusal and paternalism

- ▶ **Therapeutic privilege** lets a doctor withhold a remote or theoretical risk if disclosure would make a fearful patient refuse needed low-risk treatment.
- ▶ It is justified mainly in frank psychosis or severe psycho-neurosis.
- ▶ The doctor should record the decision and reasons, obtain a confirming consultation, and inform the spouse or next-of-kin where possible.
- ▶ A fatal diagnosis may sometimes be withheld, but **HIV status must never be withheld** — the patient needs to know it to prevent its spread.
- ▶ **Informed refusal** means the doctor must also disclose the risks of refusing a test, treatment, admission or discharge.
- ▶ A valid refusal, or discharge against medical advice (LAMA), must be written and signed by the patient, doctor and a witness.
- ▶ **Paternalism** is the doctor deciding for a competent patient, denying their autonomy.
- ▶ In a conscious, mentally sound adult, paternalism is illegal and actionable as criminal force under **Section 129 BNS 2023 (Section 350 IPC)**.
- ▶ Paternalism and full autonomy sit at opposite ends of a continuum, with therapeutic privilege in between.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Examining, treating or operating on a competent patient without valid consent is criminal force or assault, even in good faith (**Section 129/130 BNS 2023 / Section 350/351 IPC**).
- ▶ *Drummond's Case* held that giving a drug without the person's knowledge and consent is assault.
- ▶ Consent does not protect a doctor from liability for professional negligence.
- ▶ The **Bolam test** sets the standard: a doctor is not negligent if he follows a practice accepted as proper by a responsible body of medical opinion.
- ▶ Documentation is the doctor's best defence: written, specific, witnessed consent.
- ▶ Recorded therapeutic-privilege reasoning and a written informed refusal/LAMA also protect the doctor.
- ▶ An arrested person examined under **Section 51 BNSS 2023 (Section 53 CrPC 1973)** must get a copy of the report.
- ▶ Special consents needed: both spouses for sterilisation; guardian/legal heirs for organ donation, transplant or autopsy.
- ▶ Clinical trials need voluntary informed consent (**Nuremberg Code 1947, Declaration of Helsinki 1964**).
- ▶ In *Rogers v. Lumbermen's Mutual Casualty Co.*, a surgeon extended a consented appendectomy into a hysterectomy; his pre-signed blanket form could not defend him, and the extension was held actionable.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **The autonomy–paternalism continuum:** a horizontal spectrum from "*Paternalism (doctor decides; illegal — S.129 BNS / S.350 IPC)*" on the left, through "*Therapeutic privilege*" in the centre, to "*Complete patient autonomy (full disclosure)*" on the right.
- ▶ **Flowchart — "Is the consent valid?":** Competent (age, sound mind, not intoxicated)? → Information fully disclosed? → Voluntary and uncoerced? → Express, written and witnessed? → **Valid informed consent**.
- ▶ Side branches: emergency or unconscious patient → implied consent (S.30 BNS / S.92 IPC); child under 12 or unsound mind → guardian/proxy consent (S.27/S.28 BNS).

♦ ♦ ♦

Forensic science & recent advances

♦ ♦ ♦

Blood grouping and their legal significance

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Blood grouping** classifies blood by the **antigens (agglutinogens)** on the red-cell membrane and the matching **antibodies (agglutinins)** in the plasma.

- ▶ This falls under **forensic serology** — testing blood and body fluids to prove a stain is blood, human, and of a given group.
- ▶ DNA profiling has now replaced it for positive identification.
- ▶ Its legal value is chiefly **exclusionary** — it can rule a person OUT but can never, by itself, prove identity.

Antigens, antibodies and Landsteiner's law

- ▶ **Agglutinogens (antigens)**: over 400 red-cell antigen specificities exist.
- ▶ Antigens sit on the red-cell surface, detectable from about the **6th week of intra-uterine life**.
- ▶ Antigen strength is fully set by about **1 year of age**.
- ▶ **Agglutinins (antibodies)**: anti-A and anti-B are **IgM** antibodies, so they **do not cross the placenta**.
- ▶ They appear about the **10th day after birth**, peak around **10 years**, then decline.
- ▶ ***Landsteiner's law (1900): if an antigen is present, its antibody must be absent*** — and vice versa.
- ▶ This does **not** apply to the **Rh system** — Rh antibodies form only after sensitisation (transfusion or pregnancy).

The ABO system and major blood-group systems

- ▶ Four ABO groups arise from antigens A and B, via **three allelic genes (A, B, O)** on **chromosome 9q**.
- ▶ Inheritance is **Mendelian co-dominant**; A and B dominate O.
- ▶ Six genotypes (AA, AO, BB, BO, AB, OO) give four phenotypes.
- ▶ **Group A**: antigen A on the cell, anti-B in the plasma.
- ▶ **Group B**: antigen B on the cell, anti-A in the plasma.
- ▶ **Group AB**: both A and B antigens, no antibody — the "**universal recipient**."
- ▶ **Group O**: no A or B antigen (only H), both anti-A and anti-B — the "**universal donor**."
- ▶ **H-substance**: made by a gene on **chromosome 19q13.3** — the precursor for the A and B antigens.
- ▶ Four blood-group systems used forensically:
 - **Red-cell antigens** — ABO, MNSs, Rh (+ minor systems).
 - **White-cell antigens** — HLA (chromosome 6).
 - **Serum proteins** — haptoglobins, Gc groups, transferrins.
 - **Red-cell enzymes** — PGM and AK, most useful in paternity testing.
- ▶ **Rh system**: a complex of antigens (Cc, Dd, Ee) — D is the strongest.

Bombay phenotype (Oh / hh)

- ▶ First described by **Bhende in Bombay, 1952**.
- ▶ Caused by the **homozygous recessive (hh)** state at the H locus — no H-substance means no A/B antigen, even if the A/B genes are present.

- ▶ On routine testing they type as **group O**, but their serum also contains **anti-H** — this distinguishes them from true O.
- ▶ **Medico-legal importance:** if wrongly treated as ordinary O and transfused with O blood, a fatal haemolytic reaction occurs — they must be matched only with other Bombay-phenotype blood.
- ▶ Commoner in India; linked to **consanguineous marriage**.

Forensic serology — examining a blood stain

- ▶ **Step 1 — Is it blood?** Screening (presumptive) tests use haemoglobin's peroxidase-like action on a colourless reagent.
 - **Benzidine** — obsolete now, it is carcinogenic.
 - **Kastle-Meyer**, Leucomalachite green, Orthotolidine, and Guaiacum are similar colour tests.
 - **Luminol** — makes washed-away blood glow blue in the dark at a crime scene.
 - A **negative** result rules blood out completely (most valuable); a **positive** is only presumptive — plant peroxidases, rust, and bleach can give false positives.
- ▶ **Step 2 — Confirmatory tests:**
 - **Microscopy** — mammalian red cells are circular, biconcave, non-nucleated; non-mammalian cells are oval and nucleated.
 - **Micro-crystal tests** — the *Takayama* (haemochromogen) test and the *Teichmann* (haemin) test.
 - **Spectroscopy** — the most sensitive test, needs under 0.1 mg of blood.
- ▶ **Step 3 — Human or animal origin?** The **Precipitin test**: an animal immunised with human serum raises anti-human precipitin, which precipitates with human protein from any tissue (skin, bone, saliva, semen).
- ▶ **Step 4 — Grouping the stain:** cells in a dried stain are no longer intact, so special methods are used.
 - **Absorption-inhibition and absorption-elution** techniques.
 - **Mixed-agglutination test** — stained fibres are added to anti-A, anti-B, and anti-O sera.
 - About **150 mg of stained material** (or **75 mg of dried blood**) is needed, with an unstained control.
 - **ABO antigens survive indefinitely** in a stain, but **MNS, Rh, and enzyme markers lose specificity within 3–5 weeks**.
- ▶ **Secretors:** about **80% of people** secrete ABO antigens in water-soluble form into body fluids (saliva, semen, urine) except cerebrospinal fluid.
 - The remaining **20% (non-secretors)** carry the antigen only in fat-bound form.
 - Secretion is controlled by the dominant **Se gene**.
 - This lets a stain of semen or saliva be grouped — useful corroboration in sexual assault.
- ▶ **Tissue typing:** ABO can also be typed from **bone marrow, dental pulp** (most accurate dental tissue), **hair**, and **nails**.
 - Heating dental tissue above 200°C destroys the antigens.

Disputed paternity / maternity

- ▶ Used in disputed paternity, maintenance, custody, baby-interchange, and nullity-of-marriage cases.
- ▶ **Principle of exclusion:** a child cannot carry an antigen that is absent from both parents.
- ▶ The test can **exclude** a wrongly accused man but can never **positively prove** paternity.
- ▶ **Sample rules:**
 - Neither party should have had a transfusion in the last **3 months**.
 - The infant should be at least **6 months old** (never less than 2 months).
 - Mother, child, and putative father must be tested **on the same day, in the same lab, by the same person, with the same reagent batch**.
- ▶ **Cumulative power of exclusion** rises as more systems are added:

Systems tested	Chance of excluding a falsely accused man
ABO alone	~18%
+ MNSs	~60%
+ serum proteins	~82%
+ red-cell enzymes	~94%
+ HLA typing	~98.5%
DNA fingerprinting	≈100% (fixes or excludes)

- ▶ **Criminal linkage:** matching a crime-scene stain to a suspect or victim can establish association, or exclude them if the groups differ.
- ▶ A **rare** blood group individualises strongly; a common group proves little.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Links an offender to a crime in **homicide, assault, sexual offences, and criminal abortion**.
- ▶ Explains death from an **incompatible blood transfusion** — autopsy shows haemoglobinuric nephrosis with haemoglobin casts, usually from clerical error.
- ▶ The forensic serologist testifies as an **expert** under **Section 45 Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ Under **Section 60 IEA 1872 (now Section 55 BSA 2023)**, a standard textbook's opinion is admissible if its author is dead, untraceable, or incapacitated.
- ▶ A suspect's/accused's blood sample in a rape case is taken by a registered medical practitioner under **Section 53 / 53A CrPC 1973 (now Sections 51 / 52 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ The rape victim's sample is taken under **Section 164A CrPC 1973 (now Section 184 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Samples must maintain **chain of custody** en route to the Forensic Science Laboratory.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **ABO antigen–antibody chart:** four boxes — A, B, AB, O — each labelled with its red-cell agglutinin and plasma agglutinin; mark AB = **universal recipient** and O = **universal donor**.
- ▶ **H-substance pathway (Bombay phenotype):** precursor oligosaccharide → (H gene / fucosyl-transferase) → **H antigen** → branches to **A antigen** (A gene) and **B antigen** (B gene); show the **hh block** — no H-substance → no A/B antigen → **Bombay phenotype**, serum has anti-A, anti-B, and anti-H.



Comparison Microscope

Asked in: Paper IV Apr 2020 • Paper I Oct 2017 (2×) — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ A **comparison microscope** is two compound microscopes joined by an **optical bridge** to a **single eyepiece**.
- ▶ It shows **half the field of one specimen and half the field of another**, side by side.
- ▶ The two halves are separated by a **sharp central dividing line**.
- ▶ It is the core tool of **forensic ballistics**.
- ▶ It is also used for **hair, fibre, tool-mark and paper-edge** comparison.
- ▶ It proves that a marking on a **crime exhibit** and a marking on a **known test exhibit** flow into each other.
- ▶ This links a specific weapon or object to a crime, **to the exclusion of all others**.

Principle and construction

- ▶ **Two microscopes, one eyepiece:** each half has its own stage, objective and illumination, optically bridged to one eyepiece (or binocular head).
- ▶ **Split field:** a vertical line in the centre separates the views — left specimen on the left, right specimen on the right.
- ▶ **Independent movement:** each specimen can be rotated, raised, lowered and moved on its own stage.
- ▶ **Alignment:** this lets the examiner line up a mark on one exhibit with the matching mark on the other, across the dividing line.
- ▶ **Matching criterion:** a match is called when the striations are **identical in dimension and curvature** and **flow continuously across the dividing line**.
- ▶ **Illumination:** surface striations are read under reflected light at low-to-medium magnification.

Use in forensic ballistics

The comparison microscope is the definitive tool for **firearm identification** — matching a fired bullet or cartridge case to one specific weapon.

- ▶ **Class characteristics (primary markings):**
 - Fixed by the barrel's design before manufacture.
 - Include **calibre, number of lands and grooves, direction of rifling twist, rate of twist, width of lands and grooves.**
 - Same in every gun of a given make and model.
 - A class match identifies only the **make and model**, not the exact gun.
- ▶ **Individual characteristics (secondary markings):**
 - Produced accidentally during manufacture and by wear and fouling.
 - **Microscopic, random and unique to one barrel.**
 - These are the true "fingerprint" of a firearm and identify the **exact gun**.
- ▶ **Crime bullet vs test bullet:**
 - The **crime (exhibit) bullet** is recovered from the body or scene.
 - The **test bullet** is fired by the examiner from the suspect weapon, using the same brand and type of ammunition.
 - It is fired into a medium that leaves no marks of its own: **cotton waste, a bag of rags, a sand bag, oiled saw-dust, blocks of ice, or a water (bullet-recovery) tank.**
- ▶ **The comparison itself:** crime and test bullets are placed under the two objectives and rotated until their striations align across the dividing line; a faithful match confirms the suspect gun is the crime weapon.
- ▶ **Cartridge cases:** compared the same way, matching **firing-pin impressions, breech-face markings, extractor and ejector marks.**
- ▶ **Autopsy handling (high-yield):** extract the bullet with **cotton- or rubber-tipped forceps, or bare/gloved hands.**
 - **Never** use a needle, toothed forceps or scissors — these add fresh scratches and destroy the comparison.

Other forensic uses

- ▶ **Hair:** a questioned hair is compared with a control hair on the same slide.
 - Compare **colour, cuticular scale pattern, medulla and pigment distribution.**
 - Also assess whether the hair was **naturally shed or forcibly pulled.**
- ▶ **Fibres, paper, cloth:** textile fibres and torn or cut edges of paper or fabric are matched for a physical fit.
- ▶ **Tool marks and nails:** tool striations and the longitudinal striations on finger/toe nails (unique to each person) are compared.
 - With a broken nail, the cut ends can be physically matched across the bridge.

Other microscopes in the FSL (for contrast)

Microscope	Key feature	Forensic use
Comparison	Two microscopes, one eyepiece, split field	Bullet/cartridge matching; hair, fibre, tool-mark, nail comparison

Microscope	Key feature	Forensic use
Stereoscopic	Two eyepieces, low power, 3-D image	Trace evidence on bullets, cartridges, firearm surfaces
TEM	Electron beam passes through specimen, up to $\sim 10^7\times$	Ultrastructure of very small particles
SEM	Electron beam on surface, $\sim 10^5\times$, 3-D topography; SEM-EDX for element analysis	Surface detail; gunshot-residue analysis
Fluorescence	Fluorescent dye-labelled specimen, UV excitation	Labelled biological specimens
Polarising	Uses polarised light	Minerals, crystals, fibres

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Optical bridge:** draw two microscope bodies, left and right, each with a stage, specimen, objective lens and illuminator.
 - Left stage carries the **crime/exhibit bullet**; right stage carries the **test bullet**.
 - Join both bodies by an **optical bridge** rising to a **single eyepiece**.
- ▶ **Split field (inset circle):** draw a circular field with a **central vertical dividing line**.
 - Show striations of the crime bullet on the left half.
 - Show matching striations of the test bullet on the right half, **flowing continuously across the line**.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Links a weapon to the crime:** a striation match gives court-admissible evidence connecting a recovered firearm to a fatal or injurious shot, "to the exclusion of all others."
- ▶ **State the level of match clearly:** the examiner must say whether the opinion rests on **class characteristics (make and model only)** or **individual characteristics (the exact gun)**.
- ▶ **Chain of custody:** the autopsy surgeon must recover the bullet atraumatically, label and seal it, and forward it to the FSL Ballistics division.
 - Mishandling destroys the evidential value of the bullet.
- ▶ **Expert evidence:** the FSL report and testimony are received as expert opinion under **Section 45, Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39, Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ **Seizure of exhibits:** crime-scene bullets, cartridge cases, the suspect weapon and trace evidence are seized under the police investigation powers of the **Code of Criminal Procedure 1973 (now Bharatiya Nagarik Suraksha Sanhita 2023)**.

Recent advances [RA]

Current as of 2026-07-04

- ▶ **3D imaging is replacing 2D comparison:** identification is shifting from subjective 2D light comparison microscopy toward 3D surface-topography imaging — confocal microscopy, SEM,

micro-CT — feeding algorithms that turn a "match" into a numerical value for court. [PMID 41289806]

- ▶ **Virtual comparison microscopy (VCM):** comparing 3D digital scans instead of the twin optical bridge gave more correct identifications and fewer "inconclusive" calls, with higher sensitivity than conventional light comparison (88.4% vs 80.1%). [PMID 42376276]
- ▶ **Algorithmic bullet matching:** a Bayesian network combining four open-source striation-matching algorithms on 3D bullet scans classified 99.6% of comparisons correctly. [PMID 39175114]
- ▶ **Objective tool-mark comparison:** an open-source pipeline scanning 3D tool marks and computing likelihood ratios reached 98% sensitivity and 96% specificity. [PMID 39156234]
- ▶ **Machine learning on cartridge cases:** a HOG-SVM model classified firing-pin impressions at 93% accuracy [PMID 37691406]; U-Net deep learning now automates placement of breech-face and firing-pin regions of interest at 95–96% accuracy. [PMID 37435904]
- ▶ **Deep learning for "sibling" firearms (2026):** a triplet-loss network on firing-pin images placed the correct sibling firearm in its top-20 candidates 90% of the time, versus 52% for the earlier best model. [PMID 42385549]
- ▶ **Known error rates:** a large US black-box study of 173 examiners found false-positive rates of about 0.66% (bullets) and 0.93% (cartridge cases), and false-negative rates of 2.87% and 1.87% — data now used in courtroom challenges to firearm-identification testimony. [PMID 42376276]
- ▶ **3D-printed guns:** micro-CT "digital twin" scans record the mechanics of unserialised 3D-printed firearms before test-firing; a machine-learning classifier reading a printer's g-code file separates firearm from non-firearm objects at 95.8% accuracy. [PMID 42046282; PMID 42376276]
- ▶ **Hair comparison needs molecular back-up:** cuticle and medulla morphology alone cannot separate closely related sources, so forensically informative nucleotide sequencing (FINS) is used to supplement the microscope. [PMID 37001429; PMID 32208347]
- ▶ **Rapid DNA from hair roots (2026):** processing hair roots on a Rapid-DNA instrument does not preclude conventional STR reprocessing of the same root; fluorescence microscopy with a nucleic-acid dye predicts which roots will yield a usable DNA profile. [PMID 42349325]

♦ ♦ ♦

Describe the physiology of seminal fluid and tests to confirm seminal fluid with Medico Legal aspects

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2025 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

- ▶ **Semen** is the whitish-grey, alkaline, viscid fluid ejaculated at orgasm.
- ▶ It has two parts: **spermatozoa** (the cellular part) and **seminal plasma** (the non-cellular part).
- ▶ Seminal plasma comes from the prostate, seminal vesicles, bulbourethral (Cowper's) glands, and glands of Littre.
- ▶ Finding semen on a victim or accused is strong corroborative evidence in sexual offences (rape, sodomy, bestiality) and in civil disputes (paternity, failed vasectomy).

- ▶ Confirmation follows a graded battery: physical, presumptive, confirmatory, and individualising tests.

Physiology and composition

- ▶ **Volume:** 2–5 mL per emission (the WHO reference lower limit is ~1.5–1.6 mL).
- ▶ **Sperm count:** 60–150 million sperm/mL, of which ~90% are motile at ejaculation.
- ▶ Spermatozoa make up only 10–20% of the total volume; the rest is seminal plasma.
- ▶ **Contribution to volume:**
 - **Seminal vesicles** — the largest share, roughly 60–75%.
 - **Prostate** — ~25–30%.
- ▶ **Reaction:** alkaline, pH 7.4.
- ▶ Semen **coagulates** into a jelly right after ejaculation.
- ▶ It then **liquefies within ~30 minutes**, as prostatic fibrinolysin dissolves the clot.
- ▶ **Prostate secretes:** acid phosphatase, spermine, zinc, and citric acid.
- ▶ **Seminal vesicles secrete:** choline and fructose.
 - Choline is what produces UV fluorescence and drives the Florence test.
- ▶ Other constituents: prostaglandin E2, CPK, and LDH.
- ▶ **Spermatozoon structure:**
 - **Head** — nucleus plus the **acrosome**, a cap containing enzymes that penetrate the egg's outer coat (zona pellucida).
 - **Neck/middle piece** — contains mitochondria.
 - **Tail/flagellum** — about 50 µm long.

Persistence of spermatozoa (time since intercourse)

- ▶ **Motile sperm** are usually found up to 6 hours, rarely 12 hours, after vaginal ejaculation.
- ▶ Motility falls off with time: 100% at ~3 hours, 50% by 8 hours, only 10% by 24 hours.
- ▶ **Intact but non-motile sperm** are seen up to ~26 hours, occasionally 2–3 days.
- ▶ **Broken sperm/sperm heads** persist up to one week in the vagina and cervix, one to two weeks in the uterus, and up to ~48 hours in the anus.
- ▶ **In a dead body**, sperm are destroyed by decomposition, not by drainage.
- ▶ Sperm heads resist putrefaction and may be recovered from decomposed stains for months, occasionally up to five years.

Confirmation of seminal fluid — graded tests

Physical examination

- ▶ Dry stains are greyish-white to yellow-grey, with an irregular map-like outline.
- ▶ The stained cloth feels stiff, as if starched.
- ▶ A fresh stain has a characteristic odour; after about a month it turns yellow to brown.
- ▶ Under filtered **UV light**, stains show a bluish-white fluorescence caused by choline.
 - This is **not specific** — nasal discharge, leucorrhoea, and detergents also fluoresce.

- Fluorescence is masked by blood and is lost if the stain has been soaked in water.

Presumptive (screening) chemical tests

Test	Detects	Key result
Florence test	Choline	Dark-brown rhombic/needle choline-periodide crystals
Barberio's test	Spermine	Yellow needle/rhombic spermine-picrate crystals
Acid phosphatase (AP)	Prostatic AP	Intense purple colour within 2 minutes

- ▶ A positive presumptive test narrows the field; a negative essentially excludes semen — but a positive alone is **not proof**.
- ▶ **Acid phosphatase is the main screening test:** prostatic AP is 500–1000 times higher in semen than in any other fluid.
 - Vaginal AP stays positive for ~36 hours and is gone by 72 hours; refrigeration preserves it longer.
 - Heating to 60 °C destroys AP within 5 minutes.
 - A few non-seminal sources (red cells, cauliflower juice) also show AP activity, so it remains presumptive only.
- ▶ **CPK levels over 400 units/mL are almost diagnostic**, and the enzyme stays stable in old stains for up to 6 months.

Immunological/antigen tests — conclusive even without sperm (azoospermia, vasectomy, or condom use)

- ▶ **PSA (P30)** is a 30-kilodalton prostatic glycoprotein, detected with rapid antibody strip tests.
- ▶ PSA is positive even in infertile or vasectomised men, regardless of sperm count or AP level.
- ▶ PSA is detectable in the vagina for roughly 27–48 hours (sources vary on the exact upper limit).
- ▶ **Semenogelin** and **MHS-5/Mab 4E6** are further antigen strip tests specific to human semen.
- ▶ **FISH (fluorescent in-situ hybridisation)** detects Y-chromosome-bearing male cells, useful when the accused is vasectomised; positive in the vagina up to 3 weeks.

Microscopic examination — the confirmatory test

- ▶ **Finding at least one intact spermatozoon is the only absolute proof of semen.**
- ▶ A lone sperm head is not enough on its own — when in doubt, treat it as not a sperm.
- ▶ Dried stains are softened in dilute acid, then a film is fixed and stained.
- ▶ The **Christmas-tree stain** is commonly used: the sperm head (nucleus) stains deep red/pink, the acrosome stays pale, and the tail stains pink.

Species and individual identification

- ▶ The **Precipitin test** confirms that a stain is of human origin.
- ▶ **Secretors** (about 80% of people) release their own ABO blood-group antigens into semen too, detectable by absorption-elution.

- A foreign ABO antigen on the victim, one she does not herself carry, points to the assailant.
- ▶ **Enzyme markers:** phosphoglucomutase (PGM, detectable up to 6 hours) and peptidase A (Pep A, detectable up to 3 hours).
- ▶ **DNA profiling, including Y-STR markers,** is the definitive individualising tool.
 - It can identify the donor from minimal sperm and resolve mixed stains.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diagram 1 — human spermatozoon:** label acrosome, head/nucleus ($\sim 5 \times 3.5 \mu\text{m}$), neck, middle piece (mitochondria), and tail/flagellum ($\sim 50 \mu\text{m}$).
- ▶ **Diagram 2 — flowchart of seminal-stain identification:** physical exam + UV fluorescence → presumptive tests (Florence, Barberio, acid phosphatase) → confirmatory tests (microscopy for spermatozoa; PSA/P30; semenogelin; FISH) → individualisation (ABO secretor typing; PGM/Pep A; DNA/Y-STR profiling).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Corroborative, not conclusive, of rape:** finding spermatozoa in the vagina proves sexual intercourse, not rape.
- ▶ Absence of sperm does not exclude intercourse — it may be due to washing, drainage, phagocytosis, azoospermia/vasectomy, condom use, or ejaculation outside the body.
- ▶ Falling vaginal acid-phosphatase and PSA levels help estimate the time since intercourse.
- ▶ In vasectomy or azoospermia, the antigen tests (PSA, semenogelin, FISH) still stay positive even though no sperm are seen.
- ▶ **Locard's exchange principle:** semen, blood, saliva, hair, and debris transferred between assailant and victim link the two.
- ▶ **Collection and preservation:** vaginal/anal/oral swabs, cut-out stained clothing (dried before packing), scrapings, and pubic hair.
 - Each item is packed separately, labelled, sealed, and sent to the forensic lab with a documented chain of custody.
- ▶ **Civil applications:** disputed paternity, legitimacy, artificial-insemination disputes, and compensation claims for failed vasectomy.
- ▶ Medical examination of an arrested/accused person, including semen swabs, is authorised under **Section 51 BNSS 2023 (legacy Section 53 CrPC 1973)**.
 - A female is examined only by, or under the supervision of, a female registered medical practitioner.
- ▶ Medical examination of the accused specifically in a rape case: **Section 52 BNSS 2023 (legacy Section 53A CrPC 1973)**.
- ▶ Medical examination of a rape victim, with precise reasons required for each conclusion: **Section 184 BNSS 2023 (legacy Section 164A CrPC 1973)**.
- ▶ Rape and its punishment: **Sections 63 and 64 BNS 2023 (legacy Sections 375 and 376 IPC 1860)**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Discuss how detection of microorganism can help to establish the sexual offence. Briefly describe the common tests done to detect them

Asked in: Paper I Dec 2023 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition: A **sexually transmitted infection (STI)**, earlier called a **venereal disease (VD)**, is an infection spread mainly through sexual contact. Finding the **same organism in both survivor and accused** is one recognised item of corroborative evidence in a sexual offence. Medical evidence is always **corroborative** — it supports or contradicts the history, it never proves the crime by itself. Micro-organism detection helps in three ways: proving that intercourse occurred, linking the accused to the survivor (**identity**), and narrowing the **time** since the assault.

How it helps establish the offence

- ▶ **Proves sexual contact occurred.** A fresh infection appearing where none existed before is strong evidence of intercourse, especially when sperm or semen evidence is absent.
 - Condom used by the assailant.
 - Assailant vasectomised or azoospermic (no sperm in semen).
 - Ejaculation occurred outside the body.
 - Survivor had washed or douched before examination.
- ▶ **Links the accused to the survivor.** Finding **gonorrhoea or syphilis in both parties** is a recognised identity marker, alongside blood, semen, saliva and hair comparison.
- ▶ **Modern strain typing** (matching the exact genetic subtype of the organism) makes this link more specific.
- ▶ **Fixes the time of assault.** Each organism has a fixed **incubation period**, so a fresh infection brackets the date of contact.
 - **Gonorrhoea:** mucopurulent discharge appears in **2–4 days** (occasionally up to a week).
 - **Syphilis:** an indurated ulcer (**chancre**) appears in about **3 weeks**.
- ▶ **Serial testing principle.** An initial **negative** smear or serology, followed by a **positive** result days (smear) or weeks (serology) later, proves the infection was freshly acquired around the time of assault.
- ▶ A single positive test at first contact carries far less evidentiary weight.
- ▶ **Supports anal or oral penetration.** In sodomy, venereal infection on **anal or rectal swabs**, plus **anal condylomata acuminata** (genital warts), is strong evidence of anal penetration.
- ▶ Oral sex can also transmit infections such as HIV.
- ▶ **Limitations to state in the opinion:**
 - Many genital discharges are non-venereal (worms, candidiasis, self-scratching).
 - Pre-existing infection may confuse the picture.
 - The false belief that "intercourse with a virgin cures venereal disease" is a recognised motive for child rape.
 - HIV has a **window period** — a fresh infection may still test negative.
 - VD can transmit in either direction, accused to survivor or survivor to accused.

- The doctor should conclude only that findings are **consistent with** the history, never diagnostic of rape by itself.

Common venereal diseases and their organisms

Class	Disease	Organism
Bacterial	Gonorrhoea	<i>Neisseria gonorrhoeae</i>
	Syphilis	<i>Treponema pallidum</i>
	Chancroid	<i>Haemophilus ducreyi</i>
	Chlamydial infection / LGV	<i>Chlamydia trachomatis</i>
	Granuloma inguinale	<i>Klebsiella granulomatis</i>
Viral	Herpes genitalis	Herpes simplex virus
	AIDS	HIV
	Genital warts	HPV
	Molluscum contagiosum	MCV
	Viral hepatitis	Hepatitis B virus
Fungal	Candidiasis	<i>Candida albicans</i>
Protozoal	Trichomoniasis	<i>Trichomonas vaginalis</i>
Ectoparasitic	Pubic lice	<i>Phthirus pubis</i>
	Scabies	<i>Sarcoptes scabiei</i>

- **Gonorrhoea and syphilis** are the two classically emphasised organisms — both are named identity markers, and their short and long incubation periods bracket the time of assault.

Specimens to collect

- **Vaginal discharge:** pick up with a clean pipette; also take a **vaginal swab** and an **air-dried smear** (dried in shade, never sunlight).
- **Gonococcal smears:** from the **cervix and urethra** in adults; from the **vagina** in children (the pre-pubertal site of infection).
- **Anal/rectal swabs and saline rectal washing** in suspected sodomy, for organisms, lubricant and spermatozoa.
- **Blood** for serological testing for syphilis, and for HIV and hepatitis B screening.
- **Urethral discharge** for microscopy and culture.
- A **wet swab** kept moist for culture whenever organisms are seen on smear.
- Everything is packed under the **SAFE / PERK ("rape kit")** protocol, sealed, labelled, and dispatched maintaining **chain of custody**.

Common tests to detect the organisms

- **Direct microscopy (first-line test):**

- **Gram stain** of urethral/cervical/vaginal discharge for gonococci — seen as **kidney-shaped, intracellular, Gram-negative diplococci** inside neutrophils.
- **Wet-mount (saline) preparation** for motile *Trichomonas vaginalis* and budding *Candida*.
- **Dark-ground microscopy** of ulcer serum to demonstrate the motile spirochaete *Treponema pallidum* in primary syphilis.
- ▶ **Culture:** the standard confirmatory step for gonorrhoea; comparing cultures from both parties strengthens the identity link.
- ▶ **Serology:**
 - **Syphilis:** screening with VDRL/RPR, confirmed by TPHA/FTA-ABS.
 - **HIV and hepatitis B** screening.
 - A **negative-to-positive (seroconversion)** pattern across serial samples gives serology its time-anchoring value.
- ▶ **Molecular tests (NAAT/PCR):** the most sensitive and specific method for *Chlamydia trachomatis*, gonococcus, HSV and HPV; works even on small or degraded samples.
- ▶ **DNA strain typing** of the isolated organism can strengthen the survivor-accused link, much like DNA profiling of semen.
- ▶ **Serial repeat testing:** because incubation periods vary, an early negative test is repeated after the expected interval; conversion to positive confirms a recently acquired infection.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Micro-organism evidence is **corroborative, never conclusive** — the doctor records both negative and positive findings and states only that they are **consistent with** the history.
- ▶ It is most useful when spermatozoa or semen are absent, or when serial testing shows a fresh (negative-to-positive) infection timed to the offence.
- ▶ **Identity:** the same organism, ideally the same strain, found in both survivor and accused supports the prosecution's link.
- ▶ **Timing:** incubation periods (gonorrhoea 2–4 days, syphilis ~3 weeks) help fix the date of contact.
- ▶ **Duties of the doctor:** treat first — STI prophylaxis, emergency contraception, injury care, and **start prophylactic anti-HIV drugs immediately** — then collect specimens, maintain chain of custody, preserve confidentiality, and never label the examination "rape".
- ▶ **Statutes governing the process:**
 - Rape is defined under **Section 63 BNS 2023 (formerly Section 375 IPC 1860)**; penile erection or emission of semen is **not necessary** to constitute rape, which is why organism evidence is only corroborative.
 - Victim examination is under **Section 184 BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 164A CrPC 1973)** — the report must reach the investigating officer within **7 days**.
 - Accused examination is under **Section 51 BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 53 CrPC)**, and specifically for a rape accused, **Section 52 BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 53A CrPC)**.
 - A child survivor's examination follows **Section 27 of the POCSO Act 2012**, read with Section 184 BNSS.

- Laboratory findings become **expert / documentary evidence** under Section 39 BSA 2023 (formerly Section 45 IEA 1872).

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Gonococcal smear:** 2–3 neutrophils containing **kidney-shaped, Gram-negative diplococci** inside the cytoplasm; label neutrophil nucleus, intracellular and extracellular diplococci, and the pink Gram-negative stain.
- ▶ **Flowchart — micro-organism detection in a sexual offence:** History → Collect specimen (vaginal/cervical/urethral/anal swab, ulcer serum, blood) → Smear microscopy (Gram, wet-mount, dark-ground) → Culture / NAAT-PCR / Serology → Repeat testing (negative→positive) → Compare survivor vs accused → Corroborative opinion.



Discuss on use of microscopes in forensic medicine

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2021 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction — A **microscope** magnifies objects too small for the naked eye, revealing fine structure and sometimes elemental composition. It is the central tool of the trace-evidence section of the Forensic Science Laboratory (FSL), because most material exchanged at a crime scene is microscopic rather than grossly visible.

Why the microscope matters

- ▶ Crime-scene evidence is either **macroscopic** (visible to the naked eye) or **microscopic/trace evidence**.
- ▶ Only the microscope can characterise trace evidence — the material exchanged at a scene under **Locard's exchange principle** (every contact leaves a trace).
- ▶ It allows **identification** (what is this material), **comparison** (does it match a known sample), and **individualisation** (linking one specific weapon or person to the crime).
- ▶ A magnified field can be photographed (**photomicrography**), creating a permanent, court-admissible exhibit.
- ▶ Microscopy is usually **non-destructive**, preserving the sample for further confirmatory tests.

Types of microscopes — quick classification

Microscope	Principle	Main forensic use
Compound light	Visible light, glass lenses, ~1000×, resolution 200 nm	Histopathology; hair, fibre, diatom, gunpowder study
Comparison	Two microscopes share one eyepiece; split field	Crime-vs-test bullet, cartridge, tool-mark matching
Stereo (dissecting)	Two eyepieces, reflected light, 3-D, 15–125×	Bullets, cartridges, gunpowder, hyoid micro-fractures

Microscope	Principle	Main forensic use
Polarizing	Exploits birefringence of anisotropic materials	Glass, fibres, soil/minerals, diatoms
Phase-contrast / dark-ground	Makes transparent objects visible	Diatoms in drowning
Fluorescence	Fluorophore + arc lamp + filters	Blood in putrefied tissue, MI, Y-chromosome sexing
TEM	Electron beam through specimen, $\sim 10^7\times$	Ultrastructure — neonatal line in tooth enamel
SEM (+ EDX)	Electron beam on surface, $\sim 10^5\times$, 3-D	Gunshot residue (GSR), tool marks on bone, metal traces

Key points on each type

► Compound light microscope:

- The routine instrument — histology of autopsy tissue, hair, and fibre study.
- Shows **vital reaction** (intravital congestion/inflammation) in a wound, proving it was antemortem.
- An elastic-tissue stain confirms a true **scar** (elastic tissue absent), unlike *striae gravidarum* (elastic tissue present).
- Detects **uterine or prostatic tissue**, which resists putrefaction, to determine the sex of a decomposed body.

► Comparison microscope:

- Two microscopes joined by one eyepiece; two fields seen side by side, split by a central vertical line.
- The **crime bullet** sits under one objective, a **test bullet** fired from the suspect weapon under the other.
- If the rifling **striations** flow continuously across the dividing line, the gun is identified — "**bullet fingerprinting**."
- **Cartridge cases** are compared the same way, using firing-pin, breech-face, and extractor marks.
- At autopsy, remove a bullet with **bare hands or rubber/cotton-tipped forceps** only — metal instruments create new marks and ruin the comparison.
- Also used to compare hair, fibres, and tool marks.

► Stereo (dissecting) microscope:

- Low power (15–125 $\times$); two separate optical paths give a true 3-D image using reflected light.
- Used for bullets, cartridges, gunpowder, bullet holes, and firearm surfaces.
- At 5–18 $\times$ with toluidine-blue staining, it detects **hyoid micro-fractures** in suspected strangulation.

► Polarizing microscope:

- A polarizer restricts light to one plane; a crossed **analyser** blocks it unless the specimen alters it.

- Exploits **birefringence** (double refraction) of optically anisotropic materials.
- Used for glass fragments (e.g. from a hit-and-run victim's clothing), synthetic fibres, soil/minerals, and diatom skeletons.
- ▶ **Phase-contrast / dark-ground microscopy:**
 - Makes transparent, unstained material visible.
 - Main use: after acid digestion of lung or bone marrow, examine the residue for **diatoms**.
 - Matching diatoms in the body to the drowning medium supports **antemortem drowning**.
- ▶ **Fluorescence microscope:**
 - The specimen is tagged with a **fluorophore**; an arc lamp, excitation filter, and dichroic mirror isolate the emitted glow.
 - Detects **blood in putrefied material** by finding **hematoporphyrin**, a haemoglobin breakdown product.
 - Also used for early **myocardial infarction** and paint analysis.
 - Quinacrine staining shows the **Y-chromosome** as a bright "F-body" for sex determination.
- ▶ **Electron microscopes — TEM and SEM:**
 - **TEM** passes an electron beam through the specimen; magnification $\sim 10^7\times$, resolution ~ 50 picometres.
 - TEM's key forensic use: the **neonatal line** in tooth enamel, visible within 1–2 days of birth, helps age a dead infant.
 - **SEM** focuses the beam onto the specimen surface, giving a 3-D image up to $\sim 10^5\times$.
 - **SEM-EDX** (energy-dispersive X-ray analysis) is the flagship test for **gunshot residue (GSR)**.
 - GSR particles show a spheroidal shape and a **lead-antimony-barium (Pb-Sb-Ba)** signature.
 - SEM-EDX also reveals metal traces in wounds, saw/tool marks on bone, and metal from removed implants.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Comparison microscope:** two tubes joined by a bridge to one eyepiece; a circular field with a central dividing line, crime bullet on the left, test bullet on the right, striations flowing continuously across the line.
- ▶ **SEM (block diagram):** electron source $\rightarrow$ condenser lens $\rightarrow$ objective lens $\rightarrow$ specimen; detectors for secondary electrons, back-scattered electrons, and X-rays (EDX); output to a screen showing a 3-D image.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Microscopy turns invisible trace evidence into court-admissible proof — the working application of Locard's exchange principle.
- ▶ The forensic pathologist must correctly collect, preserve, label, and dispatch specimens so microscopic examination stays valid.
- ▶ Microscopic findings support expert opinion under **Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872** (now **Section 39 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam, BSA, 2023**).

- ▶ Proof of vital reaction distinguishes an antemortem from a postmortem injury, deciding whether a death is **murder** (Sections 300/302 IPC, now Sections 101/103 BNS 2023) or **culpable homicide** (Sections 299/304 IPC, now Sections 100/105 BNS 2023).
- ▶ Comparison-microscope bullet matching and SEM-EDX GSR analysis are powerful corroborative evidence in firearm deaths.
- ▶ Diatom demonstration by phase-contrast/dark-ground microscopy supports antemortem drowning, relevant to inquest under **Section 174 CrPC 1973 (now Section 194 BNSS 2023)**.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ Evidence is **macroscopic** (naked-eye) or **microscopic/trace** — only the microscope studies the latter.
- ▶ **Comparison microscope**: two microscopes, one eyepiece, central dividing line — matches crime vs test bullets/cartridges ("bullet fingerprinting").
- ▶ Magnifications: light microscope $\sim 1000\times$ (200 nm); **TEM** $\sim 10^7\times$ (~ 50 pm); **SEM** $\sim 10^5\times$ (3-D surface image).
- ▶ **SEM-EDX** is the flagship test for gunshot residue (Pb-Sb-Ba) and metal traces on bone/in wounds.
- ▶ **Stereomicroscope**: 15–125 $\times$, 3-D reflected-light image; also detects hyoid micro-fractures at 5–18 $\times$ with toluidine blue.
- ▶ **Polarizing microscope**: uses birefringence — applied to glass, fibres, and minerals.
- ▶ **Phase-contrast / dark-ground microscopy**: detects diatoms in drowning.
- ▶ **Fluorescence microscope**: blood in putrefied tissue (hematoporphyrin), and Y-chromosome sexing with quinacrine.
- ▶ Remove a bullet at autopsy with bare hands or rubber-tipped forceps only, never metal instruments.
- ▶ Microscopic findings support expert opinion under **IEA §45 (now BSA §39, 2023)**.



Discuss the importance of microbiological applications in Forensic Medicine

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2019 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition / Introduction

- ▶ **Forensic microbiology** applies the principles of microbiology (bacteria, fungi, viruses, protozoa, and diatoms) to questions of law.
- ▶ **Cause of death**: drowning, overwhelming infection/sepsis, or a deliberately released biological agent.
- ▶ **Time since death**: orderly microbial colonisation drives putrefaction.
- ▶ **Trace and biological evidence**: species identification of blood, sexually transmitted infection (STI) in assault, and the microbial "signature" in bioterrorism.
- ▶ **Public health and biosafety**: guides safe handling of high-risk autopsies.

1. The diatom test — diagnosing drowning

- ▶ **Diatoms** are unicellular algae with an indestructible silica cell wall (frustule).
- ▶ Shapes include circular, triangular, oval, boat-shaped and crescentic, up to about 60 microns across.
- ▶ Their species and numbers vary by place and season, which gives them evidential value.
- ▶ **Principle:** only a live body with intact circulation can carry inhaled diatoms from the alveoli into the pulmonary vein, the left heart, and then to distant organs.
- ▶ Finding diatoms in the **brain, bone marrow, liver, kidney, muscle, bile or urine** proves antemortem drowning rather than postmortem immersion.
- ▶ **Best sample:** bone marrow of a long bone (femur, tibia, humerus) or the sternum, because closed bone resists contamination.
- ▶ **Technique:** about 5 g of tissue is digested in about five times its volume of concentrated nitric acid for 1–2 days.
- ▶ The digest is centrifuged, washed, and examined under phase-contrast or dark-ground microscopy, where frustules are **birefringent**.
- ▶ **Controls:** about 2 litres of water from the alleged drowning site are collected to match diatoms found in the body.
- ▶ **Interpretation:** the test is often falsely negative; a negative result is more reliable than a positive one.
- ▶ Diatoms can still be found in bone marrow of skeletal remains long after death.

2. Postmortem (autopsy) microbiology

- ▶ Culture, Gram stain and smear determine whether death was due to infection — pneumonia, abscess, endocarditis, meningitis, septicaemia.
- ▶ It is essential in negative/obscure autopsies, sudden unexpected deaths, suspected septic abortion, and custodial/hospital deaths.
- ▶ A **negative (obscure) autopsy** is one where gross, histopathological, toxicological, microbiological and serological studies all fail to find a cause — roughly 5–10% of cases, mostly children and young adults.
- ▶ Microbiology is likewise mandatory when diagnosing **Sudden Infant Death Syndrome (SIDS)**, which is defined only after these tests exclude other causes.
- ▶ **Specimen collection — asepsis is paramount:**
 - **Blood for culture** is taken before the body is opened, by cardiac puncture, into sterile blood-culture bottles.
 - **Solid organs:** the surface is seared red-hot before a sterile blade takes a swab or tissue cube.
 - The **spleen is the best organ for diagnosing septicaemia**.
 - CSF is taken by cisternal tap or from the subarachnoid space when meningitis is suspected.
- ▶ **Interpretation — the Gram stain is key:**
 - Postmortem blood cultures are notoriously unreliable; contamination during collection is the chief cause of false positives.

- Culture only when there is a grossly visible host response — consolidation, abscess, or cloudy fluid.
- A culture from tissue with no inflammation on histology is almost always contamination.

3. Microbiology of decomposition

- ▶ Putrefaction is fundamentally a microbial process.
- ▶ Bacteria spread from the bowel into the abdominal wall and tissues after death.
- ▶ Haemoglobin is converted by bacterial action into sulph-haemoglobin, producing the greenish-black discolouration.
- ▶ **Chief decomposers:** *Clostridium perfringens* (produces lecithinase), *Staphylococcus*, non-haemolytic *Streptococcus*, diphtheroids and *Proteus*.
- ▶ Anaerobic *Clostridium* species dominate later, and their gas production inflates the tissues.
- ▶ The orderly, temperature-dependent progression of putrefaction helps estimate the **time since death**; it is hastened by warmth and delayed by cold or burial.
- ▶ **Adipocere** formation depends on the same bacterial enzymes hydrolysing body fat.
- ▶ **Postmortem luminescence** is due to colonisation by luminescent bacteria such as *Photobacterium*, not the tissue itself.
- ▶ Microbes can also alter poison and alcohol levels after death, so blood for alcohol estimation needs a preservative such as sodium fluoride.

4. Microbiology as trace / biological evidence

- ▶ **Species of origin:** precipitin and isoenzyme tests determine whether a bloodstain is human or animal.
- ▶ **STI as evidence in sexual assault:** finding a venereal organism (gonorrhoea, syphilis, *Chlamydia*, HIV) in the victim, especially a child, corroborates the offence.
- ▶ Finding the **same organism** in the accused links the two.
- ▶ Urethral or vaginal discharge is collected for microscopy and culture.
- ▶ **Criminal/iatrogenic transmission** (for example, HIV from an infected dentist to patients) is itself a forensic question.
- ▶ A microorganism carries a "signature" of the environment it grew in — the founding idea of microbial forensics.

5. Microbial forensics, bioterrorism and biological warfare

- ▶ **Biological warfare** is the intentional use of microorganisms or their toxins to cause disease or death in humans, livestock or crops.
- ▶ **Bioterrorism** is their use to create terror, as in the post-9/11 anthrax and ricin letters in the USA.
- ▶ **CDC bioterrorism categories:**
 - **Category A** (easily spread, high mortality): anthrax, smallpox, plague, tularaemia, botulinum toxin, viral haemorrhagic fevers.
 - **Category B** (moderate): Q-fever, brucellosis, glanders, melioidosis, typhus, psittacosis, staphylococcal enterotoxin-B, ricin, abrin.

- **Category C (emerging/engineered):** Nipah, Hanta, SARS, H1N1.
- ▶ **Botulinum toxin (BOTOX)** is the most toxic substance known.
- ▶ **Microbial forensics** uses molecular typing (genomic fingerprinting) of a pathogen to trace it to its source laboratory.
- ▶ Food-poisoning and botulism investigation is the everyday face of the same skill.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Diatoms in drowning:** draw 4–5 diatom frustules of different shapes — circular, triangular, boat-shaped, linear and crescentic.
- ▶ Label the silica frustule, its symmetry, and size up to 60 microns.
- ▶ Add the migration route as a labelled sequence: alveoli, ruptured alveolar wall, pulmonary vein, left heart, systemic circulation, then bone marrow, brain, liver and kidney.
- ▶ **Aseptic autopsy sampling:** draw an organ surface being seared red-hot, a sterile scalpel incision, and a sterile swab entering the seared site.
- ▶ Label the flame-sterilised surface, sterile blade, swab for culture plus slide for Gram stain, and note that blood culture is taken before the bowel is disturbed.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ A positive diatom test in bone marrow, matched to control water, supports a verdict of **antemortem drowning**.
- ▶ It is one of the few tests that can distinguish drowning from postmortem immersion, and it still works on decomposed or skeletal remains.
- ▶ Autopsy microbiology confirms or excludes infective death, and is mandatory before certifying a negative/obscure autopsy or SIDS.
- ▶ STI testing of the victim and accused corroborates sexual assault.
- ▶ Medical examination of the survivor and accused is governed by **Section 53/53A/164A CrPC 1973 (now Sections 51/52/184 BNSS 2023)**.
- ▶ Rape itself is defined under **Section 375/376 IPC (now Sections 63/64 BNS 2023)**.
- ▶ All microbiological exhibits must be collected with gloved hands, photographed with scale, labelled, sealed and sent to the **Forensic Science Laboratory** with an intact chain of custody.
- ▶ Expert findings are presented in court under **Section 45 IEA 1872 (now Section 39 BSA 2023)**, with the limits of postmortem cultures explained honestly.
- ▶ Microbiology also guides safe handling of high-risk autopsies (HIV, tuberculosis, plague, viral haemorrhagic fevers) and notification of bioterrorism or notifiable infection.

♦ ♦ ♦

Gas Chromatography

Asked in: Paper IV Oct 2023 · Paper IV Apr 2023 · Paper I Oct 2016 (3×) — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Gas chromatography (GC)**, also called **gas-liquid chromatography (GLC)**, separates the components of a **vaporised** sample.
- ▶ Separation happens between a **gaseous mobile phase** (an inert carrier gas) and a **liquid or solid stationary phase** held in a column.
- ▶ It is the most-used chromatography technique in the **Forensic Science Laboratory (FSL)** for volatile, thermally stable compounds — alcohols, volatile poisons, drugs of abuse, alkaloids, pesticides.
- ▶ Coupled to a mass spectrometer (**GC-MS**), it is the gold-standard confirmatory test in forensic toxicology.
- ▶ The name comes from Greek *chroma* (colour) + *graphein* (to write) — "colour writing".

Underlying principle

- ▶ A mixture travels in a **mobile phase** over or through a **stationary phase**; its components move at different speeds and so separate.
- ▶ Separation depends on each component's **affinity** for the two phases.
- ▶ Components that adhere **weakly** to the stationary phase move **faster**.
- ▶ Components that adhere **strongly** move **slower**.
- ▶ In GC the compound keeps **equilibrating (partitioning)** between the gas and liquid phases as it travels — so GC is also called **partition chromatography**.
- ▶ The **retention time** is how long a compound is retained inside the system.
- ▶ Each compound has its own characteristic retention time under fixed conditions, so retention time reveals its identity.

Classification — where GC fits

Basis	GC's position
State of mobile phase	Gas chromatography (GC/GLC) vs liquid chromatography (LC/HPLC)
Shape of stationary phase	GC is a column technique (vs planar — paper, thin-layer)
Nature of stationary phase	Gas- liquid (GLC, usual forensic form) vs gas- solid (GSC, adsorption)
Purpose	Forensic GC is analytical (small amounts), not preparative

- ▶ Other FSL screening/comparison methods: **paper chromatography**, **column chromatography**, **thin-layer chromatography (TLC)**, **HPLC**.

Instrumentation and procedure

- ▶ **Carrier gas (mobile phase):** an inert gas, usually **helium or nitrogen**, delivered under steady pressure.
- ▶ **Injection port:** the liquid sample is **vaporised at high temperature** here and pushed into the carrier-gas stream.
- ▶ **Column:** a thin coiled tube inside a heated oven chamber.
- ▶ Its inner surface carries a microscopic **liquid (or polymer) coating** on an inert solid support — this coating is the **stationary phase**.
- ▶ **Detector:** sits at the column outlet.
- ▶ **Recorder:** produces the **chromatogram**.
- ▶ **Sequence of separation:**
 - The sample is vaporised at the injection port and swept into the column by the carrier gas.
 - Molecules are repeatedly **adsorbed onto and desorbed from** the stationary phase — the partition process.
 - **Lighter molecules move through the column faster** than heavier ones.
 - Separated bands reach the detector and are recorded as **peaks**, each at its own retention time.
- ▶ **Detectors:**
 - **Flame ionization detector (FID):** a hydrogen flame ionises emerging molecules — the standard, general-purpose detector.
 - Other detectors: **ECD** (electron-capture), **NPD** (nitrogen–phosphorus), **FPD** (flame-photometric), **MSD** (mass-selective).
- ▶ **Capillary columns have replaced packed columns** — they give higher resolving power and separate large numbers of similar compounds (e.g. pesticides).
- ▶ Quantitative work needs prior **sample preparation** (extraction, concentration/dilution); each step adds a small analytical error.

GC–MS — the confirmatory standard

- ▶ GC–MS combines the **separating power of GC** with the **identifying power of mass spectrometry**.
- ▶ GC separates the mixture into single components; the mass spectrometer fragments each one into a characteristic mass spectrum for identification.
- ▶ It is the "**gold standard**" of **toxicology testing** — **99% specific and 99% sensitive**.
- ▶ It is **100–1000 times more sensitive, specific and reliable than TLC**, though expensive.
- ▶ GC–MS confirms the identity of pesticides and most drugs, and verifies presumptive colour-test or TLC screening results.

Forensic applications

- ▶ **Pesticides:** volatile, thermostable pesticides are screened by GLC; capillary GC separates many similar compounds; GC–MS confirms identity.
- ▶ **Alkaloids and basic drugs:** a wide range can be screened or detected by GC.

- ▶ **Alcohol:** blood-alcohol estimation and the diagnosis/monitoring of chronic alcoholism.
- ▶ **Drugs of abuse:** confirms **cocaine** (in urine), **cannabis/THC** (detectable in urine up to ~7 days), **scopolamine** (plasma or urine), and **strychnine** poisoning.
- ▶ **Trace/ballistic evidence:** identifies **gun oils** and firearm residue, even when a bullet splits in the target.
- ▶ General role: **screening, identification and quantification** of poisons/drugs from blood, urine, tissue and stomach contents.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Schematic of a gas chromatograph:** carrier-gas cylinder (helium/nitrogen) → flow regulator → injection port (sample vaporised) → heated oven with coiled capillary column → detector (FID, hydrogen flame) → amplifier/recorder → chromatogram output.
- ▶ **Typical chromatogram:** x-axis = retention time, y-axis = detector response; each peak = one separated component; peak position identifies the compound, peak area quantifies it.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ GC and GC–MS are core FSL tools for **analytical toxicology** — detecting and quantifying poisons/drugs from autopsy and clinical samples.
- ▶ These results directly support the medico-legal cause of death and the diagnosis of poisoning.
- ▶ Non-specific screening tests (colour reactions, TLC) have **low sensitivity and specificity** and are **not admissible alone**.
- ▶ Screening results **must be confirmed** by a specific technique such as GC–MS before they carry evidentiary weight.
- ▶ The treating/autopsy doctor must properly **collect, label, preserve and dispatch** samples to the FSL, and must record and report suspicious or foul-play cases to police.
- ▶ Expert opinion on laboratory analysis is admissible under **Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39, Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ Chain of custody and the validity of the analytical method (retention time plus GC–MS confirmation) are therefore medico-legally critical.

Recent advances [RA]

- ▶ **GC×GC (two-dimensional GC):** a 2025 review mapped this technique — two columns joined by a modulator, giving far greater peak capacity — across seven forensic areas (drugs, fingerprints, arson, toxicology, decomposition odour, CBRN traces). Courtroom use still needs Frye/Daubert/FRE 702 or Mohan-type admissibility validation and more inter-laboratory error-rate data. [PMID 40259530]
- ▶ **Nitrogen replacing helium as carrier gas:** with helium supply unstable, a 2026 study tested nitrogen across 34 drugs and pesticides. Sensitivity fell to about 10% of helium's, but optimising gas velocity and ionisation voltage restored match quality to ~91% — adequate for qualitative identification of high-concentration exhibits. [PMID 41739340]

- ▶ **Rapid GC–MS cuts laboratory backlogs:** an optimised oven-temperature programme shortened a seized-drug screen from 30 to 10 minutes while improving detection limits by at least 50% (cocaine down to 1 µg/mL), validated on 20 real case samples with match quality above 90%. [PMID 40556732]
- ▶ **Headspace GC–MS for post-mortem alcohols:** quantifies methanol, ethanol, propanols, butanol and acetone using isotope-labelled internal standards, avoiding interference from the extra alcohols that putrefaction generates and that limited the older flame-ionization method. [PMID 40838999]
- ▶ **Direct-injection GC–MS for toxic alcohols:** validated to SWGTOX standards, it detects ethanol, methanol, isopropanol and acetone down to 0.01 mg/mL in vitreous humour — a cheaper alternative where headspace GC is unavailable. [PMID 41160356]
- ▶ **Headspace GC with a methanizer for carboxyhaemoglobin:** converts carbon monoxide to methane before flame-ionization detection, measuring COHb reliably even in putrefied or heat-coagulated autopsy blood (detection limit below 0.01% COHb). [PMID 41072931]
- ▶ **GC–MS for nitazenes:** a combined selected-ion-monitoring/full-scan method identified 20 nitazene (potent synthetic opioid) analogues at 5–10 ppm, catching low-concentration cases that routine full-scan GC–MS can miss. [PMID 40390160]
- ▶ **Bloodstain-age estimation:** headspace GC–ion-mobility spectrometry profiled volatile markers in bloodstains aged 0 hours to 70 days; machine-learning models then classified stain age — extending GC beyond toxicology into trace-evidence timelines. [PMID 41820607]
- ▶ **Confirmatory role reinforced:** in 14 children with suspected drug exposure, GC–MS resolved false-positive immunoassay screens and detected substances the screen had missed — reinforcing that presumptive tests must be confirmed. [PMID 41942107]
- ▶ **Indian data — organophosphate poisoning:** a JIPMER gas chromatography–ion-trap-MS method quantified 12 anticholinesterase pesticides in serum with 97.5–103% recovery; levels tracked clinical severity and outcome — directly relevant to India's organophosphate-poisoning burden. [PMID 33705722]



Medicolegal application of Blood groups

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ A **blood group** is an inherited red-cell surface character detected by a specific antibody.
- ▶ Red cells carry genetically determined antigens (**agglutinogens**); plasma carries the matching antibodies (**agglutinins**) — when the two meet, the cells clump together, called **agglutination**.
- ▶ Blood groups follow Mendelian inheritance and stay fixed for life, like fingerprints.
- ▶ **Karl Landsteiner** discovered the A, B and O groups in 1900–1901; the study of blood/body-fluid stains for legal purposes is **forensic serology**.
- ▶ Blood grouping can only **exclude** a person, never **prove** parentage or identity — only DNA profiling gives that certainty.

Blood-group systems used in forensic work

- ▶ **Red-cell antigens:** ABO, H(Hh), MNSs, P, Rh, Kell, Lutheran, Duffy, Kidd and other minor systems (ISBT recognises ~30 systems).
- ▶ **White-cell antigens:** the **HLA system** (chromosome 6), highly polymorphic and useful in paternity testing (needs fresh blood).
- ▶ **Serum-protein polymorphisms:** haptoglobins, group-specific component (Gc), transferrins, Gm/Inv markers.
- ▶ **Red-cell enzymes:** phosphoglucomutase (PGM) and adenylate kinase (AK) are most useful in paternity testing.
 - Shown by starch-gel electrophoresis; do not survive beyond ~1 month in a dried stain.

ABO system

- ▶ ABO is inherited through three genes (A, B, O) on **chromosome 9**; A and B are co-dominant, both dominant over O.
- ▶ Six genotypes (AA, AO, BB, BO, AB, OO) produce four phenotypes: A, B, AB, O.

Blood group	Antigen on RBC	Antibody in plasma
A	A	Anti-B
B	B	Anti-A
AB	A and B	None
O	None	Anti-A and Anti-B

- ▶ **Landsteiner's law:** if an antigen is present on the red cells, its matching antibody is absent from the plasma, and vice versa — this does not apply to Rh, where antibodies form only after sensitisation.

H(Hh) system and the Bombay phenotype

- ▶ The **H gene** (chromosome 19) makes the **H antigen**, the base on which A and B antigens are built.
- ▶ A person homozygous recessive (**hh**) makes no H antigen, so cannot make A or B antigen either — the **Bombay phenotype (Oh)**, first described by *Bhende* (Bombay, 1952).
- ▶ These people type as "O" against anti-A/anti-B, but unlike a true O, they fail to react with anti-H reagent.
- ▶ Forensic importance: a Bombay-phenotype father typed as O may carry a hidden A gene and can still father an A or AB child — a trap for **wrong paternity exclusion**.

Examining and grouping blood/stains

- ▶ **Step 1 — is it blood?** Screening colour tests use the peroxidase activity of haemoglobin.
 - **Benzidine (Adler's):** dark blue; most sensitive (1 in 3 lakh dilution), but carcinogenic and now abandoned.
 - **Phenolphthalein (Kastle–Meyer):** pink; more specific, less sensitive.
 - **Luminol:** chemiluminescent; reveals washed-away stains in the dark.

- All are only presumptive — false positives occur with rust, plant peroxidases, pus, saliva, or bacteria.
- ▶ **Step 2 — confirm it is blood.**
 - Crystal tests: *Teichmann's* (rhombic crystals), and the more reliable *Takayama* (feathery, works even on old stains).
 - Spectroscopy is most sensitive — detects under 0.1 mg of blood.
- ▶ **Step 3 — human or animal?** The **precipitin test** (antihuman serum rings with human protein) gives the species of origin.
- ▶ **Step 4 — grouping the stain.**
 - **Absorption-elution (acid elution)** is the best method for ABO grouping of a stain; **Lattes' crust method** (*Leone Lattes*, 1915) instead detects the antibody.
 - ABO grouping survives almost indefinitely in a dried stain; MNS and Rh lose specificity within 3–5 weeks.

Secretor status

- ▶ About 80% of people are "secretors" — their ABO antigens appear in soluble form in body fluids except cerebrospinal fluid (saliva, semen, sweat, urine, etc.); the remaining 20% are "non-secretors".
- ▶ Secretion is controlled by genes **Se/se** (Se dominant): SeSe and Se-se are secretors, se-se is non-secretor.
- ▶ Forensic value: a saliva, semen, or sweat stain can give a secretor's ABO group — useful in sexual-assault and assault cases.
- ▶ Rh antigens are not secreted into body fluids (except amniotic fluid).

Civil applications — paternity, maternity, inheritance

- ▶ **Bernstein's law (exclusion principle):** a blood-group antigen cannot appear in a child unless it is present in one or both parents.
- ▶ **Disputed paternity:** husband denying fatherhood, or a maintenance suit for an illegitimate child.
- ▶ **Disputed maternity:** baby interchange in hospital, a kidnapper claiming motherhood, or a suppositious (feigned) child.
- ▶ **Procedure:**
 - 5 mL blood from mother, child, and alleged father; none transfused in the last 3 months.
 - Child ideally ≥6 months old; all tested together — same lab, person, day, and antisera batch.
- ▶ **Cumulative power of exclusion, by system added:**
 - ABO alone: ~18%
 - Add MNS: ~60%
 - Add red-cell antigens + serum proteins: ~82%
 - Add red-cell enzymes: ~94%
 - Add HLA typing: ~98.5%
 - **DNA profiling: ~100%** (positively fixes or excludes paternity)

- ▶ **Two orders of exclusion:** *first-order* — the child carries a gene absent in both parents; *second-order* — the alleged father is homozygous for a gene absent in the child.

Criminal applications

- ▶ **Linking suspect, victim, weapon (Locard's principle):** a stain matching the victim but differing from the suspect is corroborative, not conclusive, if the group is common.
- ▶ **Throttling/struggle:** blood or tissue under the assailant's nails (scratching victim), or the victim's own nails.
- ▶ **Housebreaking:** blood left by a culprit who cuts himself on a broken window can be matched to a suspect.
- ▶ **Sexual offences:** grouping of seminal or saliva stains, if the person is a secretor.
 - Menstrual blood is told apart from peripheral blood by being dark, fluid, acidic, non-coagulating, with raised LDH isoenzymes.
- ▶ **Hit-and-run:** blood on a suspect vehicle matched to the victim.
- ▶ **Rare blood-group combinations** can individualise a stain (common ones cannot).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Blood grouping is only **corroborative or exclusionary**, never proof of identity or parentage — state this limitation in every report.
- ▶ **Collection and preservation is the doctor's duty:**
 - Dry the stained article at room temperature, not heat; avoid airtight/polythene bags — moisture lets bacteria destroy antigens.
 - Pack each garment separately with a control sample, and dispatch under seal to the Forensic Science Laboratory with chain of custody.
- ▶ Examining an **arrested accused** is authorised under **Section 51 BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 53 CrPC 1973)**; a **rape victim**, under **Section 184 BNSS 2023 (formerly Section 164A CrPC 1973)**.
- ▶ The serologist gives evidence as an **expert under Section 39 BSA 2023 (formerly Section 45 IEA 1872)**.
- ▶ **Incompatible transfusion (ABO/Rh)** is a recognised cause of iatrogenic death, showing haemoglobinuric nephrosis at autopsy.
- ▶ **DNA profiling** (Alec Jeffreys, 1985) has superseded serology for identity/parentage, but blood grouping stays useful for rapid screening and degraded or old samples.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **ABO inheritance/agglutination chart:** rows = known test sera (anti-A, anti-B, anti-A+B), columns = unknown blood (O, A, B, AB); mark +/– and label the genotype under each phenotype.
- ▶ **H-antigen build-up and Bombay phenotype:** show the red-cell chain gaining N-acetyl-glucosamine, then galactose, then fucose, to form the H antigen.
 - Gene A then adds N-acetyl-galactosamine (antigen A); gene B adds galactose (antigen B).
 - Show the hh state, lacking fucose, so no A/B antigen forms — the Bombay phenotype.



Polymerase chain reaction

Asked in: Paper I Oct 2017 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ PCR is an *in-vitro* (test-tube) enzymatic technique that amplifies a specific target segment of DNA.
- ▶ It increases that segment **more than a million-fold**, so an invisible trace becomes enough to analyse.
- ▶ It is the workhorse of modern DNA profiling because it works on the tiny, often degraded, biological material typical of a crime scene.
- ▶ It was invented in the 1980s by Kary Mullis.
- ▶ PCR is essentially a controlled, repeated mimicry of the cell's own DNA replication, driven by a heat-stable enzyme in a machine called a **thermal cycler**.

Principle — three steps of one cycle

- ▶ Each cycle **doubles** the target DNA, so n cycles give roughly 2^n copies.
- ▶ **Four essentials:** template DNA (the sample), a pair of short **primers**, a heat-stable DNA polymerase, and free **nucleotides** (A, T, G, C).
- ▶ **Step 1 — Denaturation:** heat to $>94^{\circ}\text{C}$; this breaks the hydrogen bonds and splits double-stranded DNA into two single strands.
- ▶ **Step 2 — Annealing:** cool the temperature; short **primers bind** specifically to the single strands, flanking the polymorphic (variable) region of interest.
- ▶ **Step 3 — Extension:** raise to 72°C , the polymerase's optimum; the enzyme extends the primers, adding each nucleotide opposite its complementary base (A–T, G–C).
- ▶ This three-step cycle repeats ≥ 30 times, giving **more than a million copies** of the target sequence.

Enzyme and primers

- ▶ **Taq polymerase** is a heat-stable DNA polymerase from the thermophilic bacterium *Thermus aquaticus*.

- ▶ It survives the repeated ~94°C denaturation step, so fresh enzyme need not be added each cycle — this is what makes PCR automatable.
- ▶ **Primers** are short synthetic single strands complementary to the sequences flanking the target locus.
- ▶ Primer specificity is what makes PCR amplify only the region of interest.
- ▶ In **short tandem repeat (STR)** typing — the main forensic use — the loci are amplified with sequence-specific primers using PCR.
- ▶ **Restriction endonucleases are not used** in STR analysis; PCR replaces them.

Why PCR suits forensic samples

- ▶ PCR is **extremely sensitive** and works even on **degraded** biological material — old, dried or contaminated stains.
- ▶ DNA quantity needed falls sharply with PCR: **RFLP needs 50–100 ng** of relatively intact DNA.
- ▶ **STR typing needs only 1–10 ng**, and PCR can work from as little as **200 pg**.
- ▶ Each diploid cell holds only ~6 pg of DNA, so a few hundred cells can suffice.
- ▶ STR alleles are short (~10–500 base pairs), so they survive in degraded samples where larger fragments do not.
- ▶ For **highly degraded samples with no nuclear DNA** (old hair shafts, bone, teeth), PCR is used to amplify **mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA)**, which is present in many copies per cell.

Detection and throughput

- ▶ PCR products are separated by **electrophoresis** and visualised by **fluorescent detection or silver staining**.
- ▶ Modern systems co-amplify many loci in one tube (multiplexing).
- ▶ Forensic STR typing must use at least the **13 core CODIS loci**.
- ▶ A full 13-loci match gives a probability of about **1 in a billion**.
- ▶ A single PCR run can process **36 samples** at a time, suiting high-throughput casework.

PCR versus RFLP

Feature	PCR-based (STR)	RFLP
DNA needed	1–10 ng, down to ~200 pg	50–100 ng, intact
Degraded samples	Works well	Fails
Speed	A few days	Days to weeks
Ease	Simple, easily automated	Labour-intensive
Enzyme/probe	Taq polymerase + primers	Restriction endonucleases + labelled probes
Specificity	High, but less specific than RFLP	Very high
Hazard	No radioisotope	Classically uses radioactive ³² P

- **Advantages of PCR over RFLP:** simple and easy to carry out, results within a few days, and works on extremely tiny amounts of DNA.

Forensic applications

- **DNA profiling** of crime-scene stains — blood, semen, saliva, hair root, skin, bone, tooth pulp — to individualise an offender.
- **Sexual assault cases:** victim DNA can be recovered from penile swabs by STR profiling up to 24 hours after intercourse.
- In gang-rape or multiple-contributor stains, **Y-chromosome (Y-STR) analysis** (PCR-based) separates male contributors.
- Non-sperm male cells can still be amplified even after vasectomy or non-ejaculation.
- **Disputed paternity/maternity:** PCR-based profiling can positively fix or exclude parentage with near-100% certainty.
- **Identification of the dead** in mass disasters, decomposed or skeletal remains, using muscle, long bone or plucked hair compared against relatives.
- **mtDNA and Y-chromosome lineage analysis** for missing-person and cold cases.
- **Molecular drowning diagnosis** by PCR-based identification of diatoms.
- **Sex determination** by detecting the **SRY gene** and the **amelogenin** locus.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- **One PCR cycle (labelled):** double-stranded template DNA → Step 1 Denaturation ($>94^{\circ}\text{C}$, strands separate) → Step 2 Annealing (lower temperature, forward and reverse primers bind) → Step 3 Extension (72°C , Taq polymerase + free nucleotides build new strands) → two daughter double-stranded molecules → arrow back to start, labelled "repeat $\times 30 \rightarrow >1$ million copies."
- **An STR locus:** flanking region (left) → primer-binding site (left) → core repeat units, e.g. $(\text{GATA})_n$, showing allele 4 vs allele 8 → primer-binding site (right) → flanking region (right); annotate "PCR primers attach to the flanking regions."

Medico-legal significance

- PCR-based DNA profiling is the **gold standard** for personal identification, individualising biological stains, resolving paternity/maternity disputes, and identifying decomposed, burnt or skeletal remains in mass disasters.
- Expert DNA opinion is admissible under **Section 45 Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- Samples for DNA profiling from an accused are collected under **Section 53/53A CrPC 1973 (now Sections 51/52 BNSS 2023)**.
- A rape victim's medical examination, including DNA sampling, is done under **Section 164A CrPC 1973 (now Section 184 BNSS 2023)**.
- "Examination" under these provisions expressly includes modern scientific techniques such as DNA profiling.

- ▶ An accused's refusal to be examined may go against him in criminal proceedings.
- ▶ The medical officer must collect the correct specimens (dried blood on filter paper/gauze; muscle, long bone, plucked hair, tooth pulp), label them, and preserve **without formalin** (formaldehyde hampers DNA extraction).
- ▶ The **chain of custody** must be maintained, and the sample dispatched to the DNA profiling division of the Forensic Science Laboratory (FSL).
- ▶ DNA is a robust molecule but is degraded by bacterial contamination, heat, UV light and moisture; the resulting small fragments are best handled by PCR-based STR, not RFLP.
- ▶ Profiles are uploaded to centralised databases; **Rapid DNA** microchip devices now allow scene-side profiling.



Precipitin test

Asked in: Paper IV Oct 2016 · Paper I Oct 2016 (2×) — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ The **precipitin test** is an immunological (serological) test.
- ▶ It identifies the **species of origin** of a biological stain.
- ▶ It shows whether blood, flesh, bone, skin, or a secretion is **human or animal**.
- ▶ It is a **specific protein test**, not an individualising test — it gives species, not identity.
- ▶ It works by an **antigen–antibody (precipitin) reaction**.
- ▶ A stain extract (the antigen) is mixed with **antihuman precipitin serum** (the antibody).
- ▶ A **visible precipitate** forms only if the protein matches that species.

Where it fits in the serology work-up

A bloodstain is examined in a fixed sequence, and the precipitin test is step 3.

- ▶ **Step 1 — Is it blood?** Screening colour tests: **benzidine**, **phenolphthalein** (Kastle–Meyer), **guaiacum**, and **luminol** for latent stains.
 - Sensitive but not specific: a negative excludes blood, a positive only suggests it.
- ▶ **Step 2 — Is it definitely blood?** Confirmatory tests: **Teichmann test**, **Takayama test**, and **spectroscopic examination** (detects less than 0.1 mg of blood).
- ▶ **Step 3 — Is it human or animal?** The **precipitin test** and its variants.
- ▶ **Step 4 — Whose blood is it?** ABO grouping, isoenzyme typing, and finally **DNA profiling**.

History

- ▶ **Uhlenhuth** (Greifswald) and, separately, **Wassermann and Schuetze** (Berlin) described the precipitin test in **1901**.
- ▶ Before that, species were guessed from red-cell size (Prevost and Dumas, 1821), which was unreliable on dried stains.

Principle

- ▶ Blood serum contains proteins in colloidal suspension.
- ▶ Injecting **human serum into an animal** immunises it and makes it produce antibodies called **precipitins**.
- ▶ The resulting animal serum is the **antihuman precipitin serum**.
- ▶ When this antiserum meets **human protein** in a stain extract, a visible precipitate forms.
- ▶ A good antiserum reacts within a minute at a **1:1,000 dilution**.

Preparing the antiserum and the stain extract

- ▶ **Antiserum:** a **rabbit** (or fowl, goat, or sheep) is injected with human blood every third day.
- ▶ A total of **3 to 5 injections** is given.
- ▶ The animal is then killed and its antiserum collected.
- ▶ Using a different species' blood as the immunogen gives **anti-dog**, **anti-ox**, and other species-specific antisera.
- ▶ **Stain extract:** the stain is soaked in **normal saline only** — no chemicals are added, since they denature protein and cause false results.
- ▶ The extract must be clear; if turbid, it is **filtered or centrifuged**.
- ▶ It is diluted with saline to about **1:100** before testing.

Methods of the precipitin reaction

Method	How it works
Ring (tube) test	Antiserum layered under diluted extract; a white ring forms at the interface. The oldest method.
Single diffusion (Oudin / Mancini)	Antibody set in agar, antigen diffuses in from above or a well; tests one species at a time .
Ouchterlony double diffusion	Stain extract and several species antisera placed in separate agar wells; tests several species at once .
Counter-current electrophoresis	Antigen and antibody driven together by an electric field; faster (band in ~15–20 min).
Antiglobulin-consumption test	Human globulin blocks antihuman serum from agglutinating cells; very sensitive, detects down to 1:50,000 .

Reading the result

- ▶ A positive reaction (ring, line, or band) **begins within 10 minutes**.
- ▶ It is **read at 30 minutes**, when it is most intense.
- ▶ The result is **qualitative** — reported only as positive or negative.
- ▶ All doubtful reactions are read as **negative**, giving the benefit of the doubt to the accused.

Applications

The test detects human protein from any tissue, so it is used on:

- ▶ **Bloodstains** — the principal use, before any individualisation is attempted.
- ▶ **Mutilated remains and isolated tissue** — to confirm that flesh or skin is human.
- ▶ **Skeletal remains** — works while the bone is reasonably fresh.
 - Plasma proteins stay extractable for **up to about 15 years**.
 - **Not possible on burnt or cremated bone.**
- ▶ **Hair** — distinguishes human from animal hair when the root or tissue is intact.
- ▶ **Secretions** — confirms human origin of **saliva, milk, and semen**.
 - Species of semen is confirmed this way in sexual-offence cases.
- ▶ **Urine and other body-fluid stains** — by the agar-diffusion method against relevant antiglobulins.
- ▶ **Suspected criminal abortion** — a blood clot from expelled uterine material is grouped and precipitin-tested, with DNA profiling, to check compatibility with the alleged mother.

Other ways to identify species

- ▶ **RBC microscopy:** mammal red cells are round, biconcave, and non-nucleated (camel cells are oval).
 - Bird, reptile, fish, and amphibian red cells are oval, biconvex, and nucleated.
 - A quick pointer, but unreliable on dried stains.
- ▶ **Isoenzyme methods:** species-specific LDH, peroxidase, and esterase patterns shown by electrophoresis; less sensitive than the precipitin test.
- ▶ **DNA methods:** species-specific or mitochondrial DNA analysis is now the most definitive species test, and it also allows individualisation.

Recent advances

- ▶ **Immunochromatographic strip tests** — the ABACard HemaTrace and similar RSID (Rapid Stain Identification) strips — have largely replaced the tube precipitin test.
 - Human-specific and antibody-based.
 - Detects as little as **~1 µL** of human blood.
 - Gives a card read-out in about **10 minutes**.
- ▶ **Species-specific DNA testing**, especially **mitochondrial cytochrome-b sequencing**, is now the most reliable way to identify species from degraded stains.
 - Also used in wildlife-forensic (poaching) investigations.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Ring test:** two tubes side by side. Label the diluted stain extract as the upper layer and the undiluted antihuman antiserum as the heavy lower layer, with the interface marked between them. One tube shows a **white ring = positive (human)**; the other shows **no ring = negative**.
- ▶ **Ouchterlony plate:** a central well holds the stain extract, surrounded by wells of different species antisera (antihuman, anti-ox, anti-dog). Mark the **precipitin line** where the extract well meets the matching antihuman well.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Confirming **human origin is mandatory** before any blood grouping or DNA individualisation of a stain becomes meaningful.
- ▶ It tests an accused's claim that a bloodstain is **animal blood from slaughter or hunting**.
- ▶ It is decisive in **mutilation, dismemberment, and skeletal-remains** cases.
- ▶ It is used in **wildlife-poaching investigations** under the Wild Life Protection Act.
- ▶ The result is reported as **qualitative (positive/negative)**; doubtful results are read as negative, protecting the accused.
- ▶ The serologist's report is **expert evidence**, admissible under **Section 45 of the Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39 of the Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam, BSA, 2023)**.
- ▶ Examination is carried out at the **Forensic Science Laboratory (FSL)** on material forwarded by the investigating officer.
- ▶ The examining doctor must ensure proper **collection, sealing, labelling, and chain of custody** of the stained article.

**Precipitin test and Medicolegal importance**

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Precipitin test:** an antigen–antibody reaction used in forensic serology to find the **species of origin** of a biological stain.
- ▶ It tells whether a bloodstain (or a stain of flesh, bone, saliva, milk, semen, urine) is from a **human or an animal**.
- ▶ **Principle:** species-specific serum proteins (antigens) react with a matching antiserum containing antibodies called **precipitins**, forming a **visible insoluble precipitate**.
- ▶ First described by **Paul Uhlenhuth** in **1901**; still the standard species test before DNA profiling establishes individual identity.
- ▶ **Sequence of bloodstain examination:**
 - First confirm the stain is **blood** — benzidine/Kastle-Mayer screening, then Teichmann's or Takayama's crystal tests to confirm.

- Then confirm the blood is **human** — the precipitin test.
- Finally identify **whose blood it is** — ABO grouping and DNA profiling.

Principle and antiserum production

- ▶ **Antiserum production:** inject human blood into a **rabbit, fowl, goat or sheep** every third day, for 3 to 5 injections.
- ▶ The animal is then killed and its **antiserum** collected; this is called **antihuman precipitin serum**.
- ▶ A good antiserum reacts **within a minute** against a **1:1,000 dilution** of human serum.
- ▶ **Species-specific:** a separate antiserum is raised against each animal species (ox, dog, pig, cat, horse), so a battery of antisera can name the exact species.
- ▶ **Stain extract:** soak the stain in **normal saline only** — no chemicals, since they denature the protein — then clarify by filtration or centrifugation and dilute (for example 1:100).
- ▶ **A protein test, not a blood-specific test:** it detects human protein from **any tissue** — blood, skin, flesh, bone, or secretions such as saliva, milk and semen — not blood alone.

Historical background

- ▶ *Prevost and Dumas* (1821) first noted red-cell size differences between species — an early, unreliable approach.
- ▶ *Myers and Uhlenhuth* (1900) showed that rabbit antibodies could precipitate egg albumin of different bird species.
- ▶ *Uhlenhuth* (Greifswald) and *Wassermann & Schuetze* (Berlin), in **1901**, independently showed that precipitating antibodies could specifically detect an animal's blood in a dried stain — the **precipitin test** was born.

Methods of performing the test

Method	Key point
Ring (tube) test	Antiserum is layered under diluted stain extract; a white ring forms at the interface within 10 minutes , maximal at 30 minutes .
Antiglobulin consumption test	Very sensitive — detects globulin at a 1:50,000 dilution.
Single gel diffusion (Oudin; Mancini-RID)	Tests one species at a time .
Double diffusion (Oakley-Fulthorpe; Ouchterlony)	Several antisera placed around a central stain well — several species tested at once ; the most widely used method.
Crossed-over electrophoresis	Antigen and antibody migrate towards each other in an electric field; a band appears within 15–20 minutes .
Immunochromatography (e.g. ABACard HemaTrace)	A monoclonal anti-human-haemoglobin strip test; rapid and usable as a field test .

- ▶ **Reading:** results are **qualitative** — positive or negative; a **doubtful reaction is always read as negative**, giving the benefit of doubt to the accused.

- ▶ DNA-based methods have largely superseded serology for individual identity, but the precipitin test remains the standard **species-screening test**.

Applications

- ▶ **Bloodstains** at a crime scene — is it human or animal? (the core use).
- ▶ **Mutilated bodies and skeletal remains** — establishes that the tissue or bone is **human**.
 - Works only while blood/plasma proteins are still **extractable from bone** — roughly the first 15 years after death.
 - **Not possible on burnt or cremated bone**.
- ▶ **Hair** — helps distinguish human from animal hair, alongside scale pattern, medullary index and pigment.
- ▶ **Semen, saliva and milk stains** — confirms **human origin** in sexual-offence cases (DNA then gives individual identity).
- ▶ **Products of conception / abortion** — confirms expelled material is **human** and consistent with the alleged mother.
- ▶ **Urine and other secretions** — species origin found by agar-diffusion against the relevant antisera.

Limitations

- ▶ It is a **species test only** — it names the species, not the individual; **DNA profiling** is needed for identity.
- ▶ It reacts to **any human protein**, not blood specifically, so blood must first be confirmed by crystal tests.
- ▶ It needs **undegraded protein** — old, washed, heat-treated, putrefied, burnt or cremated material may give a **false-negative or unreliable** result.
- ▶ **Cross-reactivity** can occur with closely related species, such as higher primates.
- ▶ Added chemicals in the stain extract can **denature** the antigen and abolish the reaction.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Establishes **species origin** of stains in homicide, assault, hit-and-run, sexual-offence and infanticide cases.
- ▶ Especially important when an accused claims a stain is **animal blood** — for example, from butchering or hunting.
- ▶ A **positive antihuman** result links the stain to a human source; a **negative (non-human)** result can exonerate the accused.
- ▶ It is a mandatory step in the **Forensic Science Laboratory (FSL) serology report**, done before DNA analysis.
- ▶ The serologist's or doctor's report is admissible as **expert evidence** under **Section 45, Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39, Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023)**.
- ▶ Answers the first question in **skeletal or mutilated-remains identification** — "human or animal?"

- ▶ **Chain of custody:** the medical officer must collect, dry, pack, seal and label the stained article, prepare control samples, and forward it to the FSL with a forwarding letter.
 - Defects in this process can make the precipitin result **inadmissible**.
- ▶ The doctor should report **conservatively** — doubtful is read as negative — and limit the opinion to **species, not identity**.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Ring (tube) test:** a slanted, tapering tube showing the antiserum as the lower layer, the stain extract as the upper layer, and a **white ring of precipitate** at the interface; label "positive — human" against a clear tube labelled "negative — non-human."
- ▶ **Ouchterlony double-diffusion plate:** a central well labelled "suspect stain" surrounded by peripheral wells labelled **Man, Cat, Dog, Pig, Ox, Horse**; a **precipitin line** forms only against the matching species well.

High-yield exam pointers

- ▶ Precipitin test = **species-of-origin** test (human vs animal); discovered by **Uhlenhuth, 1901**.
- ▶ Antihuman antiserum: inject human blood into a **rabbit, fowl, goat or sheep**, every 3rd day, for **3–5 doses**.
- ▶ A good antiserum reacts **within a minute** at **1:1,000** dilution.
- ▶ **Ring test:** white ring at **10 minutes**, maximal at **30 minutes**; **doubtful is read as negative**.
- ▶ It detects human protein in **blood, flesh, bone, saliva, milk and semen** — so confirm blood first with Teichmann's or Takayama's test.
- ▶ **Ouchterlony** double diffusion tests **multiple species at once**; **antiglobulin consumption** is the most sensitive method (1:50,000).
- ▶ Limitations: gives **species, not identity**; fails on **burnt, old or washed** samples; **cross-reacts** with closely related species.
- ▶ Sequence to remember: confirm **it is blood** → confirm **it is human** (precipitin test) → confirm **whose blood it is** (ABO grouping/DNA).
- ▶ Expert-evidence admissibility: **Section 45 IEA 1872** → **Section 39 BSA 2023**.

♦ ♦ ♦

Red cell enzyme – Polymorphisms

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2018 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ **Red cell enzyme polymorphisms** are inherited variations in the structure of erythrocyte (red blood cell) enzymes.
- ▶ The same enzyme exists in several alternative molecular forms in the population, called **isoenzymes** (isozymes).
- ▶ Isoenzymes catalyse the same reaction but travel differently on electrophoresis.
- ▶ Each variant is inherited in a simple Mendelian (single-gene) pattern.

- ▶ The alleles are **co-dominant**, so an individual's enzyme "type" is a stable, lifelong biological marker.
- ▶ Red cell enzymes form the **4th** classical blood-group system.
- ▶ Before DNA profiling, they supplemented red-cell antigens and serum proteins for **paternity testing, identification, and typing of blood/seminal stains**.

Where it fits among blood-group systems

- ▶ Human blood carries hundreds of inherited markers — over 160 antigens, 150 serum proteins, 250 cellular enzymes.
- ▶ These are grouped into four classical systems used for individualisation:
 - (1) **Red cell antigens**: ABO, MNSs, Rh, Kell, Duffy, Lutheran, Kidd.
 - (2) **White cell antigens**: the HLA system.
 - (3) **Serum protein polymorphisms**: Haptoglobin (Hp), Gc, Gm, Km, Ag.
 - (4) **Red cell enzyme polymorphisms**: PGM, AK, ADA, EAP, EsD, GLO I, GPT, 6-PGD.
- ▶ **Haemoglobin variants** (Hb A, S, C, F) are a further co-dominant marker set.
- ▶ Red cell enzymes drive erythrocyte glycolysis and nucleotide metabolism.
- ▶ Their polymorphic forms are shown **electrophoretically**, classically by **starch-gel electrophoresis**.
- ▶ **Isoelectric focusing (IEF)** — a finer technique separating molecules by isoelectric point — gives sharper discrimination.

Forensically important enzymes

- ▶ **Phosphoglucumutase (PGM)** is the most commonly used red-cell enzyme in forensic work and gives the highest discrimination.
- ▶ **Adenylate kinase (AK)** also has established value in paternity testing, used together with PGM.
- ▶ Supplementary markers:
 - **Adenosine deaminase (ADA)**
 - **Erythrocyte acid phosphatase (EAP)**
 - **Esterase D (EsD)**
 - **Glyoxalase I (GLO I)**
 - **Glutamate–pyruvate transaminase (GPT)**
 - **6-Phosphogluconate dehydrogenase (6-PGD)**
- ▶ Also listed among polymorphic red-cell enzymes: *G6PD* and *carbonic anhydrase II (CA II)*.
- ▶ **Peptidase A (Pep A)** is used together with PGM specifically for semen profiling.
- ▶ Memory aid: "PGM, AK, ADA, EAP, EsD, GLO, GPT, 6-PGD."

Genetic and biochemical basis

- ▶ Each enzyme is coded by a single gene with two or more **alleles** at one chromosomal locus.
- ▶ The alleles are **co-dominant** — both are expressed when present together.
- ▶ So the banding pattern seen on the gel directly reveals the genotype.

- ▶ Variant alleles differ in charge and size, so isoenzymes migrate different distances on electrophoresis.
- ▶ Each distinct banding pattern corresponds to one phenotype.
- ▶ **PGM** resolves into **10 phenotypes** by IEF — the most of any red-cell enzyme.
- ▶ More phenotypes means higher discriminating power: a rarer combination of types is more powerfully matched or excluded.
- ▶ Starch-gel electrophoresis is the classical demonstration method; IEF gives finer subtyping.

Paternity testing

- ▶ The main medico-legal use of these markers is to **exclude disputed paternity**.
- ▶ Blood groups (including enzymes) can never *positively* prove paternity — they can only exclude a wrongly accused man.
- ▶ Exclusion power rises as more independent systems are tested together:

Systems tested (cumulative)	Exclusion of a falsely accused man
ABO alone	~18%
Red cell antigens + serum proteins	~82%
+ Red cell enzymes	~94%
+ multiple HLA systems	~98.5%
DNA fingerprinting	Positively fixes or excludes

- ▶ Red cell enzymes raise cumulative exclusion from about **82% to 94%**.
- ▶ HLA testing alone can exclude paternity up to about 80%.
- ▶ **DNA fingerprinting** (Jeffreys, 1984) is the only method that can positively establish or exclude paternity.
- ▶ **Blood sampling:** 5 mL venous blood is drawn from the mother and the alleged father, and 1 mL from the infant.
- ▶ The infant's sample is taken by venepuncture or heel/ear prick; the child should be at least 6 months and not under 2 months old.
- ▶ Neither party should have had a blood transfusion in the preceding 3 months.
- ▶ To avoid artefacts, mother, child and alleged father must be tested **by the same person, same laboratory, same day, using the same batch of reagents and antisera**.

Blood and seminal stains

- ▶ **Blood and seminal stains** can be enzyme-typed for individualisation.
- ▶ A **secretor** is a person who secretes ABO blood-group substances into body fluids such as saliva and semen.
- ▶ A secretor's semen also contains **PGM, AK, HLA, lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), Gm, Km and GLO**.
- ▶ **PGM and Peptidase A (Pep A)** are the two enzyme markers most used in profiling semen and vaginal secretions.

- ▶ PGM is detectable in recovered material for up to about **6 hours**; **Pep A** for up to about **3 hours**.
- ▶ **Key limitation:** red-cell enzymes are labile and **do not persist beyond about one month** in dried stains.
- ▶ This instability is a major reason DNA profiling has replaced enzyme typing for old or degraded stains.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Starch-gel/IEF electrophoretogram of PGM phenotypes:** a rectangular gel with the **cathode (–)** at the application end and **anode (+)** opposite, a horizontal **sample-application origin**, and three lanes showing different **band patterns** labelled with the common PGM phenotypes (PGM 1, PGM 2-1, PGM 2); mark **direction of migration** and an arrow for **increasing electrophoretic mobility**.
- ▶ **Flow box — blood-group systems used in identification/paternity:** four boxes in sequence, (1) **red cell antigens** → (2) **white cell antigens (HLA)** → (3) **serum protein polymorphisms** → (4) **red cell enzyme polymorphisms**, with the enzyme box expanded to list PGM, AK, ADA, EAP, EsD, GLO, GPT, 6-PGD.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Relevant in **disputed paternity/affiliation suits** and **disputed maternity** — interchange of children in hospital, two women claiming one child, or a suppositious child (falsely passed off as the couple's genuine biological offspring).
- ▶ Enzyme typing supplements antigen and serum-protein typing, raising cumulative exclusion to about 94%.
- ▶ In India, a child born during a valid marriage, or within 280 days of its dissolution, is presumed legitimate under **Section 112, Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 116, Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam, BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ Serological/enzyme evidence is corroborative in rebutting this presumption of legitimacy, though DNA is now the definitive tool.
- ▶ Typing of blood and seminal stains links or dissociates a suspect from the crime scene.
- ▶ Results are tendered as expert opinion under **Section 45, Indian Evidence Act 1872 (now Section 39, BSA 2023)**.
- ▶ Courts may also direct DNA/blood testing under their general powers.
- ▶ **Limitations to state in the exam:** the method only excludes, never proves, paternity; enzymes degrade within about a month in stains; and DNA profiling has largely replaced enzyme typing.

♦ ♦ ♦

Tests to confirm Blood Stains. Stains resembling blood stains and its medico legal importance

Asked in: Paper I Apr 2022 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition and approach

- ▶ A **blood stain** is blood deposited on a surface — clothing, weapon, floor, or body — and is crucial evidence in crimes of violence.
- ▶ Examination answers a fixed sequence: is it blood, is it human, what group/DNA profile, and is it ante- or post-mortem?
- ▶ Many harmless substances mimic blood, so testing proceeds in five tiers.
- ▶ **Tier I — General:** colour, age, distribution, drag marks, bloodstain-pattern analysis at the scene.
- ▶ **Tier II — Presumptive (screening) tests:** sensitive but not specific; negative excludes blood, positive is not proof.
- ▶ **Tier III — Confirmatory tests:** microscopic, microchemical (crystal), spectroscopic — prove the material is blood.
- ▶ **Tier IV — Species-origin:** precipitin test and its variants — human vs animal.
- ▶ **Tier V — Individualisation:** ABO grouping, isoenzymes, DNA profiling.

Presumptive (screening/colour) tests

- ▶ **Principle:** haemoglobin's peroxidase activity splits hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), releasing oxygen that turns a colourless chromogen blue, or produces light in chemiluminescent tests.
- ▶ **Benzidine test (Adler's test):** benzidine in glacial acetic acid plus H_2O_2 gives an immediate dark-blue colour.
 - Detects blood to about 1 in 3 lakh (1:300,000), even in old, heated, or washed stains — the most sensitive classical test.
 - Benzidine is carcinogenic, so it is now largely abandoned.
- ▶ **Phenolphthalein test (Kastle-Meyer test):** reduced phenolphthalein plus H_2O_2 gives an immediate pink colour.
 - More specific but less sensitive than benzidine — the standard, non-carcinogenic screening test used today.
- ▶ **Other colour tests:**
 - **Leucomalachite green (LMG):** blue-green colour; less sensitive than luminol and hampers later DNA recovery.
 - **Orthotolidine:** a benzidine derivative, also carcinogenic; replaced by **tetramethylbenzidine (TMB)** (blue-green), the current chromogen of choice.
- ▶ **Luminol test:** sprayed in a dark room; blood-containing areas luminesce blue-white.
 - Most sensitive presumptive test — detects blood to about 1 in 10 million.
 - Reveals footprints and patterns, even on a washed or cleaned scene.
 - Does not destroy DNA, but the glow lasts only about 30 seconds.
 - Does not distinguish human from animal blood.

- Gives false positives with copper, some bleaches, plant peroxidases, and urine/faeces.
- **Fluorescein/fluorescin** is the fluorescent alternative, needing an alternate light source (~450 nm) and orange goggles.
- **False positives overall:** pus, saliva, milk, rust, formalin, oxidising agents, bacteria, and some plant/animal juices.
 - Plant peroxidases are thermolabile (destroyed by heat), so gentle heating can help unmask a false positive.

Confirmatory tests

- **Microscopic examination:** intact red blood cells (RBCs) are seen only in fresh, wet stains or clots (soaked in **Vibert's fluid** or saline), not in dried ones.
 - **Mammalian RBCs** are circular, biconcave, non-nucleated (camel and llama are oval).
 - **Bird, fish, amphibian, and reptile RBCs** are oval, biconvex, and nucleated.
- **Microchemical (crystal) tests:** convert the haem (porphyrin) part of haemoglobin into characteristic crystals — highly specific but less sensitive.
 - **Teichmann's haemin test:** stain plus sodium chloride and glacial acetic acid, gently heated, gives brownish rhombic crystals of haemin.
 - Fails if the stain is old, washed, treated, salt-laden, or over-heated.
 - **Takayama's haemochromogen test:** stain plus Takayama reagent (sodium hydroxide, pyridine, glucose, water) gives pink feathery crystals in clusters within 1–6 minutes.
 - More delicate and reliable than Teichmann's test.
 - Works on old stains and needs no heating.
 - **Wagenaar test:** acetone then dilute hydrochloric acid — works even on old or putrefied stains.
- **Spectroscopic examination:** the most delicate and reliable confirmatory test, detecting less than 0.1 mg of blood.
 - The dissolved stain shows characteristic dark absorption bands between the Fraunhofer C–F lines.
 - Distinct spectra identify oxyhaemoglobin, reduced haemoglobin, carboxyhaemoglobin, methaemoglobin, and haematoporphyrin — also useful in carbon-monoxide deaths.

Species-origin and individualisation

- **Precipitin (ring) test:** the standard test for species.
 - An animal (rabbit or fowl) immunised with human serum yields anti-human precipitin serum; layering the stain extract over it gives a white ring of precipitate within 10–30 minutes if human.
 - Any doubtful reaction is read as negative for medico-legal purposes.
 - It also identifies human skin, flesh, bone, saliva, milk, and semen.
- **Newer serology:** gel-diffusion, immunoelectrophoresis, and rapid strip tests (HemaTrace, RSID-blood) confirming human haemoglobin in about 10 minutes.

- ▶ **ABO grouping** of a dried stain uses the **absorption-elution** method (commonest) or the **Lattes crust** method; isoenzyme markers (EAP, EsD, PEP-A, AK) add further discrimination.
- ▶ **DNA profiling** gives definitive individualisation.
- ▶ **Sex of the donor**: a Barr body or fluorescent Y-chromosome (quinacrine stain) in leucocytes, confirmed by FISH; fetal haemoglobin suggests a child.

Substances that mimic blood stains

Mimic	How it is told apart
Rust	Does not flake off on heating, does not stiffen cloth, dissolves in dilute HCl, iron test positive
Synthetic dye	Turns yellow with nitric acid; original colour restored by strong alkali
Mineral stains	Contain iron oxide, red lead, or red mercury sulphide
Vegetable/fruit stains (mulberry, henna, pan juice)	Show plant cells on microscopy; contain tannin, so turn black with ferric chloride
Grease, resin, tar	Mimic old blood but all blood tests are negative

- ▶ The key discriminator for every mimic: confirmatory (crystal/spectroscopic) and species tests stay negative, while iron, dye, and microscopy tests positively identify the true material.

Collection and preservation

- ▶ Dry the stained article at room temperature — never with heat, and never seal it in an airtight or plastic bag.
- ▶ Trapped moisture lets bacteria grow, which destroys the species identification.
- ▶ Liquid blood is pipetted and refrigerated; non-porous or metallic stains are scraped into glass containers, not envelopes.
- ▶ For porous objects, always send an unstained control portion too.
- ▶ Pack each garment separately with clean paper between stains, then label, date, and send to the State Forensic Science Laboratory (FSL).

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ Confirming that a stain is blood, human, and of a given group or DNA profile links suspect, victim, weapon, and scene — central to charges of murder (**Section 302 IPC, now Section 103 BNS 2023**) and culpable homicide (**Section 304 IPC, now Section 105 BNS 2023**).
- ▶ Excluding mimics (rust, paint, fruit juice) prevents an innocent stain from being wrongly reported as blood.
- ▶ The common defence in assaults on women — "it is menstrual blood" — is rebutted by its acid reaction, foul smell, absence of clotting, and endometrial cells.
- ▶ Spurting patterns indicate arterial injury and its direction; a clenched-fist-sized clot $\approx$ 500 mL of blood loss, and one square foot of spread stain $\approx$ 100 mL.

- ▶ Blood shed during life peels off in flakes and its clot lifts away in one piece; post-mortem blood breaks into powder instead.
- ▶ Collecting blood-stained material from an accused is authorised under **Section 53 CrPC 1973** (now **Section 51 BNSS 2023**), and in sexual-offence cases **Section 53A CrPC 1973** (now **Section 52 BNSS 2023**).
- ▶ The serologist's findings are admissible as **expert evidence under Section 45 Indian Evidence Act 1872** (now **Section 39 Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam 2023**) and must withstand cross-examination.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **Tiered flowchart:** Suspected stain → Presumptive tests (Benzidine, Kastle-Meyer, Luminol) → Confirmatory tests (Microscopy, Teichmann, Takayama, Spectroscopy) → Species test (Precipitin) → Individualisation (ABO grouping, DNA profiling). Label each box with the test name and its result colour/crystal.
- ▶ **Crystal sketch:** Teichmann — brownish rhombic haemin crystals in clusters; Takayama — pink feathery haemochromogen crystals in sheaves.



Various blood groups and their role in determining paternity

Asked in: Paper I Dec 2023 — RGUHS MD Forensic Medicine

Definition

- ▶ A **blood group** is an inherited, fixed marker on the red-cell surface, or in a serum protein or enzyme.
- ▶ It is detected by a specific antibody and, like a fingerprint, never changes throughout life.
- ▶ Each person inherits one gene of every blood-group system from each parent, following **Mendelian inheritance**.
- ▶ A man cannot pass on an antigen he does not himself possess — this rule is the basis of paternity testing.
- ▶ Blood grouping can only **exclude** a wrongly accused man; it can never positively **prove** fatherhood.
- ▶ Only **DNA profiling** (**DNA fingerprinting**) can both fix and exclude paternity with near-certainty.

Bernstein's laws — the genetic basis

- ▶ Postulated by *Felix Bernstein*, these are the working rules for solving paternity disputes.
- ▶ A blood-group gene's product **cannot appear in a child** unless it is present in one or both parents.
- ▶ If a parent is **homozygous** for a gene, that gene's product **must appear** in every child.
- ▶ If a child is **homozygous** for a factor, he must have inherited that gene from **each** parent.
- ▶ Two group-O parents cannot have a group-AB child.

- ▶ Two group-AB parents cannot have a group-O child.
- ▶ Blood-group characters are fixed for life, like fingerprints.
- ▶ The Rh system does not follow this simple exclusion rule.

Major blood-group systems

- ▶ Blood-group systems fall into four classes: **red-cell antigens**, **white-cell antigens (HLA)**, **serum-protein polymorphisms**, and **red-cell enzyme polymorphisms**.
- ▶ The **International Society of Blood Transfusion (ISBT)** recognises 30 typing systems in all.
- ▶ For paternity work, the useful red-cell systems are **ABO**, **MNSs**, **Rh**, **Kell**, **Lutheran**, **Duffy** and **Kidd**.
- ▶ **ABO**:
 - Three genes (A, B, O) sit on **chromosome 9**.
 - A and B are dominant to O, but **co-dominant** to each other.
 - Six genotypes give four phenotypes.
- ▶ **H antigen** — the precursor of A and B:
 - Its gene (*FUT1*) sits on **chromosome 19**.
 - The rare **Bombay phenotype (Oh, h/h)** lacks H, A and B antigens.
 - It can cause a false exclusion or false inclusion of paternity (see below).
- ▶ **MNSs**: co-dominant alleles, present from birth.
- ▶ **Rh**:
 - A complex of C/c, D, E/e antigens giving **36 genotypes**.
 - Its antibodies form only after exposure — transfusion or pregnancy — unlike ABO.
- ▶ **HLA (white-cell antigens)**:
 - Sits on **chromosome 6**.
 - Extremely variable between individuals.
 - Alone excludes up to **80%** of wrongly accused men.
- ▶ **Serum proteins** (haptoglobins, Gc, Ag, Gm, Km) and **red-cell enzymes** (PGM, AK, and others) add further discriminating power.
 - Both survive well in dried blood stains.

Principle of paternity exclusion

- ▶ The opinion rests entirely on **exclusion**, using Bernstein's first law.
- ▶ **First-order exclusion**: the child carries an antigen absent from **both** the mother and the alleged father.
 - That foreign antigen must have come from another man.
 - Example: a mother of group A cannot have an AB child by a father of group A or O — the true father must carry the B gene.
- ▶ **Second-order exclusion**: the alleged father is **homozygous** for a gene whose product is **absent** in the child, though he should have passed it on.

- ▶ If two men are alleged fathers and only one carries an antigen present in the child, that man **must be the father**.
- ▶ If both carry it, **no positive opinion** can be given either way.
- ▶ **Bombay-phenotype trap**: a father who is genetically A but H-deficient types as O.
 - If the mother is group B, the child can inherit H from the mother and A from the father and type as AB.
 - This looks like an impossibility from an "O" father, wrongly suggesting illegitimacy.
 - True O is told apart from Bombay O using the **anti-H reagent**.

Cumulative power of exclusion

No single system is conclusive on its own; adding independent systems raises the chance of excluding a wrongly accused man.

Systems added	Cumulative exclusion
ABO alone	~18%
+ MNSs	~60%
+ serum proteins	~82%
+ red-cell enzymes	~94%
+ HLA	~98.5%
DNA fingerprinting	≈100% (fixes or excludes)

Procedure and sampling

- ▶ Mother, child and the **putative father** must all be tested by the **same person, same lab, same day, same batch** of antisera.
- ▶ **Adults**: 5 mL venous blood in a plain tube.
 - Neither party should have had a **blood transfusion within 3 months**.
- ▶ **Infant**: preferably **≥6 months old**, never less than 2 months.
 - About 1 mL is taken by heel/ear prick or venepuncture.
- ▶ Systems routinely used: **ABO, MNSs, Rh, Kell, Lutheran, Duffy, Kidd**.
 - The P and Lewis systems are avoided — too complex or unstable.

Medico-legal significance

- ▶ **Disputed paternity** arises when a husband denies fatherhood, in blackmail/affiliation cases, maintenance suits, posthumous births, and supposititious (fictitious) children.
- ▶ **Disputed maternity** arises from baby interchange in hospital, kidnapping, or two women claiming the same child.
- ▶ Blood grouping only ever **excludes** a wrongly accused man — it never **proves** paternity.
- ▶ Only **DNA fingerprinting** gives an absolute answer, fixing or excluding paternity.
- ▶ A blood-group incompatibility between child and alleged father is one statutory ground for proving **illegitimacy**.

- ▶ Conversely, a legitimate child alone can inherit the father's property.
- ▶ A child born during a valid marriage is conclusively presumed legitimate under **Section 116, Bharatiya Sakshya Adhiniyam (BSA) 2023** (re-enacting **Section 112, Indian Evidence Act 1872**).
 - This presumption also covers a child born within **280 days** of the marriage's dissolution, provided the mother has not remarried.
- ▶ A magistrate can order maintenance for a child whose paternity is established under **Section 144, Bharatiya Nagarik Suraksha Sanhita (BNSS) 2023** (formerly **Section 125, Code of Criminal Procedure 1973**).
- ▶ Blood groups can also be recovered from **hair, nails, bone marrow, dental pulp** and other tissues.
- ▶ They can also be recovered from the body fluids of **secretors** — people who secrete ABO antigens into saliva and semen — useful even without liquid blood.
- ▶ The doctor's duty is correct sampling, an unbroken **chain of custody**, and a report framed strictly as **exclusion or non-exclusion**, never as proof of paternity.

DIAGRAMS TO DRAW — IMAGE SUGGESTIONS

- ▶ **ABO inheritance / Punnett square:** parental genotypes (e.g. AO × BO), their gametes, and the four possible offspring genotypes/phenotypes (AB, AO, BO, OO); mark which combinations exclude the alleged father.
- ▶ **Bombay-phenotype paternity error:** Father (genotype A but h/h, typed O) plus Mother (H-present, group B) giving Child (AB); show the maternal H gene combining with the paternal A gene to make the A antigen — the apparent "impossibility."

